



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

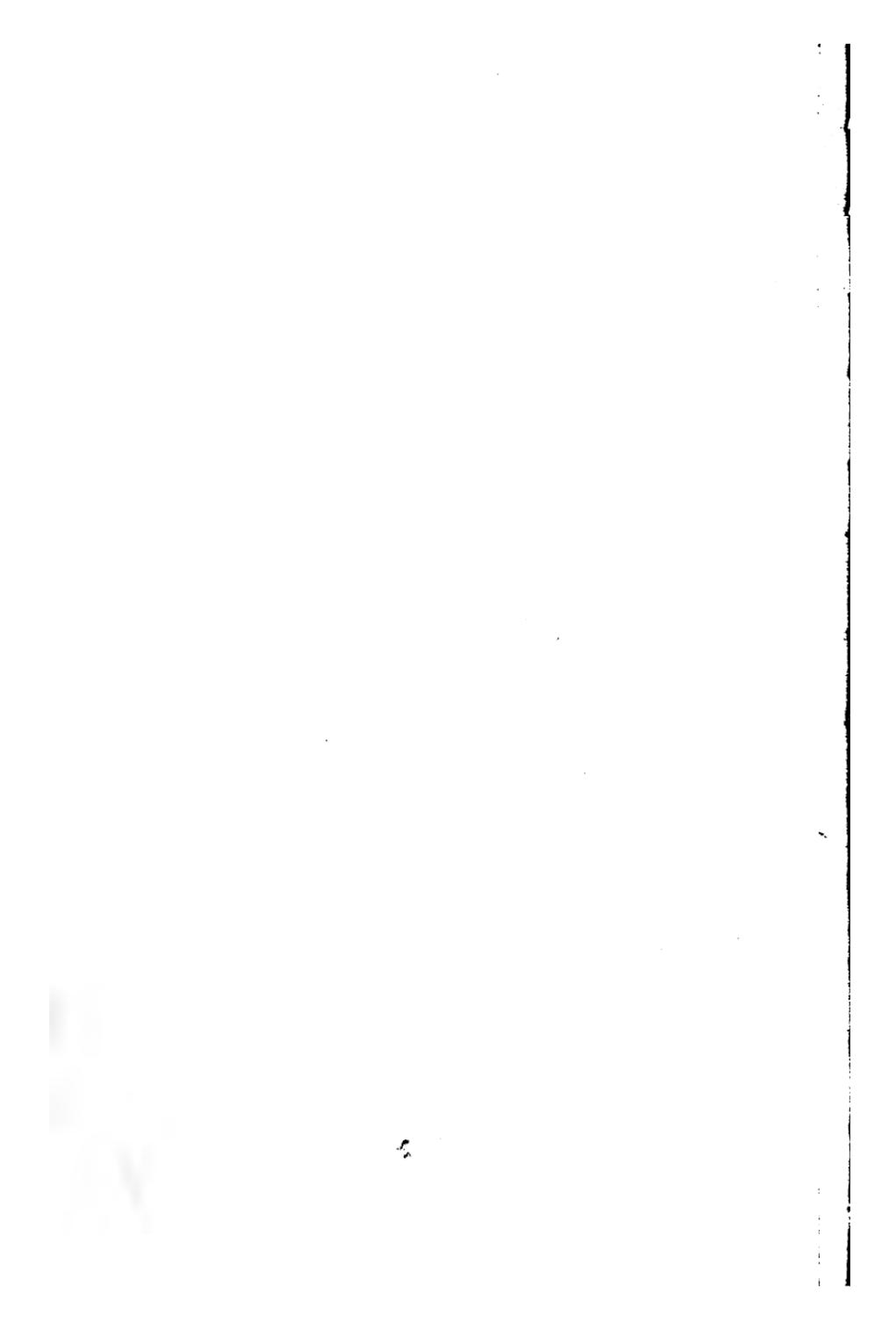
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

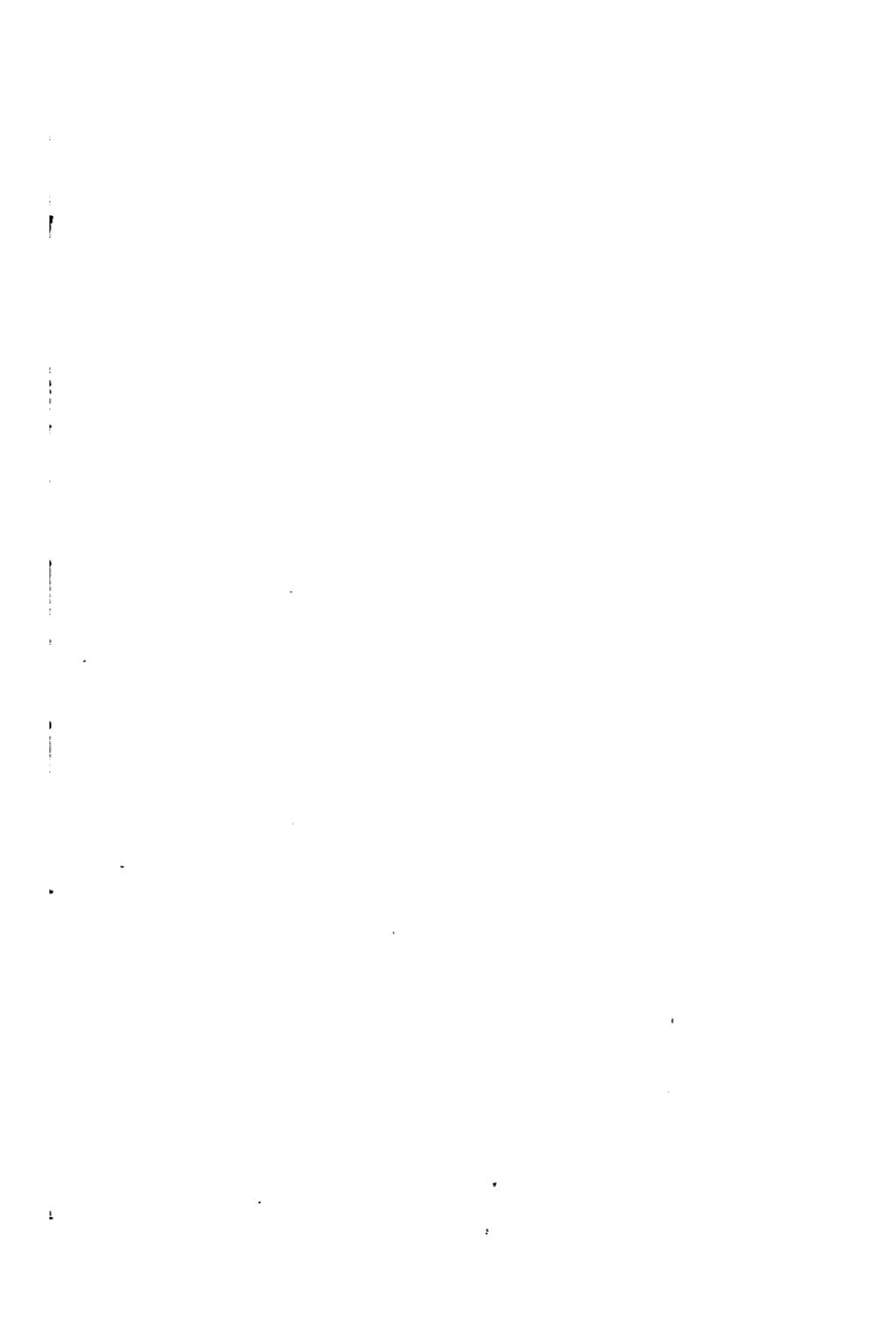
### About Google Book Search

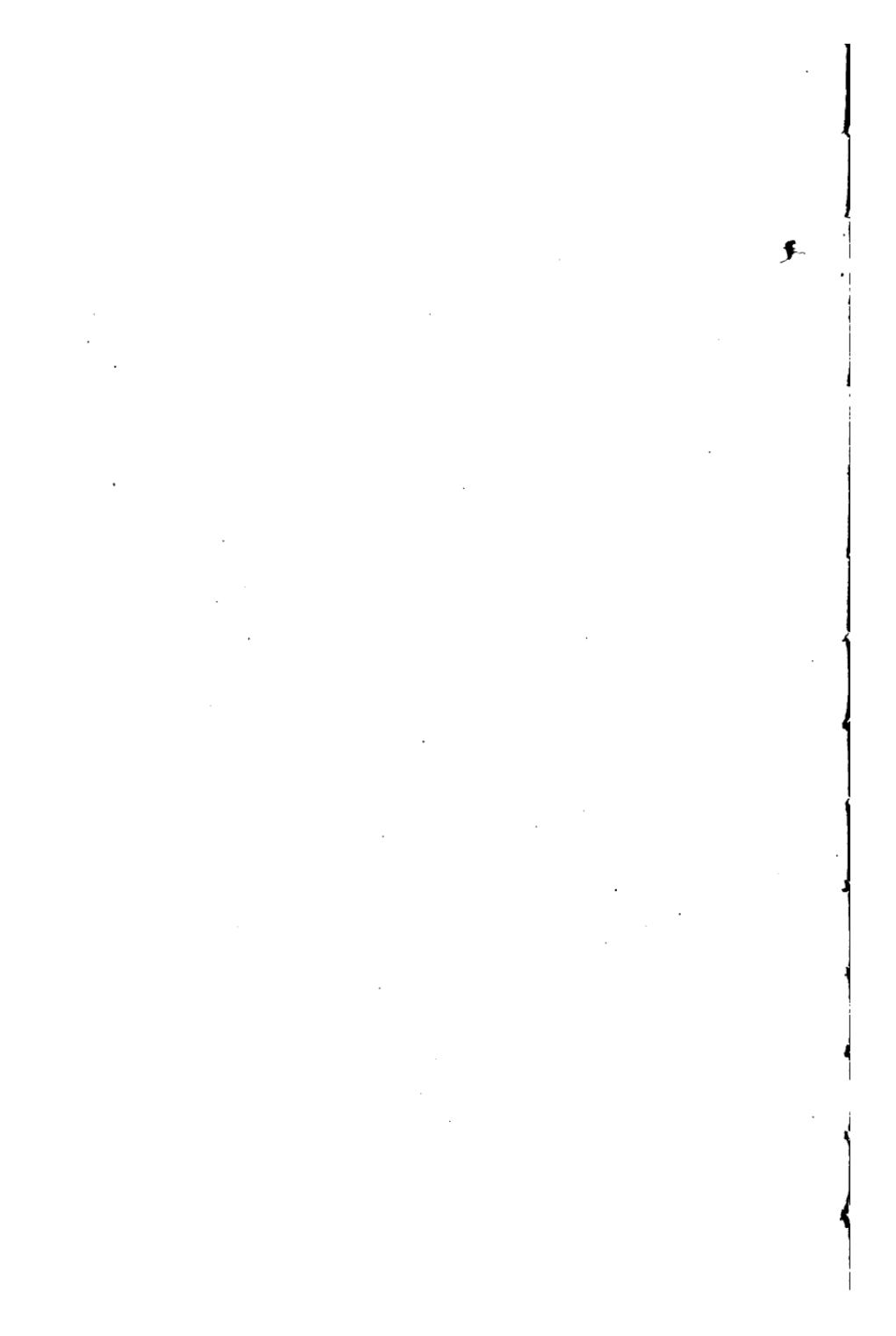
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



1905







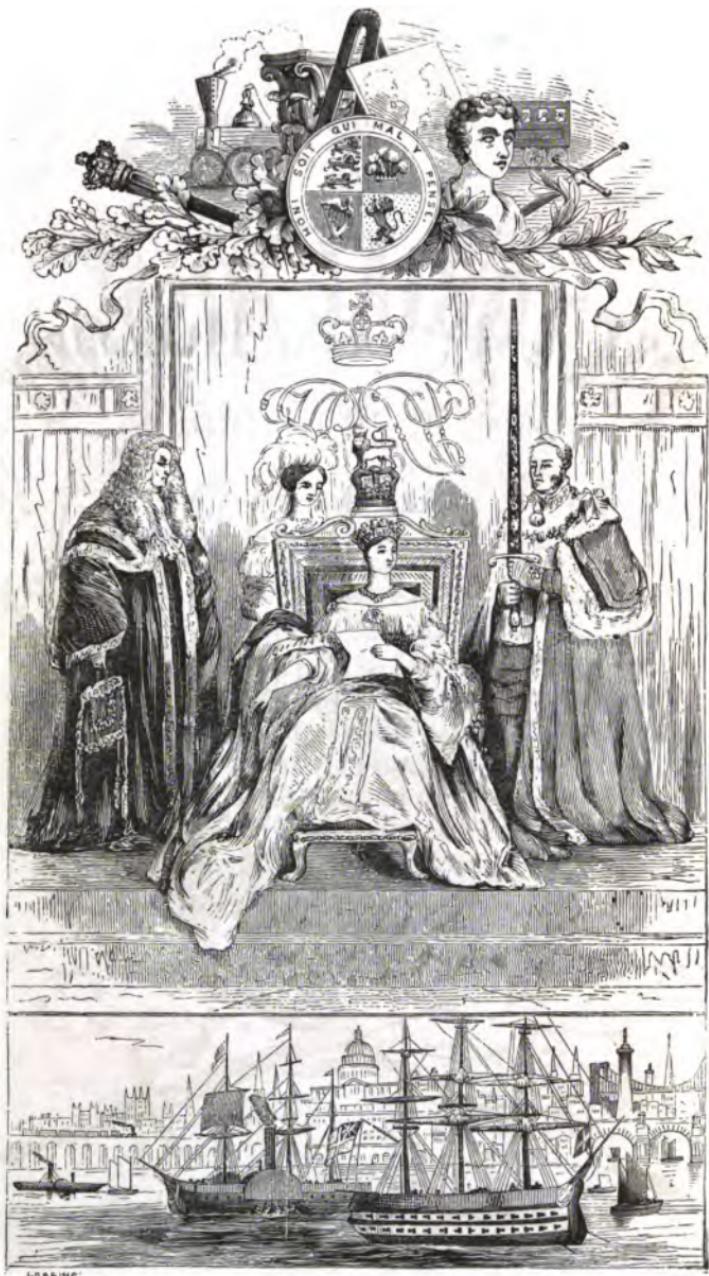
THE STANDARD  
SERIES OF PICTORIAL HISTORIES,

BY S. G. GOODRICH,

(PETER BARLEY)

COMPRISES—

1. GOODRICH'S AMERICAN CHILD'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.
2. GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.
3. GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND.
4. GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF FRANCE.
5. GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF ROME.
6. GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF GREECE.
7. GOODRICH'S COMMON SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE WORLD.
8. GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL NATURAL HISTORY.
9. GOODRICH'S HISTOIRE UNIVERSELLE.
10. GOODRICH'S HISTOIRE DES ÉTATS-UNIS D'AMÉRIQUE.





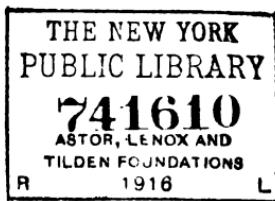
PICTORIAL HISTORY  
OF  
ENGLAND  
BY S. C. GOODRICH  
AUTHOR OF PETER PARLEYS TALES.



PHILADELPHIA:  
PUBLISHED BY J. H. BUTLER & CO.

1878

W.M.



---

Entered according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1845, by  
S. G. GOODRICH,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

---

Entered according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1854, by  
S. G. GOODRICH,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of  
New York.

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1871, by the  
HEIRS OF S. G. GOODRICH,

in the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

---

WESTCOTT & THOMSON,  
Stereotypers, Philada.

SHERMAN & CO.  
Printers, Philada.

# C O N T E N T S.

	P A G E
CHAPTER	
I.—Introduction.—Importance of the History of England.—Present state of the British Empire.....	9
II.—Earliest glimpses of British history.—Cæsar, &c.....	13
III.—Invasion of Britain by the Romans.....	15
IV.—Caractacus.—The Druids.—London destroyed.—Boadicea defeated.....	17
V.—Agricola.—The Scots and Picts.—The Roman wall.—Christianity introduced.....	19
VI.—The Romans abandon Britain.—Sufferings of the Britons.....	21
VII.—Account of the Saxons.....	23
VIII.—The Language and Religion of the Anglo-Saxons.—Names of the days of the week.—Introduction of Christianity.....	24
IX.—The Anglo-Saxons.—Their Historians.—Condition of the people.....	25
X.—Laws of the Anglo-Saxons.—Modes of trial.—The Ordeal.....	26
XI.—The kingdom of England established.—The Danes.—Saxon race of kings.—Alfred the Great.....	28
XII.—More about Alfred.....	30
XIII.—About the architecture of the Anglo-Saxons.....	32
XIV.—Of the learning of the Anglo-Saxons.—The Clergy.....	34
XV.—Alfred encourages the arts.—About the English navy.—Death of Alfred.—Reign of Edward the Elder.....	35
XVI.—Adventures of Aulaff.—The Long Battle.—Athelred.—His death.....	37
XVII.—Edmund murdered.—Edred.—St. Dunstan.....	38
XVIII.—The Monks and the Secular Clergy.....	40
XIX.—Edgar the Peaceable.—Edward the Martyr.....	41
XX.—Ethelred II.—Penances.—Indulgences.—The Butter Tower.....	42
XXI.—Troubles with the Danes.—Penitentiate with them.....	44
XXII.—Massacre of the Danes in England, &c.—Edmund Ironside.—Canute conquers England.....	45
XXIII.—Dress and amusements of the Anglo-Saxons.....	46
XXIV.—Canute the Great.—His rebuke of his courtiers.....	48
XXV.—Reign of Harold Harefoot, and of Hardicanute.....	50
XXVI.—Edward the Confessor.—Harold.—About the Conquest.....	51
XXVII.—William I., the Conqueror.—The Saxon nobles degraded.....	54
XXVIII.—Game Laws.—Rebellion of Robert.—Domesday Book.—Death of William I.....	56
XXIX.—England after the Norman conquest.—The English language.....	58
XXX.—The Feudal System.—A Norman castle.....	59
XXXI.—William Rufus.—The sons of William the Conqueror.....	61
XXXII.—The Crusades.....	62
XXXIII.—William obtains large territories by mortgage.—His death.....	64
XXXIV.—Henry I. usurps the crown.—Dispute between the Pope and the King, &c.....	66
XXXV.—Henry.—Edgar Atheling.—Death of Robert.....	68
XXXVI.—Melancholy condition of the king, &c.....	69
XXXVII.—Battle of Brenneville.—Ancient armor.....	70
XXXVIII.—Death of Prince William, and many young nobles.....	71
XXXIX.—Matilda marries Geoffrey Plantagenet.—Death of Henry I.—Stephen usurps the crown.....	73
XL.—Proceedings of Stephen, &c.....	74
XLI.—Matilda acknowledges the queen, &c.—Peace restored.—Death of Stephen.....	76
XLII.—Employment of the ladies in the time of Henry II.....	78
XLIII.—Pages, Esquires, and Knights.....	79
XLIV.—Surnames.—Education of Henry II., &c.—About the only Englishman that ever was made pope.....	81
XLV.—More about Henry II.—Queen Eleanor.....	82
XLVI.—Thomas à Becket.—How he lost his rich cloak.....	84
XLVII.—Henry and the clergy.—Death of Becket.....	85
XLVIII.—Becket canonized by the Pope, &c.....	88

CHAPTER.	PAGE
XLIX.—Earl Strongbow goes over to Ireland to assist Dermot Macmorrogi.— The English conquer Ireland.....	89
L.—The sons of Henry rebel.....	91
LI.—Penance of Henry II.—Fresh rebellions of his sons.—Death of Henry II.....	92
LII.—Of Richard the Lion-hearted.....	94
LIII.—Exploits of Richard in Palestine.....	96
LIV.—Philip returns to Europe.—More of Richard's exploits.....	97
LV.—Shipwreck of Richard, &c.....	99
LVI.—Interdict and excommunication.—Richard returns to England.....	101
LVII.—Death of Richard the Lion-hearted.....	103
LVIII.—John, surnamed Lackland.....	104
LIX.—John quarrels with the pope.—About the Jews.....	106
LX.—Magna Charta signed.—The French invade England.—Death of John.....	108
LXI.—Henry III.—Coats of arms, or Armorial Bearings.....	111
LXII.—Disturbed state of England.—Of benevolences.....	112
LXIII.—The king and pope vs. the churchmen.....	113
LXIV.—Simon de Montfort.—The Mad Parliament.....	115
LXV.—Prince Edward.—Battle of Lewes.—The "Mise" of Lewes.....	116
LXVI.—A change in the constitution of Parliament.—Prince Edward escapes from imprisonment.—The barons subdued.....	117
LXVII.—Prince Edward goes on a crusade.—Death of Henry III.—About painting and illuminated manuscripts.....	119
LXVIII.—Architecture.—Trade and the merchants of England.....	121
LXIX.—State of learning.—Friar Bacon.—Judicial Astrology.—Trials by combat.....	122
LXX.—Edward I.—Tournaments.—Battle of Chalons.....	124
LXXI.—More about Edward.—Conquest of Wales.—Massacre of the Welsh Bards.....	125
LXXII.—The Maid of Norway.—Edward interferred in the affairs of Scotland.....	128
LXXIII.—Wallace.—Edward's vow.—Death of Edward.....	130
LXXIV.—Edward II.—Battle of Bannockburn, &c.....	131
LXXV.—Famines.—Agriculture.—Customs of the time.....	133
LXXVI.—Edward II. received Hugh Spencer into favor.—He is deposed and cruelly murdered by Isabella and Roger Mortimer.....	134
LXXVII.—Edward III.—War with Scotland, &c.—Peace with Scotland.....	136
LXXVIII.—Edward III.—A major war on Scotland.—Claims the crown of France.....	138
LXXIX.—Edward III.—makes war upon Philip, King of France.—Cannon used.....	140
LXXX.—Battle of Crassey.—Death of the King of Bohemia.—Siege of Calais.— Story of Eustace de St. Pierre.....	142
LXXXI.—The Knights of the Garter.—The Charter House School.....	144
LXXXII.—Dress in the reign of Edward III.....	146
LXXXIII.—Battle of Poictiers.—King John of France taken prisoner.—Generous conduct of the Black Prince.....	147
LXXXIV.—Honorable conduct of John, King of France.—Death of Edward III.— The English language adopted, &c.....	147
LXXXV.—Richard II. succeeds to the throne.—Insurrection under Wat Tyler and Jack Straw.—The Templars and the temple.....	152
LXXXVI.—The insurrection quelled.....	154
LXXXVII.—Character of Richard II.—Chaucer and Robert Langland.....	156
LXXXVIII.—Anecdote illustrating the manners of the times.....	157
LXXXIX.—The king resigns his power to a regency.—Death of the Duke of Gloucester.....	159
XC.—Trial by combat, between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk, &c. to resign the crown.—Death of Richard.....	160
XCI.—Henry of Lancaster returns to England and compels Richard II. to resign the crown.....	162
XCII.—Account of John Wycliffe.....	163
XCIII.—Henry IV. keeps the throne.—Owen Glendower.....	165
XCIV.—Several rebellions against Henry IV., &c.....	167
XCV.—Henry seizes the young Prince of Scotland.—Character of James I. of Scotland.....	168
XCVI.—Anecdotes of Prince Henry.—Death of Henry IV.....	169
XCVII.—Prince Henry and the Lollard.—Dress of the ladies.....	171
XCVIII.—Henry V.—Persecution of the Lollards.—Lord Cobham.....	172
XCIX.—Henry V. invades France, &c.....	173
C.—Henry again invades France, &c.—His death.....	176
CI.—Domestic habits of the English in the Fifteenth Century.....	178
CII.—Domestic habits, continued.—State of learning.—Whittington Lord Mayor.....	179
CIII.—Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans.....	181
CIV.—Henry VI., &c.—Murder of the Duke of Gloucester.....	184

CHAPTER	PAGE
CV.—The Duke of York forms a design to claim the crown.—Insurrection of Jack Cade.....	186
CVI.—Battle of St. Albans.—The Duke of York claims the crown.—Warwick, the king-maker.....	188
CVIL.—Continuation of the war between the Two Roses.—Death of the Duke of York.—His son proclaimed king by the title of Edward IV.....	189
CVIII.—Edward IV.—The civil war continues.....	192
CLX.—Marriage of King Edward IV.—Battle of Barnet.—Death of Warwick, &c.....	195
CX.—Edward IV. is outwitted by Louis of France.....	198
CXI.—Invention of the art of printing.....	200
CXII.—Richard, Duke of Gloucester, seizes upon the young king, Edward V.....	202
CXIII.—Richard III. usurps the crown, &c.....	203
CXIV.—A plot for placing Henry Tudor on the throne.....	207
CXV.—Battle of Bosworth-field.—Death of Richard III.....	208
CXVI.—Amusements.—Christmas.—Dress.....	210
CXVII.—End of the line of Plantagenet, &c.—Rise of the commons.....	213
CXVIII.—Henry VII.—Lambert Simnel.—Death of Lord Lovel.....	215
CXIX.—A new impostor.—Adventures of Perkin Warbeck.....	217
CXX.—Conclusion of the story of Perkin Warbeck, &c.....	218
CXXI.—Architecture of Henry VII.'s time.—Discoveries.....	220
CXXII.—Death of Henry VII.—The Star Chamber.....	223
CXXIII.—Henry VIII.—Rise of Wolsey.....	224
CXXIV.—More about Cardinal Wolsey.....	227
CXXV.—Henry invades France.—Battle of the Spurs.—Battle of Flodden Field.—Charles V. visits England.....	228
CXXVI.—Henry VIII. and Anne Boleyn.—Thomas Cromwell.—Disgrace and death of Wolsey.....	230
CXXVII.—Henry VIII. marries Anne Boleyn.—Sir Thomas More.—Death of Anne Boleyn.....	233
CXXVIII.—Thomas Cromwell.—The king's marriage.....	236
CXXIX.—Henry VIII. very zealous against heretics.....	237
CXXX.—The Bible translated into English.—Ignorance of the people.....	238
CXXXI.—War between England and Scotland.—Death of Henry VIII.....	240
CXXXII.—Anecdotes of Henry VIII., &c.....	242
CXXXIII.—The Duke of Somerset appointed Protector.—Religious matters.....	244
CXXXIV.—Edward and Mary, &c.—Dudley.....	246
CXXXV.—Suppression of the religious houses.—Warwick rules the country.....	247
CXXXVI.—The religious houses.—Fashions of dress, &c.....	248
CXXXVII.—Lady Jane Grey, &c.....	250
CXXXVIII.—The manners of Queen Mary's time.—The houses of the nobles.—Some particulars of the mode of house-keeping.....	253
CXXXIX.—Manners of the English.—Commerce.....	255
CXL.—Queen Mary, &c.—Execution of Lady Jane Grey.....	257
CXLI.—Persecution of the Protestants.....	260
CXLII.—War with France.—Battle of St. Quentin.—The English lose Calais.—Death of Mary.....	262
CXLIII.—Elizabeth proclaimed queen.—The Reformed faith restored.—Prosperous state of the kingdom.....	263
CXLIV.—Elizabeth's court.—Robert Dudley.....	265
CXLV.—Elizabeth's costume.—The Queen of Scots.....	266
CXLVI.—Continuation of the Story of Mary.....	268
CXLVII.—Continuation of the Story of Mary.....	269
CXLVIII.—Elizabeth detains Mary as a prisoner, &c.....	271
CXLIX.—A new plot in favor of Mary is detected.—Mary is put to death.....	273
CL.—The Invincible Armada.—Elizabeth and her subjects.....	275
CLI.—Sir Walter Raleigh.—Virginia settled.—The Earl of Essex.....	277
CLII.—Dress in the time of Elizabeth.....	279
CLIII.—Queen Elizabeth's progresses, &c.....	280
CLIV.—Death of Lord Burleigh.—Lord Essex and Elizabeth.....	282
CLV.—Execution of Essex.—Death of Elizabeth.....	283
CLVI.—Character and anecdotes of Elizabeth.—Spenser.....	285
CLVII.—James I. and his court.—Sir Walter Raleigh introduces tobacco and potatoes.....	286
CLVIII.—Conspiracy to place Arabella Stuart on the throne.—Sir Walter Raleigh.....	288
CLIX.—The Gunpowder Plot.....	290
CLX.—Prince Henry.—Condition of the people, &c.....	293
CLXI.—Anecdotes of James I.—The Bible translated.—Coaches introduced.....	295
CLXII.—The Earl of Somerset and Duke of Buckingham.—Death of James I....	296

CHAPTER	PAGE
CLXXXIII.—Lord Bacon.—Lord Napier.—Sir Edward Coke.—The Puritans.	298
CLXXXIV.—Charles I.—Murder of the Duke of Buckingham.	306
CLXXXV.—Wentworth, Earl of Strafford.—The Scotch covenanters.	308
CLXXXVI.—Distress of the king.—Death of Strafford.	306
CLXXXVII.—Dress of the cavaliers and puritans.—Costume of the ladies, &c.	304
CLXXXVIII.—Hampden.—Pym.—Sir Henry Vane.—Commencement of hostilities. Battle of Edgehill, and of Marston Moor, &c.	308
CLXXXIX.—Oliver Cromwell.	311
CLXXX.—The Battle of Naseby, &c.	313
CLXXXI.—Cromwell discovers the insincerity of the king.—The latter attempts to escape, but is detained in the Isle of Wight.	316
CLXXXII.—Charles I. tried for high treason.—His execution.	318
CLXXXIII.—Anecdotes of Charles I., &c.—The sect of Quakers rises.	322
CLXXXIV.—England a Commonwealth, &c.	324
CLXXXV.—Adventures of Charles after the battle of Worcester.	326
CLXXXVI.—Success of the English in a war with Holland.—Cromwell makes himself ruler.	328
CLXXXVII.—Cromwell made protector, &c.	331
CLXXXVIII.—Richard Cromwell proclaimed protector, &c.—Charles II. proclaimed king.	334
CLXXXIX.—Milton.—Andrew Marvell.—Algernon Sydney.—James Harrington.	337
CLXXX.—Character of Charles II., &c.	339
CLXXXI.—Great plague in London, followed by a great fire.—Great improvements in London.—Sir Matthew Hale and Sir Christopher Wren.	341
CLXXXII.—Charles sacrifices the Earl of Clarendon.—The king a pensioner of France, &c.	344
CLXXXIII.—The terms Whig and Tory.—Death of Russell and Sydney.—Death of Charles II.	347
CLXXXIV.—Poets and Philosophers of the time of Charles II.	349
CLXXXV.—James II.—Maria d'Este.—General Dalziell, &c.	351
CLXXXVI.—James II. seeks to restore popery.—Cruelties practised by Jeffreys and Kirk.—Rash conduct of James.—James flies to France.	353
CLXXXVII.—The Revolution of 1688.—William and Mary called to the throne.	356
CLXXXVIII.—The Highlanders refuse to acknowledge William and Mary.—Massacre of Glencoe.—Death of James II.	358
CLXXXIX.—Peace of Ryswick.—Death of Mary; of William.	360
CXC.—Style of living and manners.—Arms and dress of the soldiers.	362
CXCI.—Queen Anne.—The Duke of Marlborough.—Battle of Blenheim.	364
CXCII.—Gibraltar taken from the Spaniards.—Sir Clowdesley Shovel.—Robinson Crusoe.	366
CXCIII.—Marlborough's victorious Career.—Peace of Utrecht.—Death of Anne.—Union between Scotland and England.	368
CXCIV.—Great men of Queen Anne's time.—Newton.—Locke.—Clarke.—Pope.—Addison.—Swift.—Watts.	370
CXCV.—George I.—Rebellion in Scotland.	372
CXCVI.—Of the rising in England.—The South-Sea scheme.—Death of George I.	374
CXCVII.—George II.—Queen Caroline.—War on the Continent.—Battle of Fontenoy.—Anson's voyage round the world.	377
CXCVIII.—The young Pretender lands in Scotland, and marches into England.—Is compelled to retreat.	379
CXCIX.—The Pretender is victorious at Falkirk, but defeated at Culloden.—Adventures of Prince Charles Edward.	381
CC.—The style of dress in George II.'s time.—Old style and new style.	384
CCI.—The Seven Years' War.—General Washington.—Capture of Quebec, and death of Wolfe.—Death of George II.—Sir Robert Walpole.	387
CCII.—George III.—Political contests.—John Wilkes.—Passage of the Stamp Act.	389
CCIII.—Death of the Earl of Chatham.—Mobs in London.—British generosity.—Peace of Versailles.	391
CCIV.—The writers and poets of the reign of George II.	394
CCV.—Attempts to murder the king.—The younger Pitt.—Duties of the king's ministers.	397
CCVI.—The French Revolution breaks out.—War between France and England.	400
CCVII.—Gloomy state of affairs in 1797.—The Bank of England suspends payment.	406
CCVIII.—Bonaparte returns to France.—He leads his army over the Alps, and defeats the Austrians in Italy.—Expedition against Copenhagen under Lord Nelson.	404

CHAPTER	PAGE
CCLX.—Peace of Amiens.—Hostilities renewed between France and England.—Battle of Trafalgar.—Death of Lord Nelson.—Condition of Europe in 1808.....	406
CCX.—Sir Arthur Wellesley sent into Spain.—Death of Sir John Moore.—The Walcheren expedition.—The Cabinet, &c.....	407
CCXL.—War with the United States.—War in the peninsula, where Lord Wellington commands the British.—Expedition of Napoleon into Russia.—Napoleon sent to Elba.—Returns to France and recovers his power there.—Battle of Waterloo, &c.....	409
CCXII.—The national debt.—Hargraves and Arkwright.—Watt and the steam engine.....	413
CCXIII.—Lord Exmouth's expedition to Algiers.—The African slave trade.—John Howard.....	415
CCXIV.—Death of George III.—The authors who flourished in the latter part of his reign.....	416
CCXV.—George IV.—His character and habits, &c.....	421
CCXVI.—The queen returns to England.—The king refuses to acknowledge her as queen.....	424
CCXVII.—Coronation of George IV.—Death of the queen.....	426
CCXVIII.—The king visits Ireland and Scotland.—A Highlander's dress.....	428
CCXIX.—A year of projects.—The coinage of England.....	429
CCXX.—The coinage of England, continued.....	431
CCXXI.—The Princess Charlotte marries Leopold of Saxe-Coburg.—Her death.—Lord Liverpool.—Catholic Emancipation and Reform.....	433
CCXXII.—Reform in the House of Commons.—History of that body.....	435
CCXXIII.—Great change in the habits of George IV.—His death.—Improvement in London, &c.....	437
CCXXIV.—William IV.—The Reform Bill.—Great riots.—The cholera.....	439
CCXXV.—Reform in the House of Commons.—Death of William IV.—Accession of Victoria.—Her marriage.—Recent important events.—Character of the English.....	441
CCXXVI.—The Crimean War.—English view of the civil war in America.—Marriage of the Prince of Wales.....	444
CCXXVII.—The Atlantic Cable.—Expedition against Abyssinia.—Disendowment of the Irish Church.—The Alabama affair.—The Fisheries.—Conclusion	446





# HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

## CHAPTER I.

### *Introduction.*



S a source of useful and interesting knowledge, the history of England surpasses that of all other countries. A detailed account of the various steps by which a nation has risen from the savage state to an unexampled pitch of wealth, power, and civilization, cannot fail to be alike instructive and amusing to the general reader.

2. But to us the history of England is the history of our fatherland, the history of our ancestors, and of most of the institutions which belong to society in the United States. In government, religion, manners, customs, feelings, opinions, language, and descent, we are wholly or partially English. We cannot, therefore, understand ourselves, or our institutions, but by a careful perusal of English history.

3. To the philosopher, this subject is one of the most profound interest. When Great Britain first appears in the page of history, it is on the outskirts of the known world; remote from the great centre of science and civilization, and inhabited by a people of the most savage character. It is a dark and gloomy spot upon the face

---

CHAP. I.—1. Why does the history of England surpass all others in interest and instruction? 2. Why is the history particularly interesting to Americans? 3. Why is

of the globe, its inhabitants presenting an aspect as revolting as that of its cold and foggy climate.

4. At the present day, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland exhibits the most extraordinary spectacle of national glory which the world has ever witnessed. Rome, in her brightest days, could not compare with it, in point of wealth, power, and civilization.

5. To the eye of the traveller, the three kingdoms seem almost like a mighty garden, strown over with cities, palaces, villages, and country-seats. Here are the finest roads, and the best travelling vehicles in the world; railroads and canals cross the country in every direction; arts and manufactures are carried to the highest degree of perfection; and commerce brings hither the luxuries of every clime.

6. London, the metropolis of Great Britain, serves to indicate the character of the nation. It has more than 3,000,000 of people, and surpasses any other city in wealth and population. The government of England exercises a commanding influence, not only in the countries of Europe, but upon the fortunes of the world. Within our own day, China, which has more than one-quarter of the inhabitants of the globe, has been compelled to bow to the will of this Island Empire.

7. The colonies of Great Britain extend over the whole globe, and contain a population of one hundred and sixty millions. In allusion to the immense extent and power of the British Empire, it has been spoken of by a celebrated orator, as a kingdom that "has dotted the surface of the globe with her possessions and military posts, whose morning drum-beat, following the sun, and keeping company with the hours, circles the earth daily with one continuous and unbroken strain of the martial airs of England." It is the history of this great people, which we are now about to consider.

---

this history interesting to the philosopher? 4. What of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland at the present day? 5. What do the three kingdoms present to the eye of the traveller? What of trade, &c.? 6. What of London? Population of Great Britain? The government? China? 7. The colonies of Great Britain? What has a celebrated orator said?



LONDON.

## CHAPTER II.

*Earliest Glimpses of British History.—Cæsar.—Manners and Customs of the first Inhabitants of Britain.*



1. WE must now turn from this brief survey of the present condition of the British Empire, and go back to the earliest times of which history gives us any account.

2. Several hundred years before the Christian era, it appears that the Phœnicians visited England. Their chief object was to obtain tin, which was procured from the mines of Cornwall. Hence the *Casterides*, or Tin Isles, was the ancient designation of the British islands. Settlements are supposed to have been made by the Phœnicians in Ireland, and it is conjectured that considerable trade was carried on with the people there.

3. The original inhabitants of England, Ireland, and Scotland seem to have been of the same Celtic stock which first peopled France and Spain, though they were divided into numerous tribes. The Roman writers mention the names of more than forty in England.

4. Some of these were more savage than others. A few among the southern tribes practised agriculture in a rude fashion, and wore artificial cloths for dress. They had also war-chariots in great numbers, and were acquainted with some of the first arts of civilized

II.—1. What of the Phœnicians? 2. What name did they give the British Isles? 3. What of the original inhabitants of England, Ireland, and Scotland? 4. Manners

life. To the north, the people were mere savages—using the undressed hides of cattle for clothing, and tattooing their skins for ornament.

5. The women, like those of our present savages, were practised to basket-making, the material being the twigs of willows. They also sewed together the skins of animals for dress; their thread being made of leather or vegetable fibres, and their needles of pieces of bone.

6. Such was the condition of the people, when Julius Caesar, having completed the subjugation of Gaul, now called France, began to think of adding the island of Britain to his conquests. The white chalk cliffs of Dover, from which Britain had also the name of Albion, could be seen from the coast of Gaul, and as Caesar's ambition knew no bounds, he doubtless thought that this strange country invited him to its conquest.

7. Having made up his mind to undertake an expedition against it, he assembled the merchants who had traded to Britain for hides and tin, and made inquiry respecting the manners, customs, and power of the people of that island, and such other matters as would be interesting to him in his present situation.

8. The precise answer which the merchants gave to these questions is not recorded. Neither the people of Gaul nor of Britain could write, nor had they any books. Caesar himself, who was an author, as well as a soldier, has told us almost all that we know about them. It appears, however, that the reply of the merchants of whom he made inquiries, was substantially as follows:

9. "The people of Britain have blue eyes, and very fair complexions. They are tall and stout, and remarkable for their strength. Their bodies are often ornamented with figures of various animals. For this purpose they submit to a very painful operation. The figure is pricked upon the skin with sharp needles, and then a blue dye, made of a plant called woad, is rubbed in.

10. "Most of them wear no clothing except the skin of an animal which is thrown over the shoulders, and fastened at the breast by a thorn or a sharp-pointed stick. Many of them have flocks and herds, and live upon meat, or on such fruits and plants as the earth produces without cultivation.

11. "The principal drink is milk, but they have also a fermented liquor prepared from honey, and called *mead*, of which they are very fond. They live in winter in holes in the ground, and in summer in huts made of stakes stuck in the earth, interwoven with osiers, and covered with the boughs of trees.

12. "They are a very hospitable people. The stranger no sooner enters the door than water is presented to him to wash his feet. If he uses it, and at the same time gives his arms to the master of the house, it is understood that he means to pass the night. This creates joy throughout the family.

13. "A feast is prepared. The company sit in a circle upon the ground, with a little hay, grass, or the skins of animals, spread under them. Each person takes the meat set before him in his hands, and tears it to pieces with his teeth. If it proves too tough for this, he uses the knife which is placed in the centre for the common benefit. The meat is served up in dishes made of wood, or earthenware, or in baskets made of osiers.

14. "The feast is enlivened by the music of the harp. Sometimes the great men give feasts, and he is the most popular who gives the greatest. These last until all the provisions are consumed, frequently for several days. A great prince once gave an entertainment, which was kept up without interruption for a whole year, and to which all comers were welcome.

15. "But you Romans are more interested in knowing what are their weapons of war, and means of defence. They use a shield, and a dagger, and a short spear; to the lower end of the latter is fastened a bell, which they shake to frighten the horses of their enemies. In battle they make use of chariots with scythes fastened to the axle-trees; they are drawn by two horses, and driven furiously among their enemies, inflicting horrible wounds, whilst the warrior hurls his spears." Such was the information Cæsar obtained, and it gave a true account of the condition of the original inhabitants of Britain.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### *Invasion of Britain by the Romans.*

1. WE may suppose that Cæsar had little dread of meeting such a savage people as the Britons would seem to have been, with his well-disciplined troops. He probably learnt, too, that the people were divided into many small tribes, governed by independent rulers, who did not agree very well among themselves.

2. He embarked his troops at Calais, and in a few hours reached the coast of Britain, near Dover. Sailing to the north about eight miles, he determined to land near Deal. The Britons had heard of his coming, and were assembled to prevent his landing. Their painted bodies gave them a most terrific appearance, and their savage yells made even the Romans hesitate to attack them.

3. At last a standard-bearer jumped into the sea, and advanced with the eagle, which was the Roman standard, towards the enemy, crying aloud, "Follow me, soldiers, unless you will betray the Roman eagle into the hands of the enemy. I, at least, will discharge my duty to Cæsar and to my country."

---

Houses? 12. Hospitality? 13. The feast? 14. Music? Feasts given by great men? 15. Weapons of war?

III.—1. What of the government of Britain? 2. Where did Cæsar land? What of his troops? 3. What roused the spirit of the troops? 4. What success had Cæsar? &

4. Animated by this speech, and excited by his example, the soldiers plunged into the sea, and waded to the land, in spite of all the Britons could do. Cæsar remained about three weeks upon the island, during which he gained many battles. He then granted a peace to the Britons, upon condition that they should pay tribute to the Roman people.



THE ROMANS IN ENGLAND.

5. The Britons neglected to perform their engagements, and in the year 54, B.C., Cæsar again invaded the island. Landing, as before, at Deal, he advanced into the country. The Britons had now united their forces under one chief, named Cassivelaunus. Still they were defeated in every battle.

6. Having brought the people to submission, and compelled them to give him many of their chief men as hostages—that is, security for the performance of their engagements—Cæsar returned to Rome.

7. As no troops were left in Britain to maintain the authority of Rome, the Britons soon threw off all marks of subjection, and the tribute remained unpaid. The civil dissensions among the Romans themselves, long prevented their taking any measures to compel the payment.

8. An intercourse was, however, kept up with Rome. Many of the chief persons of Britain visited that city, and some of the young men were educated there. By this means the Britons began to improve in their manners and habits.

9. The mantle of skins was replaced by one of cloth, and close trowsers were introduced. They likewise adopted a vest, a tunic, fitting tight to the body and reaching just below the waist. Their

shoes were still made of the skin of some animal, with the hair outwards.

10. They also began to coin money. For some ages the trade of Britain had been carried on by barter or exchange. When metals were first used as money, their value was determined by weight. The seller having agreed to accept a certain quantity of gold or silver for his goods, the buyer cut off that quantity from the piece of that metal in his possession, and, having weighed it, delivered it to the seller, and received the goods.

11. The invasion of the Romans had made the Britons acquainted with the use of tools; and stout galleys took the place of the frail boats made of osiers and the flexible branches of trees, covered with skins of oxen, in which they had hitherto navigated the stormy seas around their islands.

---

#### CHAPTER IV.

*Caractacus.—The Druids.—London destroyed.—Boadicea defeated.*



CARACTACUS A PRISONER AT ROME.

1. AT length, in the year 43 after the birth of Christ, being 97 years from the first invasion by Caesar, the Romans determined to make another attempt to conquer Britain. An army of 50,000 men was collected and sent into the island, under the command of Aulus Plautius.

2. The Britons fought bravely for their liberty, but could not

withstand the Roman discipline. Their principal chief, named Caractacus, and his family, were taken prisoners. They were all sent to Rome, and the king, his wife, and his two daughters, were made to walk through the streets loaded with chains.

3. Observing the splendor of the great city, Caractacus could not forbear exclaiming, "Alas! how is it possible that people possessed of such magnificence at home, should envy me my humble cottage in Britain?"

4. Notwithstanding their victories, the Romans made little progress in the conquest of the island. Suetonius Paulinus, one of their most skilful generals, resolved to adopt a new method. He observed that the Druids were the most inveterate enemies of the Romans, and that it was their influence which kept up the spirit of the people.



A DRUID ADDRESSING THE PEOPLE.

5. The Druids were the priests and law-givers of the Britons. The chiefs commanded the forces in time of war, but all other power was in the hands of the Druids. The laws of the Britons were composed in verse, and the only record of them was in the memory of the Druids. The old taught them to the young, and thus the knowledge of them was kept up from one generation to another.

6. So great was the veneration in which they were held, that when two hostile armies, with daggers drawn, and spears extended, were about to engage in battle, the request of the Druids was sufficient to calm their rage, and to induce them to sheath their daggers, and separate in peace.

7. The Druids believed that it was displeasing to the Deity to worship within walls, or under roofs. They worshipped, therefore,

in the open air in groves of particular trees. The favorite was the strong and spreading oak, and in all their ceremonies they were crowned with garlands of its leaves.

8. In the centre of the grove was a space enclosed with one or two rows of large stones set upright in the ground. In the centre stood the altar upon which sacrifices were offered. When they wished to erect a temple of particular magnificence, they laid stones of prodigious weight on the tops of the upright pillars, thus forming a kind of circle in the air, which added much to the grandeur. Some of these temples yet remain; the most perfect is at Stonehenge.

9. The office of Druid was held by women as well as by men; the former took part in all the public ceremonies; to them was assigned the horrible duty of plunging the knife into the breast of the victim prepared for the sacrifice. The victims were not sheep and oxen alone, but the prisoners taken in war were considered as a most acceptable offering.

10. The principal residence of the Druids was in the little island of Anglesea. Suetonius resolved to make himself master of this stronghold. The Britons endeavored to prevent the landing of his troops. The women and priests mingled with the soldiers on the shore, and running about with burning torches in their hands, and tossing their long hair, they terrified the astonished Romans more by their shrieks and howlings, than by the appearance of the armed forces.

11. But the Romans soon recovered their spirits, and, marching boldly forward, speedily put an end to all resistance. Meanwhile the Britons took advantage of the absence of Suetonius. Headed by Boadicea, a brave queen, they attacked and destroyed the Roman settlements. There were many of these which were quite flourishing. London, which at the first invasion was a forest, had now become a rich and populous city.

12. Suetonius was obliged to abandon this place to the fury of the Britons. It was entirely destroyed, and more than 70,000 Romans and other strangers were put to death. But he soon had a most cruel revenge; with his little army of 10,000 men, he attacked the Britons, and left 80,000 of them dead upon the field of battle. Boadicea, in despair at this defeat, poisoned herself.

---

## CHAPTER V.

*Agricola.—The Scots and Picts.—The Roman Wall.—Christianity introduced.*

1. THE Romans now easily established themselves all over Britain, and built towns and castles, and were entire masters of the country

---

9. Were the Druids always men? What part did the women take in the ceremonies? 10. Where did they principally reside? What did Suetonius do? How did the inhabitants of the island act? 11. What was the result? What did the Britons do in the absence of the Romans? What of London? 12. What revenge did Suetonius have?

Julius Agricola, one of their generals, was a very good, as well as a brave man. He took great pains to reconcile the Britons to the Roman government, by introducing their arts and sciences. He encouraged them to engage in agriculture, which the Romans considered the most honorable employment. He also persuaded them to learn the Latin language.

2. He succeeded so well in his endeavors, that the Britons soon came to esteem it a privilege to be a part of the Roman empire. Indeed, they derived other advantages besides the increase of comfort which a knowledge of the Roman arts had brought them.

3. The northern part of the island, called Caledonia, and now Scotland, was inhabited by the Scots and Picts, a wild and warlike people, who made incursions into the country of Britain, and after destroying everything that came in their way, retired into their bleak and barren mountains.

4. Whenever they ventured to stand a battle in the open field, they were defeated by the Romans; but they seldom did this. They generally retired as the Roman troops advanced. As soon as the latter were withdrawn from their neighborhood, they again commenced their depredations.

5. Agricola caused a line of forts to be built across Scotland, thus shutting out the marauders. The country now enjoyed peace for many years, during which the Romans occupied themselves in making roads, many of which are still remaining; and in building strong and massive castles, the ruins of which are still to be seen.

6. But the forts did not prove a sufficient defence against the Picts and Scots, who renewed their incursions upon the more cultivated parts of the island. The Emperor Adrian, who visited Britain, caused a rampart of earth to be erected. This, however, proved too weak, and in the year 207 the Emperor Severus came to Britain, with a determination to conquer Caledonia.

7. The nature of the country, and the bravery of the people, prevented his succeeding; so he contented himself with building an immense stone wall, twelve feet high, and eight feet thick, quite across the country, from the river Tyne to the Solway Frith, many parts of which are still to be seen.

8. For a long time everything went on so quietly, that little mention is made of the affairs of this island by any historian. The people were governed by Roman officers, called *legates*, or *vicars*. Among the benefits which the conquerors bestowed on Britain, was the introduction of Christianity, which there is reason to believe had made considerable progress before the end of the first century.

---

V.—1. What of Julius Agricola? What did he do for the Britons? 2. What success had he? 3. What was the northern part of the island called? By whom inhabited? 4. What of the Scots and Picts? 5. What did Agricola do to restrain them? How did the Romans occupy themselves? 6. What new means were tried to keep off the Picts and Scots? What of the Emperor Severus? 8. What was the state of the island after Severus? What of Christianity?

## CHAPTER VI.

*The Romans abandon Britain.—Dreadful Sufferings of the Britons.*

1. ABOUT the year 448, the Romans were compelled to withdraw their troops from the distant provinces, and, among the rest, from Britain, to defend their city against the barbarous tribes of the north of Europe.

2. Before the Romans left the island, they repaired the wall built by Severus. But as walls are of very little use without brave and well-armed men to defend them, the Roman general instructed the Britons in the art of making and of using the several kinds of arms.

3. He then departed with his troops, telling the people that, as they would never again have assistance from the Romans, they had better learn to take care of themselves. Thus the Romans quitted the island, after having had possession of it nearly 500 years, if we reckon from the first invasion of Julius Caesar.

4. Liberty proved anything but a blessing to the Britons. They were as helpless as so many children turned loose upon the world. They had so long been accustomed to rely upon the Romans for defence as well as for government, that they knew not how to set about either.

5. The Picts and the Scots, learning that the island was deserted by the Romans, approached the wall of Severus. They found it in complete repair, and apparently well defended by armed Britons. But these had profited little by the instructions of their late masters, and they fled at the first attack.

6. The savage invaders now ravaged the whole country. They were like wolves let into a sheep-fold. The wretched Britons fled from their comfortable houses, and sought a refuge in the forests and mountains. Afraid to venture forth to cultivate their fields, they suffered all the horrors of famine.

7. The land being now barren, and nothing to be gained, the Picts and Scots ceased from their incursions for several years. The Britons who had survived the calamities of their country, once more began ploughing and sowing, and the next year there was an abundant harvest. No sooner did the rapacious Scots hear of it, than they all came rushing into Britain.

8. The Britons, for a third time, sent to the Romans to come and help them, and despatched a letter to Aetius, the governor of Gaul: “*To Aetius, thrice Consul. The groans of the Britons.*” The barbarians drive us to the sea; the sea throws us back on the swords of the barbarians: so we have nothing left but the wretched choice

---

VI.—1. When did the Romans withdraw from Britain? 2. What did they do for the defence of the Britons? 3. How long had they possessed the island? 4. What of the Britons? 5. The Scots and Picts? 6. How did they treat the Britons? 7. What caused them to suspend their incursions? Why did they renew them? 8. What did the Britons do?

of being either drowned or butchered." This melancholy letter did no good, but they received assistance from another quarter, as you shall presently hear.

## CHAPTER VII.

*Account of the Saxons.*

THE DEATH OF HORSA.

1. At the time of which we are now speaking, the shores of the Baltic Sea were inhabited by several tribes of people, nearly in a savage state. In France, and in those parts of the continent of Europe which had been subject to Rome, they were called by the common name of *Men of the North*, or *Normans*; amongst themselves they were distinguished by various names, such as *Saxons*, *Danes*, and many others.

2. These people were the terror of all the more civilized countries. Launching their light boats, which were made of osiers, covered with skins sewed together, they suffered the wind to blow them to any foreign coast. Landing there, they spread devastation over a wide extent of country, and then returned home laden with booty.

3. It so happened that, in the year 448, during one of their piratical expeditions, a party of about 300 Saxons, under two leaders named Hengist and Horsa, landed in Britain, just at the time when the people were suffering from the ravages of the Scots.

4. Vortigern, a prince of the Britons, advised his countrymen to

VII.—1. Who were the Normans? 2. What is said of their expeditions? 3. When did Hengist and Horsa land in Britain? 4. How did the Britons receive them? 5. What

entreat aid from these strangers. This was readily granted. Joining their forces, the Britons and Saxons marched against the Scots, who were defeated and driven back.

5. The Saxons, seeing the agreeable nature of the country, began to covet the possession of it for themselves. Sending for more of their countrymen, they fell upon the unfortunate Britons, and defeated them in many battles, in one of which Horsa was killed.

6. Hengist, now become sole commander of the Saxons, took the title of King of Kent. New swarms of Saxons kept pouring in, and by degrees got possession of almost the whole country south of Adrian's wall. Each of the chiefs took possession of what he conquered, and thus at last arose seven different kingdoms, which are commonly called the *Saxon Heptarchy*.

7. These seven kingdoms were as follows:—

*Kent*—contained the present counties of Kent, and part of Sussex.

*South Saxony*, or *Sussex*—the present county of Surrey, and part of Sussex.

*West Saxony*, or *Wessex*—included the coast from Sussex to Land's End.

*East Saxony*, or *Essex*.

*East Anglia*—so called from a district of Germany, whence a portion of the conquering Saxons came, included Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridgeshire.

*Mercia*—the midland part of the island.

*Northumberland*—from Mercia to the borders of Scotland.

8. The Britons did not yield without a struggle. Sometimes they were cheered by a momentary success. The most celebrated of their chiefs was the renowned King Arthur, who defeated the Saxons in twelve battles.

9. He used to give great feasts to his brave companions. That there might be no disputes about the seats, he had a round table made, so that all might be equally honorable. King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table have been great favorites with story-tellers.

10. But all opposition proved vain. A large number of the Britons were slaughtered by the Saxons. A portion of them crossed over to France, where they settled in the northwestern corner of that country, which has since, from them, been called Brittany. The remainder took refuge in the mountains of Wales and Cornwall. The present inhabitants of these districts are the descendants of the ancient Britons, and still retain vestiges of their language.

did the Saxons do? 6. What was the Heptarchy? 7. Describe the seven kingdoms. 8, 9. What is said of King Arthur? 10. What became of the Britons?

## CHAPTER VIII.

*The Language and Religion of the Anglo-Saxons.—Origin of the Names of the Days of the Week.—Curious Circumstance which led to the Introduction of Christianity.*

1. THE people who had now possessed themselves of Britain are called in history *Anglo-Saxons*. So completely was the country subdued, that no customs, truly British or Roman, were now to be seen; the language, which had been either Celtic or Latin, was discontinued, and the Saxon or English only was spoken.

2. The Christian religion also disappeared, for the Saxons were pagans, and worshipped a great number of gods. From the chief of them the days of the week receive their names. Worshipping the Sun, they called the first day Sunday. The second was named Monday, from the Moon. Another god they called Tuisco, or Tiw, and to him they assigned the third day.

3. The next idol which they adored for a god was Woden; he had been a famous and victorious prince among them, and after his death they worshipped him as the God of Battle. The fourth day was named for him Woden's day, or Wednesday. Not only the Saxons, but all the northern nations worshipped Thor, whose name was given to the fifth day, Thursday.

4. Friday received its name from Friga, who was the same with the Earth, and was esteemed the mother of all the deities. They had another god named Saterne, and to him they consecrated the last day of the week, and called it Saterne's day, or Saturday.

5. But the Anglo-Saxons did not long remain pagans. For the early introduction of Christianity they were indebted to a circumstance, which furnishes a striking instance that a seeming evil often proves the source of the most lasting good.

6. Slavery, in its worst form, existed among the Anglo-Saxons. With most savage nations, prisoners taken in war are either slain or made slaves of. But few people are so debased as were these conquerors of Britain. To gratify some temporary appetite, individuals would sell themselves into bondage, and parents were known to sell their own children.

7. It happened one day, when Pope Gregory I. was walking in the streets of Rome, that he saw some very beautiful children exposed for sale. Asking from whence they came, he was told from England, on which he said they would not be *Angli*, but *Angeli*, if they were but Christians. *Angli* is the Latin word for *English*, and *Angeli*, that for *Angels*.

8. Gregory resolved to attempt this change; so he ordered St. Austin or Augustine, with forty other Roman monks, to go into

---

VIII.—1. What were the conquerors of Britain called? What is said of the language? 2. What of the religion of the Saxons? 3, 4. From whom are the days of the week named? 6. What bad custom existed among the Saxons? 7. What attracted

Britain and preach the Gospel. When these missionaries reached France, the people of which had already been converted to Christianity, they heard such dreadful stories of the savage manners of the Anglo-Saxons, that they were afraid to go on, and sent back Augustine to ask the pope's permission to give up the enterprise.

9. But Gregory exhorted them to persevere, and advised them to take some of the French people, then called Franks, as interpreters, for their language was nearly the same as that of the Anglo-Saxons. Augustine proceeded and found the danger much less than he had imagined.

10. Ethelbert, King of Kent, was already well disposed towards the Christian faith, for his wife Bertha was a daughter of Caribert, one of the kings of France. He therefore received the missionaries with kindness. Having heard what they had to say, he told them that he could not without consideration abandon the religion of his ancestors; but as they had come so far on a friendly errand, they might remain in peace, and use their best endeavors to convert his subjects.

11. The monks at once entered on their labors, which were crowned with such success, that in a very short time the king and a great number of his subjects were converted. Augustine baptized no fewer than ten thousand on Christmas day, 597, and was soon after made Archbishop of Canterbury.

## CHAPTER IX.

### *The Anglo-Saxons.—Their Historians.—The Condition of the People.*

1. In the course of time the manners of the Anglo-Saxons lost somewhat of their fierceness, and their customs and institutions became more civilized. Our knowledge of them is very imperfect. None but the clergy made any pretensions to learning. Few of these could do more than read their prayer-books and write their names.

2. There were many even among the high clergy who could not do this. There are deeds still extant, made by lord bishops, which are signed by some other persons in their names, because the lord bishops could not write their own names.

3. The earliest historian is Gildas, who lived in the sixth century. He was so much admired by his countrymen, as to be called by them *Gildas the Wise*. In the seventh century there was another learned monk, named Bede, or, as he is generally called, the *Venerable Bede*. He was never higher in rank than a simple monk, yet, on

the notice of Gregory to Britain? 8. Whom did he send to convert it? 9. What did the monks do? 10. Who received the missionaries kindly? 11. What was their success?

IX.—1. What is said of the manners of the Anglo-Saxons? What of the state of learning? 3. What is said of Gildas? 4. What of the government of the Anglo-Saxons?

account of his writings, his fame spread through all Europe. The pope courted his company, and his advice in the government of the church.

4. From these sources we are able to tell you that the Anglo-Saxons were governed by a king, whose power was very much controlled and limited by an assembly of the wise men of the nation, called the *Wittenagemot*. The nobility, the high clergy, and all freemen possessing a certain portion of land, were, of right, members of this assembly.

5. The Anglo-Saxons were divided into three orders of men—the nobles, the freemen, and the slaves. The nobles formed a very large class. They were called *Thanes*. The freemen were called *Ceorls*, and were principally engaged in husbandry, whence a *husbandman* and a *ceorl* came to be synonymous terms.

6. A ceorl could raise himself to the rank of thane, in various ways. Success in agriculture might furnish him with the means of procuring the requisite quantity of land, with buildings proper to the dignity. If a ceorl acquired learning enough and became a priest, he was esteemed a thane. Success in trade, or in war, raised him to the same rank. Agriculture, commerce, arms, and the church, were considered the only professions for a freeman.

7. The slaves were by far the most numerous class. They were of two kinds, namely, *household slaves*, who lived in the family, and performed the ordinary duties of domestic servants, and *rustic slaves*, who were attached to particular estates, and were transferred with the soil.

8. These last were called *villani*, or *villains*, because they dwelt in the villages belonging to their masters, and performed all the servile labors required upon the land. The clergy made great efforts to improve the condition of the slaves, and to secure the rights which their influence had procured for them. Notwithstanding this, the greater part of the common people remained in abject slavery during the time the Saxons governed the country.

## CHAPTER X.

### *The Laws of the Anglo-Saxons.—Modes of Trial.—The Ordeal.*

1. UNDER the Romans, Britain was divided into colonies and governments. By the Saxons the country was parcelled out into counties, or, as they called them, *shires*, which means *divisions*. The government of a shire was entrusted to an *earl* or *earldorman*, whence the present terms *earl* and *alderman*. The earl generally exercised this government by his deputy, called the *shire-reeve*, or *sheriff*—that is, guardian of a shire.

5. How were they divided? 6. By what means could a man rise in rank? 7. What is said of the slaves? 8. Who were the villains? Why so called?

X.—1. How was Britain divided by the Romans? How by the Saxons? How was

Britain and preach the Gospel. When these missionaries reached France, the people of which had already been converted to Christianity, they heard such dreadful stories of the savage manners of the Anglo-Saxons, that they were afraid to go on, and sent back Augustine to ask the pope's permission to give up the enterprise.

9. But Gregory exhorted them to persevere, and advised them to take some of the French people, then called Franks, as interpreters, for their language was nearly the same as that of the Anglo-Saxons. Augustine proceeded and found the danger much less than he had imagined.

10. Ethelbert, King of Kent, was already well disposed towards the Christian faith, for his wife Bertha was a daughter of Caribert, one of the kings of France. He therefore received the missionaries with kindness. Having heard what they had to say, he told them that he could not without consideration abandon the religion of his ancestors; but as they had come so far on a friendly errand, they might remain in peace, and use their best endeavors to convert his subjects.

11. The monks at once entered on their labors, which were crowned with such success, that in a very short time the king and a great number of his subjects were converted. Augustine baptized no fewer than ten thousand on Christmas day, 597, and was soon after made Archbishop of Canterbury.

## CHAPTER IX.

### *The Anglo-Saxons.—Their Historians.—The Condition of the People.*

1. In the course of time the manners of the Anglo-Saxons lost somewhat of their fierceness, and their customs and institutions became more civilized. Our knowledge of them is very imperfect. None but the clergy made any pretensions to learning. Few of these could do more than read their prayer-books and write their names.

2. There were many even among the high clergy who could not do this. There are deeds still extant, made by lord bishops, which are signed by some other persons in their names, because the lord bishops could not write their own names.

3. The earliest historian is Gildas, who lived in the sixth century. He was so much admired by his countrymen, as to be called by them *Gildas the Wise*. In the seventh century there was another learned monk, named Bede, or, as he is generally called, the *Venerable Bede*. He was never higher in rank than a simple monk, yet, on

the notice of Gregory to Britain? 8. Whom did he send to convert it? 9. What did the monks do? 10. Who received the missionaries kindly? 11. What was their success?

IX.—1. What is said of the manners of the Anglo-Saxons? What of the state of learning? 3. What is said of Gildas? 4. What of the government of the Anglo-Saxons?

by his long beard. Last, and perhaps the most useful, was the king's feet-bearer. This was a young gentleman, whose duty it was to sit on the floor, and hold the king's feet in his bosom, while he sat at table, to keep them warm and comfortable.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

*The Kingdom of England established.—The Danes become troublesome.—Saxon Race of Kings from Egbert to Alfred.—Alfred the Great.*



ALFRED AND HIS MOTHER.

1. AFTER the Saxons had expelled the Britons, finding no other enemies to subdue, they began to quarrel among themselves. At last Egbert, King of Wessex, a prince of great natural abilities, who had spent some time at the court of Charlemagne, King of France, reduced all the other kingdoms to subjection, and in 827 was crowned king of Angle-land, or *England*, by which name this portion of the United Kingdom has from that time been called.

2. It was now nearly 400 years since the Saxons first came into Britain. They had begun to value the arts of peace, and hoped, under the government of one prince, to enjoy quiet. But they were disappointed. As they had robbed the more civilized Britons, so they themselves were subjected in their turn to the ravages of the

Danes, who yet retained the savage and piratical habits of their ancestors.

3. They began their irruptions into England during the reign of Egbert. In the reign of Ethelwolf, his son, they became more formidable. Landing from their little vessels, they scattered themselves over the face of the country in small parties, making spoil of everything that came in their way—goods, cattle, and people.

4. If opposed by a superior force, they retreated to their boats, and, sailing off, invaded some distant quarter, where they were not expected. All England was kept in continual alarm; nor durst the people of one part go to the assistance of another, lest their own families and possessions should be exposed to the fury of the ravagers.

5. The harassed state of the country did not hinder the king from making a pilgrimage to Rome, taking with him his youngest son, Alfred, not yet six years old. Ethelwolf was a weak and superstitious prince, and the clergy of England took advantage of the opportunity to obtain a grant of a tenth part, called a tithe, of the produce of land.

6. During the reigns of Ethelbald, Ethelbert, and Ethelred, sons of Ethelwolf, who in succession governed England, the Danes continued their piratical incursions. The last of these princes was killed in battle against them, in the year 871, and was succeeded by his youngest brother, Alfred, who was one of the best and greatest kings that ever reigned in England.

7. Alfred, like the young Saxons in general, was brought up in so much ignorance, that he was not even taught to read; but when he was about twelve years old, his mother one day showed him and his brothers a book of Saxon poetry, which was beautifully written and ornamented, and told them that she would give it to the one who should soonest learn to peruse it.

8. Alfred applied himself with so much ardor, that in a very short time he was able to read the poem to the queen, who gave it to him as his reward. From this time he took the greatest delight in study; but he had two great difficulties to struggle with; one was, that there were so few books to be had; and the other, that there were so few people among the Saxons who could teach him anything.

9. Notwithstanding all these obstacles, he soon became one of the most learned men of his time. Even when he was king, he always carried a book in the bosom of his robe, that whenever he had a spare moment he might be able to profit by it; and thus, without neglecting any of his duties, he acquired a very extensive knowledge.

10. His time was divided into three equal parts; one-third was devoted to religion and to study, another third to sleep and refreshment, and the other to the affairs of his kingdom. As there were no clocks or watches in use in England, Alfred contrived to measure time by the burning of candles.

---

troubled the Saxons? 3, 4. What is said of the irruptions of the Danes? 5. What did Ethelwolf do? What of his character? 6. Who succeeded him? When did Alfred begin to reign? 7, 8. What of Alfred's learning? 9. What instance of his regard for

11. These candles were painted in rings of different breadths and colors—so many colors as he had things to attend to—and thus he knew by the burning of these candles when he had been employed long enough about any one thing. But he found that when the wind blew upon his candles they burnt quicker; and so, to remedy the inconvenience, he invented lanterns to put them in.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

*More about Alfred.—His various Adventures.—He subdues the Danes.*



ALFRED RELIEVING THE PILGRIM.

1. ALFRED was twenty-two years old when he succeeded his brother Ethelred. During the first eight years of his reign, he suffered continual persecution from the Danes, who at one time obtained almost entire possession of the kingdom, and Alfred was obliged to conceal himself.

2. It was now very difficult for him to procure provisions, but he still retained his charitable disposition. One day, as he sat reading in

---

Improvement? 10. How was his time divided? How did he measure time? 11. Describe his candles.

XII.—1. What of the first years of the reign of Alfred? 2, 3. What story is related

his hut, whilst Elswitha, his wife, was employed in her domestic concerns, a poor pilgrim knocked at the door and begged they would give him something to eat.

3. The humane king called to Elswitha, and asked her to give the poor man part of what was in the house. The queen, having but a single loaf of bread, brought it to Alfred to show him how slender their store was. But he was not to be deterred from his charitable purpose, and cheerfully gave to the poor man one-half of the loaf.

4. The better to conceal himself, Alfred at one time assumed the disguise of a servant, and hired himself to a cow-herd. One day, when he was in the cottage trimming his bow and arrows, the old man's wife, who did not know that he was the king, told him to watch some cakes that were baking by the fire.



ALFRED AND THE NEAT-HERD'S WIFE.

5. Alfred, who had many other things to think of, forgot to turn them at the proper time, and they were all spoiled. The old woman was very angry with him, and told him he was a lazy fellow, who would eat the cakes, though he would not take the trouble to turn them.

6. At length an occurrence took place, which revived, in some degree, the spirit of the Saxons. A Saxon noble, being besieged in his castle by a renowned Danish general, made a sally upon the enemy, and put them to rout. The Danish general himself was killed, and the *Raven*, a consecrated standard in which the Danes placed great confidence, was taken.

7. Alfred was glad to see the valor of his people returning. Before summoning them to assemble in arms, he resolved to learn by

persona, observation the exact strength of the enemy, that he might judge of the probability of success.



ALFRED THE GREAT A HARPER.

8. Disguising himself as a harper, he entered the Danish camp. When Guthram, the general of the Danes, heard him play and sing, he was so much pleased with him, that he made him stay for some days in the camp, supposing him to be some poor minstrel.

9. Alfred made good use of his eyes all this time. He observed that the Danes, not supposing that the English could muster another army strong enough to attack them, were quite off their guard, and were dancing and singing, and thought of nothing but amusing themselves.

10. The king, having gained all the knowledge he wanted, slipped out of the camp, and throwing off all disguises, summoned his faithful subjects to meet him near Salwood Forest. The English, who had believed their beloved monarch to be dead, received the summons with great gladness, and joyfully resorted to the appointed place.

11. Alfred did not allow their ardor to cool, but led them against the enemy, who were completely defeated. Instead of killing, or making slaves of the prisoners, as was often done in that barbarous age, he permitted them, upon their becoming Christians, and promising to live honestly, to remain in England. They established themselves in East Anglia, and Northumberland; but they and their descendants proved very troublesome subjects.

---

ledge of the condition of the Danes? 9. What did he observe in the Danish camp? 10. What measure did he in consequence adopt? 11. What was his success? What did he do with his prisoners?

## CHAPTER XIII.

*About the Architecture of the Anglo-Saxons.*

1. AFTER the victory over Guthram, England enjoyed many years of peace and tranquillity. These were devoted by Alfred to repairing the mischief which had been done by the Danes. The churches and monasteries, as they contained the greatest riches, so they had been the first objects of attack and destruction.

2. To repair these might seem no very difficult matter, for most of them were built of wood, and covered with thatch. Stones were only used in building castles, and strong places of defence. When the Saxons came into Britain, they found a great many beautiful palaces, baths, churches, and other buildings of stone, which had been erected by the Romans.

3. Some of them were built with so much solidity that they would have remained to this day, if they had not been wilfully destroyed. This was done by the Saxons, who made it a rule to destroy every town or castle that they took, instead of preserving it for their own use.

4. They had been accustomed to live in wretched hovels, made of earth, or wood, and covered with straw, or the branches of trees; nor did they much improve their knowledge of architecture for 200 years after their arrival in Britain.

5. Towards the close of the seventh century, there lived two clergymen, Wilfrid, a famous bishop of York, and Benedict, founder of the monastery of Weremouth, who were great travellers. During their frequent visits to Rome, they had acquired some taste for architecture, and resolved to attempt an improvement of the taste of their Saxon countrymen.

6. "In the year 674," says Bede, "Benedict crossed the sea and brought with him a number of masons, in order to build the church of his monastery of stone, after the Roman manner, of which he was a great admirer. When the work was far advanced, he sent agents into France, to procure glass-makers, to glaze the windows of his church and monastery."

7. "These not only performed the work required of them, but taught the English the art of making glass for windows, lamps, drinking-vessels, and other uses." The ancient Britons, indeed, were acquainted with this art, but the Saxons had never before acquired it.

8. This stone building with glass windows was an object of great curiosity and admiration, but did not find many imitators. When Alfred resolved to rebuild his ruined churches and monasteries, and to adorn his cities with stone buildings, he was obliged to send to foreign countries for workmen.

---

XIII.—1. What had been the objects of Danish destruction? 2. What of the use of stone for building? 3. What of the Roman buildings? 4. What of the early architecture of the Saxons? 5. Who introduced the use of stone? 6, 7. What other art was

9. But even now the use of stone did not become general, and glass windows were only to be seen in churches. Long after Alfred's time, the Anglo-Saxon nobles gave their feasts, and spent their great revenues, in low and inconvenient wooden structures, into which the light was admitted through holes cut in the walls, and covered with lattice-work, or, in stormy weather, with cloth.

10. The Anglo-Saxon architecture seems to have been a rude imitation of the ancient Roman manner. The most admired churches were low and gloomy, their pillars plain and clumsy, the walls very thick, and the windows few and small, with semicircular arches at the top.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### *Of the Learning of the Anglo-Saxons.—The Clergy.*

1. WHEN the Romans invaded Britain, they instructed and improved those whom they subdued. But darkness and desolation marked the course of the fierce and illiterate Saxons.

2. As you may well suppose, Alfred was a liberal encourager of learning. He established many schools, and founded the University at Oxford. There had been a seminary at this place in more ancient times, but the ravages of war had ruined it.

3. There were many impediments to progress in learning in those days. Books were very scarce and dear, so that few but kings and rich monasteries could afford to buy them. Alfred gave a great estate in land for a single volume on geography.

4. Paper was not yet invented, and parchment enough could not be had for a great supply of books. Neither was printing invented till a long time afterward, so that all books had to be written, and but few people were acquainted with that art. There are a few Saxon manuscripts now remaining, and some of them are very beautifully written.

5. There was another difficulty in the way of acquiring knowledge. There were no signs or *characters* to express numbers, except the Roman letters, I, V, C, D, M. The study of arithmetic was pronounced by Aldhelm to be almost too difficult for the mind of man. It was made easier by the use of the figures 1, 2, 3, 4, &c., which were invented by the Arabians, and introduced into England about the year 1130.

6. This Aldhelm whom I have quoted was a learned Saxon bishop, who lived in the seventh century. Alfred declared him to be the best of Saxon poets. He had a fine voice, and great skill in music as well as poetry.

---

introduced? 8. How was the example followed? 9. What of the houses of the nobles? 10. What of Anglo-Saxon architecture? Describe the churches.

XIV.—1. What of the Saxon attention to learning? 2. What did Alfred do for learning? What university did he found? 3. What is said of books? 4. What of the Saxon manuscripts? 5. What other difficulty in the way of acquiring knowledge? By whom were the present figures invented? When introduced into England? 6. What

7. Observing the dislike of his countrymen to listen to regular instruction, he composed a number of little poems, which he sang to them at church, in the place of delivering a long sermon. He did this in so sweet a manner, that they were gradually instructed and civilized.

8. What little learning there was, was confined to the clergy. The great body of these could do no more than read *the Missal*, as the Roman Catholic book of prayer is called. It is not uncommon to find in the ancient deeds a sentence like the following: "As my lord bishop could not write his own name, I have subscribed."

9. At first, the clergy lived in large houses called *monasteries*, and were a society by themselves. These were generally surrounded by beautiful gardens, in which the inmates might take exercise. Such as were competent occupied themselves in teaching the young. To each monastery was attached a church in which was regular preaching.

10. Besides these, there were no other churches in the kingdom, except the large ones at which the bishops attended, hence called *cathedrals*, of which there was one in each *diocese*, as the district is called of which a bishop has the care.

11. When the monasteries were destroyed by the Danes, the clergy took refuge in the villages. Churches were built for them to preach in, separate from monasteries. After a time many of these priests married, and lived among their parishioners, as clergymen do now. They became so much attached to their new homes, that when Alfred had rebuilt the monasteries, and wanted the old inhabitants to go back, many refused to return.

## CHAPTER XV.

*Alfred encourages the Arts.—About the English Navy.—Death of Alfred.—Reign of Edward the Elder.*

1. ALFRED also took great pains to improve his subjects in the useful and ingenious arts, and invited many skilful foreign workmen to instruct them. The English goldsmiths soon became very expert. We have evidence of their skill in a golden ornament of very beautiful workmanship, which was found at Athelney, and which is supposed to have been worn by Alfred.

2. Athelney was the place where he concealed himself in his distress, and where he sometimes resided in his prosperity. The ornament is beautifully engraved with various figures, and bears this inscription in Saxon characters: "Alfred commanded me to be made."

---

of Aldhelm? 7. What mode did he adopt to instruct the people? 8. Who possessed all the learning? What of their learning? 9. How did the clergy live at first? 10. What of the churches? What is a cathedral? What a diocese? 11. What change in their mode of life was caused by the Danes?

XV—1. What did Alfred do for the arts? What of the skill of the goldsmiths? What

3. But the workmen most highly regarded were the blacksmiths because they could make swords, and other instruments of war. Every soldier of rank was constantly attended by his smith, to keep his arms in order. The chief smith was an officer of great dignity at court. At table he sat next to the priest, and was entitled to a draught of every kind of liquor brought into the hall.



ALFRED THE GREAT.

4. Alfred was very desirous of creating a strong naval force, considering that to be the surest defence against the Danes. But he had great difficulties to struggle with. His subjects knew nothing of ship-building, so he was obliged to get foreign ship-builders.

5. In time his own subjects learned how to build ships, but there was a new difficulty—he had no sailors. These were also procured from other countries, and at last a considerable fleet was got together.

6. This fleet did not prove a very effectual defence, for the Danes coming in 330 vessels, under a famous leader named Hastings, succeeded in landing in Kent. A long contest ensued. At length the wife and children of Hastings were taken prisoners. Alfred gave them back on condition that all the Danes should leave the country.

7. The remainder of the reign of this truly great king was prosperous. He lived beloved by his subjects, feared by his enemies, and admired by all mankind. The English—and, as their descendants, we—are indebted to the wisdom of Alfred for many very useful laws, and valuable rights.

8. Amongst the rest, he instituted the right of trial by jury ; that is, the right of being tried and condemned by twelve of our equals, before we are punished for any offence, or deprived of any estate or privilege. Something like this had existed among the Saxons from the earliest times, but Alfred first reduced it to a regular system, and secured it by positive laws.

9. Alfred died in 901, in the forty-ninth year of his age. He was succeeded by his son Edward, surnamed *the Elder*, because he was the first king of that name in England. He was equal to his father as a warrior, but greatly inferior to him in science and literature. He had a sister named Ethelfleda, who was as fond of war as himself, and who assisted him in many enterprises. Edward died in 925.

## CHAPTER XVI.

*Adventure of Aulaff.—The Long Battle.—Character of Athelstan.—His Death.*

1. EDWARD was succeeded by his eldest son, Athelstan. We have neglected to tell you that all these Saxon names have a meaning. Some of them were undoubtedly given for some personal peculiarity.

2. Thus, *Egbert* means *bright eye*; and Alfred's wife's father was called *Muci*, that is, *large*. Caprice appears to have dictated the choice of others, for as they were bestowed by the parents in infancy, little could have been known of the qualities of the bearers. Thus, we have *Ethelred*, *noble in council*; *Edward*, *the prosperous guardian*; *Edwin*, *prosperous in battle*, &c. Athelstan means *the noble stone*.

3. The reign of Athelstan, like that of his father, was a continual conflict with the Danes. One of their generals, called Aulaff, tried the stratagem that had been practised with so much success by Alfred. He disguised himself like a minstrel, and went into Athelstan's camp.

4. The king was much pleased with his music, and, thinking he was a poor boy, gave him a piece of money. Aulaff was too proud to keep it, and when he got out of the king's tent, and thought nobody was in sight, he buried it in the ground.

5. It happened that a soldier saw him, and, thinking this very strange, examined the pretended minstrel's face, and knew him to be Prince Aulaff, but did not attempt to obstruct his departure. When the Danish prince had got to a safe distance, the soldier informed Athelstan of the discovery he had made.

6. The king reproved him for letting such a dangerous enemy escape. "I once served Aulaff," replied the man, "and gave him

able right did Alfred secure to the people? 9. When did Alfred die? Who succeeded him? What is said of Edward the Elder? When did he die?

XVI.—1. Who succeeded Edward? What is said of the Saxon names? 2. Give the meaning of some of them. 3, 4, 5, 6. Relate the adventure of Aulaff. 7. What followed?

the same faith that I have now given to you; and if I had betrayed him, what trust would you have reposed in my truth? Let him die, if such be his fate, but not through my treachery. Secure yourself from danger, and remove your tent, lest he should assail you unawares."

7. Athelstan was pleased with the honest soldier's answer, and took his advice. It was well he did, for that very night Aulaff, with a chosen band, broke into the camp, and killed a bishop who had pitched his tent upon the spot where the king's had stood.

8. The noise of the attack waked the Saxons, and the battle became general. It lasted all that night, and all the following day, and is distinguished in Saxon history by the name of the *long battle*. It ended in Athelstan's gaining a complete victory, which secured to him the peaceful possession of his kingdom.

9. Athelstan is regarded as one of the ablest of the ancient princes. One law which he made certainly affords proof of liberality and enlargement of mind. He decreed that any merchant who had made three long sea-voyages on his own account should be admitted to the rank of a thane.

10. He was most courteous in his manners, and was much beloved by his subjects. It is related that his hair was bright yellow, and that he wore it beautifully plaited. He died in 941, in the forty-sixth year of his age, and the sixteenth of his reign.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

*How Edmund, a brave king, was murdered.—About Edred.—St. Dunstan.—How he resisted the temptations of the Devil.*

1. EDMUND, a brother of Athelstan, succeeded to the throne. He was only eighteen years old. The Danes, whom Alfred had permitted to settle in Northumberland, had caused great trouble in the country. They were continually rising in rebellion, and attempting to establish an independent government.

2. Aulaff, whose adventure I have related to you, was now their prince. He had escaped from the *long battle*, and taken refuge in Ireland. The youth and inexperience of the king gave him hopes of better success in a new attempt. He collected a large army, which was totally defeated by the English under Edmund, and the whole country was reduced to submission.

3. Edmund had displayed so much wisdom and courage, that there was every hope his reign would be a happy one, when a sudden end was put to it. He was sitting at a feast, with all his nobles

---

it? 8. What is the battle which succeeded called? 9. What of Athelstan? What law did he make? 10. When did he die?

XVII.—1. Who succeeded Athelstan? What of the Northumberland Danes? 2. What of Aulaff? What was the success of his new attempt? 3, 4. Relate the manner of

about him, when a notorious robber, named Leolf, whom he had banished from the kingdom, had the audacity to come into the hall, and take a seat at the table.

4. The king ordered him to leave the room, but Leolf refused to obey. Enraged at this fresh insult, the king sprang from his seat, and, seizing him by the hair, threw him down. The robber, upon this, drew his dagger, and stabbed the king to the heart. Thus died this hopeful young prince, when he was only twenty-four years old, in the year 948.

5. Edmund left two little sons, named Edwy and Edgar, but they were so young that Edred, his brother, was acknowledged as king. At the commencement of his reign the Danes again rebelled, but were speedily subdued. He took effectual means to prevent their disturbing the peace of the kingdom.

6. He no longer allowed them to be governed by a prince of their own race, but placed an English governor over them. English troops were fixed in all the principal towns.

7. Edred would have led, on the whole, a quiet life, if he had not suffered himself to be governed by an ambitious priest called St. Dunstan. He was an Englishman, of noble family, who was educated for the church. To acquire a character for sanctity, he secluded himself from the world. He had a cell made, so small that he could neither stand upright in it, nor stretch out his limbs when he lay down.

8. Here he employed himself perpetually, either in devotion, or in making useful and ingenious things of iron and brass. Many foolish stories are told of the temptations to which he was subjected. He fancied that the devil, assuming a human shape, made him frequent visits.

9. One day, as he was busily at work, the devil popped his head into the window, and asked him to make something for him. St. Dunstan, soon finding out who it was, seized him by the nose with a pair of red-hot tongs, and held him there, whilst he bellowed most lustily.

10. These, and a thousand other stories equally ridiculous, were seriously told, and implicitly believed by the people, and gained for Dunstan the reputation which he desired. He now appeared in the world again, and soon gained such an influence over Edred, that the king consulted him not only about matters of religion, but entrusted to him the management of the affairs of state.

---

Edmund's death. 5. Who succeeded Edmund? 6. What means did he adopt to keep the Danes in subjection? 7. Who was Dunstan? What did he do to acquire a reputation? 8, 9. What ridiculous stories are related of him? 10. What was the consequence of these stories?

## CHAPTER XVIII.

*About the Monks, and the Secular Clergy.—Story of Edwy and Elgiva.—How St. Dunstan gained a great influence with the people.*

1. STILL further to increase his power and influence, Dunstan resolved to make an innovation in the church, as it existed in England. The change had already been made in other countries. This was by the introduction of a new order of clergy, called *monks*.

2. These secluded themselves entirely from the world, and lived in monasteries. They were bound by a vow to live according to a certain system or rule. By this they were required to remain unmarried, to be content with coarse fare, and hard beds. They were also bound to yield implicit obedience, in all things, to the head of the monastery, who was called *the Abbot*, or *the Superior*.

3. The old clergy were called *Seculars*; and between the two bodies a furious contest at once arose, which agitated the whole kingdom, and finally produced a civil war. The secular clergy were very numerous and rich, and possessed of all the offices in the church; but Dunstan wielded all the power of the king, who had become indolent, and helpless from ill health, and permitted him to do whatever he pleased.

4. Edred died in 955. Edwy, the oldest son of Edmund, then succeeded to the throne. He was not above sixteen years old. He was possessed of virtues and abilities which would have made him a great favorite with the people, had he not, unhappily, engaged in the religious disputes, and taken part with the secular priests, in opposition to the monks.

5. An act of Edwy's was, by the cruelty and hard-heartedness of St. Dunstan, made the means of destroying not only the happiness, but also the life of that prince. Edwy had a beautiful cousin, Elgiva, whom he loved very dearly, and whom he married.

6. St. Dunstan, and Odo, another churchman completely under his control, declared it to be sinful for a man to marry his cousin, and did all they could to disturb their happiness. The king now called upon Dunstan to give an account of the money which he had received as treasurer of the kingdom. Being unable to do this, Dunstan was banished from the country.

7. Though absent, he was not idle. He excited Edgar, who was still a boy, to raise a rebellion against his brother, and as soon as he had assembled an army, joined him in person. Meanwhile, Odo contrived to seize on the poor queen, cruelly burned her face with hot irons, in order to destroy her beauty, and then had her carried to Ireland, where she was kept a prisoner.

---

XVIII.—1. What change did St. Dunstan make in the church? 2. What is said of the monks? By whom were they governed? 3. What were the old clergy called? What is said of the two parties? 4. When did Edred die? Who succeeded him? What of Edwy? 5. What did Edwy do? 6. What did Dunstan declare? Why was he banished from the country? 7. What did Dunstan do? What became of Elgiva? 8. What of

8. The people regarded Dunstan as a saint, and their superstitious reverence was kept up by pretended messages from heaven. Crucifixes, altars, and even horses, were said to have been gifted with the power of speech, in order to harangue in his favor.

9. By the assistance of these pretended miracles, which were fully believed by the people, the monks prevailed. Edwy was deprived of the larger part of his dominions. To complete his afflictions, his beloved Elgiva, having escaped from Ireland, got as far as Gloucester, on her way to join him; there she was discovered by her savage persecutors, who put her to death. Edwy died of a broken heart, in 959.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

### *Edgar the Peaceable.—Reign and Death of Edward the Martyr.*

1. EDGAR, the next king, was only sixteen years old when he became sole sovereign of the whole kingdom, of a large portion of which his rebellious arms had before made him master. He was completely governed by St. Dunstan, and other meddling monks, who, in return, wrote the history of his life, and praised him as the best king that ever lived.

2. It is difficult to tell how much of their praise he deserved. They represent him not only as a great statesman, and a man of great abilities, but also as a saint and a man of great virtue. We know that he has no claims to the latter character, but that he was a consummate hypocrite, who, whilst he was falsely charging the secular clergy with various wickednesses, was himself guilty of the most enormous crimes.

3. He seems, however, to have been an active prince, and to have governed his kingdom with wisdom. Many good laws were made by him, and justice was so well administered, that travellers had no longer any fear of robbers. We are also told, as a proof of his power, that having occasion to pass by water from one place to another, he was rowed in his barge by eight tributary princes.

4. It also appears certain that he attended diligently to the naval affairs of his kingdom; he had so large a fleet, that the Danes never ventured to molest him. To make his sailors expert, he kept his ships constantly sailing round the island.

5. Whilst he was totally regardless of his own morals, he was very careful about those of his subjects. Instead of setting them a good example, he endeavored to promote religion by laws. Amongst

---

the feelings of the people? What artifices were used to excite their feelings? 9. Which party prevailed? What became of Elgiva? When did Edwy die?

XIX.—1. Who succeeded Edwy? By whom was Edgar governed? 2. What of the character of Edgar? 3. What of the state of the kingdom? What instance of his power? 4. What of the navy? 5. What law did he make? 6. What tribute did he

others, he ordained that every Sunday should be strictly observed, and should begin at three o'clock on Saturday afternoon, and end at sunrise on Monday.

6. Wales, and a great part of England, were at this time infested by wolves. To get rid of them, Edgar commanded that instead of the annual tribute in money and cattle, which the Welsh kings were bound to pay him, they should bring three hundred wolves' heads yearly. This plan succeeded so well that in three years the whole race was nearly exterminated.

7. After having reigned seventeen years, Edgar died in 975. His reign was so free from wars and tumults, that he obtained the title of *Edgar the Peaceable*. He left two sons, Edward, the son of his first wife, and Ethelred, whose mother, Elfrida, was yet living.

8. Elfrida was ambitious that her son should be king, instead of his half-brother; but the influence of that bustling priest, Dunstan, placed the crown on the head of Edward. This poor young man behaved kindly and gently to everybody, and very liberally to his ambitious step-mother; but this did not prevent her from contriving his death.

9. One day, when he was hunting near Corfe Castle, in Dorsetshire, where Elfrida lived, he rode up to the castle, entirely alone, and unsuspicuous of ill, to make the queen a passing visit. Elfrida received him with much pretended kindness, and, as he declined dismounting, she presented him with a cup of wine.

10. While he was drinking, she stabbed him in the back. Edward, finding himself wounded, put spurs to his horse, and galloped off, but, becoming weak from loss of blood, he fell from his horse, and was dragged by the stirrup till he was dead.

11. As Elfrida was the head of the party opposed to the monks, they chose to consider Edward as having fallen in the cause of religion, and styled him *Edward the Martyr*. They affirmed, and the superstitious people readily believed, that many miracles were performed at his tomb.

## CHAPTER XX.

*Ethelred II. succeeds to the throne.—About Penance.—Indulgences.—The Butter Tower.*

1. ETHELRED was only ten years old when the wickedness of his mother thus raised him to the throne. Being of an amiable disposition, he was much affected by the death of his brother, and shed many tears. This looked like a reproach to his mother, who became very angry; nothing else being at hand, she seized a large wax candle and beat the poor boy almost to death.

---

require of Wales? Why? 7. When did he die? What sons did he leave? 8. Who succeeded him? 9, 10. Relate the particulars of his death. 11. What was he surnamed? XX.—1. How did Ethelred bear his brother's death? 2. What did his mother do?

2. It is said that Ethelred never forgot this beating, and that to the day of his death he could not bear the sight of a wax candle! Though his wicked mother had now obtained the object of her ambition, she was, as we may well believe, anything but happy.

3. In those superstitious times, when any one had committed an offence, instead of making amends for it by sincere repentance, and by repairing, to the utmost, the harm he had done, the monks used to persuade him that it could be completely atoned for by doing *penance*.

4. To do penance was often to go barefoot, or to sleep on a hard board. The Saxons were very fond of bathing in warm water, but had a great aversion to bathing in cold water. One of the most common penances required of those who had been guilty of great sins was to abstain from the warm bath; or, if they had been particularly enormous, to substitute cold water for warm.

5. To the rich these penances were of very little consequence, since they might always buy off their punishments. For instance, if a rich man was ordered to fast for a week, as a penance, he was considered to have performed it, if he hired seven men to fast for one day.

6. *Indulgences*, as they are called, were also to be bought; that is, permission to commit crimes. It was against the rules of the established church to eat butter during the season of fasting called Lent; and we have an account of a church at Rouen, in France, one of the towers of which is called the *Butter Tower*, because it was built with money that was paid for indulgences to eat butter during Lent.

7. Rich sinners were exhorted to build churches and monasteries, and to give them great revenues for the support of the monks, who pretended to pass their whole time in thinking of holy things, and in prayers, and they promised that the benefactors of their respective societies should be constantly remembered in them.

8. The ignorant and superstitious laymen were easily persuaded that the prayers of such holy men must be more efficacious than their own. In the course of time a very large portion of the property of the country came into the possession of the churchmen. This was so great an evil that laws were made forbidding any person to make gifts of land to the church.

9. Elfrida founded monasteries, performed penances, and did all that the priests required, but none of these things could calm the upbraidings of her own conscience, or restore her peace of mind. At last she retired to a monastery, where she passed the remainder of her life in fasting and prayer.

---

What of his mother? 3. How were offences atoned for in those times? 4. What are some instances of penance? 5. How did the rich perform their penances? 6. What were indulgences? What of the Butter Tower? 7. What other things were recommended to the rich? 8. What was the consequence? 9. What further of Elfrida?

## CHAPTER XXI.

*The Danes renew their Incursions.—They are bribed with money to depart, but appear again the next year.—Peace at length made with them.*

1. IT was now a long time since England had been troubled by incursions of the Danes. This was in part owing to the good state of preparation for defence in which the kingdom had been kept, and in part to the fact that the Danes found sufficient employment in another quarter.

2. A body of them, under the command of Rollo, had gained a settlement in France. They were called Northmen, or Normans, by the French, and the district of France in which they settled was hence called Normandy. This settlement employed all their superfluous population for many years.

3. In 980, a small band of adventurers landed upon the coast of England, and, after ravaging the country for some extent, escaped with their booty. These piratical incursions were continued for several years.

4. Emboldened by their success, and encouraged by the distracted state of England, if not by the direct invitation of Dunstan, or of his partisans the monks, for he himself died in 988, the Danes came in 991 with a great force. Ethelred had sufficient warning, and ample time to prepare, but yet had made no provision for defence. Hence he has been called *Ethelred the Unready*.

5. The Danes advanced into the heart of the country, and Ethelred was obliged to resort to the disgraceful expedient of paying them a large sum of money to go away. This, to be sure, at that time they did; but it was only to return again the next year, in hopes of being again bribed.

6. Ethelred was now better prepared, and would have destroyed their whole fleet, but for the treachery of one of his nobles, who deserted to the enemy, and gave them such information of the plans of the English as enabled them to escape with the loss of only one ship.

7. In their next expedition, the Danes were commanded by Sweyn, their king. They remained two years, pillaging the country in various parts. They were at length induced to depart, by the gift of a very large sum of money. But the kingdom gained only one year's rest from these marauders, for they again returned, and were again bribed to leave the country.

8. Sweyn had a sister named Gunilda, who was a woman of great virtue and abilities. She was married to an English nobleman, and

---

XXI.—1. What of the Danes? 2. How had they been occupied? 3. When did they reappear in England? 4. When did Dunstan die? What was Ethelred called? Why? 6. How were the Danes induced to depart? 6. What was their success the next year?

had become a Christian. She had long beheld with grief and horror the devastations committed by her countrymen.

9. By her intercession, a treaty of peace was made between the English and the Danes. She offered herself, her husband, and her only son, as sureties for the fidelity of the Danes, whose repeated breaches of faith had rendered the English completely distrustful of them.

10. As an additional protection, Ethelred married Emfna, daughter of Richard, Duke of Normandy, a descendant of Rollo. He was one of the most powerful princes of the time, and, besides, he was himself of Danish origin. There was no hardship in this, for Emma was the most beautiful princess in Europe.

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

*Massacre of the Danes in England.—Their death avenged by Sweyn.—Reign of Edmund Ironside.—Canute the Dane conquers England.*

1. I CANNOT give you a better account of the condition of England than in the words of a report made to Sweyn by one of his officers: "A country naturally powerful; a king asleep, solicitous only about his pleasures, and trembling at the name of war; hated by his people, and laughed at by strangers. Generals envious of each other; and governors ready to fly at the first shout of battle."

2. But still the measures which had been adopted might have secured peace to England, but for an act of barbarity, as unwise as it was wicked. In the year 1002, the king was persuaded by his counsellors to issue secret orders to his officers, that on the 13th of November, which is the Feast of St. Brice, all the Danes in England should be murdered. The order was barbarously executed. Men, women, and children, fell indiscriminately in the general slaughter.

3. Amongst the victims was the generous Gunilda. The monster, to whose custody she and her family had been committed, first caused her husband and son, though they were English, to be murdered before her eyes.

4. When the assassins approached her, she calmly represented to them the consequences of their conduct. She foretold the total ruin of England, from the vengeance which her brother, who was a great and powerful prince, and to whom she was very dear, would not fail to take. Never was prophecy better fulfilled. A few young Danes were fortunate enough to get on board a vessel, and, setting sail, soon reached their native country.

---

7. Who commanded the next expedition? 8. What of Gunilda? 9. Who procured peace? Whom did Ethelred marry? What of the Duke of Normandy?

XXII.—1. What of England in the time of Ethelred? 2. What barbarous act did the king order? When was it executed? 3, 4. What of Gunilda? 5. What did Sweyn do?

5. Sweyn, who had given up all thoughts of making further expeditions, was roused to fury by the news of his sister's death, so faithlessly and ignominiously slain. Collecting a large army, he invaded England. After several years he succeeded in getting entire possession of the country, and was acknowledged as king. Ethelred, with his wife and two young sons, took refuge in Normandy.

6. Sweyn died in 1013. As soon as Ethelred heard of his death, he went back to England, and conducted himself with such unexpected activity and courage, that he compelled the Danes, with their young king, Canute, to return home. If Ethelred had been wise and prudent, he might now have re-established himself upon the throne, but his conduct was such as to alienate the affection of his adherents.

7. Canute now returned, and after the death of Ethelred, in 1016, compelled Edmund, his eldest son and successor, to divide the kingdom with him. Edmund survived this division only one month, when he was murdered by one of his own nobles, and Canute became sole king of England. The great personal courage and hardihood of Edmund have obtained for him the surname of *Ironside*.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### *About the Dress and Amusements of the Anglo-Saxons.—The Gleemen.*

1. I WILL now tell you something about the dress and amusements of the Anglo-Saxons. The tunic which they wore very much resembled in its shape the frock worn by our farmers and draymen. These tunics were bound in round the waist with a belt, and usually came no lower than the knee; only kings and nobles wore them down to the feet.

2. People of rank wore, over the other, a short tunic, or *surcoat*, made of silk, and richly embroidered and ornamented; a linen shirt, shaped much like a modern shirt, was now an indispensable part of the dress of the rich. The poor wore no shirt, and had only a tunic made of coarse cloth. The slaves wore an iron collar round the neck, and were clad in tunics open at the sides.

3. To judge by the pictures we have of the Anglo-Saxons, they appear generally to have gone bareheaded; though they occasionally wore fur caps. The hair was parted in the middle, and hung down on the shoulders in waving ringlets. The beard was shaven on the upper lip, and top of the chin; the rest grew long, was kept very smooth, and was usually divided in the middle and hung down in two points.

---

What became of Ethelred? 6. When did Sweyn die? What did Ethelred then do? 7. When did Ethelred die? Who succeeded him? What of the kingdom? How did Edmund die? What is he surnamed? Who was now king of England?

XXIII.—1, 2. Describe the dress of the Anglo-Saxon men. 3. What of the hair and

4. The ladies wore a linen under-dress, with long tight sleeves; and over that a wide robe or gown, fastened round the waist by a belt, and long enough to conceal the feet. Their head-dress was a square piece of linen, or silk, so put on as to conceal the hair and neck, and showing only the face.

5. Historians talk of their curls and crisping-pins; but their pictures show us nothing but the face peeping through the folds of their *cover-chief*; and it ought to be remembered to the honor of the Saxon ladies, that while the men were continually adopting new fashions in dress, there was in three hundred years little or no change in that of the women.

6. Both sexes wore mantles, more or less splendid, according to their rank, and a profusion of gold ornaments, fringes, and bracelets. I had almost forgotten to mention the stockings of the Saxon *beaux*. They were of gay colors, often red and blue; at one time they cross-gartered their legs, as the Highlanders in Scotland still do.

7. The Anglo-Saxon nobles spent most of their revenues in giving great feasts to their friends and followers. These feasts were more remarkable for their abundance than for their elegance. The meat was generally dressed by boiling. It would seem that they had no grates or fire-places, but made a fire on the ground, and placed the kettle over it.

8. At these feasts they sat on long benches, at large square tables, and every person took his place according to his rank. But if any one took a higher place than he was entitled to, he was degraded to the bottom of the table, and all the company had a right to pelt him with bones.

9. These tables were set out with great nicety, and were covered with clean table-linen, and every person had a separate drinking-horn,—for there were no such things as glasses,—and his own mess of broth to himself. They had knives and wooden spoons, but the luxury of forks was unknown.

10. We have already told you that the Anglo-Saxons were very ignorant, and could neither read nor write. So you may suppose a great deal of their time hung heavily on their hands; for of feasting, hunting, and fighting, there must be sometimes a cessation. In rainy weather, and winter evenings, when they had played with their dogs, and sharpened their arrows, and brightened their spears, you may suppose they often did not know what to do with themselves.

11. Anybody who could sing a song, or play on the harp, or tell an amusing story, was therefore much courted and valued; and this occasioned some persons to make it their business to learn all these accomplishments. These persons, whom they called *gleemen*, but who are now usually called minstrels, used to rove about the country, from house to house, and from castle to castle, singing their songs, and telling their stories, which were commonly in verse, and everybody made them welcome, and was glad to see them.

---

beard? 4, 5. What of the ladies' dress? 6. What of mantles? Stockings? 7, 8, 9. Describe their feasts, and manners at table. 10. Occupation. 11, 12. Who were gleemen? What made their company acceptable? 13. Whence the name backgammon?

12. Even in times of war, when it was dangerous for other people to travel, they went everywhere without molestation; for no one would hurt a poor gleeman, who was always so pleasant and so entertaining a guest. It was in the character of a gleeman that Alfred visited the Danish camp.

13. Sometimes the Saxons amused themselves by playing backgammon, which was invented by the Welsh, and called by them from two words in their language, *back common*, or little battle.

---

## CHAPTER XXIV.

*About Canute the Great.—His Rebuke of his Courtiers.*



CANUTE EMBRACING CHRISTIANITY.

1. THE English showed, at first, some repugnance to accept for their king a foreigner and an enemy; but Canute, who was a wise and powerful prince, reconciled all their differences, and peaceably ascended the throne. The two little sons of Edmund were sent into Hungary, where the eldest died; but the younger, named Edward, lived to grow up, and married Agatha, sister of the Queen of Hungary; you will hear of him again.

2. To show his confidence in his new subjects, Canute sent almost all his Danish troops back to Denmark. He secured himself from

any attempt on the part of the Duke of Normandy in favor of the sons of Emma, by marrying that widowed queen.

3. Canute, though brought up a pagan, embraced Christianity, and his conduct was so wise and prudent that he has been called by historians *Canute the Great*. He was large in person, and very strong; he was of fair complexion, and distinguished for his beauty; his hair was thick and long, and his eyes were bright and sparkling.

4. England, under his government, enjoyed many years of tranquillity. During this time Canute employed himself in making new laws, and in promoting the prosperity of the country. Poetry was the favorite art of the age, and Canute did not disdain the character of a poet; the first stanza of a poem written by him on hearing the monks of Ely singing, as he was passing by on the water, is still on record:

5. *Cheerful sang the monks of Ely,  
As Canute the king was passing by;  
Row to the shore, knights, said the king,  
And let us hear these churchmen sing.*

This poem was afterwards sung in the churches, which gives us a curious notion of the sacred poetry of those times.



CANUTE REPROVING HIS COURTIERS.

6. The manner in which Canute rebuked the flattery of his courtiers is worth relating. They had been extolling him as the greatest

ttidence in the English? 3. What of Canute? 4. What of England during his reign?

## 50 REIGNS OF HAROLD HAREFOOT AND OF HARDICANUTE.

and most powerful king in the world, and addel that it was impossible for anything to resist his commands. Canute ordered his chair to be placed on the sea-shore while the tide was rising.

7. As the waters approached, he commanded them to retire and to obey the voice of him who was lord of the ocean. He sat some time, pretending to expect that the waves would obey; but they continued to rise higher and higher, till they touched the king's feet, when, turning to his courtiers, who stood by wondering what it all meant, he made them observe, and acknowledge, that God alone was omnipotent.

8. Canute received many of the English nobles into great favor. The chief of them was Earl Godwin, a powerful and ambitious man, who married his daughter, and whose son afterwards became king, as you will presently hear. Canute died in 1035, having preserved England in peace during the whole of his reign, a term of eighteen years.

---

## CHAPTER XXV.

### *Reigns of Harold Harefoot, and of Hardicanute.*

1. CANUTE left three sons; Sweyn, Harold, and Hardicanute. The succession to the throne of England had been settled on the latter, who was Queen Emma's son; but he being in Denmark when his father died, Harold seized on the crown, and took possession of the late king's treasures. Earl Godwin, and the greater part of the English, declared for Hardicanute.

2. The difficulty was settled by a division of the kingdom. It was agreed that the portion assigned to Hardicanute should be governed by Emma, until his return. Harold soon gained Godwin to his interests, by promising to marry his daughter, and to declare her children heirs to the crown.

3. Two sons of Ethelred and Emma were yet living in Normandy, under the protection of their uncle. To get them into his power, Harold forged a letter in the name of Emma, earnestly inviting them to come to England, where, they were told, they would be received with joy by the people, and one of them acknowledged as king. Still further to deceive them, the letter was filled with abuse of Harold himself.

4. The letter was written so much in the style of their mother, that the princes were deceived. Alfred, the more active of the two, trusting himself with a few Normans on board some ships, sailed for England. Soon after landing he was met by Godwin, who professed the greatest friendship for him, and loaded him with caresses.

5. Repeat a verse written by him. 6, 7. Relate the anecdote of Canute rebuking his courtiers. 8. What of Earl Godwin? When did Canute die?

XXV.—1. What happened in England upon Canute's death? 2. How were the difficulties settled? 3. What of Harold's stratagem? 4, 5. Relate the particulars of the

5. But the treacherous earl, taking advantage of his confidence, seized him in the night-time, and sent him to Ely, where he was either actually murdered, or died in consequence of the cruel treatment he suffered.

6. As soon as Emma heard of his fate, she fled into Flanders, and Harold took possession of the whole kingdom. He did not, however, long enjoy the fruits of his cruelty and ambition, for he died in 1039. He was remarkable for his swiftness in walking and running, which obtained for him the name of *Harold Harefoot*.

7. As soon as Hardicanute, who had joined his mother in Flanders, heard of the death of Harold, he came to England, and was received with joy by the people. But he soon lost the affections of his subjects by his bad conduct. His violent government, however, did not last long, for he died in 1041, having shortened his life by intemperance.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

*Edward the Confessor.—Harold.—About the Conquest.*



QUEEN EMMA PASSING THE ORDEAL.

1. THE ill conduct of Harold and Hardicanute had disgusted the English with Danish sovereigns, and they now resolved to restore the Saxon line of princes. Edward, commonly called the *Exile*,

death of Alfred? 6. What did Harold then do? When did he die? What was he surmised? 7. Who succeeded Harold? When did Hardicanute die?

XXVI.—1. What led to the restoration of the Saxon race of kings? Who was the

that son of Edmund Ironside who, as we have already related, was taken care of by the King of Hungary, was the nearest heir to the crown.

2. But he was so little known, and at so great a distance, that he was passed by, and Edward, called the *Confessor*, which is synonymous with *Saint*, the son of Ethelred and Emma, was invited to ascend the throne. Edward, having a timid and unambitious disposition, did not desire to be king, but was prevailed on by Earl Godwin, now the most powerful person in the kingdom, to be crowned.

3. The restoration of the Saxon line caused great joy throughout the kingdom, and was long celebrated by an annual festival, called *Hokeday*. Edward married Edgitha, daughter of Earl Godwin. He took off a tax which had been first imposed by Ethelred to raise money to bribe the Danes, and hence called *Danegelt*.

4. Edward, having been brought up by the Normans, had many favorites of that nation, who came flocking over to him, and were loaded by him with benefits. He likewise introduced the Norman fashion of wearing loose trowsers, and substituted the Norman title *Baron*, for the old Anglo-Saxon word *Thane*.

5. The English nobles, and especially Earl Godwin, took great offence at the king's regard for the Normans. Their jealousies at length became so violent, that the king banished Godwin, and gave his possessions to Norman favorites. Even the queen, because she was the earl's daughter, was very harshly treated, and it is said that to clear herself from some charge, she was compelled to walk over red-hot ploughshares, which she did without being injured.

6. Godwin assembled a large force, and compelled the king to restore to him his possessions, and to banish the Normans, who left the country as quickly and as secretly as possible, to avoid being murdered by the populace.

7. Godwin died soon after, as he was sitting at table with the king. Harold, his eldest son, was quite as ambitious as his father, and had set his heart on succeeding Edward, who had no children, on the throne. But the king, to defeat his ambitious designs, sent for Edward the Exile to come to England.

8. The prince obeyed the summons, but died a few months after his arrival, leaving a little son, named Edgar Atheling, and two daughters, friendless orphans in a country from which he had himself been banished forty years. His death strengthened the hopes of Harold, and on the death of Edward the Confessor, in 1066, he was crowned king.

9. He did not find the throne a peaceable possession; for William Duke of Normandy immediately asserted his right to it, under pretence that Edward had left him the kingdom in his will. To main-

---

nearest heir? 2. Who was called to the throne? What of Edward? 3. What of a feast? Whom did Edward marry? 4. Who were the favorites of Edward? What changes did he introduce? 5. What was the consequence? How was Godwin treated? How the queen? 6. What did Godwin do? 7. What of Harold, son of Godwin? Whom did Edward wish to be his heir? 8. Who was Edgar Atheling? When did Edward the Confessor die? Who succeeded Edward? 9. Who disputed Harold's possession?

tain his claim, William went with a large army to England, where he landed on the twenty-eighth of September, 1066.

10. On the fourteenth of October was fought the great battle of Hastings, a battle that completely changed the fate of England. Harold was killed by a wound in the eye from an arrow, and William gained a complete victory. The result of this conflict threw the English into the utmost consternation.



THE PEOPLE OFFERING THE THRONE TO WILLIAM.

11. Some of the nobles assembled at London to deliberate on placing Edgar Atheling on the throne; but before they had time to come to a decision, William *the Conqueror* was at the gates. The greater part of the nobles, with Edgar Atheling at their head, went forth to meet him, and offered him the vacant throne, which he, with a little pretended hesitation, accepted. He was crowned at Westminster, on Christmas day, 1066, and thus was completed the *Conquest* of England, as it is called.

TABLE OF THE SAXON KINGS OF ENGLAND.

Began to reign. Reigned.

827 . . .	9 . . .	Egbert.
836 . . .	21 . . .	Ethelwolf, son of Egbert.
857 . . .	3 . . .	Ethelbald, { sons of Ethelwolf, reigned jointly till
	9 . . .	the death of Ethelwolf. Ethelbert
		{ then became sole king.
866 . . .	5 . . .	Ethelred, son of Ethelwolf.
871 . . .	30 . . .	Alfred, son of Ethelwolf.
901 . . .	24 . . .	Edward the Elder, son of Alfred.

10. When was the battle of Hastings fought? What was the result? 11. What did the nobles do? When was William crowned?

## Began to reign. Reigned.

925	16	Athelstan,	sons of Edward.
941	7	Edmund,	
948	7	Edred,	
955	4	Edwy,	sons of Edward.
959	16	Edgar,	
975	4	Edward the Martyr,	sons of Edgar.
979	37	Ethelred the Unready,	
1016	1	Edmund Ironside, son of Ethelred.	

## DANISH KINGS.

1017	18	Canute the Great.	
1035	4	Harold Harefoot,	sons of Canute.
1039	2	Hardicanute,	

## SAXON LINE RESTORED.

1041	27	Edward the Confessor, son of Ethelred.
1066		Harold, son of Earl Godwin, usurped the throne, though Edgar Atheling, grandson of Edmund Ironside, was the natural heir.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

*William I., surnamed the Conqueror.—The Saxon Nobles degraded.*



CROWNING OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

1. WILLIAM the Conqueror was of middle height, and stoutly made, with great strength of body. He had a stern countenance,

XXVII.—1, 2. What is said of William the Conqueror? 3. What is said of his first

and was a shrewd, clear-headed man. We can easily believe him to have been of a grave and thoughtful temper, for we cannot find that he ever indulged in any gayeties or amusements, except hunting, of which he was particularly fond.

2. It is also said that he never admitted any one to intimacy or familiarity. He had a few favorites, and those were well chosen, which was a strong proof of his wisdom. He was considered religious, being very exact in the performance of all religious observances. He certainly showed great instances of generosity, but ambition was his ruling passion.

3. William began his reign with so much prudence and moderation, that his new subjects thought they had great reason to be satisfied. But whilst he treated them with seeming confidence and friendship, he took care to place all real power in the hands of the Normans. He everywhere disarmed the Saxons. He built fortresses in all the principal cities, and placed Norman soldiers in them.

4. Still he professed the greatest regard for the rights and laws of his English subjects. By this mixture of lenity and rigor, he so subdued and quieted the minds of the people, that he ventured to visit his native country within six months after he left it. The chief of the English nobles accompanied him.

5. These made a display of wealth and magnificence which quite astonished the foreigners. A Norman historian, who was present, speaks with admiration of the beauty of their persons, the costly workmanship of their silver plate, and the elegance of their embroideries: arts in which the English then excelled.

6. It now became evident that the English were only kept in subjection through fear of the Conqueror. No sooner were they relieved from his presence, than they made an effort to regain their liberty. William hastened back to England, and, by his vigorous measures, disconcerted the plans of the rebels.

7. Many years were passed in unavailing struggles on the part of the English to throw off the Norman yoke. The king, regarding them as inveterate enemies, endeavored to reduce them to a condition in which they should no longer be formidable to his government.

8. The nobles were degraded from their rank, and stripped of the greater part of their possessions. The clergy were also deposed, and their places supplied by foreigners. Amongst the new-comers was one at least worthy of being remembered.

9. This was Lanfranc, an Italian, who was made archbishop of Canterbury, who, by his wisdom and prudence, and influence over the king, which he employed in moderating the violence of his temper, proved himself to be one of the best friends of the poor dejected English.

10. During these troubles, Edgar Atheling had taken refuge with Malcolm, King of Scotland, who married Margaret, one of his

---

measures? 4. 5. What of the English nobles? 6. What did the English do in his absence? What did William do? 7. How did William treat the English? 8. What of the nobles? What of the clergy? 9. What is said of Lanfranc? 10. What became

sisters, and warmly espoused the cause of the Anglo-Saxons. He marched into England with an army, but William soon obliged him to retreat.

11. In 1071, Malcolm being about to make a second attempt to place Edgar on the throne of England, William marched against him with a large force. The two armies met on the borders of Scotland, and a battle was about to ensue, when the two kings made peace with one another.

12. One of the conditions was that Edgar should be given up to William, who promised, if he would renounce all claim to the throne of England, to give him a mark a day—a little more than three dollars—which was considered a very handsome allowance in those days. Edgar assented to these terms, and both he and William remained true to their agreement.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

*Game Laws established.—Rebellion of Robert.—He is besieged by his Father.—Interesting Incident during the Siege.—The Domes-day Book.—Death of William I.*



FIGHT BETWEEN ROBERT AND HIS FATHER.

1. WE have already stated that William was very fond of hunting. He made many very severe laws against those who interfered with his favorite amusement. A person who killed a deer or a boar,

of Edgar Atheling? Whom did Malcolm marry? 11. 12. What was the result of Malcolm's second attempt?

XXVIII.—1. What laws did William make? 2. What of the New Forest? 3. What

or even a hare, was punished much more severely than one who killed a man.

2. Not content with the large forests which the former kings had possessed, he drove the inhabitants of more than thirty villages from their homes, and reserved this large district as a habitation for wild beasts, calling it the *New Forest*.

3. This king enjoyed but little repose. First a conspiracy among his Norman nobles threatened his life, and afterwards the rebellion of his eldest son, Robert, kept his Norman dominions for many years in a state of disturbance. This prince had long been jealous of the king's affection for his two younger brothers, but a trifling incident caused him to rise in open rebellion.

4. The three princes, with their father, who happened to be in Normandy, were residing at a certain castle. One day, as Robert was passing through the court-yard, after having been frolicking with his younger brothers, they sportively threw some water upon him, from the window.

5. Robert would have taken it as a continuance of the fun, but for the evil suggestions of one of his attendants, who had personal grounds of offence with the younger princes and their father. He persuaded Robert that it was intended as a public insult, which he ought to resent.

6. The passionate youth, drawing his sword, rushed up stairs, determined to be revenged on his brothers. The whole castle was filled with tumult, which the king himself could hardly appease. Robert, having received, as he thought, no atonement for the insult, left the castle that very night, and openly declared war against his father.

7. Robert was very popular among the Normans, and they joined his standard in great numbers. But after a hard struggle, he was driven out of Normandy, and took refuge in Serberoy, a small castle belonging to the King of France, to which William immediately laid siege.

8. The garrison sallied out, headed by Prince Robert, who selected for his antagonist a knight who appeared in front of the besiegers, in complete armor, and having his face covered with the visor of his helmet. The furious assault of the prince overthrew his antagonist, horse and man. His lance was already at the throat of the fallen knight to take away his life, when, by the voice, he discovered that he was about to kill his own father.

9. His remorse and horror at the thought that he was near being guilty of so fearful an act, subdued in a moment his rebellious feelings. Springing from his horse, he threw himself upon his knees in an agony of grief, and begged forgiveness for his offences, offering to make any atonement.

10. William was too angry to forgive him; after reproaching him bitterly, he departed for his own camp, on Robert's horse, which that prince assisted him to mount. It was a long time

before he would listen to Robert's contrite entreaties. At last, Queen Matilda, who was a very good and pious woman, prevailed with the king to pardon his son.

11. William had now a little leisure, of which he took advantage to have a survey made of his English kingdom. The record of the survey was made in a book called *Domes-day Book*, which is yet preserved in the Tower; and all possessors of estates who are curious to know to whom their land belonged at the Conquest, whether it was ploughed land or pasture, what was then its value, and, in some cases, what cattle it was stocked with, may there get information of all these matters.

12. One would have thought that, after all his turmoils, William would have been glad to have passed the latter part of his life in repose; but, on the contrary, upon some trifling quarrel with Philip I. of France, he led an army into that country, destroying and laying waste everything that came in his way; every town or village through which he passed was reduced to ashes.

13. This cruelty brought on him its own punishment; for, after burning the town of Mantes, his horse, flinching from the smoking ashes, made a violent plunge, and the king, being very corpulent, got a bruise which caused his death on the ninth of September, 1087. He was in the sixty-third year of his age, and had reigned twenty-one years in England.

---

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### *State of England after the Norman Conquest.—The English Language.*

1. It may be useful to pause and contemplate the state of England after the Normans had established their power. The highest in rank after the king were the Norman barons, who were made rich and powerful by the spoils of the Anglo-Saxon nobles. The next class was composed of Norman soldiers, who had helped to achieve the Conquest, and who settled as tenants on the lands that had been given to their leaders.

2. With this class gradually became blended the old Anglo-Saxon thanes, or nobles, and also the Anglo-Saxon eorls, or farmers, who, if they had never taken up arms against the Conqueror, were allowed, on putting themselves under the protection of some Norman baron, to live unmolested.

3. It was not till long after William and his followers were all dead and gone, that the descendants of the two nations could endure each other; the Normans holding in contempt the stupid, ignorant Saxons, and the Saxons detesting their tyrannical oppressors.

---

rence that led to the submission of Robert. 11. What is the *Domes-day Book*? 12. What new war did William engage in? 13. What caused his death? When did he die? What was his age? What the length of his reign?

XXIX.—1. How was the land distributed after the Conquest? 2. What was the condition of the Saxon nobles and farmers? 3. What feelings existed between the Normans

4. The lowest rank of the people had few, if any, rig'ts of their own. There were some free laborers who worked for hire, as men do now; but the great proportion of the lower class were slaves. In towns there was another class of people, called *Burghers*. These were merchants, or tradesmen, who joined together in little societies; but in the time of William I. they were not a numerous, or at least not a powerful, body.

5. As a part of his plan for reducing the Anglo-Saxons to complete subjection, William used every means to introduce the Norman or French language into England, and to eradicate that of the Anglo-Saxons. He altered many of the old Saxon laws, and established new ones in their stead, which were all written in Norman French; and he ordered that law business should be carried on in that language.

6. He also required that French instead of Saxon should be taught in the schools. But it is easier to conquer a kingdom than to change a language; and after an ineffectual struggle, which lasted three centuries, the Saxon got the better at last, and, with some intermixture of Norman, forms the basis of our own language.

7. Even the Norman words we retain are often so altered by our way of pronouncing them that a Frenchman would not recognize them. Thus many people are sadly puzzled to find any meaning in the words "*O yes*," with which the crier of our courts commences his proclamations; for they do not know that the crier's *O yes* is a corruption of the old Norman word "*Oyez*"—"Hear ye."

---

## CHAPTER XXX.

### *The Feudal System.—Description of a Norman Castle.*

1. THE lands which William took from the Anglo-Saxons, he bestowed on his Norman barons, upon condition that they should always be ready to attend him in battle. They were called the king's vassals. The barons distributed their lands among their own followers on the same condition, and thus these became the vassals of the barons. These again had others under them, who held them on the like terms.

2. Thus, whenever the baron marched to war, his vassals marched with him. This sort of bond between the king and his barons, and the barons and their retainers, was called the *Feudal System*. It had its origin upon the continent, and had been long established in France, before William introduced it into Britain.

3. The barons lived like so many little kings, each in his own castle, with his train of followers, who bore pompous titles, similar to those of the officers of the royal court. This haughty seclusion

---

and Saxons? 4. What of the lowest class of people? Who were the *Burghers*? 5, 6. What did William do in reference to the language? With what ultimate success?

XXX.—1. How were the lands of Britain distributed? 2. What was the system of holding lands called? 3. How did the barons live? 4. What difference between the

gave great offence to the Saxon nobles, who were remarkably social and convivial in their habits.



A NORMAN CASTLE.

4. They did not care for the shabbiness of their own dwellings, which were only built of wood, and thatched, if they could but eat and drink, and have merry-makings; while the Normans, on the contrary, were frugal in their manner of living, but very extravagant in their buildings.

5. These, however, were comfortless, gloomy dwellings. In order to convey an idea of an ancient castle of this period, we may describe that of Rochester in England, which, though a mere ruin, is one of the most perfect now remaining. There is a lofty tower, standing in a garden, surrounded on all sides by high walls, or at least the remains of high walls.

6. The tower was called the *keep*, in which the baron and his family lived, and in which all the stores and arms and valuable things were kept. Under the keep was the dungeon for prisoners. The chapel also stood in this enclosure, the whole of which was called the *inner bailey*. In one corner of the walls is a little ruinous tower, through which there is an entrance.

7. Without this garden is another enclosure, taking a larger circuit which may still be traced by the remains of thick solid walls, with towers at different distances. The space between the outer and inner walls was called the *outer bailey*, and here were the lodgings for the soldiers, the stables, and the workshops of the blacksmiths, carpenters, and other artificers.

8. There was generally a small and concealed entrance to the castle, by which the lord might go secretly in and out. This was called the *postern*. Rochester Castle is now but the shell of a building, so that we can only conjecture that the two rooms in the centre part, which have ornamented fireplaces, and pillars on the walls, were the state apartments; and that the sleeping-rooms were the little dark recesses, which are to be seen as you go up the winding stairs that lead to the battlements.

9. These rooms of state were in the third story, and have great windows, which, however, were placed high in the lofty apartments, to secure the occupants against weapons discharged from without. The two lower stories had no windows, but were lighted merely by loop-holes. Such was a Norman castle of the twelfth century.

---

### CHAPTER XXXI.

*William Rufus.—Quarrels between the Sons of William the Conqueror.—Instances of their Generosity.*

1. WILLIAM the Conqueror left three sons. To Robert, the eldest, he devised Normandy; the crown of England he gave to William, and to the third, named Henry, he left the fortune of his mother, Matilda.

2. William was twenty-seven years old when he became king. He resembled his father in the sternness of his countenance, as well as in his great bodily strength and activity. His hair was red, on which account he obtained the surname of *Rufus*. He stammered in his speech, especially when he was angry, which, if historians are to be believed, was very often.

3. He was brave in war, but had not any of the great or good qualities of his father; for he was irreligious, and a lover of low company and deep drinking. He was very passionate, and had no principles; either of honor or honesty.

4. His father was scarcely dead, when he set out for England, to secure the inheritance which was left him, and to seize upon the royal treasures. The Anglo-Norman barons were very sorry to have him become king, and engaged in a rebellion, to place his elder brother, Robert, on the throne.

5. William Rufus now found it convenient to make friends with the Anglo-Saxons, and he promised to restore many of their rights and privileges. By their help he speedily subdued the rebellion of the barons, but he never remembered to fulfil his fair pledges to those who had aided him.

6. William and Robert never agreed but upon one occasion, and then they joined to oppress Henry. His inheritance had been

---

XXXI.—1. How did the Conqueror dispose of his dominions? 2, 3. What is said of William? Why called Rufus? 4, 5. By whose assistance did he put down the rebellion of the barons? 6, 7, 8. On what occasion did Robert and William agree? Relate

left to him in money. Robert, who was very extravagant, had been glad to sell a part of Normandy to him, and now, in concert with William, sought to deprive him of it.

7. Henry would not tamely give it up, and, with a small number of men, retired to a strong castle, called St. Michael's Mount, where he was closely besieged by the united forces of his brothers. He was nearly reduced by the scarcity of water, when Robert, hearing of his distress, granted him permission to supply himself, and also sent him some barrels of wine for his own use.

8. Being reproved by William for this generosity, Robert replied, "What, shall I suffer my brother to die of thirst? Where shall we find another when he is gone?" The king also performed an act of generosity, which, from his character, was not to be expected of him.

9. Riding out alone one day to take a survey of the fortress, he was attacked by two soldiers, and thrown from his horse. One of them drew his sword, and was about to kill him, when the king exclaimed, "Hold, knave! I am the King of England." The soldier suspended his blow, and raised the king from the ground with many expressions of respect. For his forbearance, the man received a handsome reward, and was taken into the king's service.

10. Henry was soon after obliged to surrender, and having thus lost everything, he, with a few faithful followers, who would not forsake him in his distress, wandered from place to place, often in want of food, and always without a home.

---

## CHAPTER XXXII.

### *The Crusades.*

1. It had long been considered an act of great piety to make a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, to visit our Saviour's sepulchre. At the decline of the Roman power, Jerusalem had fallen into the hands of the Saracens, who were not only the bravest, but also the most civilized people of Asia, at least of those who had intercourse with Europe.

2. While the Saracens remained masters of the Holy City, the Christian pilgrims were permitted to pay their devotions unmolested. About the year 1065, the Turks, who were at that time a very ignorant and brutal people, became masters of Jerusalem, and treated the pilgrims with great cruelty, and endeavored to prevent their visiting the sepulchre.

3. One of these pilgrims, called Peter the Hermit, though only a poor priest, made himself more famous than the most powerful king of his time. On his return from the Holy Land, inflamed by religious zeal, and by resentment against the Turks, he went about

---

the instance of Robert's generosity. 9. What of the king? 10. What became of Henry?

XXXII.—1. What is said of pilgrimages? 2. When did the Turks take Jerusalem? What was the consequence? 3. What did Peter the Hermit do? 4. What inducements

from country to country, exhorting the princes and nobles to go and fight the pagans, and drive them from Jerusalem.



FIGHT BETWEEN THE CRUSADES AND TURKS.

4. The pope entered warmly into the cause. He promised a complete forgiveness of their sins, however enormous they might be, to all such as should go on this holy expedition. Various temporal advantages were offered as inducements. Those who had borrowed money were to pay no interest for it during the time they were absent, and the poor debtor was discharged from all his debts by assuming the cross, as it was called.

5. Every person who engaged in the enterprise had a piece of red cloth in the form of a cross sewed upon the left shoulder of his cloak. Hence it was called a *crusade*, and those who engaged in it were called *crusaders*.

6. The French entered most zealously into the cause, and we must refer the reader to the history of that country for a full account of the seven great expeditions which left Europe to fight against the Infidels, in the whole of which the French acted a leading part. We will not burden our present history by a repetition of the whole details, but in the following chapters shall speak of those only in which the English were conspicuous.

7. It may be necessary to remind the reader that the Crusaders took the city of Jerusalem, and retained possession of it for about one hundred years, when it was reconquered by Saladin, a distinguished king and general of the Saracens.

3. The rage for crusading continued from the time of Peter the Hermit, in 1096, till 1291, a period of nearly two hundred years: during which Europe was drained of her wealth, and many millions of lives were sacrificed, without accomplishing the proposed object.

---

were held out by the pope? 5. Whence the name crusade, and crusaders? 7. How long did Jerusalem remain in the power of the Christians? Who took it from them? 8. How

9. But still some good arose out of all the evil. The Saracens were very superior to the Europeans in their knowledge of the sciences, such as mathematics, astronomy, chemistry, &c., and also in many of the arts and elegancies of life. Much of this learning was brought home by the crusaders. The Europeans have been improving, and gaining knowledge ever since; but the Turks, and all the people of the East, have either stood still or gone backward.

10. There are some travels in the East written about the year 1440, by De Brocquière, grand carver to the Duke of Burgundy, and you might suppose them written only last year; the manners of the people, as he describes them, being in every particular precisely the same as they are now said to be by travellers of our own time.

---

### CHAPTER XXXIII.

*William obtains large Territories by Mortgage.—His Death*



DEATH OF WILLIAM RUFUS.

1. As might have been expected from his character, Robert of Normandy engaged most zealously in the Holy War. To procure money for the expedition, he lent or mortgaged his territories for five years to his brother William, for a very large sum.

2. William raised the money, though not without some difficulty, and then, very much delighted with his bargain, took possession of Normandy. He did not find it a very quiet dominion; for it in-

---

long did the rage for crusading last? 9. What good resulted from the crusades? 10. What of the manners of the people of the East?

XXXIII.—1. How did Robert raise money for the crusades? 3. Who else mortgaged

volved him in continual wars with the King of France, in which sometimes the French, and sometimes the Normans, had the advantage.

3. The Duke of Guienne also proposed to mortgage all his dominions to William, who accepted the offer. But before he could take possession, all his plans of ambition were brought to a sudden end. Whilst he was waiting for a fair wind to sail for France, he used to amuse himself by hunting in the New Forest.

4. One day, as he sat at dinner, six arrows, very long and sharp, were brought to him. Keeping four himself, he gave the other two to Sir Walter Tyrrel, a Norman knight, saying, "Here, Tyrrel, take your two, for you know well how to use them."

5. After dinner they started off together for the forest. Anxious to show his dexterity, Tyrrel let fly an arrow at a stag which suddenly started before him; the arrow hit a tree, glanced and struck the king on the breast, and he instantly expired.

6. Tyrrel did not stop to tell anybody of the accident, but putting spurs to his horse, hastened to the sea-coast, and embarked for France, where he joined the crusaders in the expedition to Jerusalem, as a penance for his involuntary crime.

7. The body of the king was found by some laborers, and carried in a coal-cart to Winchester, where it was buried the next day without pomp. The death of William occurred in the year 1100, in the fortieth year of his age, and the thirteenth of his reign. He was never married.

8. There is one memorial of William II., which is still an object of admiration. This is Westminster Hall, in London, which he built; it is a noble structure, and contains one of the largest rooms in Europe. He also built the Tower of London, or rather he enlarged and strengthened a small fortress, which had been erected by the Conqueror, to keep the citizens in good order.

9. The Tower has been the scene of many memorable events. It has always been used as a prison for the confinement of persons accused of offences against the state, such as rebels, and others who in any way attempt to disturb or interrupt the government. But it has in modern times been much more interesting to most persons, as the place in which the king's *menagerie*, or collection of lions, tigers, and other wild animals, has been kept.

10. We ought to mention as one of the remarkable occurrences of this reign, that the Norwegians made an incursion into England in 1098. This was the last attempt on that country by any of the northern nations. Those restless people learned about this period the art of tillage, which provided them with food, and gave them occupation at home; this freed the rest of Europe from their piratical invasions.

---

their territories to William? 4, 5, 6. Relate the particulars of William's death. 7. When did it happen? How old was he? How long had he reigned? 8. What memorial of William remains? What of the Tower of London? 10. What of the incursions of the Norwegians?

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

*Henry I., surnamed Beauclerc, usurps the Crown.—Dispute between the Pope and the King.—Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, preaches against certain Fashions of Dress.*

1. THE news of the king's death soon reached the rest of the royal hunting party, who, in the pursuit of game, had become separated from their master. Henry, the conqueror's youngest son, was one of these, and, instead of showing any concern at his brother's death, or even waiting to see his body borne away from the spot where it fell, he put spurs to his horse, and rode directly to Winchester, where he seized on the royal treasure.

2. He then hastened to London; and, by great gifts, and many promises, disposed the people so much in his favor, that within three days after his brother's death, he was crowned king, in violation of the right of his brother Robert, who had not yet returned from the Holy Land.

3. Henry was of middle height, and well made; he had an agreeable countenance; his hair was brown, and very thick and bushy. He had received what was considered in those days a learned education, and, from having performed the great work of translating *Æsop's Fables*, he acquired the surname of *Beauclerc*, or *the Good Scholar*.

4. His character was made up of an extraordinary mixture of good and bad qualities. He was brave, eloquent, and extremely pleasing in his manners; he governed the kingdom with so much wisdom, and caused justice to be administered with so much impartiality, that, in spite of his ambition, his avarice, and his wicked conduct to his brother Robert, and that brother's son, William, the English esteem him as among the best of their kings.

5. The Normans would naturally support the claim of Robert to the crown of England; as a matter of policy, therefore, Henry courted the favor of his Anglo-Saxon subjects. He granted them a charter of privileges, or, more properly speaking, he restored Edward the Confessor's code of laws, to which that people were much attached.

6. He tried to conciliate the church by recalling Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, who had been banished by William II., for refusing to admit the king's authority to invest him with some of the rights of the archbishopric, he considering that authority to belong exclusively to the pope.

7. Before bishops took possession of their dignities, there had formerly been two ceremonies performed; they received from the hands of the sovereign a ring and a crosier—which was originally a staff, like a shepherd's crook, having the head bent—as symbols

XXXXIV.—1. What did Henry do, when he heard of his brother's death? 2. What was his success? Who was the rightful heir to the crown? 3. What is said of Henry I.? What was he surnamed? Why? 4. What of his character? 5. What course did Henry pursue from policy? 6. What dispute had arisen between the king and the

of their office, or spiritual power; and this was called the *investiture*.

8. But as they also held great possessions in land, they made those promises and submissions to the king which were required of vassals by the feudal law, and this was called doing *homage*. In obedience to orders from the pope, the priests, not only in England, but in all countries where the Roman Catholic religion prevailed (that is, in nearly all Christian countries), refused either to receive investiture from the sovereign, or to do homage to him.

9. The sovereigns stoutly resisted this claim; but such was the influence of the church over the minds of the superstitious people, that upon the continent of Europe the pope prevailed to the full extent of his claim. Henry was glad to make a compromise; he resigned the right of granting investiture, but was allowed to retain the homage.

10. We have before told you that the clergy were divided into two parties; the monks, or regular clergy, and the secular clergy. Though the monks prevailed and obtained all the dignities of the churches, the secular clergy still exercised the duties of the parish priests in the villages.

11. It will be recollect that the monks were not allowed to marry. Having no domestic ties to excite and keep alive their kindly feelings, many of them became hard, unfeeling bigots. Anselm was a monk, and seems to have been wanting in common humanity; for by his influence a law was made, obliging such of the secular priests as were married to put away their wives, and forbidding them ever to see them again, or to suffer them to live on any lands belonging to the church, on pain of seeing them reduced to slavery, or otherwise severely punished.

12. Anselm not only conducted arbitrarily in the affairs of the church, but he troubled himself about the dress of the laity. He preached so furiously and so successfully against long hair, and curls, which he disapproved of, that the ladies absolutely cut off their locks in the church.

13. He was not so successful in the attacks he made on the fashionable shoes of the gentlemen; for, notwithstanding his threatenings and exhortations, they continued to wear them so enormously long, that they were obliged to support them by a chain from the end of the toe, fastened to the knee.

---

pope? 7. What was *investiture*? 8. What was *homage*? What did the pope order in relation to these? 9. How was the dispute settled in England? 10. What of the clergy? 11. What law did Anselm procure to be passed? 12, 13. What fashions in dress did Anselm preach against? With what success?

## CHAPTER XXXV.

*More about Henry.—Edgar Atheling.—Death of Duke Robert.*

1. To endear himself yet more to his Anglo-Saxon subjects Henry married Matilda, daughter of Malcolm, King of Scotland, and niece of Edgar Atheling, and therefore of the Anglo-Saxon royal family.

2. In the mean time, Robert had returned from the Holy Land, and resumed possession of Normandy. Without any delay he commenced his preparations for invading England, and asserting his right to the crown. He landed with his army at Portsmouth, on the 19th of July, 1101.

3. Henry now found the benefit of his conciliatory conduct towards the English, who remained true to him, while the Normans chiefly took part with Robert, against whom Henry marched with a powerful force. The two armies remained within sight of each other for several days without coming to an engagement.

4. This gave Anselm and some of the barons who were desirous of peace, an opportunity of concluding a treaty between the two princes, in which it was agreed that Robert should renounce his pretensions to the crown of England, in consideration of Henry granting him a pension, and promising to restore those Normans who had joined him, to their honors and estates in England.

5. No sooner had Robert returned to Normandy, than Henry, totally regardless of his promise, deprived of their offices and possessions all those barons who had taken his brother's part. When Robert heard this, he returned to England and remonstrated with Henry on this breach of faith; but he soon found, that instead of benefiting his friends, he was endangering himself by staying in England; and he escaped in safety only by giving up his pension.

6. In 1106, Henry invaded Normandy, and in a battle fought on the 28th of September, he took Robert prisoner, and many of his nobles, among whom was Edgar Atheling. Edgar, however, was not considered a formidable enemy, and was soon set at liberty. His Saxon blood and his mild disposition made him a favorite with the English; whilst the weakness of his character rendered him too insignificant to be feared by the Normans.

7. From this time till his death, which was not till he was very old, he lived quietly in England, and probably far more happily than any of those who were wearing that crown to which, by birth, he had the best right.

8. Robert's fate was not so happy; he was brought a prisoner to England; and his cruel and unrelenting brother kept him in confinement till his death, twenty-eight years afterward. The circumstances which attended this event are thus related:

---

XXXV.—1. Whom did Henry marry? 2. What did Robert do? 4. How were Henry and Robert reconciled? 5. How did Henry keep his promises? 6, 7. What of Edgar Atheling? 9, 10. Relate the particulars of Robert's death.

9. "King Henry, on a festival day, putting on a new scarlet cloak, the hood, being too small, was torn in putting it over his head. On which the king said, 'My brother Robert has a smaller head than I have; let him have this garment.' The cloak was accordingly sent to the duke.

10. "The torn place not having been sewed up, he discovered it, and asked, 'If any one had worn it before?' And being told the circumstance, he considered it as a deep affront, and exclaimed, 'Now I perceive that I have lived too long, since my brother clothes me like an almsman in his cast rent garments.' He then refused to take food, and died in consequence."

### CHAPTER XXXVI.

*Melancholy Condition of the King.—Attempts to seize the person of his Nephew.—How the young Prince is saved.—King Henry has many Enemies.*

1. AFTER the capture of Duke Robert, the whole of Normandy submitted to Henry. Hitherto everything seemed to have prospered with him; but we should be much mistaken if we supposed him to be happy. From this time he never knew what happiness was. Remorse for his conduct towards his brother preyed unceasingly on his mind.

2. He in vain endeavored to stifle it by founding monasteries and building churches. Though groaning under the burden of one crime, he was yet meditating the commission of another, that of destroying his brother's son, William, a child of ten years old; whose rightful claims kept him in continual dread, and prevented all enjoyment of what he had so unjustly acquired.

3. He therefore sent one of his servants into France to seize on the young prince; but by the vigilance and fidelity of the people who were left in charge of him, the child was carried to a place of safety. Henry, enraged at this disappointment, deprived the guardian of the prince of all his estates, and his personal safety was secured only by flight.

4. The faithful Helie de St. Leon, for this was his name, having no longer a home of his own, wandered about from court to court, claiming protection for his royal charge, who was everywhere pitied for his misfortunes, and admired for his many virtues, as well as for the beauty of his person.

5. The Earl of Angiers engaged to assist him, and promised him his daughter Sibylla in marriage; but Henry no sooner heard that his nephew had gained so powerful a friend, than he resolved to prevent the intended match, and offered his own son William in marriage to Matilda, another daughter of the earl.

XXXVI.—1. What were the feelings of Henry? 2. What new crime did he meditate? 3. Did he effect his intention? 4. Who was the guardian of Robert's son? What is said of the son of Robert? 5. How did Henry prevent his marriage? 6. Whither did the

6. The earl found the temptation so strong that he broke off the contract with William, the son of Robert, and concluded one with William, the son of Henry. The unfortunate prince, still attended by Helie, then retired to the court of Flanders, where the earl received them with great kindness.

7. Henry probably showed some disinclination to fulfil his agreement for the marriage of his son; for in 1118 we find the Duke of Anjou united with Louis, King of France, and the Earl of Flanders, against him. They were joined by many Norman barons.

8. Henry, surrounded by enemies, both secret and declared, knew not whom to trust, nor whom to fear. He slept in armor, and with a guard watching in his apartment. Nevertheless, his prudence and vigilance did not forsake him. He contrived to regain the favor of the Norman barons, and detached the Duke of Anjou from the alliance by solemnizing the proposed marriage.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### *Battle of Brenneville.—Ancient Armor.*

1. THE King of France, and those associated with him, met the army of Henry in the plains of Brenneville, not far from Rouen. A fierce battle ensued, in which the English were victorious. It is remarkable for having cost the lives of only three knights, although an unusually large number were engaged in it. This was owing to their being clad in complete armor, and to the desire which each party felt to take prisoners, rather than to take life.

2. The ransom, that is, the sum of money received from prisoners for their restoration to liberty, formed an important part of the revenues of the fighting men at this period.

3. The use of armor by the English was comparatively a new thing. The Saxons and Danes had no other defence than a shield and a helmet, till a little before the time of the Conquest, when the nobles adopted armor, something like that of the Normans.

4. This consisted of a whole dress of little rings of iron, linked together so ingeniously, like net-work, that it fitted close to the limbs and body, and was, at the same time, as flexible as a stocking. Under this they wore a dress called a *gambeson*, which we suppose to have been like a shirt without sleeves or collar, and quilted or stuffed with wool.

5. Sometimes the *gambeson* was worn over the *hauberk*, or *coat of mail*, as the chain armor was called. But it seems that this kind of armor was not found to be sufficient defence against the point of a

---

prince go from Anjou? 7. What league was formed against Henry? 8. What did Henry do?

XXXVII.—1. Where did the hostile armies meet? What was the result of the battle? Why were so few lives lost? 3. What is said of the use of armor by the English? 4, 5. What was the *hauberk*? What the *gambeson*? What new kind of armor was intro-

spear or arrow ; for in the fourteenth century, plate armor was introduced, so called from being made of plates of iron.

6. These were often so heavy, that when a knight in his armor was overthrown, he lay on the ground immovable till he was helped up ; and there were many instances, in hot weather, and in the press of battle, of persons being suffocated with the heat and weight of their armor.

7. In an engagement between the French and Italians, in 1405, some Italian knights, who were overthrown, lay like huge lobsters, and could not be killed till their armor was broken by the French soldiers with wood-cutters' axes. There was also an intermediate kind of armor, called scale armor, formed of little pieces of iron laid one over another, like the scales of a fish ; but this does not appear to have been long in use.

8. At first the hauberk, though it covered the head like a hood, left the face quite exposed, except that it was sometimes guarded by a *nasal*, a part of the cap which projected over the nose. But by degrees they covered the face more and more, till at length close *visors* were adopted. This armor was a pretty sure defence against the weapons then in use, for gunpowder was not invented till long after the time of Henry I.

9. The knights fought with lances, spears, and swords ; and the common soldiers with slings and bows, in the use of which the English excelled all other nations. The French were more active, but the English had more bodily strength. Besides these arms, various kinds of machines were used for throwing darts and stones to a great distance.

---

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

*Melancholy Death of Prince William, and a large number of the young Nobles.*

1. HENRY had adopted every means which his prudence and wisdom could suggest to secure to his son the succession to the crown. He required all his earls and barons to swear fealty to him, that is, to acknowledge him as their lord, and to maintain his right to the throne with fidelity. He also spent much time in Normandy, seeking to gain the good will of the nobles.

2. But how useless was all this anxiety ! This beloved son, for whose aggrandizement he had done and sacrificed so much, was suddenly snatched from him. When the king arrived at Harfleur, on his way back to England from a visit to Normandy, in 1120, he was accosted by a man, who claimed the right of carrying the

---

duced in the fourteenth century ? 6, 7. What is said of the plate armor ? What of scale armor ? 8. How was the face protected ? 9. What were the offensive weapons at this period ?

XXXVIII.—1. For what was Henry very anxious ? How did he try to secure his ob-

kings of England across the seas, by virtue of a promise of William the Conqueror to his father.



PRINCE WILLIAM AND HIS SISTER.

3 This promise had been made as a reward for the father's services in carrying William over to England when he went to the Conquest. Henry was in haste to reach England, and could not alter the arrangements already made. Not to disappoint the man who had caused a vessel to be gallantly equipped in a style worthy of the occasion, he told him that his son should embark in it.

4. Accordingly the young prince, with a large number of the young nobles, and many ladies of rank, went on board the *white ship*. The prince had ordered some wine to be given to the crew, of which they drank so freely that many were intoxicated. The rest of the fleet had sailed before them, and the captain crowding all sail, and plying all his oars to overtake them, the vessel suddenly struck upon a rock.

5. A boat was immediately let down, into which the young prince and some of his attendants were hurried; and they might have reached the shore in safety, had not the prince insisted on going back to rescue his sister. On board the vessel all was terror and confusion; as soon as the boat approached, so many persons jumped into it, that it instantly sank, and every creature in it perished.

6. Of three hundred persons on board the vessel, only one escaped.

This was a butcher of Rouen, who, by clinging to a mast, contrived to keep his head above water till the next morning, when he was picked up by some fishermen. The captain had also clung to the same mast, but when the butcher told him that the prince had perished, he let go his hold and was drowned.

7. The news of this misfortune reached England the next day; but it was three days before any one had courage to tell the king of it. At last a boy was instructed to fall at his feet, and tell him that the white ship was lost, with all on board. Henry immediately fainted away. It was a long time before the violence of his grief abated, and he never was seen to smile again.

8. England would probably have found a tyrant in Prince William, had he lived to come to the throne; for he hated the English, and had been heard to threaten that, when he should be king, he would make them draw the plough, and turn them into beasts of burden.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

*Matilda, daughter of Henry, marries Geoffrey Plantagenet.—Death of Henry I.—Stephen usurps the Crown.*

1. HENRY had now only one child left, and that one a daughter, Matilda, who was married to Henry V., Emperor of Germany, and she had no children. This state of things encouraged the friends of William of Normandy to make fresh attempts in his favor; but they were not attended with any success.

2. William, having married a sister of the Queen of France, received a small territory as her dowry, and thus at last became possessed of a spot of ground that he might call his own. A few years afterwards the King of France put him in possession of a part of Flanders, to which he had a claim in right of his grandmother Matilda, wife of the Conqueror.

3. But no sooner did fortune seem to smile on this young prince, than he died of wounds received in battle. Before his death he wrote a letter to Henry, entreating his favor for his faithful friend Helie, and the other barons who had followed his fortunes. It is pleasing to be able to say that this last request of the gallant and ill-fated son of Robert was generously complied with.

4. In the year 1126, Matilda became a widow. She then returned to live with her father, who made all the nobles swear fealty to her, as they had formerly done to her brother. The following year he married her to Geoffrey, eldest son of the Earl of Anjou, who was surnamed Plantagenet. This name is derived from the Latin words *planta*, plant, and *genista*, broom.

particulars of his death. 6. How many were saved? 7. How was the king affected by the news? 8. What is said of Prince William?

XXXIX.—1. How many children had Henry? 2, 3. What is said of William, son of Robert? 4. What did Henry do to secure the crown to his daughter? Who was her

5. Why it was given to the house of Anjou, antiquaries are not agreed. One old chronicle tells us, that a prince of that family, having killed his brother, to obtain his possessions, made a pilgrimage to the Holy Land to expiate his crime; and as a further penance, flogged himself every night with a rod of the plant called *broom*; whence he became nicknamed *planta-genista*, or *planta-genet*.

6. The great love which Henry had for his own children, bore a striking contrast to his want of affection for his brother and his nephew William. That he might be near his daughter, he spent the latter part of his life in Normandy. After living to see her the mother of three sons, he died on the 1st of December, 1135, in the sixty-seventh year of his age, and the thirty-sixth of his reign.

7. All the precautions which Henry had taken to secure the crown to his daughter proved vain. He had a nephew named Stephen, son of his sister Adela and the Count of Blois. This young man had always been a great favorite with his uncle, who had loaded him with riches and honors.

8. He had been loud in his professions of gratitude, and of his zeal, and fidelity to his uncle's family; and had been amongst the first to swear to maintain the rights of Matilda to be the successor. But no sooner did he hear of the king's death, than he hastened over to England, where he soon procured himself to be crowned at Westminster.

---

## CHAPTER XL.

### *Proceedings of Stephen.—Miserable State of the Kingdom.—A Civil War.*

1. WE are told that Stephen had a very graceful person; he was strong and active, and was very courageous. He was also pleasant in his manners, and in his conversation. He had always been a great favorite with the people, and to this he owed the success of his attempt on the crown. He was kind and indulgent to his own family, and profuse in his kindness to his friends and favorites.

2. His usurpation of the throne had been so totally unexpected, that no preparations had been made against it; and he had time to strengthen himself, before the adherents of Matilda had recovered from their surprise. Malcolm, King of Scotland, was the first to take up arms in favor of his niece. He advanced into England with an army, but Stephen contrived to win him over by giving up to him a large territory in the north of England.

3. Robert, Earl of Gloucester, was the most powerful baron in England at this time, and he was warmly attached to the cause of

---

second husband? 5. What was the surname of her husband? 6. When did Henry die? What was his age? 7. Who was Stephen de Blois? 8. What did he do after his uncle's death?

XL.—1. What is said of Stephen? 2. What of the friends of Matilda? 3, 4. What

Matilda; but as the other nobles acknowledged Stephen, he was obliged to yield. But he bound himself to submit to him as king no longer than Stephen kept the promises he had made in favor of all orders of men.

4. The clergy and barons took the oath of allegiance with the same condition, and the latter required for themselves the right of fortifying their castles. In consequence, England was soon covered with fortresses. In these the barons lived like robbers in their dens, and sallied out only to plunder and fight.

5. Private wars arose among the barons, and were carried on with great fury in all parts of the kingdom; the less powerful found themselves obliged to purchase, at any rate, the protection of some neighboring chieftain; the country was laid waste, and the most shocking cruelties were practised upon those taken captive, in order to make them reveal their treasures.

6. Stephen was at length compelled to adopt some measures to check the wickedness of the barons. This occasioned great discontent, which gave courage to Robert of Gloucester, who had now openly espoused the cause of Matilda, to raise the standard of rebellion.

7. Matilda herself soon came over to England, and was kindly entertained by Adelais, the widow of Henry, at her castle of Arundel. Stephen at once laid siege to this castle, and would soon have taken it, had it not been represented to him, that thus to take a castle belonging to Adelais, the queen-dowager, as the widow of a king is called, would show a great want of respect for her.

8. Stephen, who possessed a great deal of that generous and romantic spirit which led to the institution of chivalry, would do nothing which should injure his reputation as a good knight. He permitted Matilda to come out, and to proceed in safety to Bristol, another castle equally strong with the one which she had left.

9. Matilda made use of the freedom which she owed entirely to the generosity of the king to raise an army against him. England was now for several years desolated by one of the most calamitous wars ever known. War and tumult were spread in every quarter. Instead of an open contest, it was a miserable kind of hostility, and displayed all the worst evils of the feudal system.

10. Each baron, shut up in his own castle with his own retainers, kept up a petty war with his nearest neighbor of the opposite party. The land was left untilled, and a grievous famine was the consequence. At length, on the 2d of February, 1141, the king and the Earl of Gloucester met in battle, in which the latter was victorious, and Stephen was taken prisoner.

---

did the nobles require? 5. What is said of the state of the country? 6. What did Stephen do? What was the consequence? 7. What did Matilda do? 8. What instance of the generosity of Stephen? 9. What is said of the war that followed? 10. What was the result?

## CHAPTER XLI.

*Matilda acknowledged as Queen.—Her Escape from Stephen.—Peace restored.—Death of Stephen.*



THE QUEEN OF STEPHEN PRAYING FOR HIS LIBERTY.

1. AFTER this great victory, Matilda, or Maude, as she was called by the Normans, was acknowledged as queen. Instead of acting with prudence, or even with gratitude, she became puffed up with her success, treated her friends very rudely, and her opponents very insolently. She conducted towards Stephen while in prison with great inhumanity, and when his queen begged her to release him, she replied only by insult.

2. She so disgusted all orders of people by her behavior, that even while she was making preparations for her coronation, she was obliged to fly from London, and seek refuge in Winchester. Here she was soon besieged by Stephen's brother, Henry, Bishop of Winchester.

3. The castle being in danger of being taken, she mounted a swift horse, and with difficulty escaped. Robert, Earl of Gloucester, in attempting to follow her, was made prisoner. He was, however, soon after exchanged for Stephen, and thus, by both being taken prisoners, both regained their liberty.

4. Matilda soon after had another narrow escape; for being pursued by Stephen, she saved herself by being borne in a litter, like a dead body, to Oxford. Stephen continued before Oxford three months, having sworn not to raise the siege till he had taken Matilda prisoner.

XLI.—1. What was the consequence of the capture of Stephen? How did Matilda behave? 2. What was the consequence of her behavior? 3. What procured the release

At last the garrison was reduced to extremity by famine. Still the queen's spirit was too proud to allow her to surrender.

5. It being now the middle of winter, the ground was covered with snow. Matilda and three of her trusty knights, attiring themselves wholly in white, passed out of the castle by a postern gate. After crossing the frozen river, and walking six miles, they reached Abingdon in safety, where they procured horses to carry them to Wallingford.

6. At this place she was met by Earl Robert, on his return from Normandy, with her son, Prince Henry, a fine, promising boy of eleven years of age; and she soon forgot all her fatigues and alarms in the joy of that happy meeting.

7. The fatal and ruinous warfare continued for some years longer. Indeed, it seemed as if the people were become so much accustomed to fighting, that they did not know how to leave off. In 1147, Robert, Earl of Gloucester, died; on which, Matilda, wearied out with the struggle, resigning her claims to her son Henry, retired to Normandy, and passed the remainder of her life in quiet, seldom interfering in public affairs.

8. Matilda left one memorial of herself in England, which is worth mentioning. Stow, an old chronicler, gives this account of it: "This Matilda, when she saw the forde to be dangerous for them that travelled by the Old Forde over the river Sea (for she had herself been well washed in the water), caused two stone bridges to be builded, of which the one was over the Sea, at the town of Stratford, now called *Bow*, because the bridge was arched like a bow."

9. This, he tells us, was "a rare piece of worke; for before that time the like had never been seen in England." All former bridges had been made of wood. In 1153, Prince Henry arrived from Normandy with an army. Stephen, with his forces, met him at Wallingford.

10. The two armies remained near one another for several days without engaging in battle. Some of the barons, who deplored the miseries of the country, had thus an opportunity of proposing an accommodation, to which Stephen the more willingly assented, having a short time before lost his eldest son, Eustace.

11. It was agreed that Stephen should remain king during his life, and that Henry should be his successor. The news of the treaty was received with the greatest joy. Stephen did not long survive. He died on the 25th of October, 1154, upon which Henry II. peaceably took possession of the throne.

---

of Stephen? 5. How did Matilda escape from Oxford? 6. Who met her at Wallingford? 7. When did Robert, Earl of Gloucester, die? What did Matilda do soon after? 8, 9. What memorial remains of her? When did Henry return to England? 11. How were the difficulties settled? When did Stephen die? Who succeeded him?

## CHAPTER XLII.

*How the Ladies employed themselves in the time of Henry II.*

1. OUR readers may be curious to know how the ladies were occupied during the stormy times we have been describing. The daughters of noblemen were generally educated in *nunneries* till they were married. These were societies of women, who had taken upon themselves vows similar to those of the monks.

2. These religious houses were respected by both parties, and the young ladies, besides being instructed in the branches then considered essential to female education, such as surgery, needlework, and cookery, were also saved from the dangers to which the violence of the times would have exposed them.

3. After they were married, they lived in their husbands' castles, and were often besieged, and taken prisoners. In times of battle they employed themselves in making salves, and attending upon the wounded.

4. If there were none of these requiring their care, they occupied themselves in embroidery and needlework. They used to sit in the great hall, surrounded by their damsels, working with them and setting them their tasks, like the mantua-makers and milliners of the present day.

5. Some specimens of their work are yet preserved. At Caen, in Normandy, there is a very curious piece of the kind, called the *Bayeux tapestry*, which is said to have been the work of Queen Matilda, the wife of the Conqueror; though others suppose it to have been the work of her grand-daughter, Maude, or Matilda, of whose disputes with Stephen we have just been telling you.

6. Upon it is represented the Conquest of England, worked with worsted in a series of pictures. The faces are supposed to be portraits, but it is not possible that they can be very good likenesses.

7. Though the wives of the barons never went out visiting, they were very far from leading a solitary life. Every lady had a number of damsels attendant upon her, who were daughters of inferior nobles, or gentlemen, or perhaps her own relatives.

8. Besides this, the castle of every powerful baron was a school for the young nobles. They had nothing to do with books; but were instructed in everything that a soldier should know. They were taught to take care of horses, horsemanship, and the use of arms.

9. To every castle belonged an enclosed space called the *till-yard*, where the young men practised all the exercises requisite to make good warriors. Their games were calculated to improve their strength and agility. Riding at the ring was one of these; the object of which was, while riding at full speed, to run the point of the lance through a small ring that hung suspended from a high post.

---

XLII.—1. How were the young ladies generally educated? What is said of nunneries? 2. In what were young ladies instructed? 3, 4. How were they employed after marriage? 5, 6. What is said of the Bayeux tapestry? 7. By whom were the ladies attended? 8. What is said of the education of the young nobles? 9. What was

10. The favorite game of the younger boys was the *quintain*. The quintain itself was somewhat like a turnstile, with two arms instead of four. On one arm was painted a board or shield, and to the other hung a bag of sand, or a piece of wood. The play was for the boy to run at the shield, and push it with a long stick.

11. When the shield was struck, of course the arms of the quintain to which it was fastened turned round instantly; and, if the boy was not very quick in his movements, the bag of sand would give him a heavy knock on the back before he could get out of the way.

---

## CHAPTER XLIII.

### *Pages, Esquires, and Knights.*

1. THE young nobles commenced their career as *pages* or *valets*. It was the duty of the page to assist his lord in dressing, to wait upon him and his lady and noble guests at table, and to attend him when he rode abroad. After serving the requisite time as page, he was advanced to the rank of *esquire*. He now practised and perfected himself in all knightly accomplishments. His present age would make him a more agreeable companion for the ladies. He joined in their dances, and cheered them with his music. In their society he acquired the courtesy and politeness of manners, which were indispensable to a good knight.

2. He was relieved from the services required of the page, but was called upon for more dangerous and responsible ones. He attended his lord to battle. He was not expected to take part in the fight, and was in little danger, for, as he wore no armor, it was considered dishonorable for a knight to attack him.

3. He stood ready to render any assistance which his lord might require. If he were overthrown, he helped him to rise; if he were wounded, he carried him from the field; if the wound were mortal, he received his lord's dying commands, and after his death, bestowed upon his body an honorable burial.

4. A writer of the reign of Henry II., thus describes the exercises of the youth: "Crowds of noble and sprightly youths, mounted on war horses, admirably trained to perform all their turnings and evolutions, ride into the fields in distinct bands, armed with lances and shields, and exhibit representations of battles.

5. "The hope of victory rouses the spirits of these noble youths; their fiery horses neigh and prance, and champ their foaming bits. At length the signal is given, and the sports begin. The youths, divided into opposite bands, encounter one another. In one place,

---

the tilt-yard? What was one of the favorite games? 10, 11. What was a favorite game with the boys? Describe the game of the quintain.

XLIII.—1. What were the duties of a page? What is said of esquires? 2, 3. What were their duties? 4, 5. What does an author of the age of Henry II. say of the exercises

some flee, and others pursue, without overtaking them. In another place, one of the bands overtakes and overturns the other."

6. At length the young noble arrived at a proper age to receive that honor, for which he had gone through a course of long and laborious preparation. If he was perfect in his martial exercises, courteous in his demeanor, polite and attentive to the ladies, obedient to his superiors, respectful to his elders, was skilled in music and dancing, possessed in short of all knightly accomplishments, he was admitted to the order of knights.

7. Every knight had the power of conferring this dignity. Sometimes an esquire had an opportunity of performing some gallant action in battle, and was knighted upon the field. This was esteemed the most honorable mode of obtaining it. Such a one was called a *knight-banneret*.

8. Kneeling down before the knight who was to bestow the honor, he received a blow on the left shoulder with a sword, from the knight, who said, "In the name of God, of St. George, and of St. Michael the Archangel, rise up, Sir John!" or "Sir Thomas," or whatever else the name might be.

9. But the process was usually longer, and accompanied with much ceremony, and many solemnities. The candidate for knighthood prepared himself by fasting and prayer. Having bathed and clothed himself in a white garment, as a symbol of the purity and truth that must distinguish his future life, he entered the church, and, advancing to the altar, presented his sword to the priest, who blessed it, and then returned it to him.

10. The novice then, with clasped hands, went and fell upon his knees before the elder knight, who took from him the sword, and administered the oath. He swore to speak the truth; to maintain the right; to protect the distressed; to practise courtesy; to defend his religion; to despise the allurements of ease, and to vindicate in every perilous adventure the honor of his name.

11. He was then invested by the knights, or ladies, or damsels present, with the exterior marks of chivalry,—his *spurs*, his *coat of mail*, his *brassards*, (the covering for the arms,) his gauntlets or iron gloves; and lastly his sword was buckled on. Then the elder knight, rising from his seat, gave him the blow on his shoulder, or *accolade*, and this was intended as a warning of the sufferings he would be called upon to bear.

12. While giving the *accolade*, the elder knight repeated the same words as in the former case. The helmet, buckler, and lance, were now given, after which, mounting and curveting his steed, brandishing his lance, and glittering his sword, the new knight paraded about amidst the acclamations of the people.

13. There were some knights who devoted their lives to the protection of the injured and helpless. They were not formed into any regular body, but were quite independent of one another, and trav-

---

of the youth? 6. What were the requisites of a knight? 7. Who had the power of knighting? What was a knight-banneret? 8. With what ceremony were such made knights? 9, 10, 11, 12. Relate the usual process of making a knight. 13. What is said of knights-errant? 14. What of chivalry?

elled about from place to place for the purpose of redressing grievances. These were called *knights-errant*.

14. This class of knights might well do a great deal of good in those lawless times, when might made right. The whole institution of *chivalry*, as the system was called, of which knighthood was one of the chief characteristics, did infinite service in softening the ferocious manners of the times. It had its origin in France, and no traces of it have been found among the plain and rustic Saxons.

#### TABLE OF THE NORMAN KINGS.

Began to reign. Reigned.

1066	21	William I., the Conqueror.
1087	13	William Rufus, } sons of William the Conqueror.
1100	35	Henry I.,
1135	19	Stephen, son of Adela, daughter of William the Conqueror, and the Count of Blois.

#### CHILDREN OF HENRY I.

William, lost in the White Ship.

Matilda, wife of the Emperor of Germany, and afterwards of Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou. She is commonly called the Empress Maude.

### CHAPTER XLIV.

*Surnames.—Of the Education of Henry II.—Learned Men of that Age.—About the only Englishman that ever was made Pope.*

1. WHEN the Normans went over to England, many of their leaders would naturally have the same Christian name. To distinguish one from the other, they were called by the name of the place from which they came; as, for example, Robert d'Evreux, Henry d'Arcy, Walter de Courtenay, &c., which mean Robert of Evreux, Henry of Arcy, &c.

2. Their children wishing to preserve the remembrance of their origin, also called themselves by the same names; but in the course of time the French word *de*, meaning *of*, was either dropped entirely, or made part of the last name, as Devreux, Darcy, &c.

3. It was soon found that family names were not only honorable, but convenient; accordingly they became universal; but at the time of which we are now speaking, they were assumed only by noble families; and it was a long time before they were adopted by the lower orders of people.

4. When they began to use them, sometimes they added their father's name with *son* at the end of it, as, Thomas Johnson; and sometimes their mother's name, as, Horatio Nelson; or, perhaps

XLIV.—1, 2. What is said of the use of surnames by the Norman nobles? 3, 4. Whence were they generally formed for the other classes? 5. What is the name Plantagenet?

they took their father's nickname, as, Hobbs from Robert, Bates from Bartholomew, Hodges from Roger, &c., and hence also Gibson, Sampson, &c. Some took their name from their trade, or office; as Smith, Weaver, Walker, (which is Fuller in old English,) Porter, Shepherd, Spencer, (that is, steward.)

5. I have already told you that Geoffrey of Anjou was called *Plantagenet*, and mentioned a derivation which an old legend gives of that name. The more probable story is, that one of the family wore a sprig of the plant *genista*, or broom, in his helmet, that his son retained it, and by this means it became the surname of the family.

6. Henry *Plantagenet* was at this time twenty-one years of age; of the middle size, and remarkably strong and active. He was very lively, and interesting in conversation. He was rather inclined to grow fat, but he guarded against it by abstemiousness and exercise.

7. He was a very graceful rider, even to the last years of his life. He was educated in the castle of the Duke of Gloucester, one of the most learned as well as virtuous noblemen of the age. Under his care, Henry acquired not only all the common military accomplishments of the times, but the uncommon one of a taste for study.

8. He delighted in the conversation of learned men, and had so good a memory that he remembered every book he had read, and every face he had seen. The invention of paper had made it less expensive to multiply books, though, as the art of printing was not yet known, it was only to be done by transcribing.

9. Every monastery had its *writing-room*, where the younger monks were employed in copying books. Few among the laity could write, and all the authors of this time were monks and priests. There were many learned men, both historians and poets. Of these, the most eminent are William of Malmesbury, Henry of Huntingdon, and Giraldus Cambrensis.

10. In this age lived Nicholas Breakspear, the only Englishman who was ever made pope. When a lad he was a servant in the Abbey of St. Albans. Being reproached for idleness, he left the abbey and went to Paris, where it was the custom for English students to resort, as the University of Paris was then the best in Europe.

11. At Paris he applied himself so earnestly to study, that he obtained the notice of Pope Eugenius III., who, after a time, made him a cardinal, as the highest dignitaries in the Roman Catholic church, under the rank of pope, are called. In 1164 he was chosen pope, and took the name of Adrian IV.

---

*agenet?* 6. What of the personal appearance of Henry II.? 7. By whom was he educated? What taste did he acquire? 8. What had made books cheaper? 9. Of what class were the authors of this age? Who were the most eminent? 10, 11. What is said of Nicholas Breakspear?

## CHAPTER XLV.

*More about Henry II.—Conduct and Character of Queen Eleanor.*



QUEEN ELEANOR AND ROSAMOND.

1. HENRY II. inherited all that was good and admirable in his grandfather's character, without his bad qualities. He was the first king since Edward the Confessor who had come fairly by the crown; so that the people of England were prepared to receive him with great joyfulness.

2. The Saxon blood which he inherited from his grandmother made him highly acceptable to the English, who were pleased to think that in him the old Saxon line was restored. Henry was very powerful, from his territories on the continent of Europe, before he succeeded to the crown of England.

3. He received possession of Normandy when he was sixteen years old. By his father's death, in 1151, he became possessed of Anjou, Touraine, and Maine. The year after, he married Eleanor, heiress of Guienne and Poitou. She was many years older than himself, and had before been married to the King of France.

4. That monarch had been separated from her for the alleged

XLV.—1. How was Henry received by the English people? 3. What were his possessions on the continent of Europe? Whom did he marry? 4. What is said of his wife?

reason that she was his fourth or fifth cousin, and marriage between persons even distantly related is forbidden by the Roman Catholic church. But the true reason, doubtless, was that she was a very troublesome woman; and Henry soon perceived that he had paid a dear price for the rich provinces she had brought him. She was constantly exciting his sons to rebellion, and it is said she administered poison to Rosamond, or the "fair Rosamond," as she is called in history, and thus caused her death.

5. The first thing that Henry did on coming to the throne, was to send away all the foreign soldiers that Stephen had brought into England, and to order all the castles that had been built during the civil wars to be demolished. He also confirmed the charter of privileges to the people. It has been said that "no king in so short a time had done so much good, and gained so much love, since Alfred."

6. In 1155 he recovered the territory which Stephen had ceded to the King of Scotland. He then carried his arms against the Welsh, who were very troublesome neighbors, and only granted them peace upon terms favorable to himself.

7. We next find him engaged in a war with the King of France, which, after several years' continuance, was ended by a marriage between his eldest son, Henry, an infant five years old, and Marguerite, the daughter of the King of France, who was not yet out of her cradle.

8. In 1165 he received a still further accession of power; for the Duke of Brittany, finding himself unable to keep in subjection his turbulent barons, resigned his territories to Henry, to hold them in trust for Constantia, his daughter, who was betrothed to Geoffrey, the third son of the king.

## CHAPTER XLVI.

*Thomas à Becket.—How he lost his rich Cloak.*

1. WE must now introduce you to Thomas à Becket, who was at this time a very distinguished person, and whose quarrels with King Henry were a subject of concern and interest even to many foreign potentates. This celebrated man was the son of a citizen of London, and was the first Anglo-Saxon who had arrived at any kind of eminence since the Conquest.

2. He had early been remarked for his great abilities, and for his attachment to the cause of Matilda. When Henry came to the throne, he selected Becket as his favorite and companion, and at length made him his chancellor, which is the third dignity in the kingdom.

3. Becket now indulged himself in every kind of luxury and mag-

5. What did Henry do in England? 6. In what wars did he engage? 7. How was the war with France ended? 8. What accession of power did he receive in 1165?

XLVI.—1. Who was Thomas à Becket? 2. To what office did Henry appoint him

nificence. He never moved without a numerous train of servants; his ordinary retinue when upon a journey consisted of two hundred knights, each having his own attendants; there were eight wagons containing provisions, furniture, and clothes, besides twelve pack-horses loaded with plate, books, and money.

4. To each wagon was chained a fierce mastiff, and on each pack-horse sat a monkey. In his dress, Becket was splendid in the extreme; the luxury of his table and of his furniture was greater than had ever been seen before.

5. Fitz-Stephen, who was his secretary, and wrote the history of his life, states as an instance of his extreme delicacy, "that in winter his apartments were every day covered with clean hay and straw, and in summer with green rushes, or boughs, that the gentlemen who paid court to him, and who could not, by reason of their number, find seats at table, might not soil their fine clothes by sitting on a dirty floor."

6. Though Becket had been admitted to the first order in the priesthood, he considered himself more a layman than an ecclesiastic, and employed his leisure in hunting, hawking, and similar amusements. He also engaged in military affairs, and conducted 700 knights, at his own expense, to attend the king in his war in France.

7. His house was a place of education for the sons of the chief nobility, and the king was often present at the entertainments he gave. As an instance of the familiarity with which the king treated Becket, Fitz-Stephen tells the following story:

8. One day, while they were riding together in the streets of London, they met a poor beggar shivering with cold. The king made the observation that it would be a good deed to give that poor man a warm coat. The chancellor agreed, and added, "You do well, sir, in thinking of such a good action."

9. "Then he shall have one presently," said the king, and, seizing on the chancellor's cloak, which was of scarlet lined with ermine, he tried to pull it off. The chancellor, not liking to part with it, held it fast, and the king and he were near pulling one another off their horses in the scuffle. At last, Becket letting the cloak go, the king gave it to the beggar, who was not a little astonished at the scene and at the gift.

## CHAPTER XLVII.

*Henry attempts to check the Usurpations of the Clergy.—They resist.—Death of Becket.*

1. AT the time of which we are now speaking, the usurpations of the clergy had reached such a height as to make it almost a mat-

3, 4. What is said of his style of living? 5. What instance is given of his consideration for his courtiers? 8, 9. Relate the story of the loss of his cloak.

ter of doubt, whether the king or the priests, particularly the Archbishop of Canterbury, should rule the kingdom.

2. Henry was not of a spirit tamely to submit to the encroachments of subjects. But the obligations which he was under to Theobald, Archbishop of Canterbury, prevented him from taking any measures to check them during the lifetime of that prelate.

3. But after his death, he determined to exert himself with activity, and, that he might be secure against any opposition, he advanced Becket to that dignity, feeling sure that he could depend on his compliance with his wishes.



THOMAS À BECKET AS ARCHBISHOP.

4. But no sooner was Becket established in his new dignity, than he seemed changed in character, as well as in condition. He renounced all his gay and active amusements, and was always seen with a book in his hand, or else absorbed in deep meditation.

5. He affected the greatest austerities; he wore sackcloth next to his skin, fed upon bread and water, tore his back with whips and scourges, and every day washed the feet of thirteen poor beggars. In short, the ostentation of affected sanctity made him take a satisfaction in inflicting on himself the severest penances.

XLVII.—1. What of the power of the clergy? 2, 3. What of Henry's feelings on the subject? 4, 5, 6. What change took place in Becket's conduct? 7. What are the con-

6. His conduct towards the king was not less changed. He withdrew from the intimacy with which Henry had treated him, and resigned the office of chancellor, saying he must now devote himself wholly to his spiritual functions. So far was he from giving any aid to the king's plans for a reformation, that he set himself up as the champion of the church.



BECKET'S DEATH. See page 88.

7. But Henry was not to be deterred from the execution of his purpose, of lowering the pride and power of the priests. In 1164, he summoned a general council of the nobility and prelates at Clarendon. By this assembly certain laws were made, called the *Constitutions of Clarendon*, restraining the power of the clergy, and making them amenable to the laws of the country.

8. The laws were so just, that even Becket was compelled to assent to them. But he knew very well that the pope, to whom they were to be submitted for ratification, would never submit to enactments which in fact abolished his authority in England. It happened as he expected; the pope rejected the laws, and Becket retracted his assent.

9. The king and the prelate now lived in a state of constant hostility. The clergy supported Becket as far as they dared, and the barons espoused the king's party. At one time, Becket was deprived of his dignities and estates, and banished from the kingdom.

10. But the influence of the clergy over the unenlightened people compelled the king to reinstate him, and, upon one occasion, to submit to the humiliation of holding the stirrup, whilst the haughty prelate mounted his horse.

11. For eight years Henry was kept in a continual ferment. At last, in a moment of irritation, he unhappily exclaimed, "Is there nobody that will rid me of this turbulent priest?" words which were probably forgotten as soon as uttered by him.

12. But they were not forgotten by some who heard them. Four gentlemen of his household, who thought they should do the king an acceptable service, by executing what they fancied to be his wishes, set out immediately from Normandy, where the king then was, for England. When they arrived at Canterbury, they demanded admittance into the archbishop's palace.

13. The servants, apprehensive of some evil designs, obliged their master to fly into the cathedral, thinking the sanctity of the place would protect him. But the assassins followed him; and as he would not submit to be their prisoner, they slew him on the steps of the altar, as he knelt before it.

---

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

*Becket canonized by the Pope.—Miracles performed at his Tomb.—Illustrations of Manners of the Clergy.*

1. WHEN Henry heard of this murder, he was so much shocked that he shut himself up for three days, and refused to let any one come near him. At last his attendants forced open the door of his room, and persuaded him to take some refreshment.

2. The king chiefly dreaded the displeasure of the pope. He found means, however, by a well-timed embassy, to divert the resentment of his Holiness from himself, and it was expended in denunciations of the immediate actors. The clergy now magnified the sanctity of Becket, and two years' after his death he was *canonized* by the pope, that is, added to the list of *saints*.

3. His body was then removed to a magnificent tomb which the king caused to be erected in Canterbury Cathedral. This was enriched by presents from all parts of Christendom, and it is estimated that, in one year, more than one hundred thousand pilgrims arrived at Canterbury, and paid their devotions at his tomb.

4. A great many ridiculous stories were told by the priests, and readily believed by the ignorant and superstitious people, of the miracles performed here. At this shrine, not only dead men were said to be restored to life, but also cows, dogs, and horses.

5. A story is related of the successor of Becket, which illustrates the manners of the times. In 1176, the pope's representative in England, called the pope's *legate*, summoned an assembly of the clergy, at which he himself presided. Richard, Archbishop of Canterbury, and Roger, Archbishop of York, both claimed the honor of sitting on the right hand of the legate.

6. The question of precedence created a dispute between them,

---

which ended in the monks and retainers of Archibishop Richard falling upon Roger, in the presence of the whole assembly, and throwing him upon the ground; they then trampled on him, and he was with difficulty rescued from their hands alive.

7. Archbischop Richard, by the payment of a large sum of money to the legate, prevented any notice being taken of this enormity. We may relate another anecdote of this period, which history has preserved.

8. As King Henry was one day riding along, he was met by the monks of St. Swithan, who threw themselves prostrate upon the earth before him, complaining, with many tears and much doleful lamentation, that the Bishop of Winchester, who was their abbot, had cut off three dishes from their tables.

9. "How many has he left you?" said the king. "Ten only," replied the disconsolate monks. "I myself," exclaimed the king, "never have more than three; and I enjoin your bishop to reduce you to the same number."

## CHAPTER XLIX.

*Earl Strongbow goes over to Ireland to assist Dermot Macmorrogh.—The English conquer Ireland.*



ST. PATRICK IN IRELAND.

1. IN the early part of this volume, we have glanced at the state

of the pope's resentment? 3, 4. What of his tomb? 5, 6. What story is related of his successor? 3, 9. Relate the story of the monks of St. Swithan.

of Ireland previous to the invasion of Britain by the Romans. Its history for several centuries is involved in much obscurity, and though we know that many interesting events took place, they are not of a nature to require further notice here.

2. In the fifth century, the history of Ireland becomes more defined. About the year 450, St. Patrick, who was probably a native of France, was carried thither, he being then in his youth. He was made a slave, and occupied for several years in the care of sheep. He at length escaped, and having qualified himself by study, and received an education at Rome, as a bishop, he returned to Ireland and devoted himself with great success to the conversion of the people to Christianity. They had hitherto professed the religion of the Druids, but in the space of a few years the priests and princes yielded, throughout nearly the whole island, to the doctrines of the gospel as taught by St. Patrick.

3. From that time Ireland was a place of refuge for learned men of all countries; and religion and science flourished till the eighth century, when the island was overrun by the Danes, who destroyed nearly all the churches and monasteries. After the Danes were expelled, the Irish, having no Alfred to govern them, sank back into a state of barbarism, though they still maintained their independence of foreign dominion.

4. At the time of which we are now speaking, Ireland was divided into five separate kingdoms. In 1171, Dermot Macmorrough, one of the five kings, being driven from Leinster, went over to England to implore the assistance of Henry, who gave him some money from the royal treasury, and permitted him to enlist in his cause any of the English whom he could prevail upon to join him.

5. Accordingly the Earl of Pembroke, surnamed *Strongbow*, and a few other noblemen, returned with Dermot to Ireland, and with their assistance soon recovered his kingdom. Elated with his success, Dermot now thought it would be a good thing to possess himself of the other four kingdoms.

6. But Strongbow did not dare to engage in a plan for the conquest of the whole island without first asking Henry's consent. The king's answer was for some time delayed. In the mean time the earl collected in England an army of twelve hundred men; but just as he was setting out for Ireland, he received Henry's positive commands not to proceed.

7. Disregarding these orders, he set sail. At Waterford he was joined by Dermot, and there married his daughter Eva, and then proceeded to the conquest of the kingdom of Meath, which was easily effected. The year following, Dermot died, and Earl Strongbow, in right of his wife, succeeded to his possessions, and thus became king of a great part of Ireland.

8. Henry had been greatly displeased at the earl's disobedience; nor was he appeased till Strongbow went over to England, and

resigned to him all these great acquisitions, a part of which, however, Henry allowed him to retain.

9. To divert the attention of the people from the murder of Becket, Henry determined to go over to Ireland to take possession of the territory already subdued, and to complete the conquest of the island. Accordingly, in 1172, he passed over the channel, accompanied by a fleet of four hundred vessels. The several princes, overawed by such a powerful force, submitted at once, and this important conquest was made without bloodshed.

## CHAPTER L.

*Encouraged by their Mother, the Sons of Henry rebel.*

1. IN the year 1173, Henry appeared to have arrived at the utmost height of glory and ambition. He was sovereign of England, Ireland, and of a third part of France. All his dominions were in a state of tranquillity. But his future life was to be embittered, and his government to be disturbed, from a quarter which he might naturally have expected to have been a source of happiness, and to have afforded support.

2. Queen Eleanor, whom he had married for her rich dowry, not only gave him much vexation by her own conduct, but she encouraged her children to behave undutifully to their father. It was no uncommon thing, in those days, for a king to cause his son to be crowned during his own lifetime, in order to secure to him the succession.

3. In pursuance of this policy, Henry, eldest son of the present king, had been crowned when he was fifteen years old. It is said, that at this ceremony, the king, in order to give greater dignity to it, officiated as one of the retinue; and observed to his son that never was king more royally served.

4. "It is nothing extraordinary," said young Henry to one of his courtiers, "if the son of a count should serve the son of a king." This saying, which passed at the time as an innocent pleasantry, was afterwards remembered as a sign of that aspiring temper of which he soon gave proof.

5. At the instigation of his father-in-law, the King of France, he demanded immediate possession of the crown of England, or else of the Duchy of Normandy. Before his father's refusal to comply with his unreasonable demand, he entered into a conspiracy with the kings of France and Scotland, and other persons who were jealous of Henry's power, to dethrone him.

6. The prince, with his brothers, Richard and Geoffrey, whom he had persuaded to join him, fled to the court of France; and even

do? 6. What did Earl Strongbow do? 7. Whom did Strongbow marry? What did he get in right of his wife? 8. How did he appease Henry? 9. What did Henry do?

L.—1. What of Henry's condition in 1173? 2. What of his queen? How did Henry attempt to make sure the succession of his son? 3. 4. What occurred at the ceremony of coronation? 5. What demand did the prince make? 6. What was the consequence

Queen Eleanor, in the disguise of a man, tried to escape thither also. She was, however, discovered, and brought back to Henry, who shut her up in strict confinement. The rebellion now broke out in open war. The King of France and the Earl of Flanders attacked Normandy, while William, King of Scotland, marched into England, and was joined by all the discontented barons.

7. Never did Henry act with more wisdom and vigor. The united efforts of so many enemies were unable to do him serious injury; and in the year 1175, all their schemes were frustrated by the capture of William, who was surprised and taken without the walls of Alnwick Castle, which he occupied.

8. This place was assailed by about four hundred knights, and William, without waiting for his army to support him, made a gallant attempt with only seventy of his knights to repel the enemy. "Now let us see who are the best knights!" cried he, and spurred forward against his opponents; but his horse was killed at the first onset, and he was taken prisoner. His numerous troops, on hearing of the disaster, fled with the greatest precipitation.

---

## CHAPTER LI.

*Singular Penance of Henry II.—Fresh Rebellions of his Sons.—Death of Henry II.—The Reason of his being called "Curt Mantle."*



HENRY II. DOING PENANCE AT BECKET'S TOMB.

1. THE great mass of the people considered the troubles which  
of the king's refusal? By whom was Henry attacked? 7. What of his conduct? 8  
What happened to William, King of Scotland?

befell Henry, as a proof of the *indignation* of Heaven for the impious murder of Becket. The king, well knowing the effects of superstition on the minds of men, submitted to a most singular and humiliating penance.

2. Returning from Normandy, which he had been putting in a state of defence, he proceeded at once to Canterbury. When he came within sight of the church he dismounted and walked bare foot to Becket's tomb, prostrated himself before it and remained there fasting all one day and night.

3. He then assembled the monks, and putting a whip into the hands of each, presented his bare shoulders to receive as many lashes as they might think proper to inflict upon his royal back. Next day the priest pronounced his pardon, or *absolution*, as it is called, and the king went to London, where he soon heard the joyful news of the capture of William.

4. This had been made on the very day that he had received his *absolution*, and was regarded by the people as a proof that St. Thomas à Becket was satisfied with the atonement. Henry was in bed when the news was brought to him, but he at once arose and called his attendants, that he might tell them the happy tidings.

5. The King of France was now glad to make peace, and thus everything turned out prosperously for England. Henry's generosity to his defeated enemies was much to be admired. He gave liberty without ransom to a large number of noblemen who were made prisoners; and he gave the King of Scotland his liberty on condition that he and his successors should do homage to the kings of England for their crown.

6. He pardoned his sons on account of their youth; but Prince Henry continued to give his father a great deal of vexation, and at length again openly rebelled. He was actually leading an army against him, when the tumult of his mind threw him into a fever.

7. Finding himself to be dying, he sent a repentant message to his father, entreating forgiveness, and beseeching that he would come and see him. The king, thinking his illness to be pretended, refused to visit him, but sent him his ring as a token of pardon, which the prince received with thankfulness.

8. A little before his death he desired to be laid on a heap of ashes, with a halter about his neck, to testify his deep humiliation and contrition. This was done, and in this state he expired. Henry's grief, when he heard that his son was dead, was very great indeed, and he bitterly reproached himself for having refused to go to him. As Prince Henry left no children, Richard became the heir to the throne. He was also of a turbulent temper, and had behaved very ill to his father.

9. In 1188 the melancholy news reached Europe that the Saracens had taken Jerusalem. All the warriors of this quarter were at once animated with the desire of driving the Infidels from the Holy City.

LI.—1, 2, 3. Relate the particulars of King Henry's penance. 4. To what did the people attribute his victory over William? Why? 5. What was the consequence of the capture of William? How did Henry treat his late enemies? 6. What more is said

10. Richard Plantagenet, and Philip, King of France, were among the first to assume the cross. Richard, jealous of the affection of his father for his youngest brother, John, wished to take him with him to the Holy Land; but Henry would not consent to this, and Richard, whose fiery temper could not bear contradiction, joined Philip in making war upon Henry, instead of leading their troops against the infidels.

11. Henry, being totally unprepared for such an attack, was obliged to make a disadvantageous treaty. But what afflicted him most, was, that John, his favorite son, had joined in the rebellion. This seemed to weigh down the poor king's heart more than any other affliction of his life, and he fell ill of a fever occasioned by anxiety.

12. Feeling himself to be dying, he desired to be carried into a church, and laid before the altar, where he expired, on the 9th of July, 1189, in the fifty-seventh year of his age, and thirty-fifth of his reign. He was the wisest and ablest prince of his time, and the most powerful in the extent of his dominion of any that had filled the English throne.

13. The dress of the nobility was at this period very splendid. Some persons wore their cloaks so long that they swept upon the ground; and the sleeves of the gowns came down over the fingers, to the great inconvenience of the wearers, who could scarcely either walk or use their hands. But Henry introduced the Anjou fashion of wearing short cloaks, which gained him the surname of *Curt Manile*.

## CHAPTER LII.

### *Of Richard the Lion-hearted.*

1. WE are now about to present to the reader one of the favorite heroes of romance; Richard, surnamed Cœur de Lion, or the Lion-hearted, on account of his undaunted courage. He was very prepossessing in his appearance. His eyes were blue, and his hair, what was then much admired, of a yellow hue.

2. He was tall, and his figure extremely fine; he had a majestic and stately mien; and this, joined to his great courage and quickness of intellect, gave him on all occasions an ascendancy over men's minds. He is said by historians to have been a good politician, orator, and poet; but though he possessed a great deal of talent, he was hot-headed and without judgment.

3. His faults were, perhaps, too suitable to the unruly temper of

of Prince Henry? Who became the heir to the throne? 9. What happened in 1188? 10. What was the cause of Richard's rebellion? 11. What success had the rebels? What chiefly distressed the king? 12. When did Henry II. die? What was his age? How long had he reigned? 13. What is said of the dress of the nobility? Why was Henry called Curt Mantle?

LII.—1. 2. What of Richard the Lion-hearted? 4. How did he treat his mother and

the time he lived in, to be then considered dangerous or reprehensible. For his father's death he felt an extreme sorrow, and on seeing his dead body, he expressed an agony of remorse for his undutiful conduct.

4. One of the first acts of his reign was to release his mother from her long confinement. He was very generous to his brother John; but this, instead of inspiring any feelings of gratitude, only enabled him the more to injure his benefactor.

5. Being desirous of acquiring glory, Richard resolved to go on a crusade. His father had left him a large sum of money, but not enough for his purpose; so, in order to increase it, he sold the royal castles and estates; and also put to sale the offices of the greatest trust and power.

6. When some of his ministers remonstrated with him on these proceedings, he said, "He would sell London itself if he could find a purchaser." For a large sum of money he absolved the King of Scotland from his vassalage to the King of England, which, as we have stated, was the condition of King William's release.

7. He also compelled his subjects to lend him money, and, in short, resorted to every means of raising funds, no matter how unjust or impolitic they might be. At length his armament was ready, and Richard arrived at Messina, in Sicily, on the 14th of September, 1190. Here he was joined by Philip, King of France, and it being too late in the season to proceed to Palestine immediately, it was agreed to pass the winter in Sicily.

8. There could scarcely be found two persons less alike in character than these two kings. Richard, though proud and domineering, was brave and generous. Philip was equally proud, but shy and deceitful. It is not surprising that two such opposite characters should quarrel before their six months' residence in Sicily was over.

9. Richard had, in his infancy, been contracted in marriage to Adelais, sister of Philip; but his father had repented of the engagement, and would not permit it to be fulfilled while he lived; and now Richard, having fallen in love with Berengaria, daughter of the King of Navarre, broke off his engagement with Adelais.

10. Early in 1191, he prevailed with his mother to bring the Princess Berengaria to Messina. They arrived the day before he was obliged to sail; but, it being Lent, during which season marriages cannot be solemnized in the Catholic Church, the union could not then take place.

11. Eleanor returned to England, and the princess, accompanied by the Queen of Sicily, who was Richard's sister, embarked for the Holy Land. A violent storm arose, and the ship the two princesses were in, was in great danger. The King of Cyprus, however, refused to admit the vessel into his harbors, upon which Richard laid siege to the island, and in a short time got possession of it.

12. Here he and Berengaria were married; and leaving a governor

his brother? Was his brother grateful to him? 5. What did Richard resolve to do? How did he raise money? 7. When did he arrive at Messina? Who joined him there? 8. How did Richard and Philip differ in character? 9, 10, 11, 12. Relate the circumstances of the king's marriage. Relate the particulars of his voyage from Sicily.

in the island, he sailed for Acre, where the King of France, who had left Sicily some time before, in high displeasure with Richard, had already arrived.

### CHAPTER LIII.

*Exploits of Richard in Palestine.—His violent Temper brings him into Trouble.—About the Old Man of the Mountain, and the Assassins.*

1. ACRE was a large town on the coast of Palestine, in the possession of the Saracens, and had been besieged for two years by an army of Christians collected from all parts of Europe. The Christians were now in their turn surrounded and besieged by a large army of Saracens, under the famous Saladin.

2. The arrival of Richard revived the courage of the Christians. He led his troops to the assault in person, and broke down a postern door with his strong hand and weighty battle-axe. Saladin, who saw that Acre must soon fall before such vigorous assaults, gave the citizens permission to make the best terms they could for themselves.

3. On his own part, he agreed to release all his Christian prisoners, and to restore to the crusaders the cross on which our Saviour suffered—or, rather, a relic which bore that reputation, and which had been taken by him at a former battle. But Saladin did not, or could not, at once comply with these conditions.

4. The impetuous Richard would hear of no delay, and put to death all his Mohammedan prisoners, to the number of several thousand men. On account of this rashness and cruelty, Richard was justly charged with the death of as many Christian captives, whom Saladin slaughtered by way of reprisal.

5. Richard exhibited his violent temper upon another occasion, of which he had much personal cause to rue the consequence. When the city of Acre surrendered, Leopold, Duke of Austria, caused his own banner to be displayed from the highest tower. Richard, highly exasperated at what he considered an insult, ordered the standard to be taken down, and being torn in pieces and trampled under foot, it was thrown into the ditch.

6. Leopold felt the indignity, but dissembled his anger, and circumstances gave him an opportunity, as we shall soon relate, of taking an ample revenge, though at the expense of his faith and honor.

7. The knightly qualities of Richard were more agreeable to the spirit of the age than the more statesman-like ones of Philip. The rash valor and brilliant exploits in battle of the former gained him the applause of the multitude. Philip, who was of a jealous temper,

took offence at this; and his hatred for Richard was continually displaying itself.

8. A contest had arisen between Conrad, Marquis of Montserrat, and Guy of Lusignan, for the empty title of King of Jerusalem, the substantial part, the kingdom itself, being in the possession of the Saracens. Philip espoused the cause of Conrad, whilst Richard maintained the right of Guy.

9. Now there was an Arab prince, called *The Old Man of the Mountain*, who ruled over a small tribe called *Assassins*, who dwelt on Mount Lebanon. He had acquired such power over his fanatical subjects, that they paid the most implicit obedience to his commands; and fancied, when they sacrificed their lives for his sake, the highest joys of paradise would be their certain reward.

10. It was the custom of this prince, when he imagined himself injured, to send some of his subjects secretly against the aggressor, and no precaution was sufficient to guard any man, however powerful, against the attempts of the subtle and determined ruffians. From these is derived the name of *assassin*, or secret murderer, which is in common use.

11. Conrad had given offence to this prince, who caused him to be murdered. Everybody in Palestine knew this to be the fact. But Philip affected to believe that Richard was the instigator of this crime, so entirely at variance with his open and manly, though violent character. He therefore selected a new body-guard, and took other precautions, implying dishonorable suspicions of his rival.

#### CHAPTER LIV.

*Philip returns to Europe.—The wicked Orders he leaves with his General.—More of Richard's Exploits.—Termination of his Career of Victory.—He receives news from England which determines him to return.*

1. It was not long before Philip found out that nothing but barren laurels were to be gained in this war with the Saracens, and that but a small share of these would fall to his lot. He suddenly discovered that the air of Palestine was not favorable to his health, and resolved to return home.

2. But before he went, he made a solemn promise not to make any attempts on the territories of Richard, though at this very time he entertained the full intention of attacking them as soon as he got back. Leaving his troops in Palestine, under the command of the Duke of Burgundy, with secret orders to omit no opportunity of mortifying the English king, he proceeded directly to Rome.

3. Here all his influence was exerted to procure from the pope

Richard's violence of temper? 7. What excited Philip's jealousy of Richard? 9. What of the Old Man of the Mountain? 10. Whence the name of *assassin*?

LIV.—1. What discovery did Philip make? 2. What promise did he make to Richard?

an absolution from his promise to Richard. But his Holiness, if he had not sufficient regard for justice, at least had sufficient regard for appearances, and was politic enough not to sanction such a gross outrage on the rights of one who at that very moment was risking his life in the cause of the church; he therefore positively refused to comply.

4. In the mean time, Richard, unsuspecting of these designs, thought only of his open enemies, and was rivalling in the Holy Land the imaginary actions of the heroes of romance. He defied armies with a handful of men, and challenged to combat, on his own person, an extended line of thousands, not one of whom dared to quit the ranks to encounter him.

5. Notwithstanding the obstacles constantly thrown in his way by the adherents of the King of France, Richard at length arrived, after gaining a victory over Saladin, in one of the greatest battles of the age, within sight of Jerusalem, the object of his enterprise. But the French troops positively refused to advance to the siege, and Richard, to his great mortification, was compelled to stop short in his career of victory, and return to Ascalon.

6. This march is described as the most painful of all that the army made; and when at last, worn out by fatigue and famine, it arrived at Ascalon, the place was found to be in so ruinous a condition, that it became necessary immediately to repair it. Richard set the example, by working with more ardor than any common laborer.

7. In the mean time, affairs in England had gone on very badly. Those to whom the government had been intrusted, quarrelled among themselves, and the whole kingdom was in a state of disturbance. When the King of France reached home, he lost no time in inviting Prince John to unite with him in seizing on Richard's territories.

8. John was only prevented from doing so by Queen Eleanor, who appears at this time to have acted like a wise and good woman. Philip would then have invaded Normandy with his own forces; but his barons refused to accompany him in so unjust and ungenerous an attempt. The news of these events reached Ascalon about the middle of April, 1192, and Richard resolved to return home.

9. But while he was making his preparations, he heard that Saladin was besieging Joppa, and that the Christians there were reduced to the last extremity. Giving up, therefore, his design of immediately embarking, he went directly to Joppa, and defeated the pagans in a furious battle.

10. Soon after this, he fell ill, and being unable to take advantage of his success, he concluded a truce with Saladin for three years, three months, three weeks, three days, and three hours.

3. What did he do when he arrived at Rome? 4, 5. What of Richard's exploits? What compelled him to retreat? 7, 8. What was the state of affairs in England? 9. What prevented Richard's return?

## CHAPTER LV.

*Shipwreck of Richard.—He falls into the hands of his Enemies, and suffers Imprisonment.—Story of his faithful Minstrel.*



RICHARD I. AS A PILGRIM.

1. ON the 9th of October, 1192, Richard set out on his disastrous voyage. His daring courage had made a deep impression on the minds of the Infidels. Long after he had ceased to trouble the world, the Saracen mothers would bring their stubborn children to obedience by the threat of his coming; and the horseman would upbraid his starting steed, by the exclamation, "Ha, fool! dost thou think Richard is in the bush?"

2. After many storms at sea, Richard was at last shipwrecked on the coast of Dalmatia. He now put on the disguise of a pilgrim, hoping to pass through Germany without being known. But the traveller displayed a generosity and profuseness more suitable to the king he was, than to the pilgrim he wished to appear.

3. The intelligence soon spread through Germany, that *Hugh the Merchant* was no other than Richard Plantagenet. The king arrived, however, without molestation, at Frisak, near Saltzburg; and the governor there sent one of his knights to discover who he was.

4. This man was by birth a Norman, and instantly knew the king; but instead of betraying him, he presented him with a horse, and entreated him to fly and save himself. Accompanied by a boy and one other attendant, he reached a town near Vienna.

5. Here he entered an inn, and that no suspicion might be excited concerning his rank, busied himself in turning the spit; but he forgot to conceal a splendid ring which he wore on his finger; and a man who had seen him at Acre knew him, and gave information to his bitter enemy, the Duke of Austria, who had never forgotten or forgiven the insult offered him after the capture of that city.

6. The duke meanly seized the opportunity of vengeance, which chance afforded him, and threw the unfortunate prince into prison. His place of confinement was long kept concealed. There is a very pretty story told of the manner in which it was discovered; whether it be true or not we cannot say, but at any rate it is worth repeating.

7. Richard was a great friend of the *Gay Science*, as minstrelsy was called, and often practised the arts of song and music himself. Blondel de Nesle, a favorite minstrel, who had attended his person, devoted himself to discover the place of his confinement. He wandered in vain from castle to palace, till he had learned that a strong fortress, on the banks of the Danube, was watched with peculiar strictness, as if containing some prisoner of distinction.



RICHARD DISCOVERED BY BLONDEL.

8. The minstrel took his harp, and, approaching the castle as near as he durst, came so near the walls as to hear the captive soothing his imprisonment with music. Blondel touched his harp; the prisoner heard and was silent; upon this the minstrel played the first part of a tune known to Richard, who instantly played the second part; and thus the faithful servant knew that the captive was no other than his royal master.

His adventures till his seizure by the Duke of Austria. 7, 8. How was it ascertained where he was confined? 9, 10, 11, 12. Relate his story till his release.

## CHAPTER LV.

*Shipwreck of Richard.—He falls into the hands of his Enemies, and suffers Imprisonment.—Story of his faithful Minstrel.*



RICHARD I. AS A PILGRIM.

1. ON the 9th of October, 1192, Richard set out on his disastrous voyage. His daring courage had made a deep impression on the minds of the Infidels. Long after he had ceased to trouble the world, the Saracen mothers would bring their stubborn children to obedience by the threat of his coming; and the horseman would upbraid his starting steed, by the exclamation, "Ha, fool! dost thou think Richard is in the bush?"

2. After many storms at sea, Richard was at last shipwrecked on the coast of Dalmatia. He now put on the disguise of a pilgrim, hoping to pass through Germany without being known. But the traveller displayed a generosity and profuseness more suitable to the king he was, than to the pilgrim he wished to appear.

3. The intelligence soon spread through Germany, that *Hugh the Merchant* was no other than Richard Plantagenet. The king arrived, however, without molestation, at Frisak, near Saltzburg; and the governor there sent one of his knights to discover who he was.

4. This man was by birth a Norman, and instantly knew the king; but instead of betraying him, he presented him with a horse, and entreated him to fly and save himself. Accompanied by a boy and one other attendant, he reached a town near Vienna.

4. *Excommunication* was a worse sentence still, and was levelled at individuals, as an interdict was at a collection of people, such as a village, a state, or a nation. A person who was excommunicated was considered as unholy and polluted; every one was forbidden to come near him, or render him any friendly offices. Thus, if the sentence could have been enforced, it was possible for the most potent monarch to become, by a single mandate of the pope, a miserable outcast.



RICHARD FORGIVING HIS BROTHER JOHN.

5. Queen Eleanor, as you may well believe, and everybody in England who loved King Richard,—and there were many who did,—used every means to raise the money required for his ransom. A general tax was levied to procure it, but this not proving sufficient, the nobles voluntarily contributed a quarter of their yearly incomes, and the silver that was in the churches and monasteries was melted down.

6. When the money was collected, Queen Eleanor took it herself to Germany, and had the happiness of receiving her son, and bringing him to England. He landed at Sandwich on the 20th of March, 1194, after an absence of four years. He was received with overflows of joy, and in London with such a display of wealth, that the Germans who accompanied him exclaimed, “If our emperor had known the riches of England, your ransom, O king, would have been much greater!”

7. After Richard had settled the affairs of his kingdom, he set

out for Normandy, to defend it from an attack with which it was threatened by Philip. On the morning after his landing at Barfleur, Prince John suddenly rushed into his apartment, and, throwing himself at his feet, implored his forgiveness.

8. This the king immediately granted, though he could not feel any affection for such a brother. Indeed, he soon after said to some of his attendants, "I wish I may forget my brother's injuries as soon as he will forget my pardon of them."

## CHAPTER LVII.

### *Death of Richard the Lion-hearted.*

1. THE remainder of Richard's life was passed in a succession of wars and truces with the King of France. At last, through the mediation of the pope, negotiations were commenced for a more lasting peace. But these were brought to an abrupt conclusion by the death of Richard.

2. The Viscount of Limoges, a vassal of the king, had found a considerable treasure on his lands. Richard claimed this, as of his right as sovereign; and on the viscount's refusing to give up more than a part, declared positively that he would have the whole, and immediately laid siege to the castle of Chalus, where the treasure was supposed to be lodged.

3. The garrison offered to surrender the castle, and all that was in it, provided they might march out with their arms. Richard vindictively refused their offer, protesting he would take the place by force, and put them all to death.

4. On the 28th of March, 1199, as he was taking a survey of the castle, and giving directions for the assault, he was wounded by an arrow from the bow of Bertrand de Gourdon. The wound appeared trifling at first, but in a few days the life of the king was despaired of. Before he died the castle was taken, and all the garrison were instantly hanged, excepting Bertrand, whom Richard ordered to be brought into his presence. "What harm have I done to you," said the king to him, "that you should thus have attempted my death?"

5. "You killed my father and brother with your own hands," replied the man; "and intended to have killed me, and I am ready to suffer any torments you can invent, with joy, since I have been so lucky as to kill one who has brought so many miseries on mankind."

6. Richard, conscious of the truth of this bold reply, bore it with patience, and ordered the man to be set at liberty; but this command was not obeyed, and Bertrand was put to death as soon as the king had expired. Richard died on the 6th of April, 1199, in the

---

LVII.—1, 2, 3, 4. Relate the particulars of Richard's death. 5. Relate the particulars of the interview between him and his slayer. 6. When did Richard die? How long did he live? How long reign? 7. To whom did he leave his possessions?

forty-second year of his age, and tenth of his reign, only four months of which had been passed in England.

7. He had no children, and left all his dominions to his brother John. He had at one time appointed Arthur of Brittany, the son of his next younger brother, Geoffrey, to be his heir, but on his deathbed he altered his will, being influenced, as it is supposed, by Eleanor, who had a great hatred to Constance, the mother of Arthur.

### CHAPTER LVIII.

*Account of John, surnamed Lackland.—He takes his Nephew Arthur prisoner, and causes him to be murdered.—His Loss of Normandy.*



DEATH OF PRINCE ARTHUR.

1. JOHN, surnamed *Lackland*, because he possessed no territory during the lifetime of his father, was the worst king and the worst man that ever wore the crown of England. Indeed, there are very few persons, whose lives are recorded, who possessed fewer redeeming qualities than King John. He was perfidious, cruel, and rapacious, and had neither personal bravery nor mental ability to make up for his faults.

2. He had early shown his incapacity for government; for his father, Henry II., intending that Ireland should be his inheritance, sent him thither to accustom the people to him. But he insulted

the Irish chiefs, ridiculed their customs and habits, and behaved with so much folly, that his father changed his purpose.

3. Philip of France, who was glad of an excuse for interfering in the affairs of England, undertook the cause of Arthur, which had been placed in his hands by Constance. But John found means to persuade Philip that it would be more for his advantage to abandon Arthur, who was accordingly given up to John, and would have been put to death, had he not found means to escape.

4. Three years afterwards, in 1202, Arthur married a daughter of Philip, who then in good earnest set about enforcing his right. Young Arthur broke into Poitou at the head of a small army. Passing near the castle of Mirabel, he heard that his grandmother, Eleanor, his own and his mother's most determined enemy, was in that place, and made haste to lay siege to it.

5. He had nearly got possession of the castle, when John, acting with a vigor quite unusual to him, came suddenly to his mother's rescue, and took the unfortunate Arthur prisoner, with his sister, called the Damsel of Bretagne, who was carried to England, and kept in perpetual imprisonment in Bristol Castle.

6. Arthur was taken to the castle of Falaise, and of his subsequent fate nothing is known with certainty. The most probable account of it is as follows: the king first proposed to William de la Bray, one of his servants, to murder Arthur, but William replied, that he was a gentleman, not a hangman, and he positively refused compliance.

7. Another instrument of murder was found, and was despatched to Falaise; but Herbert de Bourg, the governor, desirous to save the unhappy young prince, pretended that he would execute the king's order, and sent back the assassin. He placed the prince in concealment, and, announcing that he was dead, had the funeral service publicly performed for him.

8. But the Bretons were so much exasperated at the supposed murder of their prince, that Herbert found it necessary to inform them of his being alive. No sooner did John hear of it than he had Arthur removed to Rouen, where he himself resided. The prince being brought into the presence of his uncle, threw himself on his knees before him, and begged for mercy; but the barbarous tyrant, making no reply, stabbed him with his own hand.

9. All men were struck with horror at this inhuman deed, and John became an object of universal detestation. The people of Brittany laid their complaints before Philip, as their liege lord, and demanded justice for this violence committed on one of the chief vassals of the crown.

10. Philip received their application with pleasure, and summoned John to stand a trial before him. John did not appear, and, with the concurrence of the peers of France, he was pronounced guilty of murder, and all his territories in France were declared forfeit to his superior lord.

shown of incapacity to govern? 3. Whose cause did Philip espouse? Why abandon it? 4. Why resume the support of it? Relate the particulars of Arthur's capture 6, 7, 8. What became of Arthur? 10. What did Philip do when he heard of Arthur's murder? 11. What became of John's possessions in France?

11. Philip proceeded at once to execute his sentence. John could make but little opposition, because his barons refused to assist him. Normandy was severed from the crown of England, after it had been in the possession of the descendants of Rollo for three hundred years. His mother's inheritance, also, and nearly all the rest of John's territories in France, were yielded up to Philip.

---

### CHAPTER LIX.

*John quarrels with the Pope.—About the Jews.—John excommunicated.—He submits to degrading Terms.*

1. It would seem that John had difficulties enough to contend with already; but, in 1208, he must needs involve himself in a dispute with the pope, respecting the choice of an Archbishop of Canterbury. The pope, Innocent III., insisted on the election of Stephen Langton, an Englishman of very superior abilities, but John refused to recognize his right of dictation.

2. The pope then laid the kingdom under an interdict. This, however, was not much regarded by the king, who employed himself in expeditions against the Welsh and Irish, and in extorting money from his own subjects by many unjust and cruel methods. One of his contrivances was to assemble all the abbots and abbesses at London; and when he had collected them together, he kept them there till they had paid a large sum of money.

3. But the Jews were the special objects of his cruelty. Ever since the taking of Jerusalem by Titus, in the year 72 after Christ, the Jews have been an outcast, though still a separate people. About the time of Henry II., many of them went over and settled in England; but they were treated with many indignities, and were obliged to wear a square yellow cap to distinguish them from Christians.

4. As they were cut off from all public employments, they devoted themselves to getting money; and the taking of interest for the loan of money being forbidden to Christians, the Jewish money-lenders, having all the business to themselves, became very rich. In order to distinguish their houses from those of the Christians, they were required to build them with the chimneys over the doors. Houses of this description are yet to be seen in England.

5. They were exposed to many cruelties to extort from them their wealth, as it was considered no sin to plunder or even murder a Jew, more especially if the object was to get money for a crusade; it being deemed that the cause justified the crime.

6. The pope, finding that his interdict made no impression, now resorted to the more severe mode of bringing John to obedience. He

excommunicated him, absolved his subjects from their oath of allegiance, and published a sort of crusade against him, exhorting all Christian princes and barons to unite in making war upon and dethroning him.

7. The pope made particular application to Philip, who, as we may believe, was not slow to avail himself of the opportunity, and assembled a numerous fleet and army for the invasion of England. John now summoned his subjects to take up arms in defence of their country, and the call was promptly obeyed, for their fear of being conquered by the French was greater than their hatred of the king.

8. But the pope had no desire to increase the power of Philip; his only wish was to humble John. Whilst he threatened the use of force, he did not neglect the use of artifice. By his directions, Pandulf, his representative or legate in France, crossed over to Dover, under pretence of treating with the barons in favor of the King of France, but in reality to induce John to submit to the pope.

9. This artful priest found means to destroy the confidence which John should have felt for his own troops, and to persuade him that his only hope of safety lay in entire submission to the pope. Having excited the king's fears to the utmost, he then proposed the terms upon which the pope's protection should be granted to him. These were very severe, and such as no high-minded man would have submitted to.

10. The legate required him not only to acknowledge Langton as archbishop, but also to resign his crown to the pope, promising that it should be restored to him. John, regardless of everything but the present danger, agreed to these ignominious terms. So, taking his crown from his head, he placed it on the ground before the legate, and that haughty prelate, to show his contempt for his majesty, actually placed his foot upon it.

11. John then knelt down, and placing his hands between those of the legate, (which was the mode in which a vassal swore fealty to his lord,) acknowledged that he held his crown as vassal to the pope, and swore to serve him faithfully, and to pay him an annual tribute. The sentence of excommunication was then revoked, and Philip was forbidden to invade the territories of the church, as the pope now called England. He was highly incensed at this disappointment, but was obliged to submit.

---

dict of no effect? 7. What did the English do? 8, 9, 10, 11. How was the quarrel between the king and the pope settled? What degrading ceremony did John go through?

## CHAPTER LX.

*Magna Charta signed.—The Nobles excommunicated by the Pope.—They invite the Assistance of the French, who invade England.—Death of John.*



KING JOHN CONSIDERING THE MAGNA CHARTA.

1. JOHN, relieved from the fear of his foreign enemies, found fresh cause for disquietude in the conduct of his own barons. Tired out by his weakness and wickedness, they had long been conspiring against him. They were now joined by Langton, the new archbishop, who, having discovered a concealed copy of the charter granted by Henry I., drew up from it a declaration of rights, which the barons in full assembly approved of.

2. The king was called upon to sign this, but refused to do so. He was now deserted by all who had hitherto professed to support the royal authority, and was left with a retinue of only seven knights. After trying various expedients, he was at last compelled to yield at discretion.

3. He met the barons on Friday, the 15th of June, 1215, in a large meadow, between Windsor and Staines, called *Runimedē*, which means *the meadow of council*, and which was so called because it had been used by the Saxons as a place for public meetings.

4. At this meeting was signed the famous *Magna Charta*, which has since been considered as the foundation of English liberty. By it

LX.—1. What new cause of disquietude had John? 3. Where was his meeting with the barons held? Whence the name *Runimedē*? 4. What was done at this meeting?

the nobles were relieved from much of the oppressive tyranny of the feudal system. This had been constantly increasing, till no subject could act in the commonest affairs of life without the king's consent, which could be obtained only for money.

5. We can understand the sort of interference the king had in every person's concerns, when we learn that no one could marry without his consent, and that he could oblige heiresses to marry whom he pleased. Enormous sums were paid by females, either for leave to marry, or, more commonly, that they might not be forced to wed against their will.

6. Thus we read of a Countess of Chester, who paid King Stephen five hundred marks, that she might not be obliged to marry for five years; and of a Countess of Warwick, who paid King John five hundred marks that she might not be compelled to marry till she pleased. This sum would be equal to forty or perhaps fifty thousand dollars at the present day.

7. The great charter contains sixty-three articles, and yet only one of these is for the protection of the laboring people. It provides that "*even* a farmer shall not by any fine be deprived of his carts, ploughs, and implements of husbandry." The invidious word "*even*" shows plainly how little they were considered or thought of at this period.



KING JOHN SIGNING THE GREAT CHARTER.

8. John signed the charter with great reluctance; as soon, therefore, as he quitted Runimede, he retired, sullen and out of humor, to the Isle of Wight, where he spent three months in planning schemes for revenging himself on the barons. He courted the

8. 6. What instances of the king's power? 7. What of the great charter? 8. What did

favor of the common sailors, and sent agents into foreign countries to hire troops. He also despatched a message to Rome, to complain to his liege lord, the pope, of the violence with which he had been treated by the rebellious barons.

9. The pope was highly incensed at the audacity of the barons, and as he had formerly excommunicated the king, so he now proceeded to excommunicate the nobles of England. As soon as this decree of the pope, or *bull*, as it is called, was published in England, John, starting from his concealment, appeared before Rochester with an army of foreign soldiers.

10. The barons were taken completely by surprise, for, despising the king too much to believe him capable of any vigorous measures, they had made no preparations against him, and were amusing themselves with tournaments, bull-baitings and feastings, the usual diversions of the times. They were soon reduced by the king to great extremities, and in their distress they did the same thing that the pope had done before; they invited the French to invade England, offering to accept Prince Louis, the son of Philip, as their king.

11. Philip did not dare openly to accept the invitation; but whilst in public he prohibited his son from making war against the vassal of the pope, he privately supplied him with men and money. Louis landed in England, May 23d, 1216, and entered London in a sort of triumph, the citizens doing homage to him as their proper sovereign.

12. The foreign troops who had supported John were principally the subjects of France, and they now refused to fight against their prince. Deserted by his troops, John was compelled to fly. Every place submitted to Louis, until he came to Dover. This was bravely defended, and time was thus given to the barons to reflect on their error in calling in the aid of foreigners.

13. Many of them again joined John, who was thus enabled to muster a considerable army, with which he marched from Lynn into Lincolnshire. His route lay across the mouths of two small rivers along the coast. These are called the *Washes*. At low water they are nearly dry, and may then be crossed with safety; but the difficulty is, after you have crossed one, to be in time to cross the other before the tide rises.

14. The rear of the king's army was overtaken by the tide, and his carriages, money, provisions, and baggage of every sort were lost. This accident, added to his previous anxieties, threw the king into a fever. With great difficulty he reached Newark, where he soon after died, of a fever occasioned by fatigue and anxiety. This event occurred October 19th, 1216, in the forty-ninth year of his age, and the eighteenth of his reign. He left two sons, Henry and Richard, and three daughters.

---

John do after he quitted Runimed? 9. What did the pope do? 10. How were the barons occupied? What did they do to secure themselves from John? 11. What did Philip of France do? 12, 13, 14. Give an account of the king's affairs. When did John die? What was his age? How long had he reigned?

## CHAPTER LXI.

*Henry III.—Coats of Arms, or Armorial Bearings.*

1. WHEN King John died, his son Henry, called Henry of Winchester, was only eight years old. As he grew up, he was found to be in character the opposite of his father. He was gentle, merciful, and humane, kind and affectionate to his family, and liberal to his friends.

2. Had his abilities been equal to his disposition, he would have made a very good king; but the weakness of his conduct rendered him contemptible. His personal appearance, too, was exceedingly disadvantageous; for, though he was of a tolerable height, he had no dignity in his manner; his countenance was not pleasing, and his left eyelid drooped so much as almost to cover the eye.

3. The Earl of Pembroke, who was a sagacious and good man, was made governor of the young king, and protector of the kingdom. By his wise and prudent conduct, the rebel barons were brought back to their allegiance to the king, and Louis soon found himself deserted by all but his French troops.

4. These were soon after defeated by the Earl of Pembroke at Lincoln. In this battle, which decided the fate of Louis in England, only three of the French knights were killed. Indeed, a knight completely armed seldom ran any other risk than that of being dismounted, and it could only be by some chance if he was wounded.

5. It is said that Philip, King of France, in a battle with the Germans, after being knocked from his horse, was a long time surrounded by the enemy, and received blows from all kinds of weapons without losing a drop of blood. It is even said that while he lay upon the ground, a German soldier wanted to pierce his neck with a dart, but could not accomplish his object.

6. The reader may wonder how people could know one another when they were thus covered up in armor. Each knight ornamented his helmet, or his shield, with some figure, such as an animal, a flower, a warlike weapon, or any other thing that pleased his fancy. It may be suggested that it would have been as easy for each one to have written his name upon his shield at once.

7. This might have been a good plan, if all had been scholars; but though every man could distinguish an eagle from a lion, there might not have been one in a thousand who could have distinguished the name of Henry from that of Louis.

8. Before the crusades, every knight adopted what crest on his helmet, and device on his shield, he liked best; but the sons of those who had fought in the Holy Land had a pride in adopting the devices their fathers had borne there; and thus *coats of arms*, as they were called, became hereditary in the families of the crusaders.

LXI.—1. Who succeeded John upon the throne? What is said of Henry III.? 2. What of the protector? 4. What was the success of the French invaders? What is said of defensive armor? 6. How were knights distinguished from one another? Why not write the names? 8, 9. What of coats of arms?

9. But coats of arms, or *armorial bearings*, as they are also called, have long ceased to be confined to the descendants of crusaders; and what was, at first, an honorable distinction, is, at present, little more than an unmeaning ornament.

---

## CHAPTER LXII.

*Disturbed State of England after the Death of Pembroke.—By what means the King obtained Money.—Of Benevolences.*



KING HENRY AND THE NOBLES.

1. AFTER the defeat of the army at Lincoln, Louis was glad to make peace, and to withdraw into France. The Earl of Pembroke continued to govern the kingdom with honor, wisdom, and success, till 1219, when, to the misfortune of England and its king, he died.

2. In 1223, when Henry was sixteen years old, he was declared of age to govern for himself. His want of ability now became apparent, and he was found totally unqualified for maintaining a proper sway among the turbulent barons.

3. Those who had been intrusted with the keeping of the royal castles refused to give them up, and broke out into open rebellion when forcible means were used to compel them to do so. The king would then purchase their return to allegiance by concessions.

4. But the nobles were most highly offended by the favor shown to foreigners by Henry. By the advice of Peter, Bishop of Winchester,

a native of Poictou, the king invited over a great number of the people of that province, and bestowed upon them the chief offices of the state, being persuaded that they were more to be relied on than the English, and that they would serve to counterbalance the great power of the barons.

5. The resistance of the nobles proved vain ; their measures were disconcerted, and the most violent among them were obliged to flee the kingdom, and their confiscated estates were bestowed upon the odious foreigners. At length the clergy took offence at the conduct of the Bishop of Winchester. The primate, as the Archbishop of Canterbury is called, formally demanded the dismission of all foreigners, threatening the king with excommunication if he did not comply with the demand.

6. Henry knew full well that an excommunication, in the existing state of public feeling, would be very dangerous to him, and was obliged to submit. The foreigners were banished, and natives were appointed to office in their stead.

7. But the English in vain flattered themselves that they should be free from foreign influence. In 1236 the king married Eleanor, daughter of the Count of Provence, and immediately raised her relations to the highest offices. Many young ladies also came over from Provence, and were married to some of the chief noblemen in England.

8. The king was so profuse in his generosity to these favorites, that his treasures were soon exhausted, and he was often obliged to apply to *parliament* (as the great council of the nation began about this time to be called) for a supply of money. This body took advantage of his necessity to extort from him a confirmation of the *Magna Charta*, and the grant of new rights.

9. To render himself independent of them, Henry resorted to various modes of procuring money. He would invite himself to the houses of his subjects, and always expected a present at the door ; he extorted from the Jews, wherever he found them ; he demanded *benevolences*, or forced contributions from his nobility and clergy ; but all these expedients proving insufficient, he was at last obliged to sell his jewels and his plate.

---

### CHAPTER LXIII.

*The King and the Pope unite against the Churchmen.—Illustrative Anecdote of the Times.*

1. THE pope, profiting by the weakness of Henry, made great encroachments on the privileges of the Church of England. The

kingdom after his death ? 4. What gave particular offence to the nobles ? 5, 6. What induced the king to banish the foreigners ? 7. Whom did the king marry ? 8. What is the parliament ? What did the parliament obtain from the king ? 9. What were *benevolences* ?

clergy expostulated in vain ; the king, hoping to derive some private advantage therefrom, supported the pope's legate in all his measures.



HENRY III. AND THE CLERGY.

2. They mutually supported one another in their exactions. Whenever the king demanded money for himself, the legate took care to make a demand also. At length the prelates, quite tired of remonstrating, resolved to meet and consider of some remedy to prevent the rapacity of the legate.

3. They assembled accordingly, but scarce had they begun to complain to one another of the miseries they suffered, when the legate entered the assembly, and made a demand for more money ; this they considered as such an accumulation of impudence, that they gave him a blunt refusal.

4. An accident happened about this time, which strikingly exhibits the submission of the people to the papal power. Some business took the legate to Oxford. He was received and entertained there with great magnificence. As the luxury in which these Italian dignitaries lived was great, several scholars of the university, either from curiosity or hunger, entered the kitchen, while the legate's dinner was preparing.

5. After admiring the wealth and plenty which were lavishly displayed on all sides, one of them, a poor Irish scholar, ventured to ask the cook for a bit of something to relieve his hunger. The cook, instead of giving the alms, threw a ladle of boiling water in the face of the petitioner. This action so provoked a Welsh student, who was present, that he drew his bow and shot the cook dead upon the spot.

LXIII.—1. What of the pope's conduct? 2. In what did the pope and Henry agree? 3. What did the clergy do? 4, 5, 6, 7. Relate the anecdote about the legate's servant and the scholar.

6. The legate, hearing the tumult, fled in alarm to the tower of the church and remained there till evening. He then ventured to come forth, and hastening to the king, complained of this killing of his servant. The king fell into a great passion, and offered to put all the offenders to death.

7. The legate at first insisted on taking extreme vengeance, but was at length appeased by proper submission from the university; all the scholars of that college which had offended were ordered to be stripped of their gowns, and to walk barefoot, with halters about their necks, to the legate's house, and humbly ask for pardon.

---

## CHAPTER LXIV.

### *About Simon de Montfort.—The Mad Parliament.*

1. AMONG the barons of England there was one named Simon de Montfort. He was a son of that de Montfort who made himself so famous in France in the war against the Albigenses, a sect of Christians, against whom the pope got up a crusade.

2. This Simon de Montfort had once been a great favorite with Henry, who had loaded him with riches and honors. He had raised him to the dignity of Earl of Leicester, and had consented to his marriage with his own sister, Eleanor, a match which gave great offence to her other brother, Richard, and to the English barons.

3. Although he owed the great wealth which gave him the power to injure, to the liberality of Henry, he was the most active in exciting opposition to the king. Although he was himself a foreigner, no one was so loud as he in declaiming against the indignity of submitting to the rule of foreigners.

4. He left no means untried to gain the favor of all classes of society. His machinations at length proved successful. The barons resolved to take the government into their own hands. The intention of resisting the king's authority first showed itself at the parliament house, where the barons appeared clad in complete armor, with their swords by their sides.

5. The king at his entry was struck with this unusual appearance, and anxiously inquired what was their purpose, and whether they intended to make him a prisoner. To this they submissively replied, that he was not their prisoner, but their sovereign; that they intended to grant him large supplies, but they must have some return for them;

6. That he had frequently made submissions to this parliament, and promised to observe the great charter, but had still allowed himself to be led into the commission of the same errors, and therefore he must now be subjected to more strict regulations, and delegate

sufficient authority to those who were willing to redress the public grievances.

7. Henry agreed to the demand, and promised to assemble a parliament at Oxford, to form a plan for the new government. This parliament, which was afterwards called the *Mad Parliament*, on account of the confusion which resulted from its measures, met on the 11th of June, 1258.

8. Twenty-four barons were chosen by the parliament, at the head of whom was de Montfort, and to these authority was given to reform all abuses. These barons, under this pretext, lorded it over the king, and assumed a right to govern the kingdom. But the people scarcely acknowledging such rulers, or not knowing whom to obey, paid no respect to the laws, and it seemed as if all government were dissolved.

## CHAPTER LXV.

*Character and Conduct of Prince Edward.—Battle of Lewes.—The “Mise” of Lewes.*

1. THE barons had now enjoyed the sovereign power for three years; and had employed it, not for the reformation of abuses, which was the pretence upon which they obtained it, but for the aggrandizement of themselves and their families. They abused their authority so much that all orders of men became dissatisfied.

2. Prince Edward, who had already given evidence of his ability and courage, was loudly called upon to stand forward and assert his own and his father's rights. But he, as well as his father, had taken an oath to obey these self-constituted rulers, and, although absolved by the pope from his oath, he declared that he would abide by what he had sworn to.

3. This fidelity gained him the confidence of all parties, and enabled him afterwards to recover the royal authority for his father, and to perform many great actions. The king, however, as soon as he had received the absolution, issued a proclamation, declaring that he had resumed his authority, and was resolved to protect his subjects against the tyranny of the barons.

4. The next three years were passed in fruitless negotiations between the king and them. Treaties were made, which were broken as soon as ratified. Louis IX., King of France, who well merits his title of *Saint*, for he was one of the most virtuous, as well as one of the most able men who ever lived, pursued a very different policy from that which had actuated his grandfather Philip.

5. He tried to make peace between Henry and his barons. But Henry was too weak, and de Montfort was too ambitious, and all

ment meet? What is it called? 8. What did the parliament do? What was the consequence of their acts?

LXV.—1. To what purpose did the barons employ their power? 2, 3. What of Prince Edward? What did the king do? 4, 5. What of Louis IX.? 6, 7. What was the result

Louis' endeavors were unavailing. At length both parties had recourse to arms. The hostile forces met at Lewes, May 14th, 1264.

6. The royal troops were formed in three divisions, commanded respectively by Henry, his brother Richard, and Prince Edward. The prince attacked the body of the rebels opposed to him, with such fury, that he drove them before him, and never stopped from the pursuit till he was four miles from the field of battle.

7. On his return from this pursuit, he found that the other two divisions of the royal army had been defeated, and that his father and uncle were prisoners in the hands of the rebels. He endeavored in vain to prevail on his followers to renew the battle, but was at length obliged to submit to such terms as Leicester would grant him.

8. It was agreed that Edward and his cousin Henry should surrender themselves as prisoners, in lieu of their respective fathers, who, with all the other prisoners on both sides, were to be released. There were other conditions in this agreement, which is called the *Mise* of Lewes, from an old French word having that meaning.

9. All the nobility of England who valued themselves upon their Norman descent, and who disdained the language of their native country, made familiar use of the French tongue until this period, and for some time after.

## CHAPTER LXVI.

### *4 Change made in the Constitution of Parliament.—Prince Edward makes his Escape from Imprisonment.—The Barons subdued.*

1. LEICESTER, having got the whole royal family into his power, paid no regard to the *Mise* of Lewes. He still detained the king a prisoner, and used his name for his own lofty purposes. He even formed plans of raising himself to the throne. But his ambition caused his downfall. The Earl of Gloucester, his former associate, and now his rival, secretly planned his ruin.

2. Perceiving himself to be an object of suspicion to the nobles, Leicester sought to increase and to turn to advantage his popularity with the other classes. He summoned a parliament, and, that he might control its measures, he made a change in its constitution. In addition to the noblemen who attended in their own right, as the immediate servants of the crown, he ordered each county to send two discreet knights.

3. Every city and borough, or town, was also ordered to send two of its wisest citizens, and burgesses, as the inhabitants of a borough were called. This is the first mention made in history of the com-

of the battle between the king and the nobles? 8. What is the treaty called? 9. What of the language in use?

LXVI.—1. What led to Leicester's ruin? 2. How did he attempt to maintain his power? What changes did he make in the constitution of the parliament? 4. Of what

mons being represented in parliament. Hitherto the prelates and barons only are mentioned as the members.



PRINCE EDWARD SAVING HIS FATHER.

4. At first the nobles and representatives of the counties and towns assembled in one house; but afterwards they divided themselves into two; and hence arose the House of Lords and the House of Commons; the one composed of noblemen who attend in right of birth, or creation by the king, and the other of gentlemen who are chosen by the people.

5. This parliament met the 20th of January, 1265. The most powerful of the nobles, seeing the use which Leicester intended to make of this new engine, withdrew themselves from London. Amongst others, the Earl of Gloucester, whose power and influence had greatly contributed to the original success of the barons, retired to his castle, and put it in a state of defence.

6. He then formed a plan to get Prince Edward out of Leicester's hands, which he contrived to communicate to the prince, and sent him a horse of extraordinary swiftness. The prince, according to Gloucester's plan, pretended to be very ill, and, in a few days, appearing a little better, he obtained Leicester's permission to ride abroad for the benefit of his health.

7. Proceeding slowly, as if weak and ill, he, after some little time persuaded the gentlemen who were his guards to ride races with one another. When he thought that their horses were sufficiently tired

with this exercise, he raised himself erect in his saddle, and telling his guards "he had long enough enjoyed the pleasure of their company, and that he now bade them adieu," he put spurs to his horse, and was soon beyond the reach of pursuit.

8. As soon as his escape was known, the loyal barons flocked to him, and he was thus at the head of a numerous army. Leicester obliged the old king to issue a proclamation, declaring the prince a traitor. He also sent for his eldest son, Simon, from London, who accordingly set out to join him with a great reinforcement.

9. But Prince Edward met and defeated him at Kenilworth; and before Leicester could hear of his son's overthrow, Edward's army appeared in sight, bearing in front the banners taken from young Simon. This led the earl at first to suppose that the reinforcement he was expecting had arrived.

10. But when the prince advanced near enough for him to find out his mistake, he exclaimed, "Now God have mercy on our souls, for our bodies are Prince Edward's!" The battle soon began, and poor King Henry was placed by Leicester in the front of his army. He received a wound, and was near being killed, but crying out, "I am Henry of Winchester, your king, don't kill me," he was led to his son, who put him in a place of safety.

11. The victory of the prince was complete. Leicester was killed, and the confederacy of the barons was broken up. This important battle was fought at Evesham, May 4th, 1265. One powerful baron, named Adam Gordon, still held out against the king, and the prince was obliged to lead an army against him.

12. He found the rebels in a fortified camp, which he at once attacked. In the ardor of the battle, Edward leaped over the trench, and encountered Gordon in single combat; after a sharp contest, the latter fell from his horse, but the prince generously gave him his life, and was ever after faithfully served by him.

---

## CHAPTER LXVII.

*Prince Edward goes on a Crusade.—Death of Henry III.—About Paintings, and Illuminated Manuscripts.*

1. As there was no more fighting to be done at home, Prince Edward, who could not bear to be idle, set out on a crusade against the Infidels. He embarked at Portsmouth, May 4th, 1270, meaning to join St. Louis at Tunis. On his arrival there, he found that Louis had died of the plague.

2. Not discouraged by this event, Edward resolved still to pursue the enterprise with his own little army. Proceeding to the Holy

---

How did Edward effect his escape? 8. What did the king do? 10, 11. What of the battle of Evesham? When and between whom was it fought? 12. What anecdote of Prince Edward's gallantry?

LXVII.—1. When did Edward leave England to fight the Infidels? 2. What was h-

Land, he distinguished himself by many acts of valor; and struck such terror into the Saracens that they employed an assassin to murder him.



PRINCE EDWARD AND THE ASSASSIN.

3. This man, under pretence of having a secret message, was admitted into the prince's chamber, and then attempted to kill him with



ELEANOR SUCKING OUT THE POISON.

a poisoned dagger. Edward wrenched the weapon from the man's hand, but in the scuffle he received a wound in the arm. This might

success? 3. Relate the incidents of the attack on his life. 4. What was the state of

have proved fatal, had not his affectionate wife, Eleanor, who had accompanied him to Palestine, sucked the poison from the wound.

4. Whilst the prince was thus periling his life in foreign lands, affairs were going on very badly at home. King Henry had become old and feeble; his government, never much respected, was now totally despised, and riots, robberies, and excesses of all kinds were perpetually committed.

5. At last the king, worn out by infirmities, died on the 16th of November, 1272, in the sixty-fourth year of his age, and the fifty-seventh of his reign, the longest reign in the English annals, except that of George III., and one of the most inglorious.

6. Although Henry was so deficient in the abilities necessary for a ruler, he was not altogether wanting in sense. He was a promoter of the fine arts, and the art of painting improved greatly during his reign. It became the fashion to adorn the walls of rooms and churches with historical pictures.

7. Antiquaries are very much puzzled to know what colors were used in these large paintings. There is reason to believe they were not merely water colors, and yet it is commonly supposed that the art of painting in oils is of much later discovery.

8. The only pictures which we can rely upon, of this age, are those we find in *Missals*, or Roman Catholic Prayer Books. These are often ornamented, or, as it is called, *illuminated*, with paintings, beautiful from the brightness of the gold and colors, and curious from the exceeding delicacy of the execution. Many of these books are still in excellent preservation.

## CHAPTER LXVIII.

### *Architecture of the Age of Henry III.—Trade and the Merchants of England at the same Period.*

1. A CHANGE was also made in the style of architecture, and some of the finest Gothic buildings of England were built in the reign of Henry III. The heavy Saxon was now succeeded by one of much greater elegance, and richness of ornament. The pillars, instead of heavy thick shafts, had one small shaft in the centre, surrounded by many slender ones, so as to form altogether one bulky pillar composed of many parts.

2. The carved work of all kinds was more elaborate, and the outsides of the churches were adorned with pinnacles, and with loftier steeples than formerly. Such very curious and complicated buildings could not be executed by common workmen. A number of the best artificers, therefore, incorporated themselves into companies, and went about from place to place, as they were required.

England during his absence? 5. When did Henry die? What was his age? How long did he reign? 6. What is said of the art of painting? 7. What of the colors? 8. What is said of the *Missals*?

LXVIII.—1. What change had taken place in the architecture? 3. What were the

3. They lived in temporary huts, near the great buildings they were employed upon, and called themselves *free masons*; and this is the origin of the society of *free masons*, which has been so great extended.

4. Although so much had been done to secure the liberties of the nobles, little change had taken place in the condition of the common people. Slaves were bought and sold at the fairs, and a man would bring a less price than a horse. These fairs were markets, held at stated periods, for the sale of various articles of merchandise; for there were no regular shops, and the merchants and traders travelled from place to place, attending the fairs to dispose of their goods.

5. The foreign trade of England at this time was chiefly carried on by Germans. The principal commodities were wool, lead, and tin. These were brought to certain towns in different parts, called the *staple towns*, where the collectors of the king's customs were appointed to receive the duty.

6. The goods were then sold to the German traders, who were called the *merchants of the staple*; and these people exported them abroad, and imported gold, silver, and various goods in return. The Lombards, also, were another set of foreigners who settled in England. Their business was chiefly to lend money on interest.

7. The native merchants made a serious remonstrance to Edward, after he became king, begging that the "*merchant strangers*" might be sent out of the kingdom; but the answer they received from him was, "I am of opinion that merchant strangers are useful to the great men of the kingdom, and therefore I will not expel them." In fact, they not only imported silks, wine, spices, and other luxuries, used only by the nobles, but also lent them money.

## CHAPTER LXIX.

*Of the state of Learning in the time of Henry III.—Friar Bacon.—Judicial Astrology.—Trials by Combat.*

1. ALTHOUGH four of the present colleges at Oxford were founded in the reign of Henry III., yet learning was still at a very low ebb. There were a great number of students, but they learned little except bad Latin, and worse logic. They disputed without end and without meaning about the plainest truths. These frivolous contests were conducted with so much eagerness, that from angry words the disputants sometimes proceeded to blows.

2. But there was one person of this age who is distinguished for more useful inventions than any other man who ever lived. This was Roger Bacon, a monk of Oxford, and the most learned man of his time. He applied his learning to the discovery of useful knowledge.

*free masons?* 4. What is said of the condition of the people? 5. How was trade carried on? 6. By whom was the foreign trade carried on? In what manner? What were the principal commodities? 7. What did the native merchants do to rid themselves of the foreigners? What was the king's answer to their application?

**LXIX.—1.** What is said of the state of learning? What was taught? 2. What is

3. He invented telescopes, reading-glasses, microscopes, and many other astronomical and mathematical instruments. He discovered gunpowder, but he considered it as an object of mere curiosity, and not applicable to any useful purpose. The same discovery was afterwards made by Swartz, a German monk, about the year 1340, and, as he was the first who applied it to its present uses, he has the credit, and perhaps deservedly, of being the original inventor.



FRIAR BACON.

4. Friar Bacon, as he is commonly called, also wrote several books; and made a map, a thing which excited great admiration. This was not a map of England, as we might suppose, but of Tartary; and was formed from the descriptions he obtained from some travellers, who had been there.

5. In short, his genius soared so far above all his contemporaries, that he was looked upon as a magician, and thrown into prison, where he was kept many years. He at length returned to Oxford, and died there, a very old man, in 1292.

6. At a period a little earlier than this, *judicial astrology*, or the science of the stars, was the favorite study. The astrologers pretended to foretell events by observing the heavenly bodies. There was hardly a prince, or even a nobleman, in Europe, who did not keep one in his family.

7. The most famous of the astrologers published a kind of almanac every year, with a variety of predictions concerning the weather

said of Roger Bacon? What were some of his discoveries? Who has the credit of inventing gunpowder? Why? 5. What misfortunes did Bacon's learning bring upon him? When did he die? 6. What is said of judicial astrology? 7. What did the most

as well as the public events that were to take place. Their predictions were generally given in very general and artful terms. By departing from this prudent conduct, they brought themselves into temporary disrepute.

8. For, in the beginning of 1186, all the great Christian astrologers agreed in declaring, that from some extraordinary positions of the planets, which had never happened before and would never happen again, there would arise on Tuesday, the 16th of September, at three o'clock in the morning, a most dreadful storm, which would sweep away great towns and cities.

9. They further predicted that this storm would be followed by a destructive pestilence, bloody wars, and all the plagues that ever afflicted miserable mortals. This direful prophecy spread terror and consternation over Europe, though it was contradicted by the Arabian astrologers, who said there would only be a few shipwrecks, and a little failure in the harvest.

10. When the awful day drew near, the Archbishop of Canterbury commanded a solemn fast of three days to be observed. But, to the utter confusion of the poor astrologers, the 16th of September was uncommonly calm and pleasant, the whole season remarkably mild and healthy, "and there were no storms that year," says a pleasant writer, "but what the archbishop raised in the church by his own turbulence."

11. We will mention one other incident of the reign of Henry III., illustrative of the manners of the age—the *trial by ordeal*. The Normans, although they had hitherto retained this custom of the Saxons, had a method of their own of referring the decision of questions to the *Judgment of God*.

12. This was by the *trial by combat*. The parties to a lawsuit, instead of battling in words, fought it out with swords, and he who came off best in the contest, gained his cause. Even abstract questions of law were referred to the same decision. A champion was selected to maintain each side of the question, and the decision was given in accordance with the result of the combat.

---

## CHAPTER LXX.

*Edward I., surnamed Long-Shanks.—Tournaments.—The little Battle of Chalons.*

1. WE have already seen enough of Edward I. to know that he proved a king of a very different character from his father. In his person he was unusually tall, and his legs being somewhat out of proportion, he had the surname of Long-Shanks given to him.

---

famous astrologers do each year? 8, 9, 10. Relate the incident which brought them into disrepute. 11. What custom was abolished in the reign of Henry III.? 12. What is said of trials by combat?

LXX.—1. What was Edward I. surnamed? Why? Describe his personal appear

2. He had a fine open forehead, and regular features; his hair and complexion were fair in his youth, but became darker in his middle age. His air and carriage were very commanding; he delighted in all martial and manly exercises, and was an excellent rider.

3. He had great courage and military skill, and his understanding was of a very superior order. He was an excellent son, husband, and father; and yet this man, with all his fine qualities, was the occasion of infinite misery to many thousands of people. The desire of possessing himself of the whole island of Great Britain had so beset his mind, that every other consideration gave way to it.

4. Edward did not remain long in the Holy Land after the attempt on his life which we have mentioned. He had reached Sicily, on his way home, when he heard the news of his father's death. He set out at once for England. As he passed through Burgundy, he received an invitation from the duke of that country to a tournament which he was then preparing.

5. Edward possessed too much of the spirit of a knight to decline any opportunity of gaining honor, and he was glad to display his skill in these martial exercises to the foreign nobles.

6. A *tournament* was a great entertainment given by some king, or rich prince, at which a mock combat was held, for the knights to display their skill in the use of arms. When a prince had resolved to hold a tournament, he sent a messenger, called a *herald*, to the neighboring courts and countries to publish his design, and to invite all brave and loyal knights to honor the intended solemnity with their presence.

7. This invitation was accepted with the greatest joy, and a vast number of ladies and gentlemen commonly assembled. All the knights who proposed to *enter the lists*, that is, to take part in the exercises, hung up their shields, each of which, as we before stated, bore the particular device of the knightly owner, on the walls of a neighboring monastery, where they were viewed by all.

8. If a lady touched one of the shields, it was considered as an accusation against its owner, who was immediately brought before the judges of the tournament—who were generally some old knights whose fighting days were past—tried with great solemnity, and if found guilty of defaming a lady, or of having done anything unbecoming a true and courteous knight, he was degraded and expelled the assembly with every mark of infamy.

9. *The lists*, as the space enclosed for the combat was called, were surrounded with lofty towers, and scaffolds of wood, in which the kings and queens, princes and princesses, lords, ladies, and knights, with the judges, marshals, heralds, and minstrels, were seated in their proper places, all arrayed in their richest dresses.

10. The combatants, nobly mounted and completely armed, were conducted into the lists by the respective ladies in whose honor they

ance 3. What of his character? 4. Where did he hear of his father's death? 5. What delayed him on his way home? 6. What was a tournament? How was the intention to hold one announced? 7. What did the knights do who proposed to take part? 8. What followed if a lady touched the shield of any knight? 9. What were the lists? 10.

were to fight, with bands of music, and amidst the shouts of the numerous spectators. In these exercises, representations were given of all the different feats of actual war, from a single combat to a general action, with all the different kinds of arms, as spears, swords, battle-axes, and daggers.

11. At the conclusion of every day's entertainment, the judges declared the victors, and the prizes were presented to the happy knights by the noblest or most beautiful lady present. The victors were then conducted in triumph to the palace; their armor was taken off by the ladies of the court; they were dressed in the richest robes, seated at the table of the sovereign, and treated with every possible mark of distinction.

12. These tournaments were considered merely as friendly trials of skill. But the lives of many brave champions were lost in them. Sometimes the passions of the combatants became excited, and the mock combat gave occasion to one of a more serious character.

13. This was the case at the very tournament of Châlons, to which Edward had just accepted an invitation. He and his companions were so successful, that the French knights, provoked at their superiority, made a serious attack upon them, which was repulsed, and so much blood was idly shed in the quarrel, that it has received the name of *the little Battle of Châlons*.

---

## CHAPTER LXXI.

*Edward after his return to England.—Reply of Earl Warrene to an Inquiry of the King.—Conquest of Wales.—Massacre of the Welsh Bards.*

1. EDWARD did not arrive in England till May, 1274. His first business was to restore order in the kingdom, and to put a stop to the robberies and murders which were being constantly committed in all parts. During the reigns of the late weak monarchs, great encroachments had been made upon the royal estates by the nobles.

2. Edward therefore appointed commissioners to inquire into the titles by which all persons held their estates. Among the first, Earl Warrene was asked to produce the instrument or title by which he held his.

3. "By this," said he, drawing an old rusty sword out of the scabbard; and added, in a tone of determination, "William of Normandy did not conquer the kingdom for himself alone; my ancestor was a joint adventurer in the enterprise; and I am resolved to maintain what has from that period remained without question in

---

What of the combatants? 11. What happened at the conclusion of each day's sports? 12. Were lives ever lost at the tournaments? 13. What of the tournament at Châlons?

LXXI.—1. When did Edward arrive in England? What were his first acts? What inquiry did he set on foot? 3. What was Earl Warrene's reply to the inquiry? 4

my family." This answer made Edward sensible of the danger he was incurring, and he put an end to the inquiry.

4. Edward appears to have always had a great dislike to the Jews, and this was very much increased by his expedition to the Holy Land. One of his first acts after his return was to confiscate all the property, and to banish from the kingdom all the people of that nation. Since that time there have been very few Jews in England, and the business of lending money, which had hitherto been confined to them, was now taken up by the Lombards, and other foreigners.

5. Edward could not long remain without some employment. So he resolved to chastise the Welsh, because they had taken part with the rebels in his father's reign, and because their prince had refused to do homage to himself as his sovereign.

6. Advancing into their country with an army, he completely defeated them in a battle fought December 11th, 1282. Their prince, named Llewellyn, was slain, and his brother David taken prisoner, and executed like a common traitor.



THE DEATH OF LLEWELLYN.

7. Edward now took undisputed possession of Wales. Fearing that the *Welsh Bards* might, by their music and poetry, in which were celebrated the heroic deeds of their ancestors, revive in the minds of their young countrymen the idea of military valor and ancient glory, the conqueror barbarously ordered them all to be put to death.

8. It is said by the old monkish historians, that Edward, having assembled the leaders of the Welsh, promised to give them a prince

of unexceptionable manners, a Welshman by birth, and one who could speak no other language. Captivated by this description, they poured forth violent acclamations of joy, and promises of obedience.



THE FIRST PRINCE OF WALES.

9. The king then presented to them his second son, Edward, an infant, who had lately been born in the castle of Caernarvon. The death of his eldest son, soon after, made young Edward heir to the crown; and from that time the principality of Wales has given the title to the eldest son of the King of England.

---

## CHAPTER LXXII.

*The Maid of Norway.—Edward interferes in the Affairs of Scotland.*

1. WE have now shown how well Edward succeeded in part of his plan to unite the whole island under his own dominion. We shall next see how nearly Scotland also was thrown into his grasp.

2. The kings of Scotland and England had lived for a long time in singular harmony, considering how apt neighbors are to quarrel. Alexander III. had married Edward's sister, who died, leaving one child, Margaret, who married the King of Norway, and died, leaving an only daughter about three years old, commonly called *the Maid of Norway*.

3. Alexander himself died in 1286, and his infant grandchild became heiress of his dominions. Edward proposed to the King of Norway that the Prince of Wales should marry his daughter, the little Queen of Scotland. Such early marriages were then not un-

common. Indeed, Alexander and his queen had been betrothed when neither of them was a year old.

4. The King of Norway and the parliament of Scotland agreed to the proposal; but the death of the young queen, on her voyage to Scotland, put an end to the project. The demise of a girl three years old was never before so much lamented, nor has ever since produced such disastrous consequences.

5. What might have happened had she lived we know not; but her death prevented the union between the two nations, and plunged Scotland into long and bloody private and public wars. No less than thirteen competitors for the throne appeared. Robert Bruce and John Baliol had the strongest claims, and they agreed to refer the decision to Edward.

6. This was a very common mode of settling disputes in that age. Edward, whose reputation was very high among his contemporaries, had before been selected to decide controversies between states and princes. As the parties to these disputes had been distant, and his own interest was not concerned, his decisions had been wise and equitable.

7. The temptation in the present case was too strong for him to resist. He came to the borders of Scotland with a powerful army, and insisted that his supremacy over Scotland should be acknowledged, before proceeding in the cause which had been referred to him. The Scots, after great hesitation, agreed to this.

8. He then required that all the places of strength should be put into his hands; and when this was done, he gave judgment in favor of Baliol, who was proclaimed King of Scotland. But he obtained only the name of king. Possessing little ability, he was treated like a child by Edward, who usurped all the power, and was disposed to treat the Scots like slaves.

9. But they were not of a temper to submit tamely to this. They took up arms, but were defeated at Dunbar. Edward now treated Scotland like a conquered province. He obliged Baliol to resign his crown, and also ordered all the records and monuments of antiquity to be destroyed, and carried to England with him the *regalia* of Scotland, as the crown, sceptre, and other symbols of royalty are called.

10. But there was one loss which the Scots felt more sensibly than all. That was the stone chair at Scone, in which the kings of Scotland had been wont to sit when they were crowned, and to which a superstitious value was attached. This was carried to England, and is still to be seen in Westminster Abbey.

---

gard to her? 4. What prevented its execution? 5. Who claimed the crown of Scotland? To whose decision were the claims referred? 6. What is said of Edward's decisions in other cases? 7. What did he require before he considered the question? 8. In whose favor did he decide it? How did he treat the Scots? 9. How did the Scots bear his treatment? Where were they defeated? What did Edward do after his victory at Dunbar? 10. What loss did the Scots feel the most?

## CHAPTER LXXIII.

*Wallace.—Singular Expedient of an English Nobleman to inform Robert Bruce of impending Danger.—Edward's Vow.—How it was fulfilled.—Death of Edward.*

1. AFTER the battle of Dunbar, Edward appointed Earl Warrene to be governor of Scotland, and gave all the offices to Englishmen. The Scots groaned bitterly under this degradation; and in 1297, William Wallace stood forth, though only a private gentleman of small property, to rescue his fallen country.

2. He was soon joined by several of the nobility; and notwithstanding the impediments he met with from some of the nobles, he maintained the glorious struggle for eight years, but with various success. At one time he pushed his victorious army into England; but at another, his cause was nearly ruined at Falkirk, where Edward gained a complete victory. At last, in 1305, he was betrayed into the hands of the English, who put him to death.

3. John Baliol being dead, Robert Bruce, son of the former competitor, was generally recognized as the legal heir to the crown of Scotland. Although he was residing at the court of Edward, his heart was with his countrymen, and he was constantly contriving how he might strike the most effective blow for their rights, as well as his own, and for this purpose he corresponded with some patriotic nobles at home.

4. One of these proved treacherous to the cause, and informed Edward of all their plans. Edward did not at once commit Bruce to prison, for such of the nobles as were not in his power would have taken the alarm, and made their escape. So he put spies upon him, and had all his motions strictly watched.

5. An English noble, Bruce's intimate friend, was apprised of his danger; but not daring, amidst so many jealous eyes, to hold any conversation with him, he hit upon an expedient to give him warning that it was full time he should make his escape. He sent him a pair of gilt spurs, and a purse of gold, which he pretended to have borrowed from him, and left it to the sagacity of Robert to discover the meaning of the present.

6. Bruce immediately contrived the means of escape; and as the ground was at that time covered with snow, he had the precaution to order his horse to be shod with his shoes reversed, that he might deceive those who should track his path over the open fields and cross roads, through which he proposed to travel.

7. In a few days he arrived at Dumfries, where he fortunately found a great number of the Scottish nobility assembled, and the traitor, John Cummin, among them. They were not a little sur-

LXXIII.—1. What did Edward do after the victory at Dunbar? 2. What is said of William Wallace? 3. Who was Robert Bruce? Relate the particulars of his escape from Edward's court. 7. What did he do at Dumfries? 9. Relate the ceremony with

prised at Bruce's unexpected arrival, and still more so when he stated to them the occasion of his journey.

8. They readily agreed at once to take up arms, with the exception of Cummin, who did all he could to persuade them to remain quietly in subjection to Edward. To punish him for his former treachery, and to prevent his doing any mischief for the future, he was put to death.

9. When Edward heard of these proceedings, he was enraged beyond measure, and vowed the destruction of *The Bruce*. He began his expedition into Scotland with a singular ceremony. He assembled all his nobles in Westminster Abbey, and, with many solemnities, caused two live swans, adorned with bells of gold, to be brought in.

10. By these swans, he took a solemn oath that he would march into Scotland, and never return till he had brought it into subjection. He kept his vow, but not in the way that he intended; for he did not subjugate Scotland, and he never returned. He spent many months in a vain pursuit of Bruce and his adherents, who contrived to conceal themselves among the mountains, seizing every opportunity of annoying the English.

11. At last, Edward, exasperated by disappointment, sent for all the forces in his dominions to meet him at Carlisle. Before they could arrive, he was taken very ill. It was reported that he was dead, and, to show the falsehood of the report, he set out from Carlisle, but after advancing a few miles he was compelled to stop. A tent was set up by the road-side, in which he expired, July 7th, 1307.

12. Before he died, he charged his eldest son, Edward, to send his heart to the Holy Land, to carry his body with the army into Scotland, and not to bury it till he had made a complete conquest of that country; and never to recall Piers Gaveston, a wicked favorite of the son, whom the father had banished. Edward was seventy years old, and had reigned thirty-five years.

---

## CHAPTER LXXIV.

*Edward II.—Battle of Bannockburn.—The Effect of the Defeat upon the English.*

1. WHEN Edward I. died, his son was twenty-two years of age, and the English had conceived such a good opinion of him, that they thought they should be happy under his government; but the first acts of his reign, which were in direct disobedience of his father's dying injunction, blasted their hopes. Abandoning the invasion of Scotland, he disbanded his army, and, recalling Gaveston from banishment, he gave himself up to idle amusements.

---

which Edward began his expedition to Scotland. 10. How was his vow kept? 11. Relate the particulars of his death. 12. What was his charge to his son? How old was he? How long did he reign?

2. Edward II. resembled his father in the beauty of his person but not in the qualities of his mind. He was weak, passionate, and irresolute, and addicted to the vice of excessive drinking. He was devotedly attached to his favorites, who were without exception ill chosen and unworthy persons. The only kingly quality he possessed was personal courage; but this, as it was not guided by discretion, was of no service to himself or his country.

3. Gaveston was loaded with honors and riches by the king, of whose favor he was very vain. He treated the nobles with the utmost insolence, and used to divert himself and his royal master by turning them into ridicule, and giving them nicknames. This conduct gave great offence to the nobles, which was heightened by the king's appointing Gaveston to be guardian of the kingdom, when he went to France to marry Isabella, daughter of Philip the Fair.

4. A confederacy was formed against him, at the head of which was the Earl of Lancaster, the king's cousin, the richest and most powerful baron in the kingdom. The king was required to send Gaveston out of the country, and he affected to comply with the demand; but instead of sending him home to Gascony, as the barons intended, he made him governor of Ireland.

5. In about a year, Gaveston was recalled to court, where he behaved as insolently as ever. The nobles, finding remonstrances to be vain, broke out into open rebellion. At last Gaveston was taken prisoner by the rebels and put to death. The king was thrown into agonies of grief by the death of his favorite; but he had so completely lost the affections of the people, that he had no means of avenging it, and was obliged to accept such terms of peace as the barons chose to offer.

6. In the mean time, Bruce, by his courage and prudence, had nearly rid his country of its invaders. At last Edward resolved to make one vigorous effort, and to reduce Scotland by a single blow. He entered that country at the head of the largest army that had ever marched out of England, and on the 24th of June, 1314, arrived within three miles of Stirling, where he saw the Scottish army drawn up on the banks of the little river Bannock.

7. Bruce had been able to muster only about thirty thousand men to oppose the immense host of the King of England; but he neglected nothing that could facilitate his success. He placed his army on a rising ground, with a river in front, and a bog on one side; and to make the approach still more difficult, he caused pits to be dug and filled with sharp stakes, and the tops covered over with turf and leaves.

8. The English halted for the night, and, despising the little army opposed to them, spent the time in feasting and merriment; while the Scots were occupied in devotion, and in mutual exhortations to conquer or to die. The Earl of Gloucester, who commanded the English cavalry, was the first to advance, and, falling into one of the pits, was the first to die on that disastrous day.

LXXXIV.—1. How did Edward II. obey his father's dying commands? 2. What is said of his character? 3. What of Gaveston? 4. What did the nobles do? How did the king comply with their demand? 5. What became of Gaveston? 6. What prepara-

9. The cavalry, having lost its leader, was thrown into confusion, and completely routed. While the infantry were alarmed with this unfortunate beginning, they observed what appeared to be another army marching leisurely over the heights as if to surround them. This was, in fact, a number of the wagoners and boys, whom Bruce had furnished with banners, and who, at a distance, made a very warlike show.

10. The stratagem succeeded completely. The English threw down their arms and fled without striking a blow, and Edward was himself obliged to fly, to avoid being made a prisoner. They were pursued with great slaughter for ninety miles, till they reached Berwick. Such was the battle of Bannockburn, which secured the independence of Scotland, and which is remembered as the greatest overthrow which the English have sustained since the Conquest.

11. They did not recover from the effects of this defeat for a long time. They were so much dispirited and cast down, that they lost all courage, so that for several years no superiority of numbers could encourage them to keep the field against the Scots.

12. A little humiliation, probably, did them no harm, for Froissart, the French chronicler, tells us, "that the English were so proud and haughty, that they could not behave to the people of other nations with civility."

---

## CHAPTER LXXV.

*Famines, and the causes of their frequency at this period.—Agriculture.—Customs in the Fourteenth Century.*

1. To add to the distresses which England suffered from the conduct of the barons, there occurred, in 1316, a most grievous famine. Provisions became so scarce that the nobles, whose magnificence was principally shown in the number of their retainers, were obliged to discard many of them.

2. These people, having been accustomed to lead idle lives in the castles of their lords, commonly turned robbers to obtain the means of living; and this they did in such great numbers, that the country was overrun by them.

3. Famines were of more frequent occurrence in those days than at present, because agriculture was conducted in a very unskillful manner, being left entirely to the lowest classes, and considered beneath the attention of a gentleman. It was one of the grounds of complaint against Edward II., that he was fonder of agriculture than of war.

4. That sagacious monarch, Edward I., did not think it beneath

---

tion did Edward make against Scotland? 7, 8, 9, 10: Relate the particulars of the battle of Bannockburn. 11. What was its effect on the English character? 12. What does Froissart say of the English?

LXXV.—1. What distressing event occurred in 1316? 2. What was one consequence? 3. What of famines in those times? 4. What of husbandry? 5. What of horticultural

his consideration, for in a book of laws made in his time, there are very particular directions when and how to till the ground. As the people had no means of fattening cattle in the winter, salted meat was used during the whole time that they could not feed them in the pastures on grass.

5. Horticulture was not entirely neglected. The houses of the nobility had commonly some sort of garden, or "*pleasance*," attached to them; and all the monasteries had orchards and gardens, including a "*herberie*," or physic garden, the chief medicines of the times being prepared from herbs. The list of culinary vegetables at this time was very small, there being few besides carrots, parsnips, and cabbages in general use.

6. Notwithstanding the bad husbandry, the nobles and rich people contrived to live very sumptuously. Edward II. issued a proclamation, forbidding his subjects to have more than two courses at dinner. It is to be hoped that the king set the example by making a reform at court. At a marriage feast of Henry the Third's brother, there were thirty thousand dishes.

7. It was the custom for kings to be attended at the table by their physicians, to tell them what to eat—a necessary precaution, since their banquets were so profuse. There were but two regular meals in the day, dinner and supper. The time of dinner, even at court, was at *nine* in the morning, and the time of supper at *five* in the afternoon.

8. These hours were thought to be friendly to health and long life, according to the following verses, which were then often repeated:

Lever à cinq, diner à neuf,  
Souper à cinq, coucher à neuf,  
Fait vivre dans nonante et neuf.

To rise at five, to dine at nine,  
To sup at five, to bed at nine,  
Makes a man live to ninety-nine.

## CHAPTER LXXVI.

*Edward II. receives Hugh Spenser into his Favor.—He is dethroned and cruelly murdered by Isabella and Roger Mortimer.*

1. EDWARD II. did not possess strength of mind enough to exist without some favorite. A Welsh gentleman, named Hugh Spenser, succeeded to Gaveston's place in the affection of the king, and in the envy and hatred of the nobles. Edward lavished favors upon him

ture? 6. What of the style of living among the nobles? 7. What were the hours for meals?

LXXVI.—1. Who succeeded Gaveston in the king's favor? What was the conse

and his father, who was also named Hugh Spenser, as he had upon Gaveston, and the like consequences ensued.

2. Both parties resorted to arms. At last, in March, 1322, the Earl of Lancaster was taken prisoner. After a short trial, he was condemned to death, and, on the 22d of March, this once powerful nobleman, placed on a miserable horse, and clothed in a shabby dress, was led out of Pontefract, which had been his own chief place of residence, and taken to a hill near the town, where he was beheaded.

3. The question of doing homage for the territories held by the King of England in France had always, as will be recollected, been a source of contention between the two countries. A dispute now arose as to Edward's doing homage for Guienne, which had been restored to the English crown.

4. In 1325 Isabella was sent over to France to accommodate matters between her husband and her brother. She found at Paris a large number of nobles who had been obliged to leave England in the late rebellions. The hatred which she herself felt for the Spencers led to a secret friendship and intercourse with the exiles.

5. One of these, named Roger Mortimer, a man of infamous character, gained such an influence over her, that, yielding entirely to his counsels, she refused to return to England, and set herself up in rebellion against her husband. By artifice she obtained possession of the person of her son, the Prince of Wales, and then determined to make a hostile invasion of England.

6. As her brother disapproved her conduct, he would yield her no assistance. She applied, therefore, to the Earl of Hainault, and, by promising her son in marriage to his daughter Philippa, procured from him a small fleet and some troops, with which she landed in England, September 24th, 1326. The Spencers were so universally detested, that many nobles joined the queen, merely out of hatred to them.

7. The king, abandoned by everybody, fled into Wales, and sought to conceal himself; but he was soon discovered, and confined at Kenilworth Castle. The Spencers, being also taken prisoners, were put to death without any form of trial.

8. In the mean time, Edward, Prince of Wales, a boy fourteen years old, had been placed by his mother and Mortimer at the head of the rebel army, and declared regent. But as he possessed no authority, the kingdom was in a deplorable state. The mobs of London and other cities committed robberies and murders with impunity, and were called by the name of the *Riflers*.

9. The queen and Mortimer, having the king in their power, declared him incapable of governing, and proclaimed the prince king in his stead. But the latter refused to be king in his father's lifetime, without his consent. The parliament, who were completely subservient to the queen and her favorite, sent a deputation to inform Edward of his deposition.

---

quence? 2. What was the fate of Lancaster? 3. What was a subject of dispute with France? 4. What did Isabella do? 5. What of Roger Mortimer? 6. What of the queen's attempt to get assistance? 7. What became of the queen? What of the Spencers? 8. What were the Riflers? 9, 10, 11, 12, 13. Relate the particulars of the king's treatment. When was he murdered? How old was he?

10. As soon as the miserable sovereign saw the deputies, he fainted; and when he recovered and was told their errand, he said to them that he was in their power, and must submit to their will. Judge Trussel, one of the party, then, in the name of the people of England, renounced all fealty to Edward of Caernarvon, as he was styled from the place of his birth; and Sir Thomas Blount, high steward, broke his staff, and declared all the king's officers discharged from his service.

11. Thus ended the reign of Edward II., a period of nearly twenty years of public disgrace and private calamity. But his own miseries did not end with it. He was committed to the custody of some wretches, who did all they could to kill him by ill usage. They hurried him about from castle to castle, in the middle of the night, and but half clothed.

12. One day, for sport, they ordered him to be shaved in the open fields, with water out of a dirty ditch, and refused to let him have any other. The unhappy monarch shed tears at this treatment, and, while the tears were trickling down his cheeks, said, with a smile of grief, "Here is clean warm water, whether you will or no."

13. But this method of killing him proved very slow, and compassion for the king's sufferings was working a change in the feelings of the people. Mortimer, therefore, gave directions that he should be murdered. These were executed with circumstances of the greatest cruelty, on the 21st of September, 1327, Edward being then in the forty-third year of his age.

#### FAMILY OF EDWARD II.

##### WIFE.

Isabella, daughter of Philip the Fair, King of France.

##### SONS.

Edward, Prince of Wales, who succeeded to the throne.  
John, Earl of Cornwall.

##### DAUGHTERS.

Jane, married to David Bruce, King of Scotland.  
Eleanor, married to Reginald, Count of Gueldres.

## CHAPTER LXXVII.

*Edward III.—War with Scotland.—Of the Scottish Troops.—Narrow Escape of Edward.—Peace with Scotland.*

1. WE have now to tell the story of a king who is esteemed one of the greatest of English sovereigns, though he has been more generally admired for his bravery and military skill than for his many other better qualities. Edward III. was tall and majestic in his person, and his countenance bore a very noble expression.

2. His address was pleasing, and he excelled in all the manly and warlike exercises. He was also well versed in the learning of his time, and had an excellent understanding; but, unfortunately for his country, all the powers of his mind were early engrossed by one ruinous desire, that of making conquests.

3. He had, at the very beginning of his reign, an opportunity of displaying his abilities. As he was only fifteen years old at the time of his father's deposition, the government had been intrusted to a regency consisting of twelve persons. But he was allowed to appear at the head of the army destined to act against the Scots, who thought the present a favorable time to retaliate on the English for all the sufferings they had brought on Scotland.

4. The English army was so much superior in numbers to the Scottish, that in a battle in the open field the former would probably have been successful. But the great difficulty was to obtain this advantage. The larger part of the Scottish troops were light-armed, and all their baggage consisted of a bag of oatmeal, which each soldier carried, to be used in case of necessity; together with a thin plate of iron, on which he instantly baked the meal into cake in the open field.

5. But his chief subsistence was the cattle which he seized, and his cooking was as expeditious as all his other operations. After flaying the animal, he placed the skin, loose, and hanging in the form of a bag, upon some stakes; he poured water into it, kindled a fire below, and thus made it serve the purpose of a pot.

6. These troops, being mounted on small horses, passed rapidly from one place to another even quite distant. The smoke and flame of burning villages would direct the English to the place of their encampment, but before they could arrive there, the Scots were already far away. At one time Edward lost the track of them altogether, and although he offered a large reward to any one who should bring him an account of their movements, it was several days before he received the wished-for intelligence.

7. Upon one occasion he ran a very narrow risk of being taken himself. Douglas, one of the bravest and most patriotic of the Scottish nobles, having obtained the password, and surveyed exactly the situation of the English camp, entered it secretly in the night-time, with a body of two hundred determined soldiers.

8. He advanced directly to the royal tent, but some of Edward's attendants, waking at this critical moment, gave the alarm. His chaplain and chamberlain sacrificed their lives for his safety, and the darkness favored his attempt to escape.

9. Robert Bruce, finding that he had to contend with a far more formidable antagonist than the late king, readily accepted proposals for peace which were made by the regency. All claim to homage was renounced on behalf of the English king, and Robert was acknowledged as independent sovereign of Scotland. To cement the

3. What was his age when he came to the throne? To whom was the government intrusted? 4, 5. What is said of the Scottish troops? 6. What of Edward's attempt to bring them to battle? 7, 8. Relate the attempt to take Edward. 9. What were the terms of peace?

union, it was agreed that David, the heir to the Scottish throne, should marry Jane, the sister of Edward.

### CHAPTER LXXVIII.

*Edward III., having put Mortimer to Death, governs the Kingdom with great Prudence.—He makes War on Scotland.—Claims the Crown of France.*

1. IN pursuance of the agreement with the Earl of Hainault, Edward was married, in 1328, to his daughter, Philippa. She proved to be a queen of the highest and most irreproachable character, and no less distinguished for her sense and intrepidity, when the occasion called these qualities forth, than for her benevolence and gentleness.

2. Although there was nominally a regency, yet the sovereign power was in fact usurped by Mortimer, who adopted such measures as he pleased without consulting anybody. His wickedness and rapacity made him more deservedly odious than either Gaveston or the Spencers had been. Although the greatest care was taken to conceal them from him, the abuses which were practised could not escape the observation of so sagacious a prince as Edward.

3. When he reached his eighteenth year, feeling himself capable of governing, he determined to make an effort to throw off the yoke of the insolent favorite of his mother. But he was so surrounded by the spies of Mortimer, that he was obliged to use as much secrecy and precaution as if he were plotting treason.

4. He engaged the assistance of many of the nobles, and then determined to seize upon the queen and Mortimer, who were residing at Nottingham Castle. This castle was kept closely guarded, and though the king was allowed to enter it, yet it was with very few attendants. The gates were locked every evening, and the keys carried to the queen.

5. But Edward contrived to find an entrance for his friends, through a subterranean passage. In spite of the entreaties of the queen, who called upon her son "to have pity on the gentle Mortimer" he was seized and carried away prisoner to Westminster. He was soon afterwards hanged at Tyburn; and Eleanor, being deprived of her ill-gotten riches, was confined, during the rest of her life, to her own house at Rising.

6. Edward now proceeded, with great industry and judgment, in settling the affairs of his kingdom; but unhappily his love of war soon called him off from the arts of peace. In 1331 he renewed the war with Scotland, and in less than a year, drove David, an infant only seven years old, from the throne which his father had so hardly won.

---

LXXVIII.—1. Whom did Edward III. marry? When? 2. What is said of Mortimer? 3. What of the feelings of the king? 4, 5. Relate the fate of Mortimer and the queen. 6. What did Edward proceed to do? When was the war with Scotland re-

7. David took refuge in France, and a son of John Baliol was made King of Scotland, if king he could be called, who was only a tool in the hands of Edward, and who was placed on the throne and displaced from it, as the party of the English or *The Bruce* prevailed.

8. At last, Edward, tired of this war, in which no glory was to be gained, determined to abandon it, and to apply all his strength to enforce a claim which he asserted to the crown of France. In order that the reader may understand the nature of this claim, which was the occasion of long and bloody wars between the two countries, we must now deviate a little from the direct paths of history.

9. There is an old law in France, called the *Salic Law*, one of the provisions of which excludes females from inheriting the crown. For a long series of years no occasion had occurred for applying the rule, so that its very existence came to be questioned. But Louis, oldest brother of Eleanor, having died and left only one daughter, the matter was brought before the parliament of Paris. The Salic Law was declared to be in force, and a brother of the late king succeeded to the crown.

10. Upon his death without male heirs, the third brother mounted the throne. As he died without leaving sons, the crown passed to Philip of Valois, an uncle's son, as being the next male heir. But Edward affirmed himself to be the next male heir, being nephew to the late king, and contended that even if his mother could not be queen, still he might be king, as inheriting through her.

11. But the whole claim had no foundation in law or justice, since if the Salic Law were not in force, then the daughter of Louis was entitled to the crown; and if his other petition was true, then the son of that daughter was the right heir.

12. Edward did not at once insist on his pretensions, as he did not feel strong enough to contend with Philip, who was a prince distinguished for valor and prudence. He even went so far as to do homage to Philip for Guienne, which was a direct acknowledgment of his title to the crown of France—a title which the French themselves considered as indisputable.

---

13. What was the result of this war? 8. What new claims did Edward put forth? 9, 10. State the pretence for these claims. 11. What is said of their justice? 12. By what act did Edward himself recognize the title of Philip?

## CHAPTER LXXIX.

*Edward III makes War upon Philip, King of France, who is informed by his Fool of the Destruction of his Fleet.—Edward, the Black Prince, makes his first appearance at the Battle of Cressy. Cannon used.*



EDWARD, THE BLACK PRINCE.

1. At length, some other causes of disappointment against King Philip having arisen, Edward commenced his preparations for the invasion of France. He was thus occupied for two years. In 1338 he landed at Antwerp, but found himself opposed by so formidable an army of Frenchmen, that he was obliged to content himself with sending King Philip a defiance, and then retreated to England and disbanded his army.

2. Notwithstanding all his mighty preparations had produced no result but to involve him in debt to an immense amount, Edward did not give up the project of conquering France. In 1340 he sailed again, and, meeting the French fleet, completely defeated it.

3. This defeat was so completely unexpected on the part of the French, that no one dared to tell Philip of it, till at last it was hinted

to him by his *jester*. It appears that it was customary in those days for kings and nobles to have amongst their attendants one whose business it was to play the fool, and who was privileged to say or do anything that was ridiculous, for the sake of diverting his master.

4. The fool had an appropriate dress of many different colors; he also wore a cap, made with two great ears, to resemble asses' ears, and he had little sheep-bells fastened to different parts of his dress. As the jester was generally a favorite with his master, he was frequently employed to communicate any news which it was feared might excite the anger of the lord.

5. Upon the present occasion, King Philip's jester said, in his hearing, "O what dastardly cowards those English are!" "How so?" said the king. "Because," rejoined the fool, "they did not jump into the sea, as our brave men have done." The king then demanded an explanation, and heard the whole disastrous story.

6. But this victory did nothing to further Edward's object. He now found himself involved in great difficulties. He had drained the country of money, and was so much involved in debt that he could borrow no more without good security. He had even pledged his crown itself, and the queen's jewels.

7. Still nothing could divert him from his unjust desire to make himself King of France. In 1346 he again landed in that country with an army, and accompanied by his son, who has been called *the Black Prince*, it is supposed from the color of his armor.

8. The King of France assembled a large army to oppose the invaders. After much manœuvring, in which Edward displayed great skill, the English army, on the 25th of August, established itself in a very strong position on the plain of Cressy. Philip made his appearance there on the same day, but as his soldiers were fatigued with a rapid march, he ordered them to halt for the night, that they might rest and refresh themselves; but they were too much excited to obey the orders, and continued to advance.

9. The English forces were disposed in the best manner, and had ample time to refresh themselves before the French came up. During this interval, Edward conferred the honor of knighthood on the Prince of Wales, and a large band of noble youths, who were expected so to behave in the approaching combat as to *win their spurs*; that is, show themselves worthy the distinction they had received.

10. It is said that the front of Edward's army was protected by some pieces of cannon, the first that had yet been made use of in any battle in Europe. These cannon were very clumsy machines. They were composed of bars of iron, held together by hoops, and they commonly burst at the third or fourth discharge. They were at first employed only to shoot off darts and arrows.

## CHAPTER LXXX.

*Battle of Cressy.—Death of the King of Bohemia.—Siege of Calais.—Story of Eustace de St. Pierre.*



QUEEN PHILIPPA AND KING EDWARD.

1. It was about three o'clock in the afternoon when the French advanced troops came up with the English. A short but severe thunder-storm suspended the commencement of the battle for yet half an hour. The sun then burst out brightly, darting his rays on the backs of the English, but full in the eyes of the French.

2. The battle was commenced by archers on both sides. The superior discipline of the English at once became apparent. During the recent storm their bows had been carefully secured in the cases, and whilst their arrows now fell like hail, and with terrible execution, among the French, those of the latter all fell short of their mark, for their bow-strings were wet and slackened.

3. The battle soon became general. At the first onset, the part where the Black Prince was posted was furiously beset; and the king, who had taken his station on the top of a windmill, whence he could overlook the whole field, was importuned to go to his succor.

4. "Is my son dead, wounded, or felled to the ground?" said Edward. "Not so, thank God!" was the reply. "Nay, then, he has no aid from me," said the king; "let him bear himself like a man; in this battle he must win his spurs."

5. After fighting till the close of evening, the French army were completely discomfited. The king fled, accompanied by only five

LXXX.—2. How did the battle of Cressy commence? In what was the better discipline of the English shown? 3, 4. What occurred in relation to the Black Prince?

knights and sixty men-at-arms, leaving dead, on that bloody field, two kings, eleven high princes, eighty knights banneret, twelve hundred knights, and nearly forty thousand private soldiers.

6. The most remarkable death among so many princes was that of John, King of Bohemia, who was blind with age, and not well qualified to mix in the fight. When all seemed lost, the old man inquired for his son Charles, who was nowhere to be seen, having in fact been compelled to fly from the field.

7. The father, getting no intelligence of his son, said to the knights who attended him, "Sirs, ye are my good knights and liegemen; will ye conduct me so far into the battle that I may strike one good stroke with my sword?" Four of his faithful attendants determined to gratify this wish, which despair had dictated.

8. Tying the king's bridle-reins to their own, they rushed into the middle of the fight, where they soon met the death which their master seemed to court. The crest of the old king was three ostrich feathers, with the motto *Ich dien*, which means, *I serve*. This was adopted by the Black Prince, in commemoration of this victory, and has been borne by the princes of Wales ever since.

9. It was very desirable to Edward to possess some sea-port on the coast of France, through which he might be able at any time to introduce troops into that country; and securing to himself a place of retreat, in case that should at any time be necessary. The city of Calais was just what he wanted, being, as may be seen on the map, the nearest to England of any port in France.

10. It was likewise a very strong fortress, and easily defended, if the possessors had a fleet strong enough to keep open the access to it by sea. A more favorable opportunity could never occur to Edward for accomplishing his desire, since it must be a long time before Philip could assemble a new army.

11. From the field of Cressy, therefore, Edward proceeded to Calais, which was too strongly fortified to be reduced by anything but famine. He stationed his fleet directly opposite the harbor, and built huts for his troops all around the town. He then waited patiently the result.

12. John de Vienne, the governor of Calais, was a gallant knight, and resolved not to yield, so long as life could be sustained, in the hope that Edward's patience would be tired out, and that he would abandon the siege. After this had lasted eleven months, the garrison were reduced to the necessity of eating horses, cats and dogs. When these failed, John de Vienne found himself obliged to surrender.

13. After much hesitation, Edward agreed that on condition that six of their principal citizens should come to him barefooted, with ropes about their necks, all ready for execution, and bring him the keys of the town, he would spare the lives of the rest. The people of Calais were greatly distressed when they heard these cruel terms.

---

5. What was the result of the battle? What was the French loss? 6, 7, 8. Relate the death of the King of Bohemia. What were his crest and motto? By whom is this crest now borne? 9, 10. What is said of Calais? 11. What means did Edward adopt to take it? 12. Who was the governor? How long did the siege last? 13. What terms did Edward

14. Whilst they were deliberating on what was to be done, Eustace de St. Pierre, one of the richest merchants of the town, offered himself as the first of the six victims. His example inspired five others with equal courage, and, after a sorrowful parting with their friends, they appeared before Edward, who ordered them at once to be executed.

15. It was in vain that the Black Prince and the nobles interceded for these victims: the king remained inexorable. At length Queen Philippa, who had just arrived from England, where she had, at the head of the English troops, just gained a great victory over the Scots, and taken King David prisoner, threw herself on her knees before the king, and besought him, as a reward for the service she had done him, that he would pardon them.

16. The king yielded to her solicitations, and she had them conducted to her tent, where she entertained them honorably, and sent them back to the town, loaded with presents. Edward took possession of Calais, August 4th, 1347, and, turning out all the old inhabitants, peopled it entirely with his own subjects.

---

## CHAPTER LXXXI.

*The Knights of the Garter.—Strange Fancy of some young Knights.—Origin of the Charter-House School.*

1. THE successes of Edward in France were checked by the appearance of a terrible pestilence, which raged throughout Europe for six years, and was so terrible as to be called the *Black Death*. We may take advantage of this pause to suspend our account of battle and bloodshed, and to say something of the manners and customs of this age.

2. Edward III., as we may readily conceive, from his conduct towards his son in the battle of Cressy, had a great deal of the chivalric spirit. He sought to inspire his subjects with the like feeling. With this view, he held several pompous tournaments, and loaded such as excelled in these martial sports with honors and rewards.

3. With the same view, he instituted, in the year 1349, an order of knights, called *Knights of the Garter*. There is a common story, but it is not supported by authority, that at a court ball the Countess of Salisbury dropped her garter. The king, seeing the lady's confusion, good-naturedly took up the garter, and bound it round his own leg, saying, "*Honi soit qui mal y pense*," which means, "Evil to him who evil thinks."

4. It was in memorial of this event, as the story proceeds, that

---

grant on its surrender? 14. Who was the first to offer his life for his fellow-citizens? 15, 16. What became of the six victims? When did Edward take possession of Calais?

LXXXI.—1. What checked Edward's war in France? 2. What did Edward do to encourage a martial spirit? 3. What is the common story of the origin of the Knights of the Garter? 4. What other origin is assigned to it? 5. What is said of this order?

the order of the Garter was instituted, and the above words adopted as the motto. But a much more honorable, if less gallant origin, is generally assigned to it. It is supposed to be derived from Richard I., who gave a leathern strap to gird around the knee, as a distinction to some of the brave knights who fought with him in Palestine.

5. Edward limited the number of knights to twenty-five, of whom the Black Prince was the first named, and the others were the most distinguished of his generals. The number of the knights has never been increased, and none but nobles of the highest rank and greatest distinction have ever been admitted to it. There are orders of knighthood in every kingdom, but this is esteemed the most honorable in the world. The knights have sometimes been called *Knights of St. George*.

6. There is a peculiar dress worn by the knights on state occasions, but the particular badges are the garter of blue velvet worn on the left leg, just below the knee, and a golden medal, bearing an image of St. George, sitting on horseback, with the dragon under the horse's feet: this medal is suspended to a blue ribbon worn over the left shoulder, and passing under the right arm. A star of silver and gold, with the red cross of St. George upon it, is worn upon the left breast of the outside garment.

7. The color of the garter and ribbon was originally sky blue, but was changed for a deep blue by Charles II., in compliment to an Italian lady, the Duchess of Mazarine, who visited England during his reign; this kind of blue being her favorite color, and from whom it derived its name of *Mazarine Blue*.

8. These incidents of history will enable us better to understand the allusions which are frequently made to "stars," "garters," and "blue ribbons," in English writings; for these terms are frequently used to denote any honors which nobleman may be supposed to aspire to, and which the sovereign can bestow.

9. The young knights of ancient times sometimes took strange whims into their heads. A number of these, who accompanied Edward in an expedition into France, put a black patch over one eye, each one making a vow not to take it off till he had performed some brave action. One of these, named Walter Maury, proved a very beneficent knight, as well as a very valiant one.

10. Amongst other things, he founded a monastery called the Chartreuse. At the reformation of religion in England, this became private property, and was soon afterwards purchased by a rich merchant, named Sutton, who established a public school and hospital there, furnishing them with funds for their perpetual maintenance. This is the origin of the *Charter-House School*, an institution which still exists, the name being a corruption of that of the old monks.

---

6. What of their dress and badges? 7. Whence the name of *Mazarine Blue*? 9. What ridiculous thing did some young knights do? 10. What was the origin of the Charter-House School?

## CHAPTER LXXXII.

*The Dress of fashionable Men and Women in the Reign of Edward III.*

1. THE dress of a fine gentleman of the age of Edward III. would strike us as rather fantastic. He wore long pointed shoes, fastened to his knees by gold or silver chains; a stocking of one color on one leg, and one of another color on the other; short breeches which did not reach to the middle of his thighs; a coat, one half white, and the other half blue or black; a long beard; a silk hood buttoned under his chin, embroidered with grotesque figures of animals.

2. The fashionable females are thus described by an old writer: "The tournaments are attended by many ladies of the first rank and greatest beauty, dressed in party-colored tunics. Their tippets are very short, their caps remarkably small, and wrapped about their heads with cords; their girdles are ornamented with gold and silver, and they wear short swords, like daggers, hanging across their breasts."

3. An old German writer tells us of the English, "that they are very fond of noises, such as the ringing of bells, and the beating of drums." Indeed, all the diversions of the English were of a very noisy character. When a nobleman opened his castle to his guests, on occasions of public festivity, the halls and courts were crowded with minstrels, mimics, jugglers, and tumblers; and there was a strange confusion of feasting, drinking, dancing, singing, and tumbling.

4. There were at that time no such things as theatres or play-houses. The jugglers and tumblers used to travel about the country, and when they were not invited into private houses, they exhibited their tricks in carts in the open streets. The streets seem to have been scenes of great gayety; for we are told that the servants of the citizens of London used in summer evenings to dance in the streets before their masters' doors.

5. They were in no danger from the carriages, for such things were not in use. The usual way for ladies, as well as gentlemen, "to go about," was on horseback, both sexes sitting alike, astride the horse; side-saddles not being invented till the next reign. Queens, and persons of high rank, were occasionally conveyed on horse litters; these were like a bedstead, fastened by shafts before and behind to two horses; something in the manner in which hand-barrows are carried by men.

6. Over the litter there was a canopy held, supported on four long poles, each pole carried by a man on foot; so that this mode of travelling was not a very expeditious one. The lord-mayor and aldermen of London, on occasion of an annual merrymaking in the country, used to go on horseback, while their wives went in wagons.

7. The ardor for study in this reign was very great, for we are informed that there were 30,000 students at Oxford alone. But very little attention was paid to useful sciences. Of the ignorance in geography, we may judge from this story. In 1344, Pope Clement VI. created Louis of Spain Prince of the *Fortunate Isles*, meaning the *Canaries*, then newly discovered.

8. The English ambassador at Rome, and his retinue, were seized with an alarm that Louis had been created King of England, and they immediately hurried home, in order to convey this important intelligence.

### CHAPTER LXXXIII.

*Battle of Poictiers.—King John of France taken Prisoner.—Generous Conduct of the Black Prince.*



EDWARD, THE BLACK PRINCE, WAITING UPON KING JOHN.

1. THE animosity between the French and English was so intense, that not even the dreadful pestilence could for any length of time prevent its breaking out into open hostilities, and in 1352 the war was renewed, Philip de Valois having been succeeded in 1350 by his son John.

2. For four years the contest went on without any very distinguished action on either side, the English, however, gradually ex-

6. What was the usual mode of conveyance? 7, 8 What instance of the ignorance of geography?

LXXXIII.—1. When was the war with France renewed? Who reigned in France

2. When was the battle of Poictiers fought? 3 What were the forces on each side

tending their territories in France. At length, on the 19th of September, 1356, a battle was fought at Poictiers, which had a most decisive effect on the condition of France.

3. On the 17th of that month, the Black Prince, who, through the whole war, had distinguished himself by his valor and discretion, encamped with an army of 12,000 men near the town of Poictiers. The same evening, the King of France, with an army of 60,000 men, encamped within a mile of the prince, who, when he saw the French army advance thus unexpectedly upon him, exclaimed, "God help us! it only remains for us to fight bravely."

4. The Cardinal of Perigord, who was with the French army, was very desirous to make peace, and rode backwards and forwards several times between John and the prince with that view. The prince said to him, "Save my honor, and the honor of my army, and I will readily listen to any reasonable conditions." But John would consent to nothing, unless the prince and a hundred of his knights would surrender themselves prisoners of war.

5. The reply of the prince to this was, that "he would never be made a prisoner but sword in hand." The cardinal, finding his endeavors unavailing, retired to Poictiers, and the two armies prepared themselves for battle. We shall not give you a particular account of this engagement; it will be enough to say that the English gained a most complete victory.

6. King John, deserted by the larger part of his knights, fought bravely for his liberty. By his side was his son Philip, scarcely fourteen years old, who did wonders in defence of his father. The king, wearied, and overwhelmed by numbers, might easily have been slain; but every English gentleman was ambitious of taking alive the royal prisoner, and exhortations to surrender were heard on all sides.

7. The king still cried out, "Where is my cousin, the Prince of Wales?" and seemed unwilling to surrender to any person of inferior rank. But, being told that the prince was at a distance, he at length yielded himself to a French knight, named Morbec, who had been obliged to fly his country for murder. The young prince, Philip, who acquired the surname of *the Hardy*, from his conduct in this battle, also surrendered.

8. The Black Prince, who was reposing in his tent after the fatigues of the day, felt very anxious about the fate of the French king, and sent the Earl of Warwick to bring him intelligence. That nobleman found the captive at a fortunate moment, for his life was exposed to more danger than it had been during the heat of the action.

9. The prisoner had been taken by force from Morbec by the English, and a contest had arisen among the prince's followers, as to whom the prisoner belonged. Some brutal soldiers, rather than yield the prize to their rivals, had threatened to put him to death. Warwick overawed all parties, and, rescuing the king from their turbulence, led him to the prince, who received him with every mark of respect and sympathy; seeking by his conduct to soothe and comfort him.

4. Who tried to make peace? What prevented its being made? 5. What was the result of the battle? 6. 7. 8. What was the fate of King John? 9. 10. How was he

10. Having ordered a magnificent supper to be prepared, he himself served at table, as if he had been one of the retinue. He stood behind the king's chair, declining to sit down in his presence, saying, "he knew too well the difference of rank between a subject and a sovereign prince."

11. The king, much affected by this generous treatment, so little to be expected from so youthful a conqueror, burst into tears, and declared that though it was his fate to be a captive, he rejoiced that he had fallen into the hands of the most generous and valiant prince alive.

12. The prince, after returning thanks to God for his victory, praised his troops for their conduct, and gave rewards and dignities to those who had particularly distinguished themselves. On the 24th of the following April, he sailed with his royal prisoners to England. On their approach to London, they were met by a train of a thousand citizens, in their best array, who conducted them with great state to Westminster.



PRINCE EDWARD AND KING JOHN

13. The Black Prince, in a plain dress, and on a little palfrey, rode by the side of the King of France, who was clad in royal robes, and mounted on a stately war-horse. When they arrived at Westminster, King Edward met them, and embraced the captive king with every mark of respect and affection. He and his son were sumptuously lodged, and treated more like visitors than prisoners, during the three years they remained in England.

Received and treated by the prince? 11. How was the king affected by this treatment? 12. When did the prince return to England? 13. What is said of the reception of him and his prisoners there?

## CHAPTER LXXXIV.

*Honorable Conduct of John, King of France.—Edward the Black Prince, and his Wife, the Fair Maid of Kent, hold their Court at Bordeaux.—The Prince becomes ill, and returns to England, and dies.—Death of Edward III.—The English Language adopted.—How the King erected his Buildings.*



JOHN OF FRANCE.

1. EDWARD had now two captive monarchs in his kingdom; but he soon after released David Bruce, who had remained a prisoner eleven years, upon payment of a large ransom. After the lapse of three years, and many tedious negotiations, a treaty for the release of John was at length concluded. His ransom was fixed at three millions of gold crowns.

2. Edward accompanied John to Calais, and the two kings, with many expressions of affection and regard, parted on the 24th of October, 1360. One of the hostages who had been given for the payment of John's ransom having escaped, that monarch, who felt that by this breach of faith his own honor was impeached, returned to England, where he died in the year 1364.

3. The government of the provinces conquered in France was given to the Black Prince, who, with his wife, called the *Fair Maid of Kent*, established his court at Bordeaux. He soon afterwards engaged in a war to replace Pedro on the throne of Spain, in which he was at the time successful.

LXXXIV.—1. What kings did Edward hold as prisoners? 2. When was John released? Why did he return to England? When did he die? 3. In what new expedi-

4. After his return from Spain, the Black Prince became subject to such continued ill health, that it was believed he had been poisoned. His illness had a most unhappy effect on his temper; from being the most benevolent and generous of men, he became cruel and morose. After some months of constant suffering, he became unable from weakness to mount his horse, and was obliged to give up the command of the army.

5. From this time the glory of England declined; every expedition was unsuccessful. These mortifications, and his continued illness, increased the irritability of his mind. He returned to England, as a last hope, for the recovery of his health; but, after lingering some time, he died on the 8th of June, 1376, in the forty-seventh year of his age.

6. His loss was felt throughout England, as a private as well as a public loss. The Captal de Bucke, one of his brave companions, was so much afflicted by his death, that he refused to take food, and thus soon followed his lamented master.

7. The loss of his son broke the heart of the poor old king, who did not long survive him, and died at his palace, June 1st, 1377, in the sixty-fifth year of his age, and the fifty-first of his reign.

8. Edward's war with France produced one important effect. Hitherto, the king and nobility had never forgotten their French extraction, and the French language had been the language in common use by them. But they had now acquired such an antipathy to the French, that the use of the French language was abolished, and it was ordered by law that none but the English should be employed in the courts of law, and in the public deeds.

9. The condition of the laboring classes in this reign may be best understood from the manner in which Edward conducted the building of the magnificent castle of Windsor. Instead of engaging workmen by contracts and wages, he ordered every county in England to send him a certain number of masons, carpenters, and other artificers, in proportion to the number of its inhabitants, just as if he had been levying an army; and this command was promptly obeyed.

#### TABLE OF THE FAMILY OF EDWARD III.

##### WIFE.

Philippa, daughter of the Earl of Hainault.

##### SONS.

Edward, the Black Prince, who died before his father.

Lionel, Duke of Clarence, who died before his father, leaving a daughter, who married Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March.

John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster.

Edmund, Duke of York.

Thomas, Duke of Gloucester.

tion did the Black Prince engage? 4, 5. What change took place in the Black Prince? When did he die? 6. What was a consequence of his death? 7. When did Edward III. die? What was his age? How long had he reigned? 8. What change was effected in consequence of the wars with the French? 9. What circumstance is given as a specimen of the condition of the people?

## DAUGHTERS.

Isabel, married to the Earl of Bedford.  
 Joan, married to the King of Castile.  
 Mary, married to the Duke of Brittany.  
 Margaret, married to the Earl of Pembroke.

## GRANDSONS.

Richard, son of the Black Prince, who succeeded to the throne.  
 Henry, son of John of Gaunt, afterwards king, by the name of Henry IV.  
 John Beaufort, son of John of Gaunt, from whom was descended King Henry VII.  
 Henry Beaufort, son of John of Gaunt, who was Cardinal of Winchester.  
 Richard, son of Edmund of York.

## CHAPTER LXXXV.

*Richard II. succeeds to the Throne.—Character of his three Uncles.—Insurrection of the People under Wat Tyler and Jack Straw.—About the Templars and the Temple.*



WAT TYLER SLAIN.

1. IMMEDIATELY after the death of his grandfather, the son of the Black Prince was proclaimed king, by the title of Richard II. He was only eleven years old. No regency was expressly appointed, but the king's uncles, the Dukes of Lancaster, York, and Gloucester, governed in the king's name.

2. John of Gaunt, the eldest of these, had a high spirit and great ambition, and even during his father's lifetime had exercised great

authority in the state. The Duke of York was well meaning, but indolent and of little ability. The Duke of Gloucester was turbulent, bold, and meddling; but John, being the oldest, had the chief sway in their councils.

3. Edward left his grandson involved in wars both with France and Scotland, to maintain which, a tax was imposed, in 1381, upon every person above fifteen years of age. This tax excited great discontents among the people, which were raised to the highest pitch by the insolent conduct of the collectors.

4. One of these having insulted the daughter of a *tyler* at Deptford, named Walter, the father knocked down the ruffian with his hammer. The mob applauded the action, and, exclaiming that it was full time to throw off the yoke of servitude, and to take vengeance on their tyrants, flew to arms. Wat Tyler, as he is called, took upon himself the command of the insurgents, and sent messages into all the neighboring counties, inviting the laboring classes to join them.

5. The summons was joyfully obeyed, and quitting their employments, the people hastened to Blackheath, the appointed place of meeting, burning the houses and plundering the estates of the nobility as they passed. The frenzy of the people was encouraged by the declamations of a crazy priest, named John Ball, who went about preaching to them from such texts as this:

"When Adam delved, and Eve span,  
Who was then the gentleman?"

6. The mob, when assembled at Blackheath, amounted to at least 100,000 men. Wat Tyler and another man, called, from his business as a thresher, Jack Straw, were appointed leaders, and they all set off like hounds in full cry towards London. Rushing into the city, they spread themselves over it, killing every gentleman who came in their way, and filling every part with terror.

7. They were particularly furious against the Lombards and Flemings; and those who could not pronounce the words "*bread and cheese*," with a proper English accent, were judged to be foreigners, and had their heads cut off on the spot.

8. Their rage was also directed against the lawyers, and the *Temple*, with all the records that were kept in it, was destroyed. This is the name of a building that was once the residence of the Knights Templars, an order of monkish knights, who took upon themselves the vow of never marrying, and observed other monastic rules.

9. Instead of living in monasteries, and wearing cowls, they put on armor, and devoted themselves to the protection of those who went on pilgrimages to the Holy Land. About the year 1310 the order was dissolved, and Edward III. granted their house, which from them was called the *Temple*, to the students of law, by whom it is still inhabited.

---

How was it received by the people? 4. What act led immediately to the insurrection? Who was made the leader? 5. What is said of John Ball? 6. Where did the mob assemble? Who were appointed leaders? What did the mob proceed to do? 7. What is said of their treatment of foreigners? 8. What is the *Temple*? What is said of the Templars? 9. By whom is the *Temple* now occupied?

## CHAPTER LXXXVI.

*The Insurrection is quelled by the Bravery of William Walworth, and the Presence of Mind of Richard II.*



RICHARD II. IN THE BARGE.

1. THE king's uncles were all absent from the kingdom, and the insurrection was so sudden, that no preparations had been made for checking it. The king, with his mother and chief officers and a small number of the nobles, took refuge in the Tower. Having recovered from the first surprise, a council was held to devise measures for the general security.

2. Some were for resorting to force, but more peaceful counsels prevailed; and it was determined that a message should be sent to the insurgents, to say that if they would retire to a certain place without the city, the king would meet them on the next day, and hear their grievances. Accordingly, on the 14th of June, 1381, Richard, with a few unarmed attendants, proceeded to the appointed place, where he found about sixty thousand persons assembled.

3. The king, in a gentle manner, asked them what they wanted. They replied, "they wanted the freedom of themselves and children." The king promised their desire should be granted, and that, if they would return home, he would give them certificates of freedom. Thirty clerks were instantly set to work to write these certificates, which were given to all who asked for them. Imme-

LXXXVI.—1. Where were the king and his uncles at the breaking out of the insurrection? 2. What measure did the king adopt to quell it? 3. What was his success?

diately the mob dispersed, every one returning contentedly to his home.

4. In the mean time Wat Tyler, with Jack Straw, and the most desperate of the party, supposing that the proposal on the part of the king to meet the people was merely a stratagem to get them out of the city, and having no expectation that he would keep his engagement, instead of going to the appointed place, proceeded to the Tower.

5. They met with little resistance here, and, having gained admittance, murdered the Archbishop of Canterbury, and many others whom they found there. But they were disappointed in their principal object, which was to get possession of the person of the king, whom they had invited to meet them. He went on the river in a barge, but such were the symptoms of violence that he dared not land, and turned back.

6. But the next day, as Richard, attended by William Walworth, the Mayor of London, and about sixty horsemen, was riding through Smithfield, he met Wat Tyler, at the head of nearly thirty thousand of the insurgents. Walter, ordering his companions to keep at a distance, rode up to the king, and conducted himself towards him with such audacity, that Walworth, unable to endure his insolence, struck him to the ground with his sword.

7. The royal party would undoubtedly have been sacrificed to the fury of the mob, if it had not been for the extraordinary presence of mind of the king. Riding up to the insurgents before they had time to recover from their momentary surprise, he cried out, "My friends, be not concerned for the loss of your unworthy leader; I, your king, will be your leader!"

8. Turning his horse, he rode into the open field at the head of the multitude, who followed him without knowing why. In the mean time, the cry had risen in the city, that the king had fallen into the hands of the rebels, and instantly some thousands of brave men flew to his rescue.

9. When they appeared, the mob, seized with a panic, fell on their knees before the king, imploring his pardon, which he granted them, on condition that they dispersed and returned to their homes. This they all did; and thus this insurrection, which appeared to be so formidable, melted away like snow in a sudden thaw.

---

4, 5. What did Wat Tyler and his associates do? 6, 7, 8, 9. Relate the particulars of the death of Walter, and of the dispersion of the mob.

## CHAPTER LXXXVII.

*Character of Richard II.—About Chaucer and Robert Langland*



CHAUCER.

1. RICHARD'S conduct during this disturbance naturally led his subjects to hope that he had inherited the courage and vigor of mind of the most distinguished of his ancestors. But the hope was not realized. As he advanced in age, he discovered a weakness and frivolity which made him totally unfit for the government of a kingdom. His person was extraordinarily beautiful. He hated business, and devoted himself to amusement. He was fond of show and magnificence; his household consisted of ten thousand persons; he had three hundred in his kitchen alone.

2. One of the first acts, after quiet was restored, was to revoke all the certificates of freedom which had been given, and to compel all those to whom they had been granted, to return to their state of servitude, and to perform all their accustomed services to their lords.

3. At the age of sixteen, Richard married Anne of Bohemia, who was long remembered in England by the name of the *good Queen Anne*. The Duke of Lancaster had some claims, in right of his wife, to the throne of Castile, and in 1386, he sailed for Spain with an army of twenty thousand men to prosecute these. He remained there

LXXXVII.—1. What is said of the character and person of Richard? 2. What was one of his first acts after the restoration of quiet? 3. Whom did Richard marry?

three years, and the dispute was finally settled by the marriage of his daughter with the son of the reigning King of Castile.

4. Lancaster's eldest daughter had married the King of Portugal, and his once turbulent ambition seemed quite satisfied with securing to his posterity the crowns of two kingdoms, for after his return to England he led a private life. In 1394 he married Catherine Swynford, who had been governess to his daughters, and who was the sister of Chaucer, who is sometimes called the *Father of English Poetry*, because he was the first English poet of eminence.

5. He was born in 1368, and having a distaste for the profession of the law, for which he was originally intended, obtained a place at the court of Edward III., to whom he made himself very agreeable, and from whom he obtained many substantial marks of favor. Having adopted the religious opinions of Wickliffe, about whom we shall presently speak, Chaucer was obliged to leave the kingdom, to avoid the anger of the clergy.

6. He was at length enabled to return, and the last years of his life were spent in ease and plenty. His chief work is the poem called the *Canterbury Tales*. Few of the modern poets have equalled him in the excellence of his descriptions; but from the great changes that have taken place in the English language since his time, his poetry is often so obscure, that persons unaccustomed to the old style of writing cannot understand it.

7. Since we have begun upon poetry, we may as well mention Robert Langland, who lived about this time. He wrote a very severe satire against persons of all professions, called the "Vision of Piers Plowman," which is very valuable, for the insight it gives us into the manners of the times.

8. It is not in rhyme, and is written in a very singular kind of verse, which is called alliterative, and which consists in having in the same line as many words as possible beginning with the same letter. Thus, speaking of the magnificence of a monkish dwelling, he says,

————— "I found there  
A hall for a high king, a household to holden,  
With broad boards abouten, y-bench'd well clean;  
With windows of glass wrought as a church,  
And chambers with chimneys, and chapels gay."

## CHAPTER LXXXVIII.

### *Anecdote illustrating the Manners of the Times.*

1. THE king was frequently engaged in wars with the Scots. During one of the expeditions against them, an incident occurred,

What expedition did the Duke of Lancaster engage in? How did it result? 4. What of the conduct of the duke after his return from Spain? 5, 6. What is said of Chaucer? 7, 8. What of Robert Langland?

LXXXVIII.—2, 3. Relate the circumstances of Sir Ralph Stafford's death. 5. What is

which, as it illustrates the manners of the times, we will relate. Having arrived with his forces at Beverley, Richard determined to remain there for several days.

2. His army was too numerous to be lodged in the town, and part was, therefore, dispersed in the neighboring villages. A poor German knight, who was one of those who were so dispersed, was looking for a lodging, and trying, in very bad English, to make himself understood. A squire, belonging to the king's half-brother, Sir John Holland, began to abuse the poor German, and laughed at him.

3. An archer of Sir Ralph Stafford's took up the quarrel of the German, and shot the squire. When Sir John Holland heard of the death of his follower, he made a vow that he would neither eat nor drink till it was avenged. Riding furiously about the lanes in search of the German knight, the innocent cause of the affray, he met Sir Ralph Stafford in a narrow passage, and struck him with his sword as he passed.

4. The blow was mortal; but Sir John rode on, without perhaps knowing that he had killed him. The king was very angry when he heard of Sir Ralph's death, and would certainly have hanged the murderer, had he not taken refuge in the Sanctuary of St. John at Beverley.

5. In those days, every church, abbey, or consecrated place was a sanctuary; and all persons who had committed crimes, or were otherwise in fear of their lives, might secure themselves from danger by getting into them; for they were deemed so sacred, that to force a sanctuary, that is, to take any person out by violence who had sought refuge there, was thought a greater crime than murder itself.

6. We remember a story of a nobleman who had taken sanctuary in some abbey during the reign of Richard III. The king was on the point of rushing in and seizing his victim, when the abbot presented himself in the gateway, bearing the Holy Sacrament in his hand, and Richard turned away, not daring to violate a sanctuary so guarded.

7. We will now return to Sir John. The Princess of Wales, his mother, was so much distressed at her son's danger, that she died of grief. He was afterwards pardoned by the king, and received into favor. Sir Ralph Stafford, the victim of his lawless conduct, was a very accomplished young man, and the only son of an old Lord Stafford, who was then with the army.

8. Lord Stafford, as soon as he had recovered from the first burst of grief at the shocking murder of his son, went to the king, and told him that as he was on his road to fight the Scots, he would not let his grief prevent him from serving his country in the hour of need; "and," added he, "during this expedition I shall not think of my affliction: for I like not that the Scots be rejoiced at the misery of the Earl of Stafford."

9. The afflicted old man accordingly accompanied the army into Scotland, and performed all the duties of a soldier and commander, as if he had a heart free from sorrow; but as soon as the expedition was ended, he went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, and did not live to return.

## CHAPTER LXXXIX.

*The King offends his Nobles, and is obliged to resign his Power to a Regency, but resumes his Authority.—Death of the Duke of Gloucester.*



RICHARD RESIGNING HIS CROWN.

1. DURING the absence of the Duke of Lancaster, the king had made himself very unpopular by giving the principal offices of state to a set of worthless favorites, the chief of whom was Michael de la Pole, the son of a merchant of London.

2. A party was formed against the king, at the head of which was the Duke of Gloucester. This became powerful enough to compel Richard to surrender the government of the kingdom to a council of regency, consisting of fourteen noblemen. Many of the favorites were put to death, and De la Pole, who had been made Earl of Suffolk, saved his life by flying from the kingdom.

3. Not content with depriving his nephew of all power, Gloucester determined to destroy every friend that remained to him. Richard, though he had assembled around him so many vicious characters, had still preserved his respect for Sir Samuel Burleigh, a good and

LXXXIX.—1. How did Richard give offence to his nobles? Who was his chief favorite? 2. What was the consequence of his conduct? 3, 4. What is said about Sir

venerable old man, who had been appointed his tutor by the Black Prince.

4. Neither the affection which that prince was known to have had for him, nor his own age and virtue, could preserve him from the malice of Gloucester, who procured his condemnation on a pretended charge of high treason. And though the *good Queen Anne* remained on her knees three hours before the inexorable Gloucester, begging for his life, he was executed like a common traitor.

5. Richard submitted quietly to the tyranny of his uncle for about a year and a half, and then, suddenly rousing himself into action, asserted his own right to the sovereign power. He removed the officers appointed by Gloucester, and filled their places with men of ability. He acted with such prudence and vigor that Gloucester and his party were thunderstruck, and relinquished their authority.

6. Richard now sought to purchase the friendship of his uncle by grants of immense value, but the duke was not of a character to remain long in a state of quiet. The king, having information of his plots, determined to be beforehand with him, and caused him to be seized by surprise and carried to Calais.

7. The Duke of Gloucester was accused of high treason, and a parliament was summoned to meet at Westminster, September 17th, 1397, for his trial. So many nobles came to London to attend this, that every lodging in London, and for ten miles around, was filled.

8. When the day of trial arrived, the Governor of Calais was summoned to bring his prisoner; but, instead of producing him, he sent word that Gloucester had died in prison. The particulars of his death are not known, but there is every reason to believe that he was murdered by the orders of the king.

---

## CHAPTER XC.

*Trial by Combat, between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk.—Ceremonies used on that Occasion.*

1. SOME of the nobles did not hesitate to charge the king with the murder of Gloucester. The Duke of Norfolk one day expressed this opinion in the hearing of Henry Bolingbroke, a son of John of Gaunt, and of course the cousin of the king. Henry was highly indignant at this charge, and made a formal complaint against the duke for speaking seditious words.

2. It was decreed by the lords in parliament that the matter should be decided by a personal combat between the accuser and the accused; a common mode of deciding doubtful questions of law or of fact, as we

---

Samuel Burleigh? 5. How long did Richard submit to the rule of his uncle? What did he do then? 6, 7, 8. Relate the rest of the incidents of the Duke of Gloucester's life.

XC.—1. What was the ground of quarrel between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk

have before stated. It may interest the reader to have a description of the ceremonies used on the occasion.

3. The accuser first appeared, in full armor, with his drawn sword in his hand, and mounted on a white charger, with housings of green and blue velvet, on which were embroidered swans and antelopes of gold. When he approached the lists, the marshal demanded, Who he was? To which he answered, "I am Henry of Lancaster, Duke of Hereford, come hither according to my duty, against Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, a false traitor to God, the king, the country, and me."

4. Then, taking the oath that his quarrel was just and true, he desired to enter the lists. This being granted to him, he sheathed his sword, made the sign of the cross upon his forehead, seized his lance, which had hitherto been borne by his squire, and passing the barrier or entrance to the lists, alighted from his horse, and sat down in a chair of green velvet, placed at one end of the lists.

5. He had scarce taken his seat, when the king came into the field, with great pomp, attended by the peers, and ten thousand men-at-arms, to preserve order among the spectators. The king being seated in his chair of state, a herald proclaimed that none but the marshals should presume to touch the lists, under pain of death.

6. Then another herald proclaimed aloud, "Behold here Henry of Lancaster, Duke of Hereford, who has entered the lists to make good his charge against Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, on pain of being counted false and recreant."

7. The Duke of Norfolk immediately appeared in arms, mounted upon a horse, with housings of crimson velvet, embroidered with lions of silver and mulberry-trees, his armorial bearings; and having taken his oaths, entered the field, exclaiming aloud, "God defend the right!"

8. Alighting from his horse, he placed himself in a chair of crimson velvet, opposite to his antagonist at the other end of the lists. Then the marshal, having measured their lances, delivered one to the Duke of Hereford, and sent a knight with the other to the Duke of Norfolk; he then made proclamation that they should prepare for the combat.

9. They immediately mounted their horses, closed the visors of their helmets, and fixed their lances on their rests. The trumpets sounded the charge; the Duke of Hereford rushed forward with the greatest violence, but before he could reach his antagonist, the king threw down his sceptre, which was a signal for the heralds to interpose, and to stop the combat.

10. He ordered their lances to be taken away, and banished the Duke of Hereford for ten years, and the Duke of Norfolk for life. Nothing could have been more ill judged than this measure, which was attributed to the king's cowardice. In those ferocious times, personal courage was considered the greatest virtue a monarch could possess, and the want of it exposed him to the contempt of his subjects, and therefore to no little danger.

2. How was it ordered that the dispute should be settled? 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8. Give an account

11. The measure gave general dissatisfaction. There was a feeling of disappointment at the loss of the show, and of indignation at the injustice done to the parties themselves. Henry of Lancaster was a great favorite with the soldiers; was possessed of immense wealth, and related to all the great families of the kingdom. He was a dangerous subject to offend; but still no ill consequences to the king might have ensued, but for some new wrongs inflicted upon him.

---

## CHAPTER XCI.

*Henry of Lancaster returns to England with an Army, and compels Richard II. to resign the Crown.—Death of Richard.*

1. IN 1399, John of Gaunt died, and Richard at once seized on all his great estates. His son Henry, called Bolingbroke, from the place of his birth, was in France when he heard of this new outrage committed against him. He resolved immediately to reclaim his rights, and being assisted with ships and soldiers by the Duke of Brittany, he landed in England, July 4th, 1399.

2. The king was at that time in Ireland, and his uncle, the Duke of York, governed England during his absence. It is probable that Henry, when he first landed, had no view beyond that of getting back his inheritance; but finding himself joined by some powerful noblemen, he soon began to entertain designs upon the throne itself.

3. The Duke of York was preparing, on the king's part, to make resistance; but he too, being persuaded by Henry that he had only come to claim his inheritance, joined him with the forces under his command.

4. Richard himself soon after landed at Milford Haven, and finding that his uncle, instead of having an army ready for his service, had gone over to the party of Henry, retired with a few friends to Conway. After some negotiations, he imprudently agreed to a personal conference with his cousin at Flint Castle, to which Richard at once proceeded, with his few attendants.

5. The next day Henry arrived, attended by his army. Richard, who was watching on the walls for his coming, went down to meet him; the duke, after some ceremony, entered the castle in full armor, only making bare his head in compliment to the fallen king.

6. Henry, having thus secured the person of Richard, led him in triumph to London. On the road he was subjected to many indignities both from the duke and from the people, and on his arrival at the capital he was committed as a prisoner to the Tower.

---

of the ceremonies used on the occasion. 9. How did the matter end? 10. What did the king do to the parties? 11. How was the measure received?

XCI.—1. When did John of Gaunt die? What became of his estates? What did Henry do? When did he land in England? 2. Where was the king? By whom was Henry joined? 4, 5. What became of Richard? 6. How was he treated by Henry?

7. Henry now openly declared his design upon the crown, and compelled the king to sign a paper containing a resignation of it. This paper was communicated to parliament, who gave it their approval. Henry was unanimously declared to be the successor, and was led to the vacant throne by the Archbishops of Canterbury and York.

8. Richard was conveyed to Pontefract Castle, and there put to death in the beginning of the year 1400, in the thirty-fourth year of his age, and the twenty-third of his reign. He is called the last sovereign of the *line of Plantagenet*; Henry and his successors being styled *The House of Lancaster*.

#### FAMILY OF RICHARD II.

##### WIFE.

Anne of Bohemia, who died before him. He was espoused to Isabella of France, at the time of his deposition. He left no children.

#### TABLE OF THE KINGS OF THE LINE OF PLANTAGENET.

##### Began to reign. Reigned.

1154	35	Henry II., grandson of Henry I.
1189	10	Richard I., Cœur de Lion, son of Henry II.
1199	17	John Lackland, son of Henry II.
1216	56	Henry III., son of John.
1272	35	Edward I., son of Henry III.
1307	20	Edward II., son of Edward I.
1327	50	Edward III., son of Edward II.
1377	22	Richard II., grandson of Edward III.

#### CHAPTER XCII.

##### *Account of John Wickliffe, who attempted to produce a Reformation in Religion.*

1. In the course of our story we have had frequent occasion to speak of the pride and luxury of the clergy. This was in part the consequence of the idle lives which the liberality of a superstitious people enabled them to lead, and in part to the corrupting doctrines of the established church.

2. John Wickliffe, born about the year 1324, was the first who dared to protest openly against the errors of the time. He was himself a priest, and had gained great distinction at the University of Oxford, where he was educated, by his abilities and acquirements, and more especially by his knowledge of the Scriptures.

3. He first became publicly known in the latter part of the reign of Edward III., by a controversy with the *begging friars*, an order of monks, who, because our Saviour and his apostles avoided worldly riches and honors, pretended to imitate them by going

7. What did he compel the king to do? 8. What did parliament do? 8. When and where did Richard die? What was his age? How long had he reigned? What line of sovereigns ended with him? What were his successors styled?

XCII.—2. When was John Wickliffe born? 3. What did he do? 5. By whom

about begging; and who seemed to think that poverty and beggary were the essence of religion.



JOHN WICKLIFFE.

4. Wickliffe afterwards attacked the corruptions of the monks in general; and, proceeding by degrees, as his knowledge of the Scriptures increased, he came at last to deny the authority of the pope, and the truth of many of the doctrines of the Roman Catholic Church.

5. As he likewise denied the validity of the claims of the clergy to temporal authority, his doctrines were highly acceptable to the nobles, and he was openly favored by John of Gaunt, who, after the death of Edward III., was, as we have before stated, the most powerful man in the kingdom.

6. The boldness and success with which Wickliffe pursued this work excited the alarm of the churchmen; and he was summoned to appear before an ecclesiastical counsel, to answer for his conduct in publishing such heretical opinions.

7. At the day appointed he was conducted to St. Paul's Church in London, the place where the council met, by the Duke of Lancaster, and Sir Henry Percy, the Earl-Marshal of England, one of the chief officers of the crown, and attended by an immense concourse of people.

8. We may well suppose that these marks of respect and favor were not very pleasing to the clergy, and many angry words passed between the duke and the Bishop of London. At length the nobles and the clergy took their seats, whereupon the earl-marshal invited Wickliffe to sit down; "for," said he, "you have much to answer, and need a convenient seat."

9. The rest we will give you in the words of an old historian:

\*The Bishop of London told him that it was against all law and reason, that he who was cited before a council should sit. Hereupon, contumelious words arose between the marshal and the bishop. The duke takes the marshal's part, and sharply reprehended the bishop.

10. "The bishop returns the like to the duke, who, in a great rage, said he would pull down the pride of him, and of all the bishops in England. The duke and the marshal standing thus stiffly for John Wickliffe, there was nothing done against him at that time."

11. There were a great many proselytes to the doctrines of Wickliffe. These were called *Lollards*, a name given them in derision, the word meaning *noisome weed*. Various attempts were made to root out the noisome weed of the reformed faith in religion, and even the fire and fagot were used to extirpate it; but without success. It continued to exist until the reign of Henry VIII., when it was decided by that potentate to be a wholesome plant, and the Roman Catholic belief itself to be the noisome weed.

12. Wickliffe employed many of the latter years of his life in making a translation of the Bible into English. This had been done before by the Venerable Bede; and the old Saxon bishop, Aldhelm, in the year 706, translated the book of Psalms into Saxon; but when the pope began to rule the affairs of the English church, none but Latin Bibles were allowed to be used, and these were to be found only in the hands of the priests.

13. The people were therefore kept from reading the Scriptures, so that the priests and monks might make them believe what they pleased. This work of Wickliffe, therefore, while it was highly acceptable to the laity generally, was disapproved of by the bishops and all who were attached to the established rules of the church.

14. An attempt was made to obtain an order from parliament for the suppression of the English translation; but it was unsuccessful, in consequence of the warm remonstrances of the Duke of Lancaster, who concluded by saying, "We will not be the dregs of all, seeing that other nations have the law of God, which is the law of our faith, written in their own language." Wickliffe died, December 31st, 1384.

### CHAPTER XCIII.

*Henry IV. keeps the Throne in Defiance of the Rights of Edmund Mortimer, the true Heir.—He puts down the rebellious Barons.—Owen Glendower.*

1. THE life of Henry IV. furnishes a striking example of the sudden vicissitudes to which human life is subject. Within the short space of three months, he had been wandering about without a

home, an outcast from that country of which he was now the sovereign.



OWEN GLENDOWER.

2. But his situation was far from being an enviable one. His life was made miserable by constant apprehensions of plots and conspiracies, of which he was really in much danger, and the evil was aggravated by his own jealous and suspicious temper.

3. Even after the abdication of Richard, he had no legal title to the crown, for the undoubted heir was Edmund Mortimer, a descendant of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, the elder brother of John of Gaunt. To secure himself from any attempts on the part of Edmund, who was only seven years old, to recover his rights, Henry caused him to be confined in Windsor Castle.

4. He had possessed the throne only three months when a very dangerous conspiracy was entered into against him, by some nobles attached to Richard. A man named Maudlin was dressed up to personate him; but a quarrel having arisen among the leaders, the conspiracy was soon and easily crushed.

5. All the nobles taken in arms were beheaded; a very different treatment from that which the rebellious barons received in the reign of King John, when they were forgiven as often as they offended. This difference of treatment shows the change which had taken place in the relative power of the king and the barons; for John, had he dared to do so, would have acted precisely as Henry did.

6. To secure himself from any more attempts of this kind, Henry caused Richard to be murdered, as we have already stated; and to

prevent any one from pretending in future to personate him, made known the certainty of his death, by causing his body to be brought to London, and exposed with the face uncovered for three days.

7. A few months afterwards the king had a very narrow escape. One night he perceived, concealed in his bed, just as he was stepping into it, a steel instrument with three sharp points, which would either have killed him, or wounded him severely, had he laid down upon it.

8. Besides his secret enemies, Henry had a very formidable open foe in Owen Glendower, a Welsh gentleman, of great spirit and courage, who proclaimed himself Prince of Wales, in right of his ancestors, and invited his countrymen to attempt the recovery of their independence.

9. They accordingly flocked to his standard, and Glendower, favored by the mountainous nature of his country, maintained himself for seven years against all the efforts of Henry to subdue him.

#### CHAPTER XCIV.

*Several Rebellions against Henry IV.—All finally subdued.—Instance of the Superstition of the People.*

1. THE Earl of Northumberland and his brother, the Earl of Westmoreland, were two of the most powerful barons in England, and it was chiefly by their means that Henry had been able to ascend the throne. Instead of taking pains to secure their support, he gave them just occasion of offence.

2. The Earl of Northumberland and his son, Henry Percy, defeated the Scots in a battle fought at Homildon Hill, and made prisoners of Earl Douglas and many others. Immediately on hearing of this victory, Henry sent orders to the earl not to admit any of his prisoners to ransom; an interference with his rights which the Percys highly resented.

3. By conferring together upon the subject, they became more and more angry; and Henry Percy, who was surnamed *Hotspur*, from his fiery temper, urged on his father and uncle till they resolved to dethrone King Henry, thinking that they could do this with as little difficulty as they had found in dethroning Richard.

4. Douglas was released, and engaged to assist them in their enterprise, and an invitation was also sent to Glendower to join them. Douglas and Hotspur were first in the field, but before they could be joined by Glendower, King Henry was already upon them.

5. A decisive battle was fought at Shrewsbury, July 21st, 1403. Henry commanded his forces in person, assisted by his son Henry. The greatest bravery and skill were shown on both sides, and the event of the contest was long doubtful.

throne? 6. What circumstances show the change in the relative power of the king and the barons? 7. What danger did the king escape? 8, 9. What of Owen Glendower?

XCIV.—2. How did Henry offend the Earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland? 3, 4. What did their resentment lead them to do? 5. When and where was the decisive

6. The king had caused several of his attendants to wear armor resembling his own, and Douglas, who ardently desired to engage with him personally, sought him over the field, and often thought he had fought with him and slain him; but he as often found himself deceived, and was at last himself taken prisoner. Hotspur was killed, and the royal army remained masters of the field.

7. The king, remembering the former services of Northumberland, and pitying the poor old man's bereaved condition, granted him his life, and soon after restored to him almost all his honors and estates.

8. Scarcely was one rebellion quelled before another broke out, at the head of which were Scrope, Archbishop of York, and Thomas Mowbray, the Earl-Marshal of England. Northumberland had also once more taken up arms against the king; but before he could join his forces to those of the others, their followers were already dispersed, and themselves in the power of the king.

9. This was effected by an act of the grossest perfidy and falsehood on the part of the king's general, sanctioned by himself. The chief rebels were beheaded, even Scrope himself; which was the first instance in England of a bishop's being punished with death.

10. The common people looked upon this as an act of gross impiety, and as the king was soon after afflicted with a loathsome eruption in his face, they considered it as a direct punishment for the offence against Heaven.

11. Northumberland, after several years of exile and wandering, was killed in a last attempt to overthrow the power of Henry. The repeated ill success of these rebellions at length subdued all the king's enemies. Even the Welsh, in despair of recovering their independence, abandoned Glendower, who wandered about in various disguises during the rest of his life.

## CHAPTER XCV.

*Henry seizes the young Prince of Scotland, and keeps him a Prisoner eighteen years.—Character of James I. of Scotland.*

1. IT would be thought very strange, at the present day, if a king should seize upon the infant son of another king, with whom he was at peace, as the prince was passing on the sea from his own country to another, and should keep him a prisoner for a great number of years; yet such a procedure was in perfect accordance with the notions of justice held in the time of Henry IV.

2. Robert III., King of Scotland, was a prince of a very feeble character, and the affairs of the nation were ruled by his brother, the Duke of Albany, a restless and ambitious man, who governed in a

---

battle fought? 6. What expedient did Henry adopt to deceive the enemy? What was the fate of several leaders? 8. Who were engaged in the next rebellion? 9. What was the result of it? What did the common people think of the punishment of Scrope? 11. What became of the rest of the king's enemies?

XCV.—2. What is said of Robert III. of Scotland? What of the Duke of Albany?

most arbitrary manner, and even imprisoned and starved to death the elder of the king's two sons.

3. The youngest son, James, was then ten years old, and the king, being anxious to save him from falling into the hands of his cruel uncle, resolved to send him into France, in charge of the Earl of Orkney. They accordingly embarked, and set sail; but their vessel was taken by an English ship.

4. The prince and his attendants were conveyed to Henry, who, on being told by the Earl of Orkney that the young prince was going to France to learn French, said, "I understand French, and therefore ought to be intrusted with his education." He then committed James and his attendants close prisoners to the Tower.

5. The poor old father was thrown into such agonies of grief by the news, that he died in three days. The Duke of Albany then assumed the government of Scotland as regent, but would do nothing to procure the release of James, who, by the death of his father, had become king. It was not until eighteen years afterwards, at the death of the Duke of Albany, that James obtained his liberty, being then ransomed by the people of Scotland.

6. But Henry made some amends for his unjust and cruel conduct, by giving the young prince the best education the times afforded. He excelled in tilting, wrestling, archery, and all the exercises then practised by young men of rank; as well as in the more refined studies of oratory, law, and the philosophy of those times.

7. He had also an extraordinary talent for music and poetry; indeed, some say that he was the inventor of that sweet and plaintive style of music which is peculiar to Scotland. His poetry is quite extraordinary, considering the time in which it was written, and some of his ballads continue to be popular to the present day. In one of his poems he describes very touchingly his manner of life when he was a prisoner.

8. When restored to his kingdom, he proved the best king that ever sat on the Scottish throne. He made excellent laws, and reformed many abuses. The name of James I. of Scotland is still held in reverence by his countrymen.

## CHAPTER XCVI.

### *Anecdotes of Prince Henry.—Death of Henry IV.*

1. HENRY had now some respite from his enemies, but he had none from the bitter reflections of his own mind, which was a perpetual prey to remorse and fear. He also suffered greatly from ill health. To add to his unhappiness, his son, the "Madcap Harry,"

3. Why did Robert wish to send his son to France? Did he reach there? 4. What was done with the prince by Henry? 5. How long did the prince remain a prisoner? 6. What amends did Henry make for his conduct? 7. What is said of James's poetry and music? 8. What of his character as king?

XCVI.—1. What is said of the condition of Henry? 2, 3. Relate the story of Prince

when not engaged in war, in which he displayed great courage and ability, led a most disorderly life.



PRINCE HENRY STRIKING THE JUDGE.

2. One of his companions was arrested for a highway robbery, and brought before the chief justice, Gascoigne, for examination; the evidence was strong against him, but the prince, who was present, required that he should be released. Gascoigne refused to comply with this demand; whereupon the prince became so much exasperated as to forget for the moment where he was, and he actually struck the judge as he sat upon the bench.

3. The judge forthwith vindicated the dignity of his office, by sending the prince to prison; and he, at once acknowledging the impropriety of his own conduct, submitted to the punishment. When this incident was related to the king, he exclaimed, "Happy the monarch who possesses a judge so resolute in the discharge of his duty, and a son so willing to submit to the law!"

4. The king's health now rapidly failed. As his strength declined, his fears of rebellions, and of being deposed, increased even to childish anxiety; he could not sleep unless the crown itself was laid upon his pillow. He became subject to dreadful fits, which would cause him to fall down apparently dead.

5. One day, when he was in one of these fits, the prince, who believed him to be actually dead, took the crown from his pillow, and carried it away. When the king came to his senses he instantly missed it, and sternly asked who had dared to remove it.

6. The prince made a dutiful apology, which pacified the king,

Henry and the chief justice. 4. What is said of Henry's fears? 5, 6, 7. Relate the anecdote of the king and the prince. When did Henry die? What was his age? How long had he reigned?

who said, with a sigh, "Alas, fair son, what right have you to the crown, when you know your father has none?" "My liege," answered the prince, "with your sword you won it, and with the sword I will keep it."

7. "Well," said the king, "do as you please; I leave the issue to God, and hope he will have mercy on my soul." Not long afterwards, on the 20th of March, 1413, while he was at church, he was seized with a fit, and soon expired. This happened in the forty-seventh year of his age, and the fourteenth of his reign.

TABLE OF THE FAMILY OF HENRY IV.

WIVES.

Mary de Bohun, daughter of an English noble.  
Jane, the daughter of the King of Navarre.

SONS.

Henry, Prince of Wales.  
Thomas, Duke of Clarence.  
John, Duke of Bedford, afterwards Regent of France.  
Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, afterwards Regent of England.

DAUGHTERS.

Blanche, who married the Duke of Bavaria.  
Philippa, who married the King of Denmark.

CHAPTER XCVII.

*Story of Prince Henry and the Lollard.—Dress of the Ladies.*

1. FROM the anecdotes we have already related, the reader has doubtless formed an opinion of the character of Prince Henry; but we may mention another, illustrative of a different trait. We must first state, however, that the Lollards were subjected to grievous inflictions in the reign of Henry IV.

2. Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, was the chief persecutor, and caused many of them to be put to death. One of these, named Badby, was sentenced to be burned at Smithfield. He was accordingly tied to a stake, and fagots were piled around him.

3. Just as they were about to set fire to these, the prince rode up to him, and besought him to renounce his opinions, and save his life, promising to provide him with the means of living comfortably, if he would do so.

4. The poor man thanked the prince with many expressions of gratitude, but said that, as he firmly believed his opinions to be true, he would not sacrifice his conscience to save his life.

5. The prince had no power to protect him from the fury of the churchmen upon any other terms. When the fagots were, therefore,

set on fire, he came again, and entreated the sufferer to recant; but he continued steadfast as before, and was accordingly burned to death.

6. As a relief to this horrible story, we may now give a few details of a different character. The fantastic dress of the gentlemen of a preceding reign will be recollected; that of the ladies now was not less extraordinary. Their head-dresses were the most preposterous structures that can be imagined.

7. Some of them were like steeples, with long streamers hanging down from the top; others were so immensely broad, as well as high, that the head appeared like a loaded wagon. This fashion was carried to such an extreme by the Queen of France, that the door-ways of some of the royal palaces had to be made wider and higher, that she might be able to pass through them.

8. Some ladies fastened two great projecting towers of rolled lawn and riband on their heads, which looked like enormous horns. The rest of the dress was not ungraceful. The waist was worn short, and the petticoat very full and flowing, and adorned with broad borders of fur, or with other ornaments.

9. At one time there was a fashion of wearing immoderately large sleeves, ending in a pouch, which answered the purposes of a pocket; but this awkward contrivance did not last long, for in most of the pictures of the fifteenth century, both ladies and gentlemen are drawn with bags hanging from the girdle, instead of these sleeve pouches.

10. The dresses of the higher ranks were chiefly made of silk or cloth, with richly embroidered girdles. The gentlemen did not wear tight coats, as they do now; but a tight waistcoat, with a loose robe over it. On one occasion, Prince Henry is described as having been dressed in a blue satin robe, full of eyelet-holes, and from each hole hung the needle it was worked with. The laborers and poor people were forbidden to wear anything but coarse flannel or fustian clothes, with linen girdles.

## CHAPTER XCVIII.

*Henry V.—His good Qualities and great Popularity.—Persecution of the Lollards.—Lord Cobham.*

1. As soon as Prince Henry heard that his father was dead, he went to his own chamber, and spent the remainder of the day in retirement and prayer. The next morning he sent for the companions of his youthful follies, and told them that he was now going to lead an altered life, and to enter upon new and important duties.

2. At the same time he forbade them to appear in his presence till they, like himself, should have reformed their conduct. He then sent for the wise ministers of his father who had checked his extravagant conduct, and received them with marks of favor and confidence,

said of the ladies' head-dresses? 8, 9. What of the rest of the dress? 10. What was the material of the dress?

**XCVIII.—1.** What did Prince Henry do when he heard of his father's death? 2. How

Chief Justice Gascoigne, who trembled to approach the royal presence, met with the praises he merited, instead of the reproaches he feared.

3. The young king possessed in an eminent degree the qualities which were most calculated to make him a favorite with the people. Even in the midst of the wildest excesses he had given proof of a good and feeling heart. His person was tall and slender, his hair dark, and his features exceedingly beautiful. His accession to the throne was received with general joy.

4. Henry, trusting in this his general popularity, set at liberty Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, who had been kept in close confinement during the whole of the preceding reign. Mortimer showed his sense of the king's kindness by discovering to him a conspiracy which the nobles had entered into to place him upon the throne.

5. He also recalled the son of Hotspur, and restored to him all the estates and honors of his family. In short, his conduct fully justified the high opinion the nation had formed of him. Almost the only blemish upon it was his permitting the persecution of the Lollards, and here we may suppose that he was actuated by a mistaken zeal for what he considered the true religion.

6. One of the most distinguished followers of the new doctrines was Lord Cobham. He had formerly led a very wicked life; but from the time that he adopted the reformed opinions, he had lived a moral and religious one. The king, thinking highly of him as a wise and virtuous man, attempted to reason with him on what he himself thought the fallacy of his new opinions.

7. Henry, after a long conversation, became so much shocked at Cobham's obstinacy in defence of his faith, that he turned him over to the bishops, who condemned him to death as a confirmed heretic. He contrived, however, to escape from the Tower before the day appointed for his execution; but engaging afterwards in a plot against the king, he was seized and executed.

---

## CHAPTER XCIX.

*Henry V. invades France.—Is involved in many Dangers, but extricates himself by the Victory of Agincourt.*

1. FEW of the kings of England have been able to resist the temptation of making war upon France, whenever a favorable opportunity has offered. At this time that country was torn in pieces by furious factions among the nobles, and seemed to offer itself an easy prey to the invader.

2. It is not surprising, therefore, that the military ardor of Henry

---

did he treat his late companions? How his father's ministers? 3. What is said of his character and personal appearance? 4, 5. What generous acts did he do? 6, 7. What blemish upon his character? What is said of Lord Cobham?

XCIX.—1. What is said of the state of France? 2. What was Henry IV.'s dying

induced him to revive the claim to the crown of that country, which had been urged by Edward III. In making war, Henry likewise obeyed the dying injunctions of his father. He also deemed that some employment must be found for the restless activity of the English, which, if not turned against foreign enemies, would certainly break out in open rebellion against their own king.

3. Henry accordingly assembled a large fleet and army at Southampton, and, crossing over to France, landed near Harfleur, which place he took after a vigorous resistance, whilst the French princes were contending among themselves as to who should command the army assembled to oppose him.

4. Henry soon began to repent of his rash inroad into France. The fatigues of the siege, the unusual heat of the weather, and the indiscretion of the troops in eating too much fruit, had so wasted the English army, that Henry could enter upon no further enterprises; as he had sent away the ships which brought him over, he had no means of reaching England but by proceeding first to Calais.

5. The whole distance lay through the enemy's country; there were strong towns to pass, and deep rivers to cross; and an army of one hundred thousand Frenchmen was in the field. The attempt, therefore, on the part of Henry, with a force now reduced to less than twelve thousand, appeared to be almost desperate.

6. Nothing daunted, however, he departed from Harfleur in October, 1415, proceeding by easy marches, and enforcing the strictest discipline. He paid the country people liberally for everything he had of them, and they consequently brought him supplies of provisions, in spite of the orders they had received to the contrary.

7. During the march the king fared no better than the common soldier, and encouraged his men by the cheerful and friendly manner in which he conversed with them. Thus they proceeded till the 24th of October, when, upon their arrival near the town of Agincourt, they beheld the whole French army drawn up at some distance before them.

8. Henry took an attentive survey of the country from a high hill, and saw that it was equally impossible to retreat or to advance. He therefore immediately set about his preparations for a battle; for to surrender without a blow never once entered his mind.

9. He chose his position on a small rising ground, surrounded by trees and brushwood. He then placed guards and lighted fires, and the army, with the exception of some who passed in prayer what they supposed would be the last night of their lives, retired to rest. As some of the nobles were conversing together, one of them said, he wished all the brave men, who were then living idly in England, were there to help them.

10. The king happened to hear them, and cried out, "No! I would not have one more here. If we are defeated, we are too many; but if it please God to give us the victory, as I trust he will, the smaller our number, the greater our glory."

advice to his son? Why did he give it? 3. What did Henry V. do? 4, 5. In what difficulties was he involved? 6. What is said of his conduct on the march? 7. When did they arrive at Agincourt? 8, 9. What did Henry do? 10. What was his speech

11. The French passed the night in noisy festivity; and, confident of victory on the morrow, it was agreed among them that all the English should be put to the sword, excepting the king and the chief nobility, who were to be saved for the sake of their ransoms.

12. We need not detain the reader by giving the details of the battle, which took place the next day. It would be but the story of Cressy and Poictiers over again. The French, proud of their own strength, and despising the weakness of the enemy, acted with rashness and fool-hardiness, which gave to their cautious and well-disciplined enemy a complete victory.



BATTLE OF AGINCOURT.

13. The king himself displayed a valor worthy of the Black Prince. Arrayed in shining armor, with a crown of gold, adorned with precious stones, on his head, he was easily to be distinguished in the thickest of the fight. Eighteen French knights had made a vow to kill or take the English king, and they all lost their lives in attempting to fulfil it.

14. They were all slain by David Cam, the king's faithful squire, and two other Welshmen, who defended him at the cost of their own lives. Henry knighted them as they lay bleeding to death at his feet. One might think it could do the dying man but little good to say to him, "Rise up, Sir David Cam!" but it was the only means at that moment in the king's power to express his sense of gratitude and regard for so faithful a servant.

15. The battle being at an end, Henry called upon the French herald, who was named *Mountjoy*, to declare to whom the victory

belonged; and he adjudging it to the English, the king asked him the name of a neighboring castle, to which he pointed with his finger. "It is called Agincourt," replied the herald. "Then," said the king, "this action shall henceforth be called *The Battle of Agincourt.*"

## CHAPTER C.

*Henry again invades France.—Makes a Treaty, by which he is constituted Regent of that Kingdom, and declared to be the Successor to the Crown.—His Death.*

1. THE victory of Agincourt was of little real service to Henry, for he was too weak to take advantage of the dismay of the French, to extend his conquests in their country. It served, perhaps, to make the king's popularity at home more firm, but at the same time it inspired him with a love of new conquests.

2. With this view he returned to England, to procure a fresh supply of men and money. The people crowded to receive him, and were in such ecstasies of joy, that when he approached Dover, many of them plunged into the sea to meet his barge.

3. In August, 1417, Henry again invaded France at the head of a considerable army. The quarrels among the nobles had left that country in a more defenceless state even than before. No preparations had been made for opposing the progress of the English, and they marched forward into the country, taking possession of all the towns in their way.

4. At last, when they had conquered the whole of Normandy, the contending factions in France began to consider, when too late, what was to be done. An apparent reconciliation took place between the parties. But this was put an end to by the murder of the Duke of Burgundy, as it was supposed by the instigation of the *dauphin*, as the eldest son of the King of France was always called, as the eldest son of the King of England is called the Prince of Wales.

5. Philip, the new Duke of Burgundy, forgetting every other consideration in his desire of vengeance for his father's death, entered into a treaty with Henry, by which it was agreed that the latter should govern France, during the life of the present king, with the title of regent, and at his death should succeed to the crown in exclusion of the *dauphin*; thus France and England were to be forever united in one monarchy.

6. Charles VI., King of France, whose title for life was thus respected, was a poor deranged man, and his person was in the possession of the Burgundians. They compelled him to give his assent to this treaty, which disinherited his own son, and gave his kingdom to its most bitter enemies.

---

C.—1. What is said of the advantages of the victory at Agincourt? 2. How was Henry received in England? 3. When did Henry again invade France? What is said of the condition of France? 4. How was the reconciliation among the French nobles?

7. In fulfilment of the terms of the same treaty, Henry married Catharine, daughter of the French king. The two kings with their queens made a triumphant entry into Paris, in May, 1420, where the union of the two crowns was celebrated with great outward demonstrations of joy.

8. But the dauphin did not submit tamely to the loss of his inheritance. Retiring with a few followers to a distant part of France, he assumed the title of regent, and vigorously defended the few places that still adhered to him.

9. In 1422, Henry took the command of the army employed against the dauphin, but, being taken sick, was obliged to resign it to his brother, the Duke of Bedford. He then retired to Vincennes, near Paris, where he grew rapidly worse. He soon felt himself to be near his end, and sent for the Duke of Bedford and the Earl of Warwick to receive his last directions.

10. He appointed the Duke of Bedford Regent of France, and the Duke of Gloucester Regent of England. His infant son he committed to the care of Warwick. He also gave particular orders that the prisoners taken at Agincourt should not be released till this son, then only a few months old, should be of age.

11. After he had given his final directions, he asked his physicians how long they thought he might live. And when they told him, "About two hours," he shut out from his thoughts every earthly care, and spent his remaining moments in devotion. He died August 31st, 1422, in the thirty-fourth year of his age, and the tenth of his reign.

12. His funeral procession was conducted with great pomp through France, and afterwards from Dover to Westminster, where he was buried. Tapers were kept burning day and night on his tomb for nearly one hundred years, and might be burning still perhaps, if such customs had not gone out of fashion at the Reformation.

#### TABLE OF THE FAMILY OF HENRY V.

##### WIFE.

Catharine of France, married afterwards to Owen Tudor, a Welsh gentleman, who does not appear to have had anything to recommend him but his beauty and his fine dancing.

##### SON.

Henry, Prince of Wales, who was born December 6, 1421.

Catharine had three sons after she married Owen Tudor; namely, Edmund, Earl of Richmond, father of Henry Tudor, afterwards King Henry VII. Jasper, Earl of Pembroke. Owen.

---

defeated? 5. What did the new Duke of Burgundy do? 6. What is said of the King of France? 7. Whom did Henry marry? 9. What happened to Henry in 1422? 10. What were his last directions? 11. When did he die? What was his age? What the length of his reign? 12. What honors were paid him after death?

## CHAPTER CI.

*Domestic Habits of the English in the Fifteenth Century.*

COSTUMES OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

1. IT is time to say something of the domestic habits of the English at this period of history. The nobility no longer lived shut up in gloomy castles, but began to inhabit large rambling houses, built of timber, and covered with plaster. The outside wood-work was very much carved, and the windows were large and wide.

2. The principal apartment was the hall, which was two or three stories high, and commonly had an entrance porch. The floor of the upper end of the hall was raised about one foot higher than the rest, and called the *dais*; here the lord of the mansion was accustomed to sit with his guests.

3. The lower part was common to the menials of the family, of whom there were in every house a great number. The furniture of these halls was not very sumptuous, and usually consisted of only a long table fastened to the floor, three or four wooden benches for the gentlemen, with some low stools for the ladies, and perhaps a cupboard in the corner.

4. The most frequent decoration for the walls was tapestry, which was hung on large hooks, and taken down in summer. Few houses

CL.—1. What change in the place of residence of the nobles? 2. What was the *dais*? 3. How was the hall furnished? 4. What was the *reredosse*? 5, 6. What of

had chimneys; in most the fire was placed on a large stone hearth in the middle of the floor, called a *reredosse*, and, unless when a hole in the roof was made for it, the smoke found its way out through the rafters. There was a little ledge round the hearth, to prevent the ashes and blazing sticks from falling about.

5. The entertainments of the nobles were conducted with much pomp and stateliness. The lord of the mansion sat in state at the head of the long, clumsy, oaken board, and his guests were seated on each side, according to their rank. The table was loaded with capacious pewter dishes of venison, poultry, wild fowls, and fish, dressed in different fashions; roasted cranes and stewed porpoises being favorite dishes. The tables were decorated with castles made of pastry, and tigers of jelly.

6. Ale, beer, and wine were plentifully furnished, and handed to the company in pewter or wooden cups. The feast was enlivened by singers, minstrels, and dances. But the entertainment was not conducted according to our notions of delicacy and cleanliness. Overhead were the perches for hawks, and under foot the pavement was crowded with dogs, gnawing the bones that were thrown to them.

7. In some houses, while the company sat at one end of the hall, the servants dressed the dinner at the other end. This, upon common occasions, was plain enough; an enormous dish of salt fish, and huge joints of beef, with a little garnish of cabbage, formed the every-day dinner of many a noble baron.

8. When he and his guests had eaten what they chose, the serving-men took their share, and what remained was given to the poor, who, at the hour of dinner, stood in crowds about the gates to receive it. It had now become the fashion in great families to have four meals a day.

9. These were the breakfast at seven o'clock, dinner at ten, supper at four, and *livery* between eight and nine; the last of these was a collation of cakes and mulled wine, taken in the bed-chamber, just before going to rest.

## CHAPTER CH.

*Domestic Habits of the English in the Fifteenth Century, continued.—State of Learning.—Whittington, Lord Mayor.*

1. AFTER this description of the furniture of the hall, we shall not expect to find that the accommodations for sleeping were very comfortable. A poor person of the present day would excite the compassion of the benevolent, if he was as meanly lodged as was the richest nobleman in the reign of Henry V.; a flock bed and a

---

entertainments? 7. What of cooking, and dishes? 8, 9. What were the hours for meals?

chaff bolster were then considered extraordinary luxuries; while soft pillows were made only for sick people.

2. The beds of the middle classes were straw pallets, covered with a sheet, and a log of wood for a bolster, with a blanket and coverlet, like those now used for horse-cloths. As for servants, it was very seldom they had any sheets at all to keep the hard straw from hurting them, and the sleeping in night-clothes was an extravagance they did not indulge in.

3. As field sports, such as hunting and hawking, were the chief delight of the nobles, they had no idea of going to London for amusement, as their successors do now-a-days. Yet many of them had houses there, which they occupied when they were summoned thither by the king, or attended parliament, or went there for any other public occasion.

4. These houses were called *inns*; as "Derby Inn," or "Furnival's Inn," from the names of the owners. The common method of building houses in towns, was to make every story project beyond the one below it: so that in narrow streets the top stories almost met.



WHITTINGTON, LORD MAYOR.

5. Learning was very little esteemed at this period. Most of the valuable places in the church were bestowed on illiterate men or foreigners, through the papal influence, while the best scholars in the kingdom were left to languish in want and obscurity. These were sometimes obliged to beg their bread from door to door, with

written certificates given them by the officers of the colleges in which they had studied.

6. Two of these learned beggars arrived one day at the castle of a nobleman, and presented their recommendations, for charity. From these he learned that they had a taste for poetry, whereupon he ordered his servants to take them to a draw-well, and, after putting each of them into a bucket, to let them down alternately into the water till they should make some verses upon the buckets.

7. After they had endured this discipline for some time, to the great entertainment of the baron and his company, they made out to compose some stanzas, and were set at liberty. There were doubtless impostors among the learned beggars then, as among the shipwrecked and burnt-out beggars now; and the two we have mentioned probably belonged to this class; for such treatment would otherwise have been very inconsistent with the hospitality which was so universal at that day.

8. We have all heard the pleasant story of Whittington and his cat. As to the cat, the historian cannot vouch for her existence; but Whittington himself was a real person, and was actually "Lord Mayor of London" in the reign of Henry V. He was a very munificent personage, and many of the charitable institutions founded by him exist to this day.

### CHAPTER CIII.

#### *Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans.*

1. IT is not often that history presents to us three brothers of such fine qualities, and such superior abilities, as Henry V. and the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester. The Duke of Bedford was the superior. He equalled the king in valor and wisdom, and excelled him in the excellent virtues of clemency and command of temper. Gloucester, the *good Duke Humphrey*, as he was called, was a man of high principles and great integrity.

2. The unfortunate King of France did not long survive his conqueror, and immediately upon his death, the dauphin, Charles VII., assumed the title of king. In spite of all his efforts to the contrary, he was fast losing the little territory he had left, when, by one of the most extraordinary circumstances that ever was recorded in history, he was enabled to regain all that his father had lost.

3. The details of the deliverance of France from the English belong more particularly to the history of that country, and you cannot have forgotten the story of the Maid of Orleans, as I there related it to you. I shall here repeat only the leading events in her life.

4. Joan of Arc was a poor peasant girl, who served as the hostler at the inn of a small village in France. The tales told by the trav-

ing? 6, 7. Relate the story of the two learned beggars. 8. What is said of Whittington?

CIII.—1. What is said of the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester? 4. Who was Joan of

ellers who stopped there, of the cruelties practised by the English, made a great impression upon her excitable mind; and her enthusiasm in behalf of her countrymen at last rose to such a pitch as to make her believe that she was appointed by God to be their deliverer.



JOAN OF ARC, THE MAID OF ORLEANS.

5. Orleans was the sole town of importance remaining to Charles VII., and this had long been besieged by the English. Just at the moment when its deliverance seemed hopeless, and the fortunes of the French king to be in a desperate condition, Joan presented herself to that monarch, and made known to him what she called her divine commission.

6. The king, glad to avail himself of any expedient to raise the spirits of his countrymen, accepted her offer of service. In a complete suit of armor, and mounted on a war-horse, which her employment at the inn had made her expert in managing, she set off with a small escort of soldiers for Orleans.

7. The report of her coming had gone before her, and the English troops, who believed her all that she declared herself to be, suffered her to pass through their camp without opposition, and to enter the city. A change at once took place in the state of affairs. Taking the command of the troops, she made repeated sallies upon the besiegers, who fled at her approach without making any resistance, for they believed that in contending with her they were fighting against Heaven.

8. The English commander was at length obliged to raise the siege, and thus Joan, who henceforth was called the Maid of Or-

leans, in part redeemed her promise. The French now became the assailants; many towns were taken, and on every occasion the Maid behaved with the courage of an experienced soldier.

9. Next to the relief of Orleans, the object which Joan had most at heart was that Charles should be crowned at Rheims, the usual place of the coronation of the kings of France. This seemed to be more difficult than her former exploits; for the whole country in the neighborhood of that city was in the possession of the enemy. Here again the general superstition aided her, and she accomplished her object.

10. The ceremony of the coronation being over, Joan announced that her task was finished, and, falling at the king's feet, besought him to permit her to return to her former station. But the king would not consent to this, and constrained her to remain with the troops. He was too poor to make her any substantial return for her services, but, as a token that he was not unmindful of them, he ennobled her family.

11. On the first unexpected turn of fortune, the French commanders had been willing to give all the honor of the successes to Joan; but after a time they became jealous of her fame; and one day when some troops under her command were repulsed near Compiègne, and obliged to retreat into the town, the governor admitted the whole party except poor Joan, who was purposely shut out.

12. Being thus left alone in the midst of a host of enemies, she was pulled from her horse and made a prisoner. The treatment she received from Bedford is a dreadful blot upon the character of a man whose life had hitherto been more than ordinarily blameless. He caused her to be burned alive in the market-place of Rouen, on the 30th of May, 1431. The spot of this bloody sacrifice is yet marked by a statue of the heroic *Maid*.

13. Bedford hoped, by her execution as a sorceress, to counteract the influence of superstition on the minds of both French and English. But the effect was very different from what he expected. Her death excited the horror and detestation of the English towards those concerned in it; and the indignation of the French prompted them to yet greater exertions.

14. The duke himself did not long survive his victim. On his death, he was buried at Rouen. When Charles VII. took possession of that city, his courtiers proposed to him to destroy the monument of black marble which had been erected over his grave. "No," said Charles, "let him repose in peace, and be thankful that he *does* repose, for were he to awake, he would make the stoutest of us tremble."

---

life to the raising of the siege of Orleans. 9, 10, 11, 12. Relate the remaining events of her life. 13. What effect did Bedford hope to produce by her death? How were his expectations answered? 14. What more is said of the duke?

## CHAPTER CIV.

*Henry VI.—Quarrels between his Councillors.—Marriage of the King with Margaret of Anjou.—Curious Charge of Sorcery.—Murder of the Duke of Gloucester.*



CROWNING OF HENRY VI.

1. KINGS, however insignificant in character, cannot be entirely passed over. We must, therefore, say something about Henry VI, who would himself have been glad to remain in the background during the whole of his life, for he was of a timid and quiet disposition, and entirely unfit for the cares of royalty.

2. He inherited neither the fine qualities nor the majestic figure of his father, nor any of his mother's delicate beauty. His personal appearance was inelegant, his countenance dull and unmeaning. His character is thus described by an old historian:

3. "There never was a more holy, nor a better creature, a man of a meek spirit and a simple wit, preferring peace to war, and rest to business, and honesty before profit. He was governed of those he should have ruled, and bridled of those he should have sharply spurred."

4. Some witty person has said, "Princes are flattered by all things

but their horses, who will make no more ceremony about throwing a king than a groom," and few kings could have been earlier subjected to flattery than Henry VI.; for, when only eight months old, he was kept quiet in his mother's lap to listen, or rather to appear to listen, to a long address from parliament, in which he was called a "most toward prince and sovereign governor." When he was only eight years old he was solemnly crowned at Paris as King of France.

5. However, Henry was more fortunate than most princes in having one wise and sincere friend in the good old Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, who, when the king was eleven years old, not only himself reprimanded him, but also desired the council would in a body admonish him of his faults.

6. After the death of Warwick, the care of the young king devolved principally upon Cardinal Beaufort, between whom and Gloucester, the Regent of England, quarrels were constantly taking place. When the king was twenty-four years old, the cardinal, in order to thwart the good duke, formed a plan for the marriage of Henry with Margaret of Anjou.

7. Gloucester, as if he had foreseen the miseries which this fatal union would bring upon the country, did all in his power to prevent it. But his efforts only made Beaufort and his party more eager to bring it about, and the marriage took place in 1445.

8. Margaret was a woman of great accomplishments, but with a most vindictive temper. She never forgave the Duke of Gloucester for the opposition he had made to her marriage, and came to England vowing vengeance against him in her heart; and she found willing associates in Cardinal Beaufort and the Duke of Suffolk.

9. These noblemen had already commenced their machinations by accusing Eleanor Cotham, Gloucester's wife, of witchcraft. She was charged with having caused an image of the king to be made in wax; this, the accusers said, was laid before a gentle fire, and as the wax dissolved, the king's strength was wasted; and upon its total dissolution, his life was to be at an end.

10. Upon this absurd charge she was found guilty, and condemned to do public penance, and then to be imprisoned for life on the Isle of Man. One of the evidences brought to prove that she was a witch was a paper of mathematical figures written by her priest, which the ignorance of the people who found it imagined to be some magical incantation.

11. Having the support of the queen, these wicked nobles determined now to attempt the destruction of the duke himself; he was accused of high treason, but the council, though composed entirely of his enemies, were compelled to pronounce him innocent of the charge. He was, notwithstanding, imprisoned, and soon afterwards found dead in his bed.

12. If Margaret was really accessory to his murder, she was fully punished. Gloucester's death was, in fact, her greatest misfortune;

---

6. Who instigated him to marry Margaret of Anjou? 7. Who opposed the marriage? 8. What of Margaret? 9. What charge was made against Eleanor Cotham? 10. What was offered as evidence against her? 11, 12. What more is said of Gloucester?

for, had he lived, his ability, integrity, and great popularity, would probably have preserved the family from those calamities that afterwards befell them.

## CHAPTER CV.

*The Duke of York forms a Design to claim the Crown.—Insurrection of Jack Cade.*



JACK CADE'S REBELLION.

1. AFTER the death of the Duke of Bedford, a considerable time elapsed before the English council could decide upon his successor. While they were disputing who should be Regent of France, the French were fast deciding the question for themselves; for Charles made himself master of Paris, and of many other important places.

2. The Duke of York was at length appointed. When he arrived in France, he found the English cause in a very declining state, and supported only by the bravery and exertions of Lord Talbot, who was now the sole survivor of Henry V.'s brave band of warriors. The disputes and factions at home rendered all his efforts to preserve the possessions of the English in France of no avail; and in 1444, a truce for six years was agreed upon.

3. The Duke of York conducted affairs in France with great wisdom and prudence, but he would not consent to become the tool

CV.—1. What is said of the appointment of regent for France after Bedford's death? 2. Who was at length appointed? 3. What was the cause of the recall of York? 4. What

of the queen and Suffolk, who now managed everything their own way, and he was therefore recalled, and the Duke of Somerset appointed in his stead.

4. Suffolk and Margaret had soon reason to repent of this unwise measure; for York, who had hitherto been a loyal subject, feeling himself greatly injured, now meditated revenge, by asserting his own claim to the crown. By his father he was descended from Edward the Third's youngest son.

5. From his mother, who was the last of the Mortimers, he inherited the claim of that family from Lionel, *second* son of the same king. We must not forget that John of Gaunt, from whom Henry VI. was descended, was Edward's *third* son; therefore York, in right of his mother, had certainly a superior claim to the crown. He kept his designs secret for some time, waiting for an opportunity of forwarding them.

6. The bad management of affairs, both at home and abroad, by which the English possessions in France had been so much reduced that only Calais remained of them, excited the popular indignation so much, that, in 1450, the parliament was compelled to bring charges of high treason against Suffolk.

7. The queen contrived to get him off with five years' banishment, and he sailed for France. But his enemies, who feared that Margaret would recall him, employed a captain of a vessel to intercept him in his passage. Being brought to Dover, his head was struck off on the side of a boat, and his body thrown into the sea.

8. The popular discontent likewise displayed itself in tumults and insurrections. The most formidable was one that broke out in Kent, headed by a man named Jack Cade, who defeated an army of the king's troops at Sevenoaks. Elated by his victory, he advanced to London.

9. Entering the city, he put to death the sheriff and several nobles, and striking with a staff what is called London Stone, (a stone which is yet to be seen in London, and is supposed to have been placed in its present position by the Romans, to mark the spot from which they measured the distance from the city,) he said, "Now I am master of London."

10. But his triumph did not last long; for, on the appearance of a body of troops, his followers fled, and upon a pardon being offered to all who should return to their homes, they deserted their leader, and Cade soon found himself alone. For a short time he wandered about in disguise, but was at last found lurking in a garden in Sussex, and put to death on the spot.

---

claim had York to the crown? 6. What is said of the management of affairs by Margaret and Suffolk? 7. What was the fate of Suffolk? 8, 9, 10. Relate the particulars of Jack Cade's insurrection.

## CHAPTER CVI.

*Battle of St. Albans.—The Duke of York claims the Crown.—Warwick, the King-maker.*

1. As the necessity for keeping an English regent in France had now ceased, Somerset returned to England, and succeeded to Suffolk's place in the confidence and favor of the queen. His misconduct in France had made him very unpopular, and his administration was very naturally compared with that of York, who had acquitted himself very well during his regency.

2. In 1454, the king sunk into a state of total bodily and mental weakness. The Duke of York was thereupon made protector of the kingdom; and the first use he made of his power was to put Somerset in prison. The king soon after recovered his reason, and then Somerset was set at liberty, and York removed from the protectorship.

3. The quarrel between these two nobles soon after threw the whole kingdom into a ferment. They both assembled their friends and vassals, and met at St. Albans, where a desperate battle was fought, May 3d, 1455, in which Somerset was killed and the Duke of York was completely victorious.

4. The king, whom Somerset had dragged, much against his will, into the battle, was wounded, and took refuge in the house of a tanner. Here the Duke of York found him, and falling upon his knees before him, declared himself his loyal subject, and ready to obey his commands. "If so," said the king, "stop the pursuit and slaughter."

5. This was the commencement of the wars between the *Houses of York and Lancaster*; a war which lasted thirty years, cost the lives of eighty royal princes, and almost entirely annihilated the ancient nobility of England. It is sometimes called the war between *the two roses*, because the badge worn by the adherents of the house of York was a *white rose*, whilst those of Lancaster wore a *red rose*.

6. Henry was conducted to London by the Duke of York, who treated him with the greatest submission and respect. Notwithstanding his professions of loyalty, yet, under pretence of freeing the king from evil counsellors, he continued to carry on the war against the queen and her party.

7. At last the duke declared his secret views on the crown itself; and on this, many who had joined him because they supposed he was contending for the public good, deserted his standard. He, seeing himself thus suddenly abandoned, retired into Ireland.

---

CVI.—1. Who succeeded to Suffolk's place? 2. When, and for what reason, was York made protector? What followed the king's recovery? 3. When was the battle of St. Albans fought? Between what parties? What was the result? 4. What became of the king? 5. What war was this the commencement of? Why was it called the war of the Two Roses? 6. How was Henry treated by the Duke of York? 7. What

8. But he left a very able and zealous friend in England. This was his wife's brother, Nevil Earl of Warwick, commonly called, from subsequent events, *The King-maker*. This nobleman was the richest subject in the kingdom. On his different estates he maintained 30,000 people,—a very great number, when we remember that the whole kingdom did not probably at that time contain more than 2,300,000.

9. Stow, a writer of that day, describes Warwick coming into London with a train of 600 men, all in red jackets, embroidered on the sleeves with the *bear and ragged staff*, the badge of his family. He lodged in his house in Warwick Lane, and six fat oxen were often consumed in it for one breakfast.

10. Not only his own people were fed at his cost, but all persons who had any acquaintance with those of his household might come and carry off as much boiled and roasted meat as they could bear away on their dagger; so that it is no wonder that he was very popular.

## CHAPTER CVII.

*Continuation of the War between the Two Roses.—Death of the Duke of York.—His Son proclaimed King by the title of Edward IV.*



WARS OF THE ROSES.

1. WARWICK, having assembled an army, met the royalists at Northampton, where he obtained so decided a victory over them, that

was the consequence of the duke's declaring his intentions? 8. What is said of Warwick's style of living?

they fled in all directions. The queen and her son with great difficulty escaped into Scotland. The king was found sitting alone in his tent, and carried by Warwick in triumph to London.

2. The Duke of York now returned to England, and laid before parliament his claim to the crown. There was no doubt that he was the direct heir of Edward III., but the parliament was unwilling to dethrone the reigning king. It was therefore determined that Henry should remain king during his life, but that on his death, the Duke of York and his heirs should succeed.

3. But Margaret was not of a disposition calmly to see her son thus set aside. By great exertions she collected a body of 20,000 men, who were induced to enter her service by the promise of giving them the plunder of the fertile lands of England.

4. With these she advanced towards London, and at Wakefield was met by the Duke of York, who, ignorant of the number of her forces, had with him only 5000 men. He wished to wait until his son, Edward, should arrive with a reinforcement; but by the advice of his generals he changed his plan, and on the 30th of December, 1460, marched to meet the enemy; a fatal determination, for his little army was entirely defeated.



HEAD OF THE DUKE OF YORK.

5. He himself was among the first who fell, and the spot where he was slain is still fenced off in the corner of a field near Sandal.

CVII.—1. What did Warwick do? What became of the queen and her son? What of the king? 2. What is said of the Duke of York? 3. How did Margaret receive the parliament's decision? By what promise did she collect an army? 4. What of the battle of Wakefield? 5. What was the fate of the Duke of York? 6. How many children

He possessed many great and good qualities, and his death was sincerely lamented by all who had taken up his cause.

6. He left three sons, Edward, George, and Richard, and three daughters. Another son, Edmund, a beautiful boy of twelve years of age, was killed on the same day with his father, being murdered in cold blood by Lord Clifford on Wakefield hedge, where a small chapel, which is still standing, was afterwards built, to perpetuate the memory of the bloody deed.

7. Margaret, sanguinary and merciless, caused the head of the Duke of York to be cut off and fixed on the gates of York, with a paper crown, in derision of his claims; she also caused the most noble and valiant of the prisoners to be beheaded without any form of trial.

8. The queen then set forward to London; and her followers fully availed themselves of the liberty to plunder, for they pillaged and burnt every church and dwelling, marking their way by fire and devastation. The Earl of Warwick hastened with his forces to meet her, taking with him the poor, passive king.



THE YOUNG DUKE OF YORK MADE KING.

9. The two armies met, on the 17th of February, 1461 and St. Albans was the scene of a second bloody battle. The Lancastrians obtained the victory, and Warwick fled, leaving the king behind,

did he leave? 7, 8. What did Margaret do after the battle? 9. What is said of the second battle of St. Albans? What of the conduct of the citizens of London towards Margaret? 10. What towards young Edward?

who rejoiced to be restored to his wife and son. But the queen's triumph was of short duration; the city of London was firm in the interests of the Yorkists; and besides, the citizens feared to admit her tumultuous army, and refused to open their gates.

10. Margaret was therefore compelled once more to retire to the north. Edward, the young Duke of York, having collected the remains of Warwick's army, entered London on the 3d of March, amidst the acclamations of the multitude. Warwick then assembled the people, and presenting the young duke to them, demanded whether they chose to have him or Henry for their king.

11. Shouts of "A York! a York!" resounded from all sides, and the new king was at once proclaimed by the title of Edward IV. The next day he went in solemn procession to Westminster Hall, and, taking his seat on the throne, received the homage of a great number of nobles and bishops.

12. Thus ended the reign of Henry VI., who, while in his cradle, had been proclaimed King of England and France, and who began his life with the most splendid prospects. His ruin is to be attributed to his want of capacity, and to the misconduct of his queen and her favorites.

#### FAMILY OF RICHARD, DUKE OF YORK.

##### WIFE.

Anne, daughter of Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick.

##### SONS.

Edward, afterwards King of England.

George, Duke of Clarence, executed.

Richard, Duke of Gloucester, afterwards King Richard III.

##### DAUGHTERS.

Anne.

Margaret.

## CHAPTER CVIII.

*Edward IV.—The Civil War continues.—Adventures of Henry and his Queen.—Wretched Condition of the Lancastrians.*

1. EDWARD was scarcely nineteen years old, when he found himself, almost beyond his own expectation, placed upon the throne. He was brave, active, and enterprising, with a capacity far beyond his years. Comes, an old historian, tells us, that "he was tall of person, fair of face, of a most princely presence, and altogether the goodliest man that ever mine eyes beheld."

2. But one almost regrets to find these brilliant qualities in a prince whose character is blackened by the worst vices. In peace

he revelled in every kind of self-indulgence, and in war was sanguinary beyond all who had gone before him.



MARGARET AND THE ROBBER.

3. The first battle, after he became king, was fought at Towton. Never did two armies encounter each other with more inveterate hatred; and the orders of the commanders on each side were to take no prisoners, and give no quarter.

4. The battle lasted from early in the morning till late in the evening, and was one of the most bloody ever fought in Britain. The snow fell thickly, but the Yorkists had their backs to the storm, while the Lancastrians, who faced it, were greatly incommoded by it. The latter were defeated with great slaughter. Henry and his family waited the result at York, and, as soon as they heard of it, fled with the utmost precipitation to Scotland.

5. Edward now satiated his revengeful temper by many bloody executions, and every Lancastrian who fell into his hands was condemned as a traitor. To strengthen his own party, he conferred honors and titles on all his friends. Indeed, it had become quite necessary to make new peers, since the late exterminating battles, and the executions which followed them, had greatly reduced the numbers of the nobility.

6. These reverses of fortune seemed only to increase the energy of Margaret. She made two voyages into France, in hopes of obtaining aid from thence. At last, by her untiring exertions, she raised an army, with which she invaded England by the way of Scotland. She

is said of it? 6. What's said of Margaret's energy? 7. What of the defeat at Hexham?

met with some slight successes, but was defeated at Hedgby Moor, April 25th, 1464; and three weeks afterwards at Hexham.

7. This last defeat was so decided, that Henry was only saved by the swiftness of his horse from being made prisoner. The queen and her son sought to conceal themselves in a wood; but there, losing their way, they fell among robbers, who took from them everything they had that was valuable.

8. The robbers then luckily began to quarrel about the division of the plunder, which gave Margaret and the prince an opportunity of escaping from them. As they were wandering about in the wood, they met another robber. The queen, knowing that both flight and resistance were impossible, went boldly up to him, and, presenting her son, said, "Behold, my friend, the son of your king. I commit him to your protection."

9. The man was so affected by this appeal, that he led them to a place of concealment, where they remained till the pursuit was over. He then conducted them to the sea-coast, whence they made their escape to France.

10. Henry wandered about from one place of concealment to another for the space of a year, during which he suffered many hardships and privations. In July, 1465, as he sat at dinner at Waddington Hall, he was betrayed by a monk to Sir James Harrington, who conveyed him to London, and resigned him into the hands of his great enemy, the Earl of Warwick.

11. Warwick treated him with the utmost indignity, and, tying his feet under his horse's belly, as if he had been a criminal, compelled him to ride three times round the pillory, while the populace were by proclamation forbidden to show him any marks of respect or compassion. He was then confined in the Tower.

12. His partisans were now reduced to so much distress, that many of the most distinguished nobles were absolutely begging their bread in foreign lands, while the Yorkists were revelling in their estates. Comines says, "I have seen the Duke of Exeter, barefooted and barelegged, begging from door to door; but becoming known, the Duke of Burgundy bestowed on him a pension."

13. Edward, with savage ferocity, did all he could to exterminate the Lancastrian nobles, and those who remained in England could save themselves only by concealment. The son of that Lord Clifford who murdered Prince Edmund was brought up as a shepherd. Another Lancastrian was concealed for five years in a cave on the banks of the river Derwent. The Countess of Oxford maintained herself and her family for some time by working with her needle, and when that failed, she was obliged to beg about the streets of London.

## CHAPTER CIX.

*Marriage of King Edward IV.—Warwick, offend'd, at it becomes his Enemy.—Battle of Barnet.—Death of Warwick.—Battle of Tewksbury.—Captivity and Death of the young Prince of Wales.—Death of Margaret and of Henry.*



KING HENRY VI. RESTORED BY WARWICK.

1. THE Earl of Warwick was very desirous that the king should marry into some powerful foreign family. He was accordingly sent abroad to negotiate a match, and succeeded in procuring for Edward the hand of Bona, sister to the Queen of France.

2. In the mean time, as Edward was one day hunting in Witchwood Forest, he chanced to stop at the manor of Grafton, where was the Lady Elizabeth Gray, daughter of the Duchess of Bedford, and widow of Sir John Gray. This lady became a suitor to the king for some lands which had been forfeited for the part her husband had taken in the war.

3. King Edward was so much charmed by her beauty and graceful behavior that he in his turn became a suitor to her. His addresses met with favor, and he presently married her. The court was soon crowded by her relations. Her father, Sir Richard Woodville,—whom her mother had married after the death of the Duke of Bedford,—her three brothers, and five sisters, were all raised to the rank of nobility, and married into the greatest families.

4. Her eldest son, by Sir John Gray, was married to the king's niece, the daughter of the Duke of Exeter. This sudden prosperity

made the new queen's family objects of jealousy to all the other courtiers. Edward gave himself up to pleasure, and the court was one continued scene of revelry; yet under an outside of gayety and amusement was hidden a smothered fire of hatred and envy.

5. The Earl of Warwick was of course highly indignant at this marriage of the king, which he considered as a personal affront to himself; and from being the king's best friend, he became his most formidable enemy. He concealed his resentment, however, till a favorable opportunity should occur for taking his revenge.

6. The king's two brothers, who had been created Dukes of Clarence and of Gloucester, were also offended at seeing themselves supplanted by the new favorites. The Duke of Clarence had married Warwick's daughter, and in 1469 the two conspired together against the king. To further their views, they proceeded to France, where they were received with great joy by all the Lancastrians there.

7. Queen Margaret hastened to secure his friendship by marrying her son to his daughter Anne. Edward was warned of the approaching storm by the Duke of Burgundy, but gave no heed to the admonition, and continued to spend his time in idle diversions.



KING EDWARD'S ESCAPE.

8. Warwick landed in England, Sept. 13, 1470, where no preparations had been made to oppose him. He was joined by large numbers of disaffected persons, and Edward and his brother Gloucester departed on horseback, and saved themselves by taking passage in a trading-vessel to Friesland. They had embarked with so much haste, that they were unprovided with money to pay their passage, and the king was obliged to reward the captain of the ship by giving him his cloak.

which led to the king's marriage. 4. What excited the jealousy of the courtiers? 5. How was Warwick affected by the king's marriage? 6. What is said of the king's brothers? 8 When did Warwick invade England? What became of Edward? 9

9. The poor queen took refuge in a sanctuary at Westminster, where her son, afterwards Edward V., was born. Warwick now carried all before him. The poor forgotten Henry was dragged from his prison, and once more made a king. But this triumph lasted only a few months.

10. The Yorkists, who had been, as it were, stunned by so sudden a blow, soon recovered from their consternation. Edward returned to England, was joyfully received into London, and the imbecile Henry was once more committed to his prison. Warwick collected his forces, and went to meet Edward, who was advancing against him.

11. The two armies met near Barnet, April 12th, 1471. In the course of the night, the fickle Clarence deserted to his brother with twelve thousand men. The next day the battle was fought. Warwick fell, covered with wounds; a large number of nobles perished with him, and his army was completely routed.

12. Queen Margaret and her son, having been detained by contrary winds, did not land in England till the evening of the day on which the battle of Barnet was fought. When, instead of the triumphant return they had expected, they found all their hopes were blasted by the result of that fatal day, for the first time the queen's undaunted spirit forsook her, and she sank fainting to the ground.

13. When she revived, she fled with her son to a sanctuary, intending to return to France. But some of the Lancastrians having



PRINCE EDWARD BEFORE KING EDWARD.

gathered around her, she was persuaded to stay and make one more

What of the queen? 11. When and where was the decisive battle fought between Edward and Warwick? 12. What is said of Margaret? 13. What of the battle of Tewks

effort to regain the kingdom; a fatal resolution, which cost the lives of many brave men, who were defeated and slain in a battle fought near Tewksbury, on the 3d of May.

14. The queen and her son were soon after taken prisoners. The young prince was brought into the king's presence, who asked him how he dared to come into his kingdom in arms. He boldly replied, "I came to recover my father's kingdom;" upon which the king, who seemed insensible to magnanimity, gave him a blow on the face. This was considered as a signal for further violence, and he was dragged out of the room by the Dukes of Clarence and Gloucester, and murdered with their daggers.

15. Margaret survived her son nine miserable years; five of which she passed in the Tower. The King of France then ransomed her, and she returned to that country, where she died in 1480. Edward returned in triumph to London, and the next day Henry was found dead in his bed. The manner of his death is not certainly known; but there is little reason to doubt that he was murdered by Gloucester.

#### FAMILY OF HENRY.

##### WIFE.

Margaret of Anjou.

##### SON.

Edward, Prince of Wales, murdered.

#### TABLE OF THE KINGS OF THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

Began to reign. Reigned.

1399	.	.	14	.	.	Henry IV., grandson of Edward III.
1413	.	.	9	.	.	Henry V., son of Henry IV.
1422	.	.	39	.	.	Henry VI., son of Henry V.

#### CHAPTER CX.

*Edward IV. loses his energy.—Is outwitted by Louis of France.—Richard, Duke of Gloucester, procures the Death of his brother Clarence.*

1. THE king now led a life of luxury and indulgence; but he had one secret care which corroded all his enjoyments. Although the family of Lancaster had been in a manner extirpated, one distant and slightly connected branch yet remained. Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, a grandson of Owen Tudor, was the only person in whose veins ran any of the blood of Lancaster.

2. He was, therefore, considered the representative of that family. He had been brought up by the Duke of Brittany, who protected him from every attempt the King of England made to get him into his

bury? 14. What was the fate of Margaret's son? 15. What of Margaret herself? What of Henry?

CX.—1. Who was the only survivor of the family of Lancaster? 8, 4, 5 What is

power. Once Edward had nearly succeeded. In compliance with his wishes, Richmond had already reached England, when the duke began to doubt the sincerity of Edward's promises, and sent after him and brought him back, thus saving him from probable destruction; for Edward's cruelty increased with his years.

3. In 1475, Edward made great preparations for a war with France, and landed at Calais with thirty thousand men. But while the English were expecting great conquests, Edward, who had grown indolent, and preferred pleasure to war, suffered himself to be cajoled, by the cunning of Louis XI., into a disgraceful peace.

4. Louis, who was one of the most wicked and most artful kings that ever reigned in France, by rich presents and pensions corrupted the integrity of many of the English nobles, and finally bribed King Edward himself to return to England. This conduct of the English excited the contempt even of the French. All the while that Louis was treating Edward with the most profound respect to his face, he used behind his back to divert himself and his friends with ridiculing him and his courtiers for being so mercenary and greedy.

5. Although the Duke of Clarence had rendered the king such an important service in the battle of Barnet, yet he never was able to secure his brother's favor. The queen was his enemy, but he had a still more inveterate and dangerous one in his brother, the Duke of Gloucester.

6. Gloucester was very desirous to marry Anne, the daughter of Warwick, who had been made a widow by the murder of the young prince. Clarence, who had married her eldest sister, wished her to remain single, that he might secure to himself the whole of Warwick's great estates. As Richard was not very attractive, in his character at least, and there are great disputes as to his person, it is probable that Clarence had little difficulty in persuading her to reject the addresses of her husband's murderer.

7. But Gloucester was not a man to be deterred by any scruples from effecting that by violence which he could not accomplish by persuasion, and Anne was obliged to use many artifices to conceal herself. At last he discovered her, disguised as a cook-maid, in London, and immediately married her.

8. Gloucester had now a new reason for hating Clarence. He sought in every way to excite the king's jealousy. A trifle at length gave him an opportunity of gratifying his malice. As the king was one day hunting in the park of Thomas Burdet, who was a friend of Clarence, it so happened that he killed a white buck, a great favorite of the owner.

9. Burdet, vexed at his loss, fell into a passion, and wished the horns of the buck might be the death of him who had advised the king to kill it; but as no one had advised the king to do this, it was agreed that these words could apply only to the king himself; and Burdet was thereupon condemned and executed, on the pretence of his wishing the king's death.

10. Clarence expressed very freely his opinion of the injustice of this act. These expressions were forthwith reported to the king by Gloucester, probably with many exaggerations. Clarence was at once arrested, and the parliament, who dared not oppose the wishes of the king, condemned him to die.

11. As a royal and brotherly favor, the king allowed him to choose the manner of his death. Historians tell us that he desired to be drowned in a butt of Malmsey wine, and that he was gratified in his wish. He had a son, who inherited his grandfather's title of the Earl of Warwick, and a daughter, afterwards Countess of Salisbury, both of whom met with violent deaths.

12. Edward survived his brother about five years; his life is said to have been shortened by his excesses, and his death at last to have been produced by his vexation at having been outwitted by Louis XI., in a new negotiation. He died April 9th, 1483, in the forty-first year of his age, and the twenty-third of his reign.

#### FAMILY OF EDWARD IV.

##### WIFE.

Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Richard Woodville, and widow of Sir John Gray.

##### SONS.

Edward, Prince of Wales.  
Richard, Duke of York.

##### DAUGHTERS.

Elizabeth, married to Henry VII.  
Cicely.  
Anne.  
Catharine.

### CHAPTER CXI.

*The Invention of the Art of Printing.—Introduced into England by William Caxton.*

1. THERE were very few books written during the reign of Edward IV., which some have accounted for by attributing it to the then recent discovery of the art of printing. They suppose that the business of transcribing declined before printing was brought to sufficient perfection to supply its place.

2. To whom, among the great number of claimants of the merit, we are indebted for this valuable invention is a matter of dispute. There is a common story that Laurentius Coster, of Haarlem, was the person to whom the idea first occurred. The following account of it is in the words of his old servant:

3. “He, one day, walking in the wood near the city, as the rich

Relate the incident which gave an excuse for putting Clarence to death. 12. What was the manner of Clarence's death?

CXI.—1. How is the smallness of the number of books written in Edward IV.'s time accounted for? 2. To whom is the invention of printing usually attributed? 3. What

citizens were wont to do, diverted himself by cutting letters on the bough of a beech-tree, and for fancy's sake the thought struck him to take the impression off on paper with ink, to please his grandchildren.

4. "The experiment succeeding beyond his expectation, he and his son-in-law applied their minds to improve the discovery. They made wooden types; but for a time they could only print on one side of a page. An old parchment, with the alphabet and the Lord's prayer printed on it, is, I am told, preserved in some library in Germany, and is supposed to have been one of these first attempts."

5. This story goes on to say that Coster set up a press in his own house, and wished to keep his discovery a secret, but that two of his servants stole his types. But the more authentic accounts seem to show that John Gutenberg, of Mentz, was the real inventor of printing, and that one Faust was his partner in the first successful attempts in the art.

6. The first book which was printed by Faust is an exceedingly splendid Bible, of the supposed date of 1450, or thereabouts. An honest citizen and mercer of London, named William Caxton, had occasion to go into Holland, where he heard and saw much of this new discovery.

7. Being very solicitous to make so valuable an art known in England, he established himself for some time at Cologne, for the purpose of learning it; and, though he was in his fifty-seventh year, he applied himself so diligently to his new undertaking, that, in 1471, he printed a book entitled "The Recule of the History of Troy."

8. He then went to England and set up a printing-press at Westminster, and printed a book on the Game of Chess, interspersed with wood-cuts, which appear uncouth enough to us, but were at the time considered as admirable specimens of engraving.

9. Caxton carried over with him the types used in Germany, and of course marked with the characters used in that country. From these and similar types, all English books were printed for more than a century. It is called *black letter*. In the reign of James I. the Roman character (the one now used) was adopted, and soon entirely superseded the old German, or black letter.

10. We must now say a few words of the ships, or "wooden walls of old England," as they are called. A great change had taken place in the construction of them in the last few reigns. The ships of war were of much larger size, and on the top of the mast was a little wooden tower, in which three or four men could stand to hurl down stones and arrows into an enemy's vessel.

11. These ships had guns, but they were not very serviceable, for they were fixed in their places, and had no carriages. In Henry VI.'s time, decks and bowsprits were added; and the large ships

were exceedingly encumbered by a sort of wooden house, or castle, at each end.

12. They were much ornamented with gilding and painting; and armorial bearings and badges were embroidered on the sails. The vessels in which Henry V. sailed to France just before the battle of Agincourt had purple sails, embroidered with gold.

## CHAPTER CXII.

*Richard, Duke of Gloucester.—He aspires to wear the Crown.—Seizes upon the young King, Edward V., whose Mother flies to a Sanctuary.*

1. WE have now come to the shortest reign and most pathetic story in English history. Edward left two sons, the elder of whom, about thirteen years old, was proclaimed king by the title of Edward V. Though the public generally acknowledged his title, there was, among his nearest relations, one who had long marked the innocent boy for destruction.

2. This person was his uncle Richard, Duke of Gloucester. The ability, vigor of mind, and personal courage of this prince have never been disputed. But with regard to his moral character there has been great difference of opinion; some writers having loaded his memory with more crimes than it seems possible for any one man to have committed; while others have endeavored to vindicate him from most of the guilt of which he has been accused.

3. There has been the same difference of opinion as to his personal appearance. One old chronicler says, "He was crooked-backed, hook-shouldered, splay-footed, goggle-eyed, and his face was little and swarthy." On the other side, an old lady, Desmond, who lived to be 130 years old, and had danced with King Richard in her youth, used always to say that he was a very handsome man.

4. The truth probably lies between the two; and those are doubtless correct who tell us that, though his features were rather homely, the expression of his countenance was princely and sensible; that his figure, though short, was well built, with no other defect than that his right shoulder was somewhat higher than the left.

5. Richard had long entertained the project of usurping the crown, and he now made use of the jealousy which the nobles felt of the queen and her relatives, to advance his plan. The young king had been intrusted to the care of his uncle, Lord Rivers, and his half-brother, Lord Gray.

6. Richard's first step was to remove these noblemen from about the person of Edward. In this he was willingly assisted by Lord Hastings, a loyal and honest man, but one who bore a bitter enmity to the queen and her relatives. Accompanied by Hastings, Richard set out

with a numerous train to meet the king, who was on his way to London to be crowned.

7. They met him and his little party at Stony Stratford, where the Lords Gray and Rivers passed the evening with the Duke of Gloucester in mirth and pleasantry, unsuspicuous of the coming evil. The next morning they were seized and sent to Pontefract, and all the rest of Edward's attendants were dismissed, and forbidden to come near the court on pain of death.

8. The poor young king, finding himself alone and in the power of his uncle, whom he had early been taught to dread, was struck with grief and terror; but Gloucester, falling on his knees, assured him, with strong professions of loyalty and affection, that all he had done was for his preservation.

9. Edward, being soothed into composure, set off with his uncle towards London, where the news of these violent measures arrived before them, and occasioned great alarm. The queen instantly fled into the sanctuary at Westminster, taking with her the Duke of York and her five daughters. Rotherham, Archbishop of York, a faithful servant of the crown, hastened to comfort her. Her condition is thus described by an old chronicler:

10. "The archbishop found about the queen much heaviness, rumble, haste and business; carriage and conveyance of her stufte into sanctuarie; chests, coffers, packs, fardles, bundles, tossed all on men's backs; no man unoccupied; some lading, some going, some unloading, some going for more, some breaking down the wall to bring in the nearest way. The queen herself sate alone low on the rushes, all desolate and dismay'd."

## CHAPTER CXIII.

*Richard III. usurps the Crown.—He causes the young King and his Brother to be murdered.*

1. On the 4th of May, Gloucester conducted his nephew into London, riding before him bareheaded, and frequently calling out to the people, "Behold your king!" At a great council held two days after, the artful duke was appointed protector of the kingdom. To keep up the deception, a day was appointed for the coronation of the king, and the preparations were at once begun.

2. In the mean time, those to whom Richard had imparted his designs upon the crown were actively employed. On the 13th of May, Sir Thomas Ratcliffe, one of his chief confidants, entered Pontefract with 5000 men, and, without any trial, beheaded Lord Rivers and Lord Gray. The death of Lord Rivers caused much lamentation, for he was the most accomplished nobleman of his time.

ter? 5. To what did he aspire? 6, 7. How did he set about the accomplishment of his wish? 9, 10. What of the queen?

**CXIII.—1.** How did Gloucester treat his nephew? What office did he receive?

3. Another of his creatures, named Catesby, had endeavored to gain the support of Hastings; but this nobleman being found to be firm in his devotion to Edward's children, his destruction was determined upon. On the very day that the lords were murdered at Pontefract, Richard summoned the council to meet in the Tower. He appeared to be remarkably gay and good-natured, but left the council-chamber as if called out upon business.

4. He soon returned with an angry countenance, and demanded what those deserved who plotted against his life. Hastings replied, that "they should be treated as traitors." "These traitors," said the protector, "are the sorceress, my brother's wife, and another of his late friends. See to what they have reduced me by their witchcraft," upon which he laid bare his withered arm.

5. The councillors, who knew that the arm had been so from his birth, looked at one another with amazement; but Hastings ventured to defend the late king's friend. "And do you reply to me," exclaimed Richard, "with your *ifs* and your *ands*? you are yourself the chief traitor; and I swear I will not dine before your head be brought to me!" On this he struck his hand on the table, and armed men



EXECUTION OF HASTINGS.

rushed in, who seized Hastings, and instantly beheaded him in the presence of the council.

6. Richard's next object was to get the young Duke of York into his power. He declared that it would be highly improper to suffer the duke to remain in the sanctuary, a place where thieves and murderers found refuge. He sent to the Archbishop of Canterbury, who had no suspicion of his evil designs, to persuade the queen to surrender her young son.

7. Although she had not heard of the bloody deed at Pontefract, she had begun to suspect the designs of Richard. She knew that her son would be taken from her by force if she refused her consent to his departure. Clasping him to her breast, she took leave of him with a shower of tears. The young king was delighted to see his brother, hoping long to enjoy his company.

8. Having now both the young princes in his power, Gloucester began to act more openly. He employed a popular preacher to harangue the people in his favor; but he met with little success. The Duke of Buckingham then undertook to address them. After describing the miseries of the last reign, and the unfitness of the young king to govern, he enlarged upon the virtues of the Duke of Gloucester.

9. He expressed his apprehensions that the protector could not be prevailed upon to accept the crown, but he hoped that the people would take every method to persuade him to do so. He concluded by desiring every man to speak his real sentiments, and to declare, without fear, whether he would have for king the young prince, or the virtuous protector.



THE DUKE OF GLOUCESTER.

10. A silence for some time ensued; at length some of the duke's

in the council-chamber. 6. What was Richard's next object? How did he effect it?

own servants, who had slipped among the crowd, cried out, "Long live King Richard!" A few of the mob joined in the cry, and the duke, taking advantage of the faint approbation, found means to induce the mayor and aldermen to accompany him to the palace of the protector, and to offer him the crown.

11. Richard pretended to be very much surprised at seeing such a concourse of people. When he was informed that their business was to offer him the crown, he declined accepting it, saying, that "his love of his brother's children was greater than his love of a crown." But he at length suffered himself to be persuaded by Buckingham, and declared his acceptance.



CORONATION OF RICHARD III.

12. He was at once proclaimed king, and the same preparation which had been made for the coronation of Edward V. served for that of Richard III. It was long before the fate of the two young princes was known with certainty; but they never were seen again. Some years afterwards, two persons confessed themselves to have been their murderers, and said that their bodies were buried at the foot of a staircase in the Tower.

13. The story was not believed at the time, it being supposed that it was fabricated for political effect; but it was confirmed in an extraordinary manner two hundred years afterwards; when, in altering a staircase in the Tower, a chest was found buried under it, in which were the bones of two children, answering in size to the ages of Edward and his brother. Edward V. was in his thirteenth year when his father died, and reigned not quite three months.

## CHAPTER CXIV.

*A Plot is formed for placing Henry Tudor on the Throne, which is for the present defeated.*

1. As soon as Richard had obtained the crown, he sought to secure the future support of those who had assisted him, by bestow upon them liberal rewards. The Duke of Buckingham, having the greatest claim, received the largest share of his favors.

2. Ample as was the compensation, however, it was not enough to satisfy the avarice or the ambition of this nobleman, and we very soon find him engaged in a conspiracy to depose Richard, and to place Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, on the throne. In order to supply the defects of this prince's title, it was agreed that he should marry Elizabeth, eldest daughter of Edward IV., who, after her brothers, had the best right to the crown.

3. Richard, whose vigilance did not suffer the tempest to gather unperceived, assembled an army, and then summoned Buckingham to attend him. This nobleman replied only by taking the field with some troops he had collected in Wales. With these he advanced towards England.

4. When he arrived near the river Severn, an extraordinary flood, such as had never been known before, and which was long remembered as *Buckingham's flood*, prevented his crossing. His Welsh troops, impelled partly by superstition, and partly by famine, deserted him and returned home. The officers, finding themselves abandoned by their men, either fled from the country or took refuge in sanctuaries.

5. Buckingham, thinking he could rely upon the fidelity of a dependent of his own, named Bannister, sought refuge in his house; but this man could not resist the temptation of the large reward offered for his master's apprehension, and betrayed him to the sheriff of Shropshire, who found him in the disguise of a peasant, hidden in an orchard behind Bannister's house. He was taken to London, and there executed.

6. Richard, whose heart seemed callous to the sufferings of others, was himself vulnerable in one point. Edward, his only child, died April 9th, 1484, and we are told that the king's grief was so excessive that he almost "run mad." The grief of the queen was not less violent, and her death, a few months afterwards, is generally ascribed to it, though some assert that she was poisoned by her husband.

7. Richard now sought to gain the favor of the widowed queen of Edward IV. He succeeded so well as to induce her to consent to his own marriage with the Princess Elizabeth, although he was her uncle, and had murdered her two brothers and other relations.

8. The king, notwithstanding all his spies, does not seem to have been aware that Richmond, who was supposed to be all the while in

France, did in fact pass great part of his time in Wales, making himself friends among his countrymen; for the Tudors were a Welsh family.

9. Once he was so near being discovered by Richard's spies, that he escaped only by jumping out of a back window and getting through an opening, which is still called the *king's hole*. On his return to France he heard the report of Richard's intended marriage. He therefore hastily collected the English exiles, and a few French soldiers, in all about 3000 men, and landed at Milford Haven, August 7th, 1485.

## CHAPTER CXV.

*Battle of Bosworth-field.—Death of Richard III.—Singular Story of his Bedstead.*



BATTLE OF BOSWORTH.

1. WHEN Richard heard how small a number of persons accompanied the earl, and what a ragged, beggarly crew they were, he despised so weak an enemy. But when he found that his numbers were fast increasing, and that some Welsh troops, who were sent against him, actually joined him, he began to think the danger more urgent. He might still have quelled it, had he known in whom to confide.

2. The chief agents in his wicked schemes were Ratcliffe, Catesby.

Buckingham? 6. What domestic misfortune befell Richard? 8, 9. Where was Richmond all this time?

CXV.—1. What is said of Richard's feelings when he heard of Richmond's invasion?

and Lovel, which gave rise to the following verses which an old chronicler tells us “passed in those times for excellent wit”:

“The Cat, the Rat, and Lovel the dog,  
Rule all England under the Hog.”

The white boar was the badge of Richard.

3. But Richard knew that these were not friends who could be relied on in time of his own need. He distrusted all around him, and not without reason; for Lord Stanley, to whom he had given the chief command in his army, was in secret league with Richmond, whose mother he had married.

4. Richard at length roused himself, and, collecting what troops he could, marched with great pomp, wearing a crown on his helmet, to Merivalle, not far from Bosworth, where Richmond had arrived before him. On the 23d of August, 1485, the forces on both sides were drawn out in line of battle.

5. Lord Stanley drew up the forces under his immediate command, at a little distance from the rest of the king's troops. Richmond, who was no soldier, sent to request Lord Stanley to assist him in forming his men; but Stanley answered that he must form them himself, and he would come to him at a convenient season.

6. Richard was very angry when he saw how Stanley had drawn up his men, but it was now too late to do more than to summon his immediate attendance,—a summons which was not obeyed. The battle began, but no vigor or spirit was displayed in the royal army; and when Lord Stanley suddenly turned and attacked it, Richard saw that all was lost, and exclaiming, “Treason! treason!” rushed into the midst of the enemy, and made his way to Richmond, hewing down all before him.

7. The earl shrunk back at his approach; but his attendants gathered round Richard, who fought like a wild beast at bay, till at last he fell, covered with wounds. His helmet was so beaten in by the blows it had received, that its form was quite destroyed.

8. Most of the nobles had deserted the royal cause. The Duke of Norfolk was among the few exceptions. Some friend had tried to save him from his impending fate, and had that morning thrown an admonitory letter into his tent. It ran thus:

“Jockey of Norfolk, be not too bold,  
For Dickon, thy master, is bought and sold.”

9. Richard reigned little more than two years, and was slain in the thirty-fifth year of his age. He fell near a brook which runs through Bosworth-field, the water of which long remained stained with blood; and it is said that the people in the neighborhood are averse to using it, even at this day.

10. The body of Richard, after suffering many indignities, was at last buried in a church at Leicester. But his bones were not suffered to rest even here; for at the destruction of the religious

2. Who were his chief agents? What verses were formed on them? 4. When was the battle of Bosworth-field fought? 5. What is said of Lord Stanley's conduct? 6, 7. What of Richard's conduct in the battle? 8. What is said of the Duke of Norfolk? 9. How

houses in the time of Henry VIII., they were torn from their burying-place, and his stone coffin was converted into a watering-trough for horses at an inn in Leicester.

11. The story of an article of Richard's furniture is yet more extraordinary. He travelled about, as was then the custom, with his own bedstead. When he was killed at Bosworth, this was left at the place he had last slept at in Leicester, and was kept by the people of the house. It was entirely of wood, and was much gilded and otherwise ornamented.

12. About one hundred years after the battle, as the woman to whom it then belonged was one day making the bed, a piece of money fell out from a crevice of the bedstead. Upon examination she found that the bottom of the bedstead was hollow, and contained coin to the value of nearly fifteen hundred dollars.

13. This discovery proved fatal to the woman, for she was robbed and murdered by her servant for the sake of her new-found treasure. The servant was hanged for the murder; and thus Richard's gold seemed to have the property of bringing evil upon all who touched it.

---

## CHAPTER CXVI.

*Amusements of the English in olden time.—Christmas Gambols.—Miracles and Mysteries.—Description of a Gentleman's Dress.*

1. As we have had horrors enough for the present, we may now turn our attention to the amusements of the English, beginning with the children. Perhaps our young readers may toss their balls and trundle their hoops with more glee than ever, when they know that the Black Prince, John of Gaunt, and perhaps even Thomas à Becket, and old Caxton himself, played with such things hundreds of years since; for these games were in use as long ago as the Conquest.

2. Shuttlecock and blind-man's-buff are also very ancient games. But there were some old amusements which were not so unexceptionable. There was a strange ceremony observed in most, if not all, the cathedrals, on the 28th of December, called *Innocents' Day*, in remembrance of the slaughter of the children of Bethlehem by order of Herod.

3. A boy was dressed up in the vestments of the bishop. He was attended by a parcel of other boys habited like priests, and in this guise he preached a mock sermon in church, and then went in procession about the town. This was called the festival of the *boy-bishop*.

4. But the love of sports and merry-making was not confined to the young. Those who were older, having but little mental cultivation,

---

long did Richard reign? How old was he at his death? 10. What is said of his body? 11, 12. Relate the story of his bedstead.

CXVI.—1, 2. What were the amusements of the children? What ceremony on In-

had so few sedentary amusements that they were glad to fly to active and boisterous ones. Even the fine ladies did not then disdain to seek diversion from things that in our times the most coarse and vulgar would shun with aversion.



5. Leaving out hawking, which was a favorite pastime of the gentry, we may notice bear-baitings and bull-baitings, which consisted in worrying a poor bear or bull with savage dogs. These, however, were used only on great occasions, and to entertain queens and princesses. Cudgel-playing and wrestling were the every-day amusements.

6. Christmas was the chief time of sports; in the king's court, and in the families of the principal nobles, a leader of the games was elected, who had the pleasant title of *Lord of Misrule*, and *Master of Merry Sports*. The diversions over which this mock-monarch presided were suited to the taste of the age.

7. There was a scrambling for nuts and apples, dancing, playing with hobby horses, hunting owls and squirrels, hot cockles, and blind-man's-buff. Then there was a stick moving on a pivot in the middle, with an apple at one end and a candle at the other, so that he who missed his bite, burned his nose.

8. The favorite amusement, however, at this season, was *Mumming*, or *Disguising*. At court this was performed with great splendor, and rich costumes; but among the common people the diversion

consisted in changing clothes between men and women, who, when dressed in each other's habits, went from one neighbor's house to another, partaking of Christmas cheer. This custom is still kept up in some parts of England, particularly in the northern counties.

9. The origin of stage-plays was curious. There were theatrical entertainments long before there were any play-houses or theatres. The first public representation of anything like a play was exhibited as early as 1378, and was called a *Miracle*. It was the history of St. Catharine, and was performed by the priests of Dunstable.

10. The actors were attired in the holy vestments belonging to the Abbey of St. Albans. In Richard II.'s reign, the clergy of St. Paul's Church enacted a *miracle* before the king and queen, which lasted eight days, and in which was represented the greater part of the Bible history.

11. Miracles were succeeded by *Mysteries*, in which sacred subjects were strangely jumbled with buffoonery. By degrees some little moral allegory crept into these entertainments, and *miracles* and *mysteries* gave way to *Moralities*, which consisted of long, elaborate speeches from allegorical personages, such as Theology, Adulation, Admonition, &c.

12. These plays were performed in churches and chapels, and the actors were almost always ecclesiastics. There were, besides, some *secular* plays performed in private houses, and in the streets, by the jugglers, tumblers, and jesters, whose business it was to rove about and exhibit their talents. There is no mention of public theatres till the reign of Elizabeth. The first regular play we know of was written about 1560, and is called "Gammer Gurton's Needle."

13. So much for the amusements; now for the dress of the old English gentlemen. We left them some time ago wearing long, pointed shoes. Never was fashion attacked with more violence. Laws were made, and the clergy preached, against them. Still they continued to be worn to the time of Richard III., after which the fashion declined, and the contrary extreme became the mode.

14. All the fine gentlemen looked now as if they had the gout; for they wore velvet or cloth shoes, so very broad that their feet resembled platters; and a law was made forbidding shoes to be worn that were more than six inches across the toes. The dress of the men at this period is described as being so "skrimp" and tight, that fashionable persons must have resembled stuffed figures more than living men.

15. Their shoulders were stuffed out to make them look broad, and the waist was pinched in as tight as could be borne. Oddity was aimed at more than comfort or gracefulness. With a tight pinched-in jacket, which was not much longer than a waistcoat, such enormous long sleeves were worn, hanging from the elbows, that Edward IV. used to tie his behind his back, to avoid tumbling over them when he walked!

## CHAPTER CXVII.

*End of the Line of Plantagenet.—General Character of the Kings.—Important Consequences of the Battle of Bosworth-field.—Depression of the Nobles.—Rise of the Commons.*



CROWNING OF RICHMOND, HENRY VII.

1. KING Richard was the last man slain on the field of Bosworth, and his death was the signal of victory to Henry of Richmond. The soldiers who had engaged in the pursuit of the fugitives were recalled by hearing the shouts of "Long live King Henry!" and on returning to the field of battle, they saw Sir William Stanley, brother to Lord Stanley, placing on Henry's head the battered crown that had been struck off from the helmet of Richard.

2. With Richard ended the line of Plantagenet kings, who had governed England for 330 years. There were fourteen in all; Henry II. and thirteen of his descendants. Five of these, John, Henry III., Edward II., Richard II., and Henry VI., were feeble monarchs. The rest inherited the abilities and bravery of their great ancestor, and, with the exception of Henry IV., who was of a close and suspicious temper, had a frankness and openness of disposition which endeared them to their subjects.

CXVII.—1. What was the fate of Richard III.? 2. Who succeeded him? How long had the Plantagenets reigned? What is said of the several kings? 3. What two last

3. No battle since that of Hastings had been so important in its consequences as that of Bosworth-field. The former brought in the feudal system in its most oppressive form; the battle of Bosworth put an end to it. The reign of Henry VII. was the dawn of what may properly be called English liberty.

4. Though the Magna Charta had fenced in the nobles from the tyranny of the king, yet the great mass of the people were for a long time after as much exposed as before to the oppression of the nobles; but now, the power as well as the number of the nobles being much diminished by the long war between the houses of York and Lancaster, the people began gradually to emerge from slavery.

5. Henry hated because he feared the nobles, and it was a part of his policy to depress them. He restricted the number of their retainers; and thus that idle race of people who had before passed their lives in following some great lord to the wars, or in hanging about his gates in time of peace, were driven to employ themselves in more industrious modes of life, and from helpless dependants became useful subjects.

6. Commerce, too, began to make great alteration in the condition of persons in middle life; and Henry greatly facilitated their rise into consequence, by lessening the strictness of *entails*,—that is, the descent of estates in one family, from one generation to another, without any person being at liberty to dispose of them.

7. Such a system serves to maintain the dignity of particular families, but is evidently adverse to the general good of the state. The nobles being enabled to sell their estates, many of them came into the possession of rich merchants and manufacturers.

8. With the change of property came a great change in the condition of all classes of people. The land-owners found it advantageous to commute the services of the *villeins* for money, and make them pay rent for their land and cottages; and thus from *villeins* they became *tenants*.

9. It is very difficult to trace every step of the lower orders of the people from villeinage, which at some periods was a state of mere slavery, to freedom. The progress was so various and so gradual that the state of villeinage seemed to decline insensibly, and after the time of Henry VII. we find no more mention of it.

#### TABLE OF THE LINE OF PLANTAGENET.

Began to reign. Reigned.

1154	35 years.	Henry II. Plantagenet.
1189	10 "	Richard I. Cœur de Lion, } Sons of Henry II.
1199	17 "	John Lackland, }
1216	56 "	Henry III., son of John.
1272	35 "	Edward I., son of Henry III.
1307	20 "	Edward II., son of Edward I.
1327	50 "	Edward III., son of Edward II.
1377	22 "	Richard II., son of the Black Prince, and grandson of Edward III.

ties are mentioned as important? 4. What is said of the condition of the mass of the people? 5. What was Henry's policy towards the nobles? 6. What of entails? 8. What of the villeins?

## THE LANCASTER BRANCH OF THE FAMILY.

**Began to reign. Reigned.**

1399 . . 14 years. Henry IV., of Lancaster, cousin to Richard II,  
and grandson of Edward III.  
1413 . . 9 " Henry V., son of Henry IV.  
1422 . . 49 " Henry VI., son of Henry V.

## THE YORK BRANCH OF THE FAMILY.

1461 . . 22 years. Edward IV., of York, third cousin to Henry VI,  
and great-great-grandson of Edward III.  
1483 . . 3 m'ths. Edward V., son of Edward IV.  
1483 . . 2 years. Richard III., Crook-back, uncle of Edward V.

## CHAPTER CXVIII.

*Henry VII.—Lambert Simnel pretends to be Earl of Warwick, and claims the Throne.—He is defeated and made a Scullion in the King's Kitchen.—Death of Lord Lovel in a secret Chamber.*



MARRIAGE OF HENRY VII.

1. HENRY VII., the first of that line of kings of England called the *Tudor line*, was thirty years old when he gained the crown. He was of a tall and slender form, pale complexion, and a grave, sedate deportment. Cold, cautious, and designing, he did not possess one amiable quality.

2. His natural abilities were not brilliant, but he made up for want of quickness by unwearyed application, and was rewarded for

his perseverance by gaining a reputation for more wisdom than he possessed. He was an unkind husband, a careful but not an affectionate father, a rigorous master, and a bitter enemy.

3. Two ruling passions swayed his conduct from the first hour of his reign to the end of his life; these were his avarice, and his hatred of the house of York. The first command he issued, even before he had left the bloody field where he had been proclaimed king, was, that persons should be sent into Yorkshire to seize young Edward Plantagenet, Earl of Warwick, son of the Duke of Clarence.

4. Henry's avarice, though an odious vice in itself, and particularly obnoxious in a king, was not without its advantages to his country. It led him to encourage commerce; and it was he who laid the foundations of the British navy. A four-masted ship, called *The Great Henry*, was, properly speaking, the first ship in the British navy, for hitherto, when the king wanted a fleet, he had no expedient but hiring or purchasing ships from the merchants.

5. Notwithstanding his dislike to the family of York, Henry soon found that he could not maintain himself on the throne without allying himself to it. He therefore renewed his old agreement to marry the Princess Elizabeth. But his reluctance to this union was so great, that he put it off till the following year. The princess was a great favorite with the people, which gave much offence to her husband, and was one cause of his unkind treatment of her.

6. Henry's conduct towards all those who had been connected with the late royal family naturally irritated them against him, and in 1487, a scheme was contrived, which gave him for a time much vexation and trouble. Lambert Simnel, the son of a baker of Oxford, was instructed to personate the young Earl of Warwick, who, it was pretended, had escaped from the Tower.

7. When Henry heard of this mock Earl of Warwick, he caused the real earl to be taken from his prison, and carried in procession through London, and permitted all who chose to converse with him. This measure, though it satisfied the people of England, did not convince those of Ireland, by whom Simnel was proclaimed king, by the title of Edward IV.

8. Simnel, with the few nobles who joined him, and some troops which he had raised in Ireland, landed in Lancashire, expecting to be joined by the inhabitants; but in this he was disappointed. He had advanced as far as Stoke without receiving any addition to his forces, where he was met by Henry, June 16th, 1487, and completely defeated. Simnel, who was taken prisoner, received better treatment than he could have expected, for Henry contented himself with degrading the new-made king to be one of the scullions in his kitchen.

9. Most of Simnel's army lost their lives. Among the few who escaped from the fight was Lord Lovel. He was observed flying towards the Trent, and, as he was never seen afterwards, he was thought to have been drowned in crossing that river.

---

passions? 4. What good effect did his avarice produce? 5. How did he try to strengthen himself on the throne? 6, 7, 8. Relate the story of Lambert Simnel. 9, 10. Relate the fate of Lord Lovel. 11, 12. What is said of secret chambers?

10. But more than a hundred years afterwards, in pulling down a house that had belonged to him in Oxfordshire, a secret chamber was discovered, in which was found the skeleton of a man, seated in a chair, with his head reclining on a table. An empty jar and a barrel were found near it. It was conjectured that this was the skeleton of Lord Lovel, who had contrived to escape to his own house, but from some neglect had starved to death in this secret chamber.

11. It would be a hard matter to make a chamber in a modern house, in which a person could be effectually concealed; but in those days the walls were thick, and the chimneys large, and the unquiet state of the times made secret chambers useful, if not necessary.

12. Many a large old house in England doubtless contains such a sanctuary. We are told of one in Nottinghamshire, which was inhabited by a family for some generations, without its being known that there was a secret room in the kitchen chimney; and it was only discovered a few years since, in making some repairs.

---

## CHAPTER CXIX.

*A new Impostor appears.—Adventures of Perkin Warbeck.*

1. THE old Duchess of Burgundy, sister of Edward IV., finding how many people had been deceived by the fraud of Simnel, determined upon a new project, contrived with more art and plausibility. She first spread a report that the young Duke of York was alive, and had escaped from the Tower.

2. She then found a youth, named Perkin Warbeck, son of a Flemish Jew, who bore a strong resemblance to the Plantagenets, and who had something in his manners and carriage so bewitching, and at the same time so princely and dignified, that all who conversed with him were fascinated, and persuaded that he was a prince.

3. He first presented himself at the court of France, where he was well received by the king. At the demand of Henry, he was dismissed, but with courtesy, and then sought the protection of his aunt, as he called the Duchess of Burgundy.

4. She received him as if he had been an entire stranger to her, and affected to disbelieve his story; then, as if suddenly convinced by his answers to her questions, she embraced him with a transport of joy, exclaiming that he was indeed her long-lost nephew, and bestowed upon him the appellation of *the White Rose of England*.

5. Henry now became anxious to convince the world that the real Duke of York had been murdered, and he obtained the confession of two persons, who owned that they had been concerned in putting

CXIX.—1. What project did the Duchess of Burgundy form? 2. Who was selected as the principal actor? 3, 4. What was the success of Warbeck at first? 5. What

him to death. But these confessions gained little credit at the time, though they have since received corroboration, as we have before stated.

6. Henry also sought to ascertain the true history of Warbeck; but the secret was so well kept, and his origin so obscure, that this proved to be a difficult matter. At length one of the confidants of the impostor was won over. From him Henry learnt nearly the whole history of the conspiracy, with the names of all those in England who had favored it.

7. The former was published for the information of the nation, and those concerned were all seized in one day, and immediately tried, condemned, and executed. Sir William Stanley was beheaded for having been heard to say, that, "if he was sure Perkin Warbeck was the real Duke of York, he would never bear arms against him."

8. After two ineffectual attempts to get a footing in England, Warbeck went to Scotland, where he was received with the utmost kindness by King James IV., who engaged in his cause with the greatest warmth. He also gave him in marriage the Lady Catharine Gordon, one of the most noble and accomplished ladies of the age.

9. James did not content himself with empty words, and in October, 1496, he entered England with an army, with the avowed purpose of placing Warbeck on the throne, and all the English were invited to repair to the standard of their rightful sovereign, who was proclaimed king by the title of Richard IV.

10. The Scots immediately began to plunder, as was their custom, and Warbeck expostulated with James on this barbarous manner of carrying on the war, declaring that he had rather lose a crown than obtain it by the ruin of his subjects.

11. It was expected that upon Warbeck's first appearance in England all the friends of the house of York would rise in his favor; but, contrary to his anticipations, he found none to assist him, and was obliged to retreat towards Edinburgh. Henry, who was at all times a better negotiator than soldier, preferred entering into a treaty with James to meeting him in the field, and a truce was made between the two monarchs.

## CHAPTER CXX.

*Conclusion of the Story of Perkin Warbeck.—About Benevolences.—Story of the Alderman who refused to lend the King Money.*

1. IN consequence of the treaty between the kings of Scotland and England, Warbeck, after thanking James for the kindness and protection he had afforded him, went to Ireland, with about a hun-

---

measures did Henry VII. adopt? 8. How was Warbeck received in Scotland? 11. What was Warbeck's success in England?

dred and twenty followers, and his lovely wife, who would not forsake him.

2. After a few months he returned to England, and was joined by about three thousand men, with whom he laid siege to Exeter. A large body of the king's forces marched against him, and Warbeck, seeing that all resistance would be in vain, left his companions to take care of themselves as they could, and fled in the night to a sanctuary.

3. This was soon surrounded by the royal troops, and Henry would gladly have forced open the gates and seized his victim, but was persuaded to try to entice him out by the promise of sparing his life. Warbeck, on receiving this pledge, gave himself up, and was carried prisoner to the Tower.

4. He contrived to make his escape from this prison, but was soon taken and brought back. He was then exposed upon a scaffold, and compelled to read aloud a written paper, in which he confessed himself to be an impostor.

5. He afterwards found means to have some communication with his fellow-prisoner, the Earl of Warwick, and a plan was concerted between them for their escape; but this being discovered, they were both executed. Perkin Warbeck was hung at Tyburn, the place of execution for common malefactors, November 23d, 1499; whilst Warwick, from respect to his undoubted rank, was beheaded on Tower Hill.



PERKIN WARBECK ON THE SCAFFOLD.

6. It is interesting to read of the fate of Warbeck's young and beautiful wife. After her husband was carried to the Tower, Henry

CXX.—1. Whither did Warbeck go from Scotland? Who accompanied him? 2, 4, 5. Relate the rest of his story. What was the fate of Warbeck? 6, 7. What became of

sent for her, and, hard as was his heart, he seems to have been touched by her youth, her beauty, and her grief; for she dearly loved Warbeck, and was a most dutiful and affectionate wife to him.

7. The king said some kind and soothing words to her, and presented her to the queen, with whom she remained as an attendant. She had an ample allowance made to her, and was much beloved at the court, where she was called "The White Rose of England."

8. Henry, from this time till his death, was undisturbed by tumults at home or by wars abroad. He was chiefly employed in amassing wealth, which he did in every possible way. He made many arbitrary and vexatious laws, and obliged those who violated them in the slightest particular to pay heavy fines, or suffer imprisonment.

9. These rapacious schemes were carried on by the assistance of two lawyers, named Empson and Dudley, whom he employed to entrap the rich and unwary. He also had increased his wealth by means of taxes and *benevolences*.

10. A *benevolence* meant originally a voluntary contribution for the king's expenses, made amongst his immediate vassals. Edward IV. extended it to the whole kingdom, and, though the name implies its being a free gift, it became, in fact, a very arbitrary tax, for the king could quarter soldiers on those who refused to contribute, and could annoy them in many other ways, which caused the people to call these *benevolences malevolences*.

11. You will think this name not unmerited, when you read of what happened to an alderman of London in Henry VIII.'s time. The poor alderman, because he refused to contribute to a *benevolence*, was compelled to serve as a private soldier in the war then carrying on against Scotland.

12. The king sent a letter to the general of the army, commanding that the alderman should be lodged among the common soldiers, and be made to ride forth in all difficult and dangerous enterprises. His sufferings in this mode were not of very long continuance, for he was taken prisoner in the first engagement, and had to pay a much larger sum for his ransom than he had been required to contribute to the *benevolence*.

---

## CHAPTER CXXI.

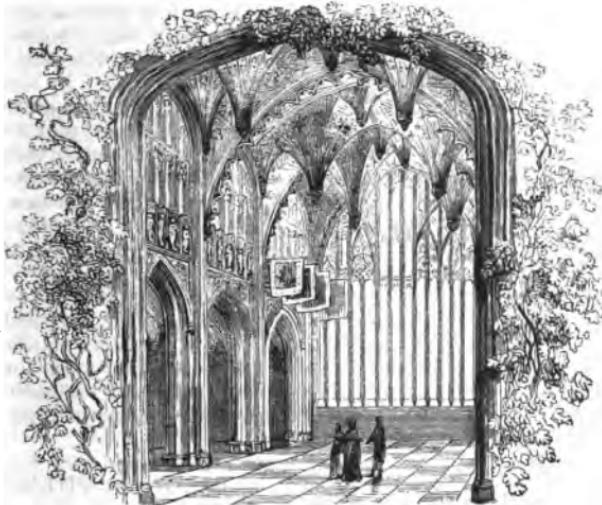
*The Architecture of Henry VII.'s time.—Of his Voyages of Discovery.—Columbus and the Cabots.*

1. By confiscations of the property of those concerned in the various conspiracies, by taxes, *benevolences*, and fines, Henry VII. ac-

Warbeck's wife? 8. What is said of the rest of Henry's reign? 9. Who assisted the king in his schemes to obtain money? 10. What is said of *benevolences*? 11, 12. Relate the story of the alderman.

CHAPTER CXXI.—1. What feeling was strong enough to overcome Henry's avarice? How did

quired immense wealth, not only in money, but also in plate and jewels. He kept it, with the most anxious care, under his own lock and key, in secret apartments in the palace at Richmond.



STYLE OF ARCHITECTURE AT THE TIME OF HENRY VII.

2. There was one feeling which was strong enough to overcome his avarice; this was the ambition of having a splendid tomb. With this view, he commenced the building of what is now known as Henry VII.'s Chapel, at Westminster Abbey. The best architects of the age were called upon to furnish designs for this magnificent building, on which the king did not grudge to expend large sums of his hoarded wealth. It is still one of the most beautiful edifices in England.

3. There arose at this time a remarkable change in the style of architecture, through the introduction of what has been called the *florid* style, but which might with much propriety be styled the *Tudor* style, since it came in with Henry VII., and went out with his granddaughter Elizabeth, the last of the Tudors.

4. All the buildings of this kind are very beautiful, and are sufficiently distinguished from the *Gothic* piles of the Plantagenets, and massy buildings of the *Anglo-Normans*, by the flat arch, called Henry the Seventh's arch, and the profusion of ornament with which every part is loaded.

5. We have already stated that Henry gave great encouragement to commerce. By this means he had acquired in foreign countries the reputation of being the most sagacious, as well as the wealthiest, monarch of his time. When Columbus failed in his endeavors to

he gratify the feeling? 3, 4. What change took place in the style of architecture? 5, 6.

obtain assistance in Spain, in order to enable him to prosecute his voyage in search of land, which he felt convinced he should reach by sailing westward, he determined to apply to Henry.

6. Accordingly, he sent his brother Bartholomew to England for this purpose; but he unfortunately was taken by pirates on the way, and detained by them for four years. At last, in 1489, he made his escape and got to England, but in too destitute a condition to be able to present himself to the king.

7. His industry and activity of mind soon furnished him with a resource. He set himself to work to make maps and sea-charts, and finding a ready sale for them, he was able to purchase some decent clothes, with which to appear at court. Presenting one of his maps to the king, he requested an audience, which being granted, he explained to him all his brother's views and wishes.

8. Henry was so much struck with their feasibility, that he agreed to give Columbus the assistance he desired, and Bartholomew was sent to invite him to England. But before he arrived in Spain, Columbus had already sailed on his first voyage, under the patronage of Queen Isabella.

9. Henry did not abandon the idea of making discoveries; for, in 1496, after Columbus had returned to Europe, with the account of what he had seen, Henry fitted out a small fleet, and sent it on a voyage of discovery, under the command of John Cabot, a Venetian merchant.

10. Cabot sailed in a northwest direction, and the first land he saw was what we call Newfoundland, but which he called *Prima Vista* (first seen); he next saw the Island of St. John's, and sailed to the south as far as Virginia, and then returned to England, where the king received him with great honor.

11. Cabot was in fact the first discoverer of the continent of America; for Columbus, who certainly deserves all the honor of the discovery, since he pointed out the way to it, had not, at the time of Cabot's first voyage, seen any part of America, except some of the islands.

12. John Cabot had a son, named Sebastian, who was a greater navigator than his father. He accompanied him in his voyage to America, and, in the reign of Henry VIII., was employed on many important occasions, and became highly celebrated in his vocation. His merit and knowledge procured him great consideration in England.

---

7, 8. Relate the particulars of Columbus' application to Henry. 9, 10. What is said of John Cabot? 11. What continent did he discover? Why is Columbus entitled to the most credit? 12. What is said of Sebastian Cabot?

## CHAPTER CXXII.

*Death of Henry VII.—The Star Chamber.*

THE STAR CHAMBER.

1. IN 1500, the king's eldest daughter, Margaret, married James IV. of Scotland, and it was from this marriage that the Stuarts derived their title to the crown of England. In 1501, his eldest son, Arthur, married Catharine of Anjou, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella, the King and Queen of Spain; but in the following spring the young prince died, and Henry, unwilling to lose the marriage portion of the Spanish princess, married her to his other son, Henry, a boy of eleven years.

2. A new means of increasing his wealth now offered itself to Henry; this was by marrying an heiress; for his wife, the Princess Elizabeth, was dead. The Queen of Naples was reputed to be immensely rich, and he accordingly made proposals to her. But before the final arrangements had been made, he ascertained that he had been deceived in regard to her wealth, and withdrew his offer.

3. A violent attack of the gout gave Henry warning that all his schemes of revenge, avarice, and ambition would soon be brought to a close. He now devoted the remnant of his life to preparations for the awful change he had to expect; but even his dying acts were tinctured by that calculating, money-loving spirit which had governed his life.

4. Amongst other things, he ordered that two thousand prayers should be said for him, for which no more than sixpence apiece was to be paid. One or two of his bequests, however, show something like a conscience. He ordered that restitution should be made to those persons from whom Empson and Dudley had extorted more than the law would warrant.

5. He also ordered the debts to be paid of all persons who were imprisoned in London for sums under forty shillings. He died on the 21st of April, 1509, in the twenty-fourth year of his reign, and the fifty-fourth of his age.

6. Though the reign of Henry VII. was on the whole favorable to liberty, there was one institution of his which proved, as we shall see in the course of our history, an instrument of the greatest oppression. This was the *Star Chamber*, an arbitrary court of law, in which the king used to attend in person as judge. It was called the *Star Chamber*, from the decorations of the room in which the sessions were held.

#### FAMILY OF HENRY VII.

##### WIFE.

Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV.

##### SONS.

Arthur, who was espoused to Catharine of Anjou, and died before his father. Henry, who succeeded his father on the throne.

##### DAUGHTERS.

Margaret, married to James IV., of Scotland, and afterwards to Douglas, Earl of Angus.

Mary, married first to Louis XII., of France; afterwards to the Duke of Suffolk.

##### GRANDCHILDREN.

Edward VI.,  
Mary,  
Elizabeth, } Children of Henry VIII.

James V., of Scotland, father of Mary, Queen of Scots, } Children  
Margaret Douglas, mother of Henry Darnley, and of Charles } of  
Stuart, father of Lady Arabella Stuart, } Margaret.  
Margaret Brandon, daughter of Mary, and the mother of Lady Jane Grey.

## CHAPTER CXXIII.

*Henry VIII.—Happy Circumstances under which he came to the Throne.—Rise of Wolsey.*

1. THERE was great joy in England at the accession of Henry VIII.; for his father had incurred the hatred of the people by his jealousy, his severity, and his avarice. The new king was only eighteen

of the marriage of his sons? 2. What o' his own marriage? 5. When did he die? What was the length of his reign? What his age?

years old, but he gave the most promising hopes of making a good sovereign, by the progress he had made in his literary studies; for he had received what was then thought a good education, and had more learning than most princes of his time.

2. He was distinguished for the strength and beauty of his person, and for his skill in all athletic exercises. His complexion was fresh and ruddy, and the animation of his manner appeared to great advantage, after the gloom and reserve of the late king.

3. The contending titles of York and Lancaster were united in his person; his father had left him an enormous treasure, and the country was free from foreign and from domestic wars. In short, no king of England ever began to reign under more prosperous circumstances. But though free from all external foes, he had one implacable enemy that pursued him from the earliest to the latest hour of his life, and that enemy was his own violent temper.

4. The naturally lavish disposition of the young king made him yield readily to the influence of the Earl of Surrey, who sought to engage him in such a course of amusements as might make him negligent of public business, and willing to trust the affairs of state entirely to his ministers.



CARDINAL WOLSEY.

5. The hoarded wealth of Henry VII. was rapidly squandered in tournaments and other expensive entertainments, to the great grief of his son's careful counsellor, Fox, Bishop of Winchester, who, finding remonstrances unavailing, introduced at court Thomas Wolsey, who had already shown himself to be a very shrewd and dexterous man, by whose assistance he hoped to counteract the

influence of Surrey and to restrain the follies of the youthful king.

6. Wolsey, who for a time acted a more important part in the affairs of the world than even his master, was the son of a butcher at Ipswich. The great abilities and the fondness for study which he showed in his childhood, led to his being sent to the University of Oxford, where he took his first degree at so early an age as to be called the boy bachelor.

7. Having filled various stations with great reputation, he came at last to be made one of the king's chaplains. His merit was not long overlooked by Henry VIII., who, having occasion to send to the Emperor of Germany upon a matter that required despatch, as well as adroitness, selected Wolsey for the office.

8. The latter, having received his instructions, set off on his journey, and made such haste, that he was back again on the third day, and presented himself at court. The king, who was not used to such despatch in his courtiers, blamed him for not being yet gone, since the matter required haste; to which Wolsey replied by presenting him with the emperor's answer.

9. The king wondered much at his speed, but then asked him if he had met a messenger, who had been sent after him to inform him of a special matter which had been forgotten in his instructions.

10. To which Wolsey answered, "May it please your grace, I met him yesterday by the way, but that matter I had attended to before, taking the boldness to do it without authority, as knowing it to be of special consequence; for which boldness I humbly entreat your grace's pardon." The king not only pardoned him, but bestowed upon him a lucrative office.

11. Wolsey soon acquired an unbounded influence over Henry VIII.; but he made a very different use of it from what Bishop Fox had intended; for he employed only it to encourage the king's follies and to promote his own advancement. He was soon made Archbishop of York, and chancellor.

12. The ignorant of all ranks attributed this influence to witchcraft, but more discerning men perceived that flattery was the art which Wolsey used. He affected to look up to Henry as the wisest of mortals. He promoted his amusements, and joined in them with the gayety of youth; thus, making himself agreeable as well as useful, he ruled for ten years, with absolute sway, one of the most capricious and passionate of men.

---

counteract the influence of Surrey? 6. Who was Wolsey? What of his early life? 8, 9, 10. What anecdote is related of his skill in business? 11, 12. What of his influence with Henry VIII.?

## CHAPTER CXXIV.

*More about Cardinal Wolsey.—Untoward Accident which befell a Diplomatist of the Church.—Wolsey and the young Nobleman.*

1. THE pope, observing the great influence which Wolsey had with the king, was desirous of engaging him in his interest, and made him a cardinal. Never did a churchman equal him in state and dignity. His train consisted of eight hundred servants, of whom many were knights and gentlemen, and the young nobles served as his pages.

2. He was the first clergyman in England that wore silk and gold, not only on his dress, but also on the saddles and the trappings of his horses. The tallest and handsomest priests were selected to carry before him the badges of his different offices. All this ostentation, instead of awing the people, only excited their merriment, and this was increased by an accident which happened to a brother cardinal.

3. Pope Leo X. sent a cardinal to solicit Henry to engage in a war against the Turks. Wolsey, hearing of his arrival at Calais with a retinue in a pretty ragged condition, sent over a quantity of red cloth, to enable them to make an appearance more becoming, as he conceived, the dignity of their lord.

4. Wolsey gave directions for the reception of the ambassador at Dover with great distinction, but was much mortified at finding that eight mules could bear all his baggage. Thinking these not enough for his honor, he sent him twelve more.

5. "But now," as the old chronicler says, "see the shame of pride; for as they passed through Cheapside, in London, the mules by some mischance overthrew their coffers on the ground, whose lids flying open, showed the world what treasure it was that they carried, —old breeches, boots, and broken shoes, bones and crusts of bread; exposing him to the laughter of all the people; yet the cardinal went jogging on before, with his crosses, his gilt axe and mace, borne before him."

6. Wolsey was very courteous to his dependants, and those who flattered and assisted him, but oppressive to the people, and haughty and arrogant in his treatment of the nobility. This conduct sometimes met with a mortifying rebuff.

7. An extravagant young nobleman, having lately sold an estate containing a hundred houses, came ruffling into court in a new suit of clothes, saying, "Am not I a mighty man, that bear a hundred houses on my back?" which Wolsey hearing, said, "You might better have employed it in paying your debts." "Indeed, my lord," says the noble, "you say well; for, my lord, my father owed to your father three half-pence for a calf's-head; hold, here is two-pence for it."

8. Nothing short of the popedom would satisfy the ambition of

Wolsey. To procure the favor of the foreign princes by whose patronage he hoped to obtain it, he sacrificed the interests of his own country, and made the king his perpetual dupe.

9. Wolsey was a liberal patron of letters. Erasmus, a very learned man, who went from Holland to teach Greek at Oxford, tells us that "this extraordinary man had a genius and a taste for learning, in which he had made great proficiency in his youth, and for which he retained a regard in the highest elevation."

10. He invited the most learned men by his noble salaries. He furnished the libraries with the best books of that day. He recalled the learned languages, without which all learning is lame. He began the erection of a college at Oxford, intending to call it Cardinal College; but he did not retain his power long enough to finish it. Henry VIII. seized upon its remains, and, completing the building, took to himself the credit of establishing it.

---

## CHAPTER CXXV.

*Henry invades France.—Battle of the Spurs.—Battle of Flodden Field.—The Emperor Charles V. visits England.—The Field of the Cloth of Gold.*

1. HENRY aspired to the fame of being a great warrior. After making immense preparations, in 1513 he landed at Calais. From thence he proceeded to lay siege to Terouanne. A body of French troops was sent to the succor of the town. Henry, hearing of their approach, sent some troops to oppose them.

2. Notwithstanding the French troops consisted of men whose courage had been tried in many desperate battles, they fled so precipitately at the approach of the English, that the engagement has been called the *Battle of the Spurs*.

3. Scarcely ever was the French monarchy in greater danger than after this defeat; for it was in no condition to defend itself against the powerful army of Henry. But that monarch's passion for military glory was already satisfied, and, after taking Tournay, he returned to England.

4. Upon the same day that Tournay was taken, a battle was fought at Flodden, between James IV. of Scotland, and an English army under Lord Surrey, afterwards Duke of Norfolk. This is the battle of Flodden Field, so celebrated in the old ballads; and so finely described by Scott in the poem of Marmion. The Scots were defeated, and James was killed.

---

man. 8. What was now the object of Wolsey's ambition? 9, 10. What of his patronage of learning?

CXXV.—1. When did Henry invade France? 2. What name is given to a battle with the French? Why? 4. What battle was fought in Scotland? With what result?

5. Upon the death of Louis XII., in 1515, Francis I. became King of France, and in 1517, Charles V. became King of Spain, and soon afterwards Emperor of Germany. Both these princes were young, possessed of great talents and boundless ambition. Each courted and cajoled Henry, whose blunt and open character was no match for either of them.

6. Francis hoped by a personal interview to secure the favor of Henry, and therefore invited that monarch to meet him near Calais. But Charles was beforehand with him. For, as soon as he heard of the proposed meeting, he started for England, and landed at Dover, with a small attendance, before Henry had received any intimation of his purpose.

7. In those days it showed great confidence in a monarch's honor, thus to place one's self in his power, and the compliment thus paid by Charles was not without its influence upon the vain Henry. By flattering the latter, and by bribing Wolsey with gifts and promises, Charles detached them from the interests of France. He then went on his way to his possessions in Holland, and Henry proceeded to Calais, to meet the French king. This meeting took place in June, 1520, in a plain near that city.



THE MEETING OF HENRY AND FRANCIS.

8. Two thousand and eight hundred tents, many of them of silk and cloth of gold, were not sufficient to contain the multitudes who flocked to this splendid festival; and many ladies and gentlemen

5. When did Louis XII. die? Who succeeded him? What of Francis I. and Charles V.? 6. What did Francis propose to Henry? What did Charles do? 7. What of Charles'

of rank were glad to obtain a lodging in barns, and to sleep upon hay and straw. The French and English vied with one another in the splendor of their dresses, and this meeting is celebrated as the “*Field of the Cloth of Gold*.”

9. It continued a fortnight, and was a succession of entertainments. At first the two monarchs met, attended by their trains, and passed the day together, according to the formal etiquette prescribed by Wolsey, who acted as master of ceremonies.

10. But such dull parade did not suit the frank and ardent spirit of Francis, and, after two or three of these interviews, he mounted his horse one morning early, and rode off to the quarters of Henry. The English, who were on guard, were astonished to see the King of France at that hour, and without attendants; but Francis desired to be conducted to Henry’s apartment, and, undrawing his bed-curtains, awoke him out of his sleep.

11. Henry was as much amazed as his guards had been; and from that time the intercourse was conducted with more freedom, as it will appear from a little incident. One day, after the two kings had been looking at a wrestling-match, Henry, seizing Francis by the collar, said, “My brother, you and I must wrestle,” and endeavored to throw him down; but Francis, being the more expert, nimbly twisted Henry round, and threw him to the ground.

12. Though Henry affected to consider this as a pleasant joke, yet he was greatly vexed, and never forgave it. The two kings separated on the 25th of June, and more ceremonious visits were then exchanged between the Emperor Charles and Henry. Amidst the tournaments and splendid entertainments to which these gave occasion, Charles never lost sight of his own interests, but sought to make sure the favor he had gained with Henry and his ambitious minister.

## CHAPTER CXXVI.

*Henry VIII. writes a Book against the Reformation.—About Anne Boleyn.—Thomas Cranmer rises into notice.—Disgrace and Death of Wolsey.*

1. IN every age there had been some men, more enlightened than the great mass, who had protested against the assumptions of the see of Rome, as well as the immorality of the clergy. But it was not until the age at which we have now arrived that any very extensive effects were produced.

2. Pope Leo X., having occasion for a great deal of money to carry on the building of the magnificent church of St. Peter at Rome, attempted to raise it by the sale of *indulgences*, or *licenses to*

*visit to England?* 8. *What of the interview between Henry and Francis?* 10, 11. *What did Francis do to get rid of the formality?* 12. *What of the final interview between Henry and Charles?*

CXXVI.—2. *What were indulgences?* 3. *Who opposed the sale of them?* 4. *What*

sin, as they have been called; for these indulgences were understood not only to pardon past sins, but those that might afterwards be committed. No doubt the sellers of these indulgences somewhat stretched their authority, but still it is evident that they were in the main sanctioned by the head of the church.

3. Martin Luther, himself a monk, was induced to oppose the sale of these indulgences, and proceeding by degrees, he at length ventured boldly to deny the authority of the pope to issue them. He found ready converts to these opinions, and the *Reformation*, as it is called, made rapid progress.

4. In 1521, Henry appeared in the field, as an author, against what he deemed the new heresies. He wrote a Latin book, which was presented with great ceremony to Leo, who rewarded the royal author with the title of "*Defender of the Faith*," and sent him a letter, praising his "wisdom, learning, zeal, charity, gravity, gentleness, and meekness,"—most of which epithets few people could less deserve.

5. But a change in the relations between the king and the pope was soon to take place, and we shall see the consequences. At the court of Henry was a beautiful young lady, named Anne Boleyn, who had been educated at the French court, and who had returned with her English beauty adorned by French grace and vivacity.



HENRY VIII. AND ANNE BOLEYN.

6. The king was captivated by her charms, and sought for some pretext upon which he could be separated from his wife, that he might marry Anne. This was soon found, and Wolsey was sent to the pope to sue for a divorce upon the ground of Catharine's previous marriage with Prince Arthur.

7. The pope, unwilling to displease the emperor, who was the nephew of Catharine, declined giving a decided answer, and, after keeping Henry in suspense for a year, sent, in 1528, Cardinal Campeggio to England, to decide, in concert with Wolsey, the validity of the king's marriage with Catharine.

8. Campeggio tried to settle the difficulty by private negotiation. He first addressed himself to the king, and exhorted him to give up the thoughts of a divorce. Not succeeding in this, he sought to prevail on Catharine to retire to a nunnery; but with her he was also unsuccessful. After another year of delays, the two cardinals proceeded to a trial; but they seemed unwilling to come to a decision. The king's patience was nearly exhausted, and it now became apparent to the courtiers that Wolsey's favor was waning.

9. It chanced about this time that Gardiner and Fox, two of the king's servants, fell by accident in company with a young priest, named Thomas Cranmer. The conversation turned upon the subject of the king's divorce. Cranmer at first declined any opinion about it, but, being pressed, said he would spend no time in negotiating with the pope, but would propose to the most learned men in Europe this plain question, "Can a man marry his brother's widow?"

10. The two doctors were much struck with this hint, and mentioned it to the king, who exclaimed, in his blunt way, "*that Cranmer had got the right sow by the ear.*" Cranmer was at once taken



DEATH OF WOLSEY.

into the service of the king, and engaged to write a book in favor of the divorce.

11. From this time Wolsey's influence declined. Anne Boleyn, who suspected that he opposed her elevation to the throne, joined his enemies, of whom his pride and arrogance had created many. Such secrecy was used, that Wolsey's first knowledge of their proceedings was an indictment brought against him with the king's consent.

12. All his property, even his clothes, and a tomb which he had prepared for himself at Windsor, was seized by the king, and he was himself banished from court. Henry's resentment, however, soon subsided, and he sent Wolsey a general pardon, restoring a portion of his revenues, but requiring him to reside at York.

13. But adversity had not cured him of his love of magnificence, which again drew on him the king's displeasure. He was now arrested for high treason. His anxiety threw him into a violent fever; in which condition he set out on his journey to the Tower. On the third day he arrived at Leicester Abbey, and Wolsey said to the abbot, who came to the gate to receive him, "My father, I am come to lay my bones among you."

14. He was lifted from his mule, and carried to his bed, from which he never rose. He died November 29th, 1530. On his death-bed he uttered these affecting words: "Had I served my God as diligently as I have served my king, he would not have left me in my gray hairs."

---

## CHAPTER CXXVII.

*Henry VIII. marries Anne Boleyn, and is declared Head of the English Church.—The Monasteries dissolved.—Sir Thomas More.—Death of Anne Boleyn.—Marriage and Death of Jane Seymour.*

1. FROM the time of Wolsey's disgrace, Henry was busily employed in collecting the opinions of learned men on the subject of the divorce. But delay after delay was made by the clergy, and two more years passed without the business being at all advanced.

2. In 1533, Cranmer was made Archbishop of Canterbury, and proceeded to try the question. A sort of court was assembled, and, after a fortnight spent in hearing arguments, sentence of divorce was pronounced, declaring that the marriage was not valid from the beginning, and that Mary, daughter of Catharine, was not an heir to the crown.

3. The poor queen retired to Ampthill, where she died in 1536, and the king was publicly married to Anne Boleyn. The news of the sentence excited violent commotion at Rome. The pope at first

---

into notice? 11, 12. What now befell Wolsey? 13, 14. Relate the particulars of his death.

CXXVII.—1, 2. When was the matter of the king's divorce settled? 3. What did

was doubtful what to do, but at length issued an angry decree, declaring the marriage with Catharine to be valid.



HENRY VIII. BECOMES HEAD OF THE CHURCH.

4. He soon saw the political error he had committed; for Henry, in a violent passion, called a parliament, which transferred the supremacy of the Church of England from the pope to the king, and with it all the revenues that had hitherto accrued to the see of Rome. The monasteries and nunneries were also dissolved, and their possessions bestowed upon the king.

5. Commissioners were sent over the kingdom, requiring all persons to subscribe the act that had declared the king to be the head of the church. Sir Thomas More, and Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, both men of great learning and wisdom, refused to subscribe, and were consequently beheaded.

6. Sir Thomas was one of the most learned and virtuous men of his age. He gave proofs at an early period of his genius, and great pains were taken with his education. When he was about twenty, he became a religious devotee, wore a hair shirt, slept upon boards, and had a great inclination to become a monk.

7. In conformity, however, with his father's commands, which he never disobeyed, he gave up his own pleasure, and applied himself to the study of the law. He soon became conspicuous for his eloquence, and was employed in every important cause.

8. In the midst of the greatest hurry of business, in which his whole day was occupied, he stole time from his sleep to pursue his favorite studies, and to compose his *Utopia*, which excited universal admiration. Henry VIII. was so pleased with his conversation, that he sent frequently for him to entertain and divert him.

9. This was very disagreeable to Sir Thomas, as it consumed so much of his time, and in order to get rid of this royal interruption,



DEATH OF SIR THOMAS MORE.

he made use of a stratagem. He affected to be very dull and uninteresting several times successively, and was no more sent for, sacrificing the reputation of being a *wit*, and the conversation of a king, to save his time.

10. Anne Boleyn's enjoyment of a crown was of short duration. Her French manners and vivacity, though so pleasing to the king before, displeased him after she became queen. Upon a false accusation she was, therefore, arrested on the 2d of May, 1536, and sent a prisoner to the Tower.

11. She now paid dearly for her brief exaltation; accused of a crime of which she was innocent, denied the sight of her parents, and surrounded by her bitterest enemies, after a mock trial, at which she was allowed no counsel, she was pronounced guilty, her marriage declared void, and herself condemned to death. Her daughter, Elizabeth, afterwards queen, was declared incapable of inheriting the crown.

12. Anne was beheaded, and the king paid her memory the compliment of wearing white mourning one day, and on the next was married to Jane Seymour, daughter of Sir Thomas Seymour. The new queen died at the end of the year, leaving one son, Edward.

## CHAPTER CXXVIII.

*Thomas Cromwell.—The King marries in succession Ann of Cleves Catharine Howard, and Catharine Parr.*

1. AMONG the few of Wolsey's servants who remained faithful to their master in his disgrace, was Thomas Cromwell, the son of a blacksmith, who, by the force of his natural talents, had risen from the situation of a common soldier to be the secretary and confidential friend of the cardinal. After the death of Wolsey, he entered into the service of the king, and rose rapidly in favor, so that he engrossed some of the chief offices in the state.

2. The king now looked abroad for a wife; but there were some who thought that the brief enjoyment of the post of queen might be paid for too dearly; one lady whom he asked, sent him a refusal, saying, "She had but one head; if she had two, she might have ventured to marry him."

3. Cromwell, who was a zealous friend to the Reformation, was desirous that Henry should ally himself to one of the Protestant princes of Germany, and procured a portrait of Ann of Cleves, to show to the king. Henry was so much pleased with the picture, that he sent to demand the lady in marriage.

4. When she arrived in England, the king found her so unlike the portrait, that he was with difficulty persuaded to marry her; and when he discovered that she was stupid and ignorant, and could speak no language but Dutch, he disliked her more than before, and resolved on being divorced from her; but as a first step, he beheaded Cromwell, because he had been the adviser of the measure.

5. He then summoned a parliament, who most obsequiously declared the marriage void. The king treated Ann with much liberality, assigning her an ample income, and a fine palace, and she passed the rest of her life to all appearance very contentedly.

6. A fortnight had not elapsed, before Henry presented Catharine Howard, niece of the Duke of Norfolk, to the court as queen. He was so much charmed with the wit and agreeableness of his new wife, that he caused a thanksgiving prayer to be made for his happy marriage. But he soon found reason to be discontented, and, on the 12th of February, 1542, she lost her life upon the scaffold.

7. Tired of marrying for beauty, Henry looked out for sense and discretion in his next wife, which he happily found united in Catharine Parr, the widow of Lord Latimer. He married her in 1543. She contrived to preserve the good opinion of the king, amidst all the storms and variations of his capricious temper.

---

CXXVIII.—1. Who was Thomas Cromwell? 3. Whom did Cromwell induce the king to marry? 4. How was the king pleased with his bride? 5. What became of her? 6. Whom did he next marry? What became of this wife? 7. Who was his last wife?

## CHAPTER CXXIX.

*Henry VIII. very zealous against Heretics.—Catharine Parr incurs great Danger.—By what Means she escapes from it.*

1. It was, as already stated, in a fit of passion that Henry renounced the authority of the pope. He was very far from being a convert to the doctrines of Luther and other Reformers. It is true he abolished monasteries and nunneries, with all their rules and observances; but yet he appointed priests to say masses for his own soul.

2. All who denied the supremacy of the king in matters of religion were deemed heretics, and many were burned to death; papists and Protestants suffered at the same stake. The king was particularly vain of his theological knowledge, and even engaged in public controversy with those who were accused of heresy.

3. Theology was also a favorite topic of conversation, but woe to such as had the hardihood to differ from the despotic and passionate monarch. Queen Catharine, who was at heart a Protestant, incurred no small hazard. Upon one occasion she expressed herself rather too strongly in favor of the reformed faith.

4. Henry, provoked that any one should presume to differ from him, complained of the queen's obstinacy to Gardiner, a bigoted Roman Catholic, who sought to inflame the quarrel. He at length prevailed on the king to consent that the queen should be publicly accused and tried as a heretic.

5. With so capricious a monarch it was dangerous for any officer to sign the articles, since it was high treason, a capital offence, for any one to slander the queen. The paper was prepared for the king's own signature. By some means it fell into the hands of the queen's friends, and she was at once informed of her danger.

6. She did not despair of being able, by prudence and address, to disappoint the efforts of her enemies. She paid her usual visit to the king, and found him more placid than she expected. He entered at once upon his favorite topic, and seemed to challenge her to an argument in divinity.

7. She gently declined the conversation, saying that such profound speculations were ill suited to her sex. That she was blessed with a husband who was qualified, by his judgment and learning, not only to choose principles for his own family, but for the most wise and learned of the nation. That she found conversation apt to languish when there was no opposition, and therefore she sometimes ventured to oppose, to give him the pleasure of refuting her.

8. "And is it so?" replied the king; "then we are perfect friends again." Her enemies, who knew nothing of the change in the king's sentiments, prepared the next day to carry her to the

---

CXXIX.—1. What of the king's feelings towards the Reformers? 3. What danger did Catharine incur? 5. How did she become informed of her danger? 6, 7, 8. How did she avert it? 9. What reception did her enemies meet with?

Tower. Henry and Catharine were conversing amicably in the garden, when the chancellor appeared, with forty of his attendant officers.

9. The king spoke to him at some distance from her, and seemed to treat him with great severity; she overheard the epithets *knav*, *fool*, and *beast*, liberally bestowed upon the magistrate. When the king joined her, she interposed to mitigate his anger. "Poor soul!" said he, "you know not how ill entitled this man is to your good offices." The queen took good care never again to contradict his majesty, and Gardiner never could regain his good opinion.

### CHAPTER CXXX.

*Cranmer causes the Bible to be translated into English, and to be publicly read.—Proofs of the Ignorance of the People.*



CRANMER.

1. THERE was one of Henry's servants who retained the favor of his master from first to last, and that not by any obsequiousness, but by the integrity of his character. This was Cranmer. He was the only one of Henry's favorites who had no selfish views of his own. His whole soul was placed on one great object, the reformation of religion.

2. Wolsey's great abilities were solely employed in raising himself to the highest worldly dignity. Cromwell, though a zealous reformer, was intent on enriching himself from the pillage of the religious houses. Cranmer's character was so devoid of covetousness and ambition, that he at first declined the archbishopric, and at last accepted only from the hope that it would give him better means of forwarding the cause he had at heart.

3. Notwithstanding a timidity of character which betrayed him into some weaknesses, the virtue of Cranmer awed the overbearing Henry, who usually contrived to send him to a distance when he was about to commit any of his flagrant acts. The king's regard for him was at all times sincere.

4. Upon one occasion, Gardiner and the Duke of Norfolk, the leaders of the papists, thought they had obtained the king's consent to send Cranmer to the Tower; but Henry privately warned the archbishop of the plot, and advised him how to defeat the malice of his enemies.

5. Cranmer was very anxious that the public services of the church should be in English instead of Latin, but he knew that the king would violently oppose such a change. He therefore thought it best to lead to it by degrees; and when a prayer was to be composed for the king's preservation, in an expedition to France, in 1544, Cranmer besought him that it might be composed in English, that the people might pray with more fervor, from understanding what they uttered.

6. By degrees he gained permission to have the Lord's Prayer, the Creed, and the Commandments read in English in the churches. He was also desirous of obtaining a better translation of the Bible than Wickliffe's, of which a few copies were yet extant. At last he gained the king's permission to have one prepared, but it was four years before it was completed.

7. These Bibles, when they did appear, were received with thankfulness all over the kingdom; they were placed in churches, and secured by a chain to the reading-desk. The people flocked to the places where they could hear the holy book read, and many persons learned to read for the sole purpose of perusing it. But Henry, in the latter part of his life, would not permit the Scriptures to be read by the lower orders of the people.

8. The increase of books, through the invention of printing, had already made the English much greater readers than formerly; but in regard to writing, they do not seem to have been much advanced. An anecdote illustrative of this is contained in a letter, dated 1516, giving an account of some seditious paper which was stuck up on St. Paul's Church.

9. In order to discover who had written it, the aldermen of London were ordered to go round all the wards, and "see all write who could." We may conclude, also, that country gentlemen were not better scribes than the citizens; for in a book on agriculture, written

What instance of the king's regard for him? 5. What object had Cranmer much at heart? 6. What of his translation of the Bible? 7. How did the people receive the Bible? 8, 9. What instances of the ignorance of the people?

about this time, it is suggested that those *gentlemen* who could not write might note down anything they wished to remember by cutting notches on a stick.

### CHAPTER CXXXI.

*War between England and Scotland.—Battle of Solway Moss.—Death of the King of Scotland, who is succeeded by the beautiful Mary, Queen of Scots.—Henry becomes more tyrannical, as he grows old.—Arrest of the Duke of Norfolk, and of the Earl of Surrey.—Character of these Noblemen.—Death of Surrey.—Death of Henry VIII.*

1. HENRY was very fond of royal interviews, and, in 1541, a meeting between him and his nephew, James V., of Scotland, was agreed upon, to be held at York. Henry and his court kept the appointment, and waited for some days; but the King of Scots was prevented by his clergy from fulfilling the engagement.

2. Henry was so much enraged at this insult, that he declared war against him. The English army obtained a victory at Solway Moss, and James was so much overwhelmed when he heard of it, that he sunk into a settled melancholy, and died December 14th, 1542, leaving an infant daughter, only seven years old, as heir to his throne.

3. This princess was the celebrated Mary, Queen of Scots, of whose unhappy life and death you will hear in the proper place. Henry was desirous of a marriage between the young Queen of Scotland and his son Edward, and used both force and artifice to bring it about. He wished also to be made Protector of Scotland during the queen's minority; but the Scots were too bold to be frightened, and too wary to be ensnared.

4. In 1546 peace was made with Scotland, and Henry, being also at peace with France and Germany, had nothing to do but to torment his own subjects. As he required the people to make his opinion the standard of their faith, and was continually changing that opinion, and making contradictory laws, it was scarcely possible for his subjects to steer a safe course, among the difficulties which his tyrannical caprice laid in their way.

5. Towards the end of his life he was troubled with a very painful disorder in his leg, which, added to his unwieldy corpulence, disabled him from walking, and made him more furious than a chained lion. These infirmities so greatly increased the natural violence of his temper, that everybody was afraid to come near him.

6. Even the queen, though she was his most attentive nurse, per-

CXXXI.—1, 2. What led to a war with Scotland? What effect had the defeat of the Scots upon their king? Who succeeded James V.? 3. What marriage was Henry desirous to effect? 4. What of his treatment of his own subjects? 5. What increased his natural ill temper? 6. What was one of the last acts of his life? 7. What of the Duke

forming the most disagreeable offices for him, was treated with harshness. His tyranny and caprice were such that none could feel safe. Among the last acts of his life was the arrest of the Duke of Norfolk and his son, Lord Surrey.

7. The former was regarded as the greatest subject in the kingdom. He had been one of the king's earliest favorites; he had rendered great services to the crown, which had been rewarded by honors and estates; he was allied to the royal family by marriage in various ways.

8. The Earl of Surrey was the most accomplished nobleman in the kingdom. He was equally distinguished as a courtier, a scholar, and a soldier. Himself a poet, he was a liberal patron of letters and of the fine arts. Both these noblemen were zealous Roman Catholics, and the duke was regarded, both at home and abroad, as the head of that party.

9. It was doubtless the king's fear that they might prove dangerous subjects during the minority of his son Edward, that led to their ruin. But the charges actually brought against them were frivolous in the extreme. But with the parliaments and juries of Henry's reign this was of small consequence. Surrey was found guilty of high treason, and was beheaded January 19th, 1547.

10. Norfolk tried every concession to save his own life, but Henry, as if he thirsted for blood, hurried on the proceedings of parliament, and the death-warrant was signed January 27th, but before it could be executed, the king expired, and thus his victim escaped.

11. Henry's temper was so terrific, that, when he was dying, no person dared to give him the least hint of his danger. At last one bolder than the rest ventured to tell him he had not long to live, and asked him if he would have a clergyman sent for. He replied, "If any, Cranmer." When the archbishop arrived, the king was speechless, but he knew Cranmer, and expired as he pressed his hand. He was in the fifty-sixth year of his age, and the thirty-eighth of his reign.

12. Though the princesses, Mary and Elizabeth, had been declared not to be capable of inheriting the crown, Henry appointed them in his will, after their brother, to the succession. In case they all died without children, he left the succession to the heirs of his youngest sister, the Duchess of Suffolk, in exclusion of those of his eldest sister, Margaret, who, after the death of the King of Scotland, had married the Earl of Angus.

#### FAMILY OF HENRY VIII.

##### WIVES.

Catharine of Aragon, whom he divorced.  
 Anne Boleyn, whom he beheaded.  
 Jane Seymour, who died a natural death.  
 Ann of Cleves, whom he divorced.  
 Catharine Howard, whom he beheaded.  
 Catharine Parr, who survived him.

of Norfolk? 8. What of Lord Surrey? 9, 10. What was the fate of these noblemen? 11. Relate the particulars of Henry's death. 12. What did he appoint as the order of succession?

## CHILDREN.

Edward, son of Jane Seymour, who succeeded.  
 Mary, daughter of Catharine of Aragon, } Afterwards Queens of England.  
 Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn,

## CHAPTER CXXXII.

*Anecdotes of Henry VIII.—His patronage of Men of Learning.—Erasmus invited to England to teach Greek.—Violent Disputes as to the proper Pronunciation of that Language.—The King interferes to put a stop to them.—Hans Holbein, the Painter.—Several new Vegetables introduced into England.*

1. It may seem extraordinary, that, notwithstanding his cruelty, his extortion, his violence, and the many vices which disgraced his character, Henry possessed to the last, in some degree, the love and affection of his subjects. His exterior qualities were calculated to captivate the multitude; his magnificence and personal courage made him illustrious in vulgar eyes. His liberality helped to reconcile his courtiers to his ill-humors.

2. A single anecdote will suffice to show how completely the English people were subdued by the royal authority and will; indeed, in regard to freedom of thought or action, they were little better off than the slaves of an eastern despot. Upon one occasion, the House of Commons did not pass a law granting a supply quite so speedily as the king wished.

3. Whereupon Henry sent for Edward Montague, one of the members who had considerable influence in the house; and he, introduced to his majesty, had the mortification to hear him speak in these words: "Ho! man! will they not pass my bill?"

4. And laying his hand on Montague's head, who was then on his knees before him, "Get my bill passed by to-morrow, or else to-morrow this head of yours shall be off!" The bill was passed within the appointed time.—After the evidence we have given of barbarism in the manners of the age, it will not surprise us to learn that the traffic in slaves, by Christian nations, began in the reign of Henry VIII.

5. We have already said that Henry was distinguished among the princes of his age for his scholarship. Learning now became fashionable in England. Erasmus speaks with great satisfaction of the regard paid by the nobles to men of knowledge. To speak and write pure Latin was deemed a polite accomplishment, to which persons of the highest rank and of both sexes aspired.

6. The greatest scholars of the age did not disdain to spend their time in writing grammars, vocabularies, colloquies and other books, to assist the unlearned in making this acquisition. Cardinal Wolsey is said to have written the preface to a grammar, which has not yet gone entirely out of use in England, prepared by William Lilly, a man who, for his great learning, was made the first master of St. Paul's School, then just founded in London.

7. The restorers of learning found it much more difficult to persuade people that a knowledge of the Greek language was either useful or agreeable. By the invitation of Wolsey, Erasmus came to Oxford to teach Greek. The introduction of this study rent that university into violent factions, which frequently came to blows.

8. The students divided themselves into parties, which bore the names of Grecians and Trojans, and sometimes fought with as great animosity as formerly animated those hostile nations. A new and more correct method of pronouncing Greek being introduced, the Grecians themselves were divided into parties; and it was remarked that the Catholics held to the old, while the Protestants favored the new mode.

9. Bishop Gardiner declared that, rather than permit the liberty of changing the pronunciation of the Greek alphabet, it were better the language itself were banished from the universities; and the king, by his influence, made it an offence, subject to whipping and other ignominious punishments, to use the new pronunciation.

10. Hans Holbein, having acquired a great reputation as a painter in his native city of Basle, in Switzerland, was invited to England, where he was patronized by Henry VIII., who employed him to portray the beauties of his wives, or of those whom he proposed to wed. To procure a just report of the latter, he was twice despatched to the continent of Europe, as the secret emissary of the king's love.

11. But he was not always a faithful messenger, for his pencil imparted unmerited charms to Ann of Cleves, and ensnared his employer into a marriage. As he was one day engaged in painting a lady's portrait for the king, a nobleman made his way into his room. Offended at the intrusion, Holbein pushed him down stairs.

12. The nobleman went straight to Henry, complaining loudly of the insult, and demanding redress. "It is I, in the person of Holbein, who have been insulted," said the monarch; "I can, when I please, make seven lords of seven ploughmen; but I cannot make one Holbein even of seven lords."

13. It was not till the end of this reign that carrots, turnips, and other edible roots were produced in England. The little of these vegetables that was used was formerly imported from Holland and Flanders. Queen Catharine, when she wanted a salad, was obliged to despatch a messenger thither on purpose.

## CHAPTER CXXXIII.

*The Duke of Somerset appointed Protector.—Edward VI.—A Book of Prayer prepared.—Sternhold and Hopkins make a Metrical Version of the Psalms.—The Thirty-nine Articles.—An apparent general Conformity in religious Faith.*



EDWARD VI. AND CRANMER.

1. HENRY, who desired to rule even after his death, left very peremptory commands for the government of the state until his son Edward should be old enough to take the reins into his own hands. But all his directions were disregarded, and the government was intrusted to the Duke of Somerset, Edward's eldest uncle, under the title of Protector.

2. Edward was in his tenth year when his father died, and his love of study and early application already gave great promise of his future capacity for government. The protector, who favored the Protestants, intrusted his education to men of the reformed religion. The young king readily imbibed their opinions, and he showed a knowledge, zeal, and piety quite extraordinary in a boy of his age.

3. Theology was his favorite study, and his greatest delight was listening to sermons. Latimer, who had suffered much in the reign of Henry for his zeal in behalf of the reformed faith, was appointed the king's preacher, and had a pulpit placed in one of the royal gardens, where Edward loved to sit out of doors and listen for hours to his very long, but very eloquent sermons.

4. But we must not suppose that the king neglected his other studies. His Latin exercises have been preserved, and do him great

CXXXIII.—1. What of the government after Henry's death? 2. What of Edward? 3. What was his favorite study? 4. Did he respect others? 5. What of the progress

credit. There can be no question that he possessed abilities of a very high order. At the same time he endeared himself to all around by the gentleness of his disposition.

5. The work of reformation in religion was now undertaken in earnest. By direction of the protector, Cranmer, and Ridley, afterwards Bishop of London, prepared a Book of Prayer, from which the one now in use in the English Church differs but little. To conciliate those who yet inclined to popery, many of the prayers of the Romish Church were retained.

6. About the same time, Thomas Sternhold, an officer in the palace of the king, being displeased by the silly and profane songs he used to hear the courtiers sing, and thinking he should do them a kindness by furnishing them with something better, made a translation of the Psalms of David into verse, being assisted in the work by a schoolmaster, named Hopkins.

7. At first these Psalms were sung to the tunes of songs, but soon becoming generally known and approved of, they were adapted to church music, and placed at the end of the Prayer-Book. That there might be a general conformity in religious belief, Cranmer drew up forty-two articles, from which, with some slight alterations and retrenchments, the *Thirty-nine Articles* are formed. These articles are a short summary of the doctrines of the Church of England.

8. Severe penalties were denounced against all who did not avow their belief in the religion of the government. The Princess Mary, who was a rigid papist, refused to conform to the law. On this, her chaplains were imprisoned, and she herself threatened with punishment; but when she appealed to her cousin, the emperor, and made an attempt to escape from England, it was deemed prudent to permit her to worship God according to the dictates of her own heart, provided she did it privately in her own house; a concession which cost the young king many tears.

9. Bishop Gardiner likewise refused to conform, and suffered imprisonment. But the nation was in a great measure brought to a seeming conformity in religion. Some adopted the reformed faith from conviction of its truth; some, because it was the religion of the court; while those who had obtained grants of abbey lands warmly supported the views of the protector, lest, with the restoration of the old religion, they should be obliged to refund their share of the plunder.

---

of the Reformation? What of the Book of Prayer? 6. Who made a metrical version of the Psalms? Why was it done? 7. What are the Thirty-nine Articles? 8. Who refused to conform to the reformed mode of worship? What was the result? 9. By what different motives were the people actuated?

## CHAPTER CXXXIV.

*The Protector seeks to force a Marriage between Edward and Mary.—Battle of Pinkie.—Mary sent to France.—Catharine Parr marries Lord Seymour.—Her Death.—Dudley, Earl of Warwick, induces Seymour to commit Acts which lead to his Execution.*

1. THE marriage of Edward with the young Queen of Scots had been a favorite measure with Henry, who foresaw the advantages which would result from the union of the whole island under one government. He had enjoined it upon his council to procure its completion by force, if it could not be done by negotiation.

2. Failing in the latter, the protector, in 1547, marched into Scotland at the head of an army, and advanced to within four miles of Edinburgh, without meeting with much opposition. At the same time a large fleet arrived in the Frith of Forth to assist the operations of the army. The governor of Scotland summoned the whole force of the kingdom to repel this formidable invasion, and posted his army in a very advantageous position on the banks of the river Esk.

3. Somerset, seeing the impossibility of attacking the enemy with any hope of success, moderated his demands, and only required that the young queen should not be married to any one else until she was old enough to choose for herself. But the Scots refused to agree to these terms, supposing that Somerset only offered them from finding himself in a perilous condition; and they were confirmed in this belief, by observing that the English army moved towards the sea, as if to embark.

4. To intercept its escape, the Scots unwisely left their strong post, and descended into the plain, placing themselves between the English and the sea. Here they were exposed to the cannon of the ships, and, being thus placed between two fires, were compelled to fall back. A panic now seized them, and the retreat became a flight.

5. *The Battle of Pinkie*, as it is called, from the name of a house near the field, was fought September 10th, 1547. In it perished more than ten thousand Scots. Among these were a great number of monks and priests, who had been drawn to the camp by their hatred of the English heretics. A large number of prisoners were taken, amongst others the Earl of Huntley, who, being asked how he stood affected to the marriage, replied, "That he liked the marriage well enough, but he liked not the manner of wooing."

6. These rough proceedings so irritated the Scots that they resolved their queen should never marry Edward. To place her beyond the power of the English, they sent her, being now six years old, to be educated at the court of France, and betrothed her to the dauphin.

7. Somerset now returned in great haste to England, for he had received intelligence of some designs to remove him from his high office. At the head of the malcontents was his own brother, Lord Seymour, who aspired to supplant the protector. Seymour was a man of great powers of flattery, and had won so much on the good opinion of Catharine Parr, that she married him very soon after Henry's death.

8. She lived only a year after the marriage, and Seymour then aspired to a still higher connection; for he addressed the Princess Elizabeth, and it is supposed would have been successful in his suit, had it not been opposed by other officers in the state.

9. Seymour was encouraged in his opposition to Somerset by Dudley, Earl of Warwick, son of that wicked Dudley who had been a judge in Henry VII.'s reign, and who hoped to raise himself by the ruin of both the brothers. Having induced Seymour to commit some violent actions, he then persuaded Somerset to have him arrested for high treason. His condemnation and execution soon followed, and thus the wicked designs of Dudley were to that extent successful.

---

### CHAPTER CXXXV.

*Consequences of the Suppression of the Religious Houses.—Somerset resigns the Protectorship.—Is condemned and executed for High Treason.—Warwick rules the Country.—Many Books destroyed for the sake of their rich Ornaments.*

1. THE destruction of the religious houses was a very severe measure upon large numbers of people. Some of the heads of these establishments were allowed small sums for their own support; but the monks and nuns were turned adrift, a helpless race of creatures, who could do but little towards their own maintenance.

2. It was also a harsh proceeding to those farmers who had enjoyed the church lands at easy rents. There was a still more numerous class of sufferers, the idle poor, who had been fed daily at the convent gates, and scarcely knew how to work. All these were now obliged to seek their daily bread by labor.

3. In addition to the distresses of these persons, the industrious poor suffered greatly from a change which took place about this time in the system of agriculture. Many arable farms were, on account of the high price of wool, turned into sheep-pastures; and a scarcity of corn, and a diminution of the demand for labor, were the consequences. These causes made the year 1549 a period of insurrections and tumults all over England.

---

What effect had this invasion on the Scots? What resolution did they adopt? 7. What induced Somerset to return to England? What of Lord Seymour? Whom did he marry? 9. Who encouraged the opposition of Seymour? What was the result?

CXXXV.—1. What was one consequence of the destruction of the religious houses?

4. The protector, who really felt a pity for the poor, did all in his power to relieve their distresses, and the commotions were quelled. But the protector gave offence to the nobles by the great state and royal dignity which he assumed. He also displeased the people of London, by demolishing a church to erect a magnificent palace upon its site. This palace, after being the residence of many royal personages, was pulled down in 1775, and a grand edifice for the accommodation of the public officers erected. The name of *Somerset-house* was still retained.

5. A confederacy, headed by Warwick, was formed against the protector, who, seeing himself deserted by all except Cranmer and his secretary, Paget, resigned the protectorship. The government was intrusted to a council of regency, of which Warwick was the president. Not satisfied with the degradation of Somerset, Warwick, in 1551, accused him of a design to excite a rebellion.

6. Upon this charge Somerset was tried, condemned, and executed, to the sincere grief of the people, to whom his goodness of heart had much endeared him. When he was beheaded, many rushed on the scaffold to dip their handkerchiefs in his blood, and these were preserved as memorials of him.

7. Under Warwick the work of the reformation was carried on with more intemperate zeal. The good Archbishop Cranmer endeavored to preserve to the popish clergy the scanty provision that still remained to them. But his integrity was no match for the avarice of the spoilers, whose rapacity nothing could escape.

8. Under pretence of searching for forbidden books, the libraries of the Universities of Oxford, and that at Westminster, were rummaged, and all books with gold or silver ornaments on their bindings were seized as being superstitious relics, and thus many valuable works were destroyed.

9. Books in those days were commonly bound in parchment, and much ornamented. Sometimes the clasps and the corners of the covers were of gold or silver, and they were frequently secured to the shelves by long chains, to prevent their being carried away. One of the later kings, Charles I., had some books which were bound in velvet, and their clasps set with pearls and precious stones.

## CHAPTER CXXXVI.

*How the Religious Houses were disposed of.—Fashions of Dress.—Pins and Needles come into use.*

1. THE reader may be curious to know what became of the old monasteries and nunneries. Some of them were, doubtless, levelled with the ground; others were left to decay, and their ruins still

3. What other cause produced distress? What was the consequence? 4. How did the protector offend the nobles? 6, 7. Relate the rest of his story. 8. What of the progress of the Reformation? 9. What of the binding of the books?

remain, objects of admiration to lovers of relics of antiquity. Many were given to laymen, who converted them into dwelling-houses.

2. Some of these still preserve much of their original monastic appearance. Others retain only the name. Woburn Abbey is one of these, where nothing of the establishment remains, except, perhaps, the old oaks, one of which is pointed out as the tree upon which the last abbot was hung, for refusing to give up his house to the king's commissioners.

3. Henry bestowed many of the religious houses on his personal attendants. One was rewarded with some abbey lands for having wheeled his chair further from the fire, and a lady had a monastery given to her for making the king a dish of puddings which he liked. Many of the larger ones were converted to purposes of public utility. St. Stephen's Chapel was appropriated by Edward VI. to the meetings of the House of Commons, for which purpose it was used till its destruction by fire in 1834.

4. Bethlehem Priory was converted into a hospital for lunatics, and its name corrupted into Bedlam Hospital. Another old religious house was converted into a school by Edward VI., and is now known as Christ's Hospital. Here more than one thousand orphan boys are maintained and educated; the blue coats and petticoats, and yellow stockings of the boys, still show the dress worn by children in the reign of the founder.

5. The fashion of the dress of the men of this age is retained to this date by the *yeomen of the guard*, or king's *beef-eaters*, as they are vulgarly called. Some antiquaries suppose this name to be a corruption of *buffeters*, because it was part of their duty to guard the silver on the *buffet* or sideboard. Others derive it from the circumstance of there having been maintained for them a long oaken table, whereon roast beef, plum pudding, and other good cheer were to be daily seen smoking at one o'clock. The dress is scarlet; the coat like a modern frock-coat, with yellow stripes.

6. About the middle of the last century, in consequence of some jokes which were cut at the expense of the corps, whom some wag compared to boiled lobsters, the king ordered them to wear white stockings. But George IV., who loved splendor and had a good taste, renewed the red hose, which, with the adoption of the white ruff, and large white gauntlets, or gloves, restored to the guard its ancient showy splendor. As Henry VIII. was a fat, burly man, the courtiers stuffed out their clothes, to make themselves look as big as he did; though the rest of the dress was wide and baggy, the sleeves were made so tight, that some of the fine gentlemen had them sewed up every time they put them on.

7. One would think that so troublesome a fashion must have been confined to the rich, who had plenty of time to waste upon trifles. But that the fashions of the courtiers were aped by people of much lower degree, is clear from the following story. John Drakes, a shoemaker, was a great admirer of Sir Philip Calthorp's style ~

CXXXVI.—1. What became of the monasteries and nunneries? 3, 4. [What that were appropriated to public uses. What of Christ's Hospital? 5.] Is the fashion of dress of this period still retained? 6. What of the fash-

dress, and prevailed with his tailor to make him some clothes which should be exactly like that gentleman's.

8. Sir Philip having ordered a new cloak, the fellow to it was accordingly made for John Drakes, which the knight fearing of, gave directions to the tailor to cut little slits all over his cloak. As the shoemaker's cloak was to be exactly like Sir Philip's, the tailor cut it also in the same way; and this, as the story goes, completely cured John Drakes of aping Sir Philip Calthorp.

9. The convenience of ladies' dress was very much assisted about this time by the invention of pins. Before this, there were a variety of contrivances for fastening clothes; buttons, hooks and eyes, laces and loops; and ladies used even wooden skewers to keep their dress in its proper place. Needles were not known till the reign of Mary, when a Moor came to London and made some there; but, as he refused to discover his art, they were not manufactured in any considerable quantity till some time after.

10. In the place of the large and fantastical head-dresses, which had been the vogue, ladies now wore coifs and velvet bonnets. Among gentlemen, long hair remained fashionable, through Europe, till the Emperor Charles devoted his locks for his health; and Henry VIII., a tyrant even in matters of taste, gave efficacy to the fashion by a peremptory order for his attendants and courtiers to poll their heads.

11. The same spirit induced him to regulate the dress of his subjects. Cloth of gold or tissue was reserved for dukes and marquises, and that of a purple color for the royal family. Silks and velvets were restricted to persons of wealth and distinction, and embroidery was forbidden to all beneath the dignity of an earl. Cuffs for the sleeves, and ruffs for the neck, were also the invention of Henry's reign.

## CHAPTER CXXXVII.

*Dudley marries his Son to Lady Jane Grey, whom Edward appoints to be his Successor.—Death of Edward VI.—Lady Jane Grey proclaimed Queen by Dudley.—Her claims not acknowledged by the People, and she yields to Mary.—Character of Lady Jane.*

1. THE young king was now completely in the power of Dudley, who was created Duke of Northumberland, and endowed with the vast possessions which had belonged to the former earl, and which had been forfeited to the crown.

2. Having attained to this height of power and wealth, his ambi-

VIII.'s time? 8. What invention assisted the toilet of the ladies? 9. How were clothes fastened before this time? 10. What change in the head-dress? 11. What regulations for dress?

CXXXVII.—1. What of the ambition of Dudley? 2. To what did he try to persuade

tion soared still higher, and he formed the project of raising one of his sons to the throne. He began by persuading Edward that the declaration of his sister's incapacity to succeed him was irreversible, and that, consequently, as the Duchess of Suffolk had no sons, her eldest daughter, the Duchess of Dorset, was the undoubted heir to the crown.



LADY JANE GREY.

3. The duchess, who had no son, was willing to resign her claim to her daughter, Lady Jane Grey, and Northumberland married her to his son, Gilbert Dudley. Edward felt no scruple about depriving Mary of her birthright, fearing that her bigotry would be hurtful to the Protestant cause.

4. But he felt many regrets in regard to Elizabeth, whom he affectionately loved, and used to call "his dear sister Temperance." He, however, consented to settle the succession upon Lady Jane Grey. The instrument of settlement was to be signed by all the great officers of state; when some of them hesitated to do so, Northumberland violently declared that he would fight anybody in his shirt, in so just a cause as that of Lady Jane's succession.

5. Cranmer only yielded his consent to the pathetic entreaties of the king, and Sir James Hales, one of the judges, positively refused. From this time the king's health, which had before begun to decline, grew rapidly worse. Northumberland affected an anxious concern for him, waited on him with the most assiduous zeal, and dismissing his physicians, put him under the care of an ignorant old woman, who pretended to have a specific for his disease.

6. Edward was so far from receiving benefit from her treatment, that he soon after died, on the 6th of July, 1553, in the sixteenth

the king? 3. To whom did Dudley marry his son? What relation was Lady Jane Grey to Edward? 4. Did Edward yield to his persuasions? 5, 6. Relate the remaining par-

year of his age, and the seventh of his reign. His disease was probably consumption; but the suspicions of the people attributed his death to slow poison, given to him by the Dudleys; for it was remarked that his health had been declining from the time that Lord Robert Dudley was placed in close attendance upon his person. Robert was the son of the Duke of Northumberland, of whom we shall hear more under the title of Earl of Leicester.

7. Northumberland did not at once proclaim the king's death, for he had not yet secured the persons of the two princesses. But they, having received intimation of their danger, put themselves in places of safety. The reason for secrecy being thus removed, Northumberland proceeded in state to the residence of Lady Jane Grey, and saluted her as queen.

8. She had been kept in a great measure ignorant of the duke's transactions, and now received intelligence of them with grief and surprise. She entreated that the dignity might not be forced upon her, and pleaded the superior claims of the two princesses.

9. But the duke had gone too far to be stopped in his career by the scruples of a girl of sixteen; and Lady Jane, who was of a timid and gentle disposition, was soon overborne by the entreaties of her father and father-in-law, and suffered herself to be proclaimed; and, in compliance with custom, removed to the Tower to pass the first days of her reign.

10. She had not long to endure the cares of royalty, for Northumberland found few supporters in his scheme, and, after a joyless reign of ten days, Lady Jane returned to the privacy of her own house, and the Princess Mary took possession of the royal apartments in the Tower, amidst the loudest acclamations of the people, who dreaded the unprincipled character of the duke more than the stern bigotry of the Princess Mary.

11. Lady Jane Grey was a singularly excellent woman. Being of the same age with the late king, she had received all her education with him, and seemed to possess even greater facility in acquiring knowledge. She had attained a familiar acquaintance with the Greek and Latin languages, beside modern tongues.

12. Roger Ascham, tutor to the Princess Elizabeth, having one day paid her a visit, found her employed in reading Plato, while the rest of the family were engaged in a party of hunting in the park; and on his admiring the singularity of her choice, she told him that "she received more pleasure from that author than the others could reap from all their sports and gayety."

13. In one version of the story it is added that she told Ascham that she applied to study as a refuge from the severity of her parents, who used to "so sharply taunt her, and give her *pinches, nips, and bobs*," if she displeased them in the slightest degree, that she was in constant misery in their presence.

---

ticulars of Edward's life. When did he die? In what year of his age? of his reign? What of Robert Dudley? 7. Why did Dudley seek to conceal the king's death? Whom did he proclaim sovereign? 8. What were Lady Jane Grey's feelings? 10. Did she retain the sovereignty? 11. What was her character?

## CHAPTER CXXXVIII.

*The Manners of Queen Mary's Time.—The Houses of the Nobles.—Some Particulars of the Mode of Housekeeping.*



DRESS OF QUEEN MARY'S TIME.

1. FROM the observation at the close of the preceding chapter, we may conjecture that the treatment of children by their parents was quite different from that adopted at the present day. The harshness of the English towards their offspring excited formerly the surprise and condemnation of foreigners.

2. Erasmus says that the English were like schoolmasters to their children; and that the schoolmasters were like overseers of houses of correction. Children trembled at the sight of their parents, and the sons, even when they were forty years old, stood bareheaded before their fathers, and did not dare to speak without permission.

3. The grown-up daughters never sat down in their mother's presence, but stood in respectful silence at the farther end of the room, and when weary of standing, were perhaps allowed to kneel on a cushion. It was a privilege to be admitted to their presence at all, and it was only granted during short and stated periods of the day.

4. The ladies in Queen Mary's reign carried fans with handles a yard long. The use of these handles one would hardly guess; for

they were to beat their daughters with. After this account of the severity of parents, it need not surprise us to learn that the nobility were often employed as jailers.

5. When any person of rank was to be put under confinement, it was no uncommon thing to commit him to the custody of some nobleman, whose house was thus converted into a prison. Indeed, the dwellings of the nobility were so surrounded by walls that they seemed as if they had been built for prisons originally.

6. Let us imagine that we enter one of these old houses, and look at things as they were two or three hundred years ago. We will begin our survey at the kitchen, where we should probably see, if it was before eleven o'clock in the day, a huge fire, with a monstrous piece of meat roasting before it, turned by a poor miserable boy, whose business it was to act as turnspit, before smoke-jacks and roasters were invented.

7. Let us next proceed to the great hall, where the lord of the mansion passed the day, and which in the night we should find spread with beds for the men-servants to sleep on. This hall we should observe to be covered with rushes, under which was the accumulated dirt of twenty years, for so filthy were the English habits at this period, that Erasmus attributes to this circumstance the great prevalence of contagious disorders in England.

8. An Earl of Northumberland, who lived in the reign of Henry VII., wrote a book of directions for the management of his household. This is still preserved, and is called the Northumberland Household Book. In it the earl enters into the most minute particulars.

9. He even directs the number of fagots to be allowed to each fire, and gives the items of what the men-servants were to have for their breakfast, and the number of bones of mutton that were to be provided for his own. The family consisted of 166 persons, and the allowance of meat and drink was quite sufficient, but the stock of house-linen was surprisingly small.

10. There were only eight table-cloths "for my lord's table," and one for the upper servants, which was washed once a month. The earl divided the year between three different houses, but he had furniture only for one; so that, when he removed from one to another, all his household goods were removed also, even to the saucepans for the kitchen.

11. Everything was packed upon seventeen carts and one wagon; and this might well be sufficient, since one large table and three long benches constituted the whole of the furniture of the state apartment.

12. A removal at the present day is apt to make sad work with the china and glass; but there was no such danger in those days. Drinking-glasses were not made in England till the time of Queen Mary, and were at first considered more precious than silver. As for looking-glasses, there were very few in use, and these were prob-

ably very small, and commonly carried by the ladies in their pockets, or hung to their girdles.

## CHAPTER CXXXIX.

*More about the Manners of the English in the Sixteenth Century. — About Commerce.—Disastrous Voyage of Sir Hugh Willoughby.*



SHIPS OF THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

1. THE following amusing account of the manners of the English is written by a French priest, who visited England in the reign of Edward VI. We will give his own words: "The people of this country have a mortal aversion to the French, and in common call us France knave, or France dog.

2. "The people of this land make good cheer, and dearly love junketing. The men are large, handsome, and ruddy, with flaxen hair. Their women are the greatest beauties in the world, and as fair as alabaster. The English in general are cheerful, and love music; they are likewise great drunkards.

3. "In this land they commonly make use of silver vessels when they drink wine. The servants wait on their masters bareheaded, and leave their caps on the buffet, (side-board.) It is noted that in

this excellent kingdom there is no kind of good order; the people are reprobates, and thorough enemies of good manners.

4. "In the windows of the houses are plenty of flowers, and at their taverns a plenty of rushes on their wooden floors, and many cushions of tapestry, on which travellers seat themselves. The English consume great quantities of beer; the poor people drink out of wooden cups. They eat much whiter bread than is commonly made in France.

5. "With their beer they have a custom of eating very soft saffron cakes, in which are likewise raisins. It is likewise to be noted that the servants carry pointed bucklers, even those of bishops. And the husbandmen, when they till the ground, commonly have their bucklers, swords, and sometimes their bows, in one corner of the field."

6. To this account we may add, that the cookery was distinguished for a profusion of hot spices; and that, at entertainments, the rank of the guests was discriminated by their position above or below the salt-cellars, which was placed invariably in the middle of the table. The chief servants always attended above the salt-cellars, below which the table was crowded with poor dependants, whom the guests despised, and the servants neglected.

7. Before the Reformation, churchmen affected a greater state than the nobility. The Abbot of St. Albans dined alone at the middle of a table elevated fifteen steps above the floor of the hall, and the monks who served his dinner, at every fifth step performed a hymn.

8. Commerce had heretofore been chiefly carried on by foreign merchants, who, from the place where they had been accustomed to transact their business, were called Merchants of the Steel Yard. But in the reign of Edward VI., many of the privileges of these merchants were taken from them, and the native English were encouraged to enter into trade.

9. The discovery of America occasioned a greater demand for ships, and an increase of commerce, which had never at any former period flourished so much. There arose also an unusual demand for woollen cloth, which gave great encouragement to the English manufacturers, and first brought Wakefield and Leeds into notice as manufacturing towns.

10. The spirit of enterprise which had distinguished the youth of Sebastian Cabot, was not wanting in his old age. In 1553, being the governor of the company of Merchant Adventurers, he fitted out an expedition, consisting of three vessels, under the command of Sir Hugh Willoughby, to attempt the discovery of a northeast passage to India.

11. The fate of Sir Hugh, and the companies of two of the vessels, was most disastrous. Having put into a port of Lapland to winter, they were found there the next spring frozen to death. The third vessel, commanded by Richard Chancellor, was more fortunate, who, having wintered at Archangel, and opened an intercourse with Russia,

reached home in safety. A company was formed to trade with Russia, of which Cabot was appointed governor for life.

## CHAPTER CXL.

*Queen Mary.—She restores the Popish Religion.—Persecution of Cranmer.—Marriage of the Queen.—Rebellion in consequence of it.—Execution of Lady Jane Grey.*



DEATH OF LADY JANE GREY.

1. MARY was in her thirty-seventh year at the time of her brother's death. She possessed few qualities either estimable or amiable; and her person was as little engaging as her behavior and address. She inherited her mother's gravity with her father's violence and obstinate temper; the natural sourness of which had been increased by the early mortifications to which she had been subjected.

2. Her education had been almost entirely neglected. During her father's life she had lived for the most part in a species of confinement; and though more at liberty during the reign of her brother, still she

led a dull and secluded life; and the great affection and constant intercourse which subsisted between Edward and Elizabeth must have been a renewed source of unhappiness to her.

3. The first act of her reign led the people to hope that they had been deceived in her character. She restored to liberty the old Duke of Norfolk, who had languished in prison, with his unexecuted sentence hanging over his head, ever since the death of Henry VIII. She also exhibited moderation in the punishment of the supporters of Lady Jane Grey. Northumberland was the only man of rank who suffered death. Lady Jane and her husband were condemned to death, but on account of their youth and innocence they were not executed, but kept in prison.

4. The next act of the queen was to reinstate Gardiner, Bonner, and Tonstall in their several bishoprics, of which they had been deprived in the last reign. With their assistance she hastened to overturn the fabric of the Reformation, and to restore the old religion, and to replace everything on its old footing.

5. The pope made some difficulty about receiving within the pale of the church such a country of heretics as England; but this was at length overcome, and Cardinal de la Pole was appointed legate, or the pope's representative, in England. But though Mary could restore the rites and ceremonies of the Romish Church, she found it impossible to recover to their former uses the lands and buildings of the religious houses.

6. Seeing the storm that was approaching, the foreign Protestants hastily left England, and the country thus lost the services of some of the most skilful artisans and mechanics. Many English gentlemen also left the country. Cranmer was advised to fly; but he said he had been too much concerned in every measure of the Reformation to desert its cause.

7. The queen had early marked him for destruction. She was not of a temper to forget an injury, and hated him for the share he had had in her mother's divorce; which the many good offices he had done to herself could never atone for in her eyes. Many times, as she well knew, the good archbishop had stood between her and her father's wrath.

8. Upon one occasion Henry had determined on her death, and was only prevented by Cranmer's remonstrances from putting his purpose in execution, while the time-serving Gardiner stood by without uttering a word in her behalf. But all these things were forgotten, and Cranmer was imprisoned in the common jail at Oxford.

9. His life was spared for the present by the intervention of Gardiner, who knew that the queen intended, on Cranmer's death, to give the archbishopric to Cardinal de la Pole, a man whom he hated, because his mild and benignant disposition led him constantly to oppose his own violent and sanguinary counsels.

10. The queen now turned her thoughts upon marriage. The engaging person and address of the young Courtenay, Earl of Devon-

shire, a son of the Marquis of Exeter, had made an impression on her heart, of which he received many intimations. But the nobleman neglected these overtures, and seemed rather to attach himself to the Princess Elizabeth, whose youth and agreeable conversation he preferred to all the power and grandeur of her sister.

11. The ancient quarrel between their mothers had sunk deep into the indignant heart of Mary; the attachment of Elizabeth to the reformed religion offended her bigotry; but when she found that her sister had obstructed her views in a point which, perhaps, touched her still more nearly, her resentment knew no bounds; and the princess was visibly exposed to the greatest danger.

12. Courtenay's place in the queen's affection was soon supplied; for, in 1554, she accepted proposals made to her by the Emperor Charles V. for a marriage with his only son, Philip. The match was exceedingly disliked by the English, who were well aware of Philip's cruelty and sullenness of temper.

13. Although it was agreed that neither Philip nor any foreigner should have any share in the government, still so great an alarm was excited that a formidable insurrection broke out in Kent, which was headed by Sir Thomas Wyatt, who, having travelled in Spain, brought home such an account of Philip, as added to the previous horror entertained of him.

14. The avowed object of the rebels was to dethrone Mary, and place Lady Jane Grey on the throne; but the want of an efficient leader rendered the project abortive. The rebels dispersed of their own accord, and Wyatt and 400 more were taken and executed. Soon afterwards Lady Jane Grey, whose fate it was always to suffer for the faults of others, was warned to prepare for death.

15. Her constancy to the reformed religion could not be shaken, and she employed a portion of the little time left her in writing in Greek a farewell letter to her sister, exhorting her to be firm in her faith. Lord Guilford Dudley was also condemned to die, and entreated to have a parting interview; but Jane refused, lest the affliction of such a meeting should overcome their fortitude. "Their separation," she said, "would be only for a moment; and they would soon rejoin each other in a scene where their affections would be forever united, and where nothing could have access to disturb their eternal happiness."

16. She appeared on the scaffold with a serene countenance, and declared that she had greatly erred in not having more firmly refused the crown; but that filial reverence, and not her own ambition, had been the cause of her fault. Her father was beheaded soon after, and the queen became so suspicious that the prisons were filled with nobles and gentlemen.

17. Mary now sent a fleet to escort Philip to England; but the admiral informed her that he dared not receive him on board, lest the soldiers should commit some violence against him. Such was the detestation in which he was held. At last he arrived in a

---

12. Whom did the queen marry? How did the English like the match? 13. What was the consequence? 14, 15. Relate the remaining particulars of Lady Jane Grey's life.

vessel of his own, and the marriage was celebrated at Westminster in July, 1554.

## CHAPTER CXLI.

*Persecution of the Protestants.—Martyrdom of Latimer, Ridley, and Hooper.—Death of Gardiner.—Martyrdom of Cranmer.*



BURNING OF RIDLEY AND LATIMER.

1. FROM this time the chief business of parliament was to guard against the encroachments of Philip; while Mary's only anxiety was to increase the power and influence of a husband on whom she doted with a troublesome fondness, though he, on his part, could with difficulty conceal his own dislike to his unengaging partner.

2. On one subject, however, they were perfectly agreed, and that was the desire to extirpate heresy, even by the most violent and sanguinary measures. Gardiner entered fully into their views, but finding this work of cruelty more arduous than he had expected, he turned it over to Bonner, a man of such inhumanity of nature, that he even delighted to see the dying agonies of the sufferers, and would often take upon himself the office of executioner.

3. In the course of the next three years, nearly 300 persons were burned alive, martyrs to their religion. Latimer and Ridley were among the first who suffered. Such was the inveteracy of Gardiner against these two venerable and pious men, that, on the day of their death, he made a vow that he would not dine until he received information that fire was set to the fagots with which they were to be burned.

4. Though the messenger did not arrive so soon as he expected, Gardiner would not break his vow, but kept the old Duke of Norfolk, who was that day his guest, waiting from eleven (the then usual dinner-hour) till three o'clock. But when the desired intelligence arrived, and dinner was served up, Gardiner did not partake of it; for he was taken suddenly ill, and carried to his bed, from which he never rose.

5. Hooper, Bishop of Gloucester, was another of the martyrs. When he was tied to the stake, the queen's pardon was placed on a stool before him; and if he would have recanted, he had but to stretch forth his hand to save his life; but he would not purchase it at such a price.

6. Gardiner's death hastened that of Cranmer. No opposition was now made to the queen's wish that he should be put to death, and he was condemned to be burned at Oxford. But the queen's resentment went further; she wished to degrade him in the eyes of the whole world, and employed people to persuade him that his life was so valuable to his country that he ought to save it by any means.

7. They were also authorized to promise him a pardon if he would recant—a promise, however, which Mary never meant to keep. In a moment of weakness Cranmer signed a paper, expressing his belief in the popish doctrines; but Mary sent him word that this was not sufficient, and that he must acknowledge his errors in the church, before the people.

8. The strength of Cranmer's mind now returned; and when he was brought forth to make his public recantation, instead of doing so he bitterly bewailed his weakness, and asserted his firm belief in the Protestant faith. He was, therefore, immediately led forth to execution.

9. When the fagots were on fire, he stretched out his right hand, with which he had signed the paper, and held it in the flames till it was consumed, saying frequently, "This hand has offended;" then, as if his mind was more at ease for having made this atonement, his countenance became full of peaceful serenity, and he appeared insensible to all worldly suffering. The next day Cardinal de la Pole was made Archbishop of Canterbury, and he showed so much lenity towards the Protestants as to excite the displeasure of the pope.

---

2. In what did they agree? By whom seconded? 3. Who were among the first martyrs? Relate the particulars of Gardiner's death. 5. What of Hooper's death? 7. What instance of Cranmer's weakness? 8, 9. How did he atone for it?

## CHAPTER CXLI.

*Philip leaves England.—War with France.—Arbitrary mode of raising Money.—Battle of St. Quentin.—The English lose Calais.—Death of Mary.*

1. PHILIP soon became weary of England, and went to Flanders; and the queen, seeing herself treated with indifference and neglect, spent her time in lamentations, and in writing long letters to him, which he never condescended to answer, perhaps never to read. The more he slighted her, the more she doted on him; and to procure money, in the hope of winning him back, she loaded the people with taxes.

2. In 1556, the Emperor Charles V., wearied with the cares of royalty, took the extraordinary resolution of resigning all his dominions to his son Philip, and of passing the remainder of his days in a monastery. Philip, who had the ambition but not the talents of his father, immediately declared war against France.

3. The queen could not prevail upon her council to give their consent to join it. When Philip, however, came to London, and protested that he would never set foot again in England, unless war was declared against France, the queen, almost frantic, pressed the matter so urgently as to overcome the reluctance of the council.

4. War was declared; but Mary's resources were already exhausted in furnishing Philip with money; and she was obliged to resort to the most unjust measures to extort the means of fitting out a fleet and raising an army. To deter the people from rising in rebellion, she caused many of the most considerable gentry to be imprisoned, and adopted the Spanish custom of having them seized in the night, and carried off hoodwinked, that they might not be known, nor see to what place they were conducted.

5. The army took part in the battle of St. Quentin, in which Philip gained a complete victory over the French. But Mary's triumph at this success was of but short duration. Though everything else in France had been lost to the English, they had still preserved Calais, which had been guarded as the chief jewel of the crown by every sovereign, since Edward II., who obtained it.

6. It had been strongly fortified, and so well garrisoned, that the French had never attempted to recover it. But in Mary's feeble reign the monks and bigots who composed her ministry thought more of burning heretics than of any other concern of state. They had neglected to keep the fortifications in repair, and to save the charge of what they supposed an unnecessary garrison, withdrew the greater part of it during the winter months.

7. The Duke of Guise being well informed of all this, determined to attempt the recovery of the town. He accordingly appeared un-

---

CXLII.—1. How did Philip treat Mary? 2. When did Philip become King of Spain? What measure did he adopt? 3. What did Mary do in consequence? How did she raise money? 5. What victory was gained? What loss did the country sustain?

expectedly before it, and, after a siege of eight days, made himself master of a fortress which had been deemed impregnable, and had been for two hundred years a thorn in the side of France.

8. The news of this event struck a universal dismay throughout England, and the queen declared that, when she died, the word *Calais* would be found engraved upon her heart. In fact, her health declined visibly from this time. She suffered a few miserable months, and died November 17, 1558, in the forty-third year of her age, and the sixth of her reign.

9. Thus ended the life of this unhappy woman, who, by the baseness of her temper, made herself, and everybody about her, miserable. The Cardinal de la Pole died on the same day with the queen, and left an unsullied name behind him.

#### FAMILY OF MARY.

##### HUSBAND.

Philip, King of Spain, son of Charles V.  
She had no children.

### CHAPTER CXLIII.

*Elizabeth proclaimed Queen.—Her Character.—The Reformed Faith restored.—Reforms in Public Affairs.—Prosperous State of the Kingdom.*

1. WHEN Mary's death was announced to the parliament, which happened to be in session, the members all sprang from their seats; and shouts of joy, and the words "God save Queen Elizabeth!" were heard to resound on every side. When the news spread abroad, the transport of the people was so great that they hurried in crowds to Hatfield, where Elizabeth was then residing, and escorted her in triumph to London.

2. Elizabeth was now twenty-five years old. Her temper was very impetuous; but there was a spirit and animation about her, with a cheerfulness and gayety of heart which made her occasional bursts of passion to be overlooked and forgiven. There had been no opportunity for displaying that vanity and caprice, which, in her later years, made her both vexatious and ridiculous.

3. She had a tall, commanding person; her forehead was high and open, her nose aquiline, her complexion pale, and her hair inclining to yellow. Her features were good, but the length and narrowness of her face prevented her from having any just pretensions to beauty.

4. The new queen seemed anxious to forget her former sufferings, and never showed any resentment towards those who had been in-

Relate the particulars. 8. When did the queen die? In what year of her age? Of her reign? 9. Who died on the same day?

CXLIII.—1. With what feelings was the news of Mary's death received? 2. What

strumental in inflicting them. Even Sir Richard Banfield, in whose custody she had been for a time, and whom she had found a most severe and churlish jailer, experienced no other punishment or rebuke than that of her telling him that he should have the custody of any state prisoner whom she wished to have treated with peculiar severity.

5. The cruel Bonner was the only one of her sister's ministers to whom she showed any marked dislike. When he came to make his obeisance to her, she turned from him with horror, and would neither speak to him nor look at him. The first great anxiety of the Protestants was to have a settlement of the affairs of the Church. Elizabeth proceeded with great prudence and caution, and soon restored the state of things which had existed at her brother's death, and all without one drop of blood being spilled, or a single estate confiscated.

6. At the same time the queen was busily employed in arranging the other affairs of her kingdom. The coins, though nominally of the same value as heretofore, had been debased during the three last reigns, by an undue mixture of inferior metals. Elizabeth called in this base money, and issued coin of the standard value. She filled her arsenals with arms, and introduced the manufacture of gunpowder into England; the militia were well disciplined; and, in short, the country was put in a complete state of defence.

7. She encouraged agriculture, trade, and navigation, and increased her navy so much that she has been called "the queen of the northern seas." Her wise government was respected abroad and prosperous at home. She was extremely sagacious in the choice of ministers; Lord Burleigh, her treasurer, and Walsingham, her secretary, were men of extraordinary abilities and integrity.

8. While affairs were managed with so much vigor and success, the people were scarcely aware in how great a degree their sharp-witted queen kept enlarging her prerogatives, nor how much their liberties were infringed. In all cases in which her own authority was concerned, she was decided and peremptory; and she had generally such good reasons to give for all she did, and was so frugal of expense, that the mass of the people, though kept in great subjection, were enthusiastically fond of her.

---

of the character of Elizabeth? 4. What of her person? 5. How did she treat her enemies? 6. What of the Church? 6. What measure did she adopt in state affairs? 7. What of her conduct in general? Who were her chief ministers? 8. What of the people?

## CHAPTER CXLIV.

*A Glimpse at the Interior of Elizabeth's Court.—Robert Dudley.—Many Suitors for the Queen's hand.—She declares that she will never marry.*

1. THE interior of the court of Elizabeth presented a most extraordinary scene. The rivalries and jealousies of the courtiers were a continual source of discord. The queen herself encouraged their rivalries in order to retain them in more subservience to herself; and certainly the awe of her, which they seem to have felt, and the flattery they offered up to her, appear to us quite unaccountable and ridiculous.

2. But though she liked and required adulation, she had too much sense to be wholly blinded by it. She saw the follies of those about her, and turned them to her own purpose, and seemed to manage her courtiers much like puppets, by wires that were out of sight. She intrusted all affairs of state to men of sense, but she filled her court with frivolous characters, with whom she could unbend from the cares of royalty.

3. Having a gay and lively disposition, she sometimes treated them with an extraordinary degree of familiarity, or, as it would appear to us, strange rudeness, such as slapping them on their back, and patting their cheeks. But if any of them presumed upon this freedom, she could instantly resume her dignity, and by a severe look, or a cutting word, check all further frowardness.

4. She knew very well how to keep up her own dignity. One writer thus speaks of her: "She is the very image of majesty and magnificence." He goes on to say, "She is accustomed to march with leisure, and with a certain *granditie* rather than gravity, unless it be when she walketh apace for her pleasure, or to catch a heat in cold weather."

5. Her chief favorite was Robert Dudley, whom she created Earl of Leicester. His handsome person and pleasing address gained for him the queen's favor, and his assiduous attentions, which were pleasing to her vanity, retained it for him. He was guilty of many infamous crimes, but he had the art of deceiving the queen, both as to his merits and his abilities, and continued in favor till his death, in 1588.

6. As we may suppose, there were many suitors for the hand of Elizabeth. No sooner did Philip hear of Mary's death than he proposed himself in marriage to her successor. Elizabeth delayed giving an answer as long as she could, and when she sent her refusal, she took the opportunity of declaring to her parliament a determination to lead a single life.

7. Notwithstanding this declaration, she some time afterwards admitted the addresses of the Duke of Anjou, brother to the King

CXLIV.—1. What was the state of Elizabeth's court? 3. How did she treat her courtiers?

of France. After keeping him a long time in suspense, she at last broke off the match, probably through fear of lessening her own authority if she admitted another to share it.

8. In the year 1563, Elizabeth caught the small-pox, and for some days her life was considered to be in danger. Upon her recovery, the parliament besought her either to marry or to name her successor. Both these requests were very displeasing to Elizabeth. She gave them encouragement, however, that at some day or other she would marry.

9. Immediately on this declaration she was beset with princely suitors; but, either from coquetry or policy, she always avoided, as long as possible, the giving a decisive answer, and kept all persons, both friends and enemies, in entire suspense as to her real intentions.

---

## CHAPTER CXLV.

*Elizabeth's Costume.—The Queen of Scots.*



PORTRAIT OF MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS.

1. THE courtiers of Elizabeth would fain have persuaded her that she was free from all the bad qualities and above all the weaknesses incident to human nature; but we, who are safe from her capricious

---

5. Who was her chief favorite? What of Robert Dudley? 6, 7. What suitors had she? What declaration did she make? 8, 9. Did she modify this at all?

and vindictive temper, may venture to declare that she possessed some of them in no ordinary degree.

2. Her excessive personal vanity led her to encourage painting, because she was never tired of seeing portraits of herself. A pale Roman nose, a head of hair loaded with pearls, and powdered with diamonds, a large ruff, and a still larger fardingale, are the features by which we may recognize Elizabeth.

3. This was, perhaps, a harmless exhibition of vanity, but the weakness, with the consequent jealousy, led her to the commission of a crime which has left an indelible stain on her character. This was her savage treatment, and murder, under the forms of law, of the beautiful and unfortunate Mary, Queen of Scots.

4. This princess, at the age of sixteen, was married to the dauphin, afterwards King of France, by the title of Francis II. The exquisite beauty and graceful manners of Mary, gained for her unbounded influence over her husband, to the great disappointment of her ambitious and wicked mother-in-law, Catharine de Medicis, who aspired to rule.

5. For seventeen months Mary presided over the most brilliant and polished court in Europe, and entered eagerly into all its amusements. At the end of that period the death of her husband put an end to her happiness. Although she was now subjected to all the mortifications that the malice of Catharine could invent, she yet lingered in France; her attachment to that country and her early associations making her reluctant to return to her native country.

6. At length the impatience and clamors of her subjects compelled her to return. When she was in the ship that was to carry her over, she fixed her eyes on the coast of her beloved France till the darkness of evening would not allow her to see it any longer. She then had a couch brought on deck, on which she lay down to sleep, giving orders that if, on the return of daylight, the French coast should be still in sight, she should be awakened.

7. During the night the vessel made little progress, so that in the morning she had another parting view of the country which she loved so well. Her regret at leaving it she expressed in some pathetic French verses, very expressive of her feelings at the time. The contrast between the country she left, and that which she now came to inherit, increased her melancholy, and the rude and savage manners of the Scots filled her with disgust.

8. This disgust was increased by difference of religion. Mary had been brought up a strict Catholic; and the Reformation, which had now made great progress in Scotland, was not marked there with the same mild spirit which had distinguished it in England. The Scotch reformers were men of rigid zeal, and were shocked at the gayety and amusement so becoming and natural in a girl of nineteen.

9. Though Elizabeth was as much superior to Mary in political abil-

---

CXLV.—1, 2. What evidence of weakness in Elizabeth? 3. What crime did her vanity lead her to commit? 4, 5. What of Mary Queen of Scots' life in France? 6. Why did she return to Scotland? What were her feelings at leaving France? 7. How did she express them? How did she feel after her arrival in Scotland? 8. What increased her disgust? What of the Reformation in Scotland? 9. What were Elizabeth's feel-

ties as she was inferior to her in beauty and gracefulness of person, she was weak enough to envy and hate her as a rival by whom she was eclipsed. This hatred was increased by the fear of Mary's pretensions to the crown of England, which were founded upon Henry VIII.'s declaration of her own incapacity to inherit it.

10. Mary had never attempted to enforce these pretensions; on the contrary, contenting herself with her undoubted right to succeed upon the death of Elizabeth, she affected to treat that princess with the greatest respect. Both queens, indeed, pretended extraordinary regard for one another, and styled themselves, in their letters, "loving sister." But Elizabeth was all the while secretly exciting the Scots to rebellion.

---

## CHAPTER CXLVI.

### *Continuation of the Story of Mary.*

1. MARY, having been urged by her council to a second marriage, paid Elizabeth the compliment to apply to her to choose a suitable match for her. Elizabeth's wish was that her "loving sister" should remain a widow. Indeed, it was one of the weaknesses of this great queen to have the utmost dislike of any person's marrying; and she plagued and persecuted many of her own subjects, for no other reason than because they did not choose to live single like herself.

2. Having proposed two or three matches for Mary, which she knew she would not accept, she pretended to be exceedingly displeased with her when she at last chose for herself, and married her cousin, Henry Stuart, Lord Darnley. He was the grandson of Margaret, sister to Henry VIII., and her second husband, Lord Angus.

3. Darnley was a papist, and on that account the marriage was opposed by the reformers, at the head of whom was John Knox, who gave just cause of offence to the queen, by the violence with which he inveighed against it at a personal interview. It would have been fortunate for Mary, had she listened to the remonstrants. She had been captivated by the beauty and exterior accomplishments of Darnley, and quite overlooked the qualities of his mind.

4. These by no means corresponded with the excellence of his outside figure. He was violent, fickle, insolent, and ungrateful, and soon came to treat his wife with great indifference and neglect. This conduct deprived him of that influence over her, which, in the early period of their marriage, had made him the source from whence flowed all honors and preferments, and which had gained for himself the title of king.

---

ings towards Mary? What increased Elizabeth's hatred? 10. How did they publicly treat each other?

CXLVI.—1. What compliment did Mary pay to Elizabeth? What were Elizabeth's wishes about Mary's marrying? What her feelings about marriage in general? 2. Whom did Mary marry? 3. Why was the marriage opposed? 4. What of Darnley?

5. This change in the queen he imputed to the influence of some of those about her, and sought for an object on whom to wreak his vengeance. There was in the court an Italian musician, named David Rizzio, who had lately acquired a great degree of confidence and favor with the queen, and had been made her secretary. Those who were themselves envious of Rizzio's fortune, found no difficulty in exciting the jealousy of Darnley.

6. One evening, when the queen was at supper with the secretary and some of the ladies of her court, Darnley, with a company of armed nobles, rushed into the room, and one of them, reaching over the queen's shoulder, stabbed Rizzio, as he clung to her garments for protection.

7. Some time afterwards the king was taken sick, when, to the surprise of every one, the queen paid him a visit, and took him with her to her palace of Holyrood House, and was to all appearance reconciled to him. The position of this palace in the city of Edinburgh, and upon low ground, and the noise of the court, furnished reasons for removing the king to a house in a more airy and retired situation. The queen accompanied him, and for several days attended upon him with every appearance of regard.

8. The marriage of one of her women, which was to be celebrated in her presence, obliged the queen to pass the night of the 9th of February, 1567, at her palace. About two o'clock on the morning of the 10th, the whole town was aroused by a great noise at the king's house, which was blown up by gunpowder. The king's lifeless body was found at some distance.

---

## CHAPTER CXLVII.

*Continuation of the Story of Mary.—She seeks a Refuge in England from her rebellious Subjects.*

1. THERE could be no doubt that the king's death was produced by design; and public opinion at once fixed on the Earl of Bothwell as his murderer. The earl was a man of considerable abilities and of boundless ambition, which, unrestrained by any religious or moral principles, would not scruple at the commission of any crime for its gratification.

2. He was one of the handsomest men of the age, and the courtesy of his manners contrasted favorably with the rude and savage demeanor of the majority of the Scotch nobles. Being in the palace at the time of Rizzio's murder, he had hastened to the assistance of the queen, and this service, with his constant deference and assiduity, gained for him her favor.

---

6. Upon whom did Darnley take vengeance? 7. What was Mary's subsequent treatment of Darnley? 8. Relate the particulars of his death.

CXLVII.—1. Upon whom did the public charge the murder of Darnley? 2. What of

3. The influence which he soon acquired over her, led him to believe that the king was the only impediment to his arriving at the highest office. We have just stated the mode in which this impediment was removed. Bothwell was tried for the murder of the king and acquitted; for no one dared to appear as witness against a man of his influence, and who came to the place of trial attended, not only by his own retainers and vassals, but by a body of hired soldiers.

4. Bothwell's next step was even more bold; accompanied by a thousand armed men, he attacked the queen as she journeyed upon the road, and, dispersing her escort, carried her a prisoner to Dunbar. Although this was done apparently by violence, there were many who believed that the queen was a willing prisoner; for, so far from resenting the outrage, she not long after gave her hand in marriage to the offender. The reformers had uniformly maintained that the murder of Darnley had been committed with the previous knowledge and consent of the queen; her marriage with his murderer seemed to justify and confirm this opinion.

5. The question of her guilt or innocence has been sharply contested from that day to this. We have not space to detail the arguments on both sides. The facts adduced against her may, perhaps, be reconciled with her innocence. She was thoughtless and imprudent, and her education at the court of France was not favorable to the growth of religious principles; but there was nothing in her disposition which can make us suppose her capable of so monstrous a crime.

6. Although a large portion of the nobles of all parties, and of both religions, had in writing requested the queen to marry Bothwell, yet nearly the whole country now rose in arms against her. She was taken by her enemies and imprisoned at Lochleven Castle, where she was compelled to sign a resignation of her kingdom to her infant son, who was accordingly crowned by the title of James VI. The Earl of Murray, a half-brother of Mary, was made regent of the kingdom.

7. Bothwell meantime had fled from the country; and after leading a wandering and wretched life, supporting himself by piracy, he was at last thrown into prison in Denmark. He fell into a state of insanity, and lingered ten miserable years in that condition.

8. Through the romantic attachment of George Douglas, brother to the Lord of Lochleven, Mary made her escape, and, raising an army, encountered Murray at Langside; but her troops were completely defeated; and she, having watched the battle from a neighboring eminence, fled from the field, and never paused till she gained the banks of a little river, which divides England from Scotland.

9. Here the Bishop of St. Andrews, who had accompanied her flight, caught hold of the bridle of her horse, and on his knees besought her to turn back; but she, preferring to trust to Elizabeth's generosity, rather than again encounter the insults of her own subjects, rushed through the stream to the other side. She sent forward

Bothwell? 3. To what did Bothwell aspire? 4. What step did he take to accomplish his object? 6. What was the consequence of the queen's marrying him? 7. What became of Bothwell? 8. What followed Mary's escape from imprisonment? 9. Relate what happened to her after the defeat of her troops.

a messenger with a letter informing Elizabeth of the step she had taken, and herself proceeded to Carlisle to await the answer.

10. A contemporary letter-writer tells us, "There are six waiting-gentlewomen with her, although none of account except Mrs. Mary Seaton, who is praised as being the best busker (dresser) of a woman's head, that is to be seen in any country. Whereof we have seen divers experiences since her coming hither; and, amongst other pretty devices, yesterday she did set such a curled hair upon the queen, that was said to be a periwig, and that showed very delicately."

## CHAPTER CXLVIII.

*Elizabeth detains Mary as a Prisoner.—Plans for her Rescue.—The Duke of Norfolk is detected in such a Project, and executed.*

1. WHATEVER Elizabeth's thoughts were on receiving Mary's letter, she concealed them with great dissimulation, and, pretending the utmost friendship for that unhappy queen, declared that before she could be received at the English court, it was necessary for Mary's honor, and her own satisfaction, that she should be cleared of the heavy charges made against her. Lady Scrope was sent under pretence of attending on her, but in reality to detain her in a sort of imprisonment.

2. Mary agreed to submit the matters in dispute between herself and her subjects to Elizabeth, who appointed commissioners to hear the parties. Mary appeared by representatives, and Murray attended in person. After a tedious succession of protestations and letters, in which both parties acted with great duplicity, and seemed equally afraid of arriving at the truth, the conferences ended without any definite result.

3. Elizabeth now declared that as Mary was by no means cleared by the investigation, she was herself justified not only in refusing to see her, but even in detaining her a prisoner; and she now placed her in the custody of the Earl of Shrewsbury. At first Mary was allowed to receive visitors, and her eloquence convinced every one who conversed with her of her innocence, however they might have been prepossessed with an opinion of her guilt.

4. The papists, too, all took her part, believing that Elizabeth's jealousy towards her was partly on account of her religion. Elizabeth soon had reason to repent of her crooked policy in detaining Mary, for she was subjected to a succession of alarms of insurrection and assassination. She took advantage of one of the earliest attempts at rebellion to subject Mary to more rigid confinement

CXLVIII.—1. What reply did Elizabeth make to Mary's letter? 2. What did Mary agree to? What was the result? 3. What treatment did she afterwards receive? 4

and to forbid her having any intercourse with persons not of Lord Shrewsbury's family.

5. It was very easy to forbid, but more difficult to prevent, for Mary and her friends were ever on the alert. But Elizabeth's ministers were likewise vigilant; for Lord Burleigh, in one of his letters, desires Lord Shrewsbury "to be on the watch for a boy who was bringing letters from Scotland for Mary," adding, that "he might be known by a cut on his left cheek, and that the letters were sewed up in the seams and buttons of his coat."

6. Indeed, Shrewsbury was hardly less a prisoner than the queen, being never permitted to leave his own house, nor to invite any of his friends to come to see him. He was even severely reprimanded as having neglected his charge by taking a little ride one day for exercise; and Elizabeth was constantly tormenting him by her suspicions of his being too indulgent.

7. The immense wealth and the splendor of the family of the Duke of Norfolk rendered him, beyond all question, the second person in the kingdom, and the qualities of his mind well corresponded with his high station. He enjoyed the good opinion of both the religious parties, and was equally in favor with the queen and the people.

8. He entered heartily into the cause of the Queen of Scots, and carried on a correspondence with her, though so secretly that even the vigilant Burleigh did not for some time discover it. At last, in 1571, Mary wishing to send some money to her friends in Scotland, Barrister, a confidential servant of the duke, was the person fixed on to take it.

9. The money, and a letter which was to accompany it, were sent to Barrister by a person not in the secret; and he, perceiving that there was some mystery, took the letter to Lord Burleigh, who thus discovered that the duke was conspiring with Mary to dethrone Elizabeth. Norfolk was brought to trial, and, believing that some papers had been destroyed which he ordered his secretary to burn, denied being concerned in the plot.

10. But these papers, instead of being destroyed, had been hidden by the secretary beneath the mats in the duke's chamber, and under the tiles of the house, and were produced at his trial to prove his guilt. He was condemned to death, and the sentence was executed June 2d, 1572. Elizabeth declared, with what sincerity we cannot say, that she could have forgiven him, if, instead of denying his guilt, he had made a free confession.

---

What was a consequence of Elizabeth's crooked policy? 5. What severe measures did she adopt towards Mary? 7. What of the Duke of Norfolk? 8. Of his correspondence with Mary? How was it discovered by Burleigh? 10. What became of Norfolk?

## CHAPTER CXLIX.

*A new Plot in favor of Mary is detected, and the Conspirators punished.—Mary is put to Death by order of Elizabeth.*

1. MARY passed sixteen weary years in the custody of the Earl of Shrewsbury, at the end of which time Elizabeth, thinking him too indulgent, relieved him of his onerous charge. During this long period, Mary had never ceased plotting to recover her liberty.

2. The papists, who hoped through her means to re-establish their religion in England, formed, in 1586, a plot to assassinate Elizabeth, and to place Mary on the throne. The arrangements were made known to Mary by means of letters conveyed to her through a chink in the wall; and her answers, expressing her approbation, were returned in the same way.

3. But with all their secrecy the plotters could not escape the vigilance of the ministers. Indeed, the man who carried the letters was a spy of the government, and constantly brought them to Walsingham, one of Elizabeth's secretaries of state, to read. They were then re-sealed, and taken to the persons they were meant for, who did not discover the treachery of their messenger.

4. When Walsingham had obtained the information he wanted, he thought it time to secure the conspirators; fourteen of whom were condemned and executed, before Mary had any idea that the plot was discovered. One day, as she was taking the air on horseback, she was met by a messenger from Elizabeth, who informed her of the death of her friends, and that she must set off instantly, without returning to the house, or making any preparations, for Fotheringay Castle, in Northamptonshire.

5. Commissioners soon made their appearance to try her for the part she had taken in the late conspiracy. That she had assented to it, was clearly proven, and, on the 25th of October, 1586, sentence of death was pronounced upon her. The news of this procedure excited the utmost astonishment in other countries.

6. The young King of Scotland sent an urgent remonstrance to Elizabeth, on her unjustifiable conduct towards his mother. Whether he was sincere in this, has been doubted; he had been brought up by the Scottish reformers, and had been taught from his infancy to consider her a very wicked woman. It is certain that one of his ambassadors secretly advised Elizabeth not to spare Mary.

7. Elizabeth affected the utmost reluctance to execute the sentence, and some of her courtiers thought her sighs and tears were those of sincere regret. At length, after some months of duplicity and apparent indecision, she signed the death-warrant, or order for Mary's death. But when she found it had been despatched to

---

CXLIX.—1. How long did Mary remain in Shrewsbury's charge? 2. By whom was a new plot formed? 3. How detected? 4. What was the result? 5. What was the consequence to Mary? What effect did the news of her condemnation produce? 6. What did Mary's son do? 7. What appearance did Elizabeth assume? What artifice

Fotheringay, she expressed the most violent displeasure at the hasty officiousness of her servants, in hopes, by such an artifice, to transfer to them the blame of Mary's death.

8. On the 6th of February, 1587, the warrant was brought to Fotheringay by the Earls of Shrewsbury and Kent, who informed Mary that she must prepare for death the next morning. She received their message with composure, and employed herself during the rest of the day in writing letters, in dividing the few valuables she had among her attendants, and taking leave of them.

9. She retired to rest at her usual time, but arose after a few hours' sleep, and spent the rest of the night in prayer. The following Latin petition was composed by her at this time:

O Domine Deus, speravi in te!  
O care mi Jesu, nunc libera me!  
In dura catenâ, in misera poenâ desidero te!  
Languendo, gemendo, et genuflectendo,  
Adora, implora, ut liberes me!

10. Towards morning she attired herself in the only rich dress she had reserved—a black satin gown, trimmed with pearls and jet, over a crimson velvet petticoat. A white lawn veil was thrown over her head; and when she was summoned to the hall where she was to die, she took a crucifix and prayer-book in her hand, and walked with a serene and composed countenance. She was met on the way by her faithful servant, Andrew Melvil, who flung himself on his knees before her, and burst into an agony of grief.

11. Mary endeavored to console him with the utmost firmness; but, on charging him with her last message to her son, she melted into tears. She then entered the hall in which the scaffold had been raised, and saw, with an undismayed countenance, the two executioners standing there, and all the preparations for her death.

12. After some time spent in prayer, she began, with the aid of her women, to unrobe herself; and, seeing them ready to break forth into tears and lamentations, she made to them, by putting her finger to her lips, a sign to forbear. She then gave them her blessing; a handkerchief was bound round her eyes, and without any visible trepidation she laid her head upon the block, and with two strokes it was severed from her body.

13. There was at least one other servant who remained faithful to his mistress; this was her favorite little dog, which had concealed itself among the folds of her dress, and could with difficulty be removed from her body. Thus perished this unfortunate princess, in the forty-fifth year of her age. She had been a queen almost from the hour of her birth. From the age of six to that of nineteen she had been trained to levity and dissipation in the French court.

14. From her nineteenth to her twenty-seventh year she had lived in Scotland, in a succession of follies and sorrows, and in the midst of enemies. The remaining nineteen years of her life she had passed in

a miserable captivity. But time and affliction had neither subdued her spirit, nor wholly destroyed that extraordinary beauty which had first excited the hatred of her more cool and politic rival.

15. When the news of the execution was brought to Elizabeth, she thought it necessary to assume the appearance of excessive grief; she wore mourning, and for some days shut herself up with only her women. The King of Scotland expressed great resentment at the murder of his mother, and threatened Elizabeth with a war, but she found means to appease the indignation of a sovereign who was not of a very warlike disposition.

## CHAPTER CL.

*The Invincible Armada.—Elizabeth displays great Vigor, and her Subjects great Courage and Zeal.—The Spaniards entirely defeated.*



DEFEAT OF THE SPANISH ARMADA.

1. WE have spent so much time in detailing the painful, yet interesting, story of Queen Mary, that we must pass rapidly over the rest of Elizabeth's reign. The *Invincible Armada* makes a considerable figure in history. This was a great fleet and army fitted out by Philip II., of Spain, with which he hoped to overwhelm Great Britain.

2. Elizabeth could muster but a small naval force to withstand this imposing array; but she was undismayed; for she relied with confidence on the superior skill and bravery of her seamen and

periods of her life been spent? 15. How did Elizabeth behave after the death of Mary?

CL.—1. What was the Invincible Armada? 2. Who were the officers of the English

officers. Her fleet was commanded by Lord Howard, of Effingham. Under him served Drake, Hawkins, and Frobisher, all of whom were much distinguished as naval commanders.

3. The land forces, which were inferior in number and discipline to those of Philip, were posted wherever it was thought likely the Spaniards would land. The vigor and prudence exhibited by the queen inspired the people with courage. She appeared on horseback at the camp at Tilbury, where Leicester was in command, and riding through the ranks, roused, by an animated speech, the enthusiasm of the soldiers.

4. Amongst other things she said to them, "I know I have the body of a weak and feeble woman, but I have the heart of a king, and of a king of England too; and think proud scorn that Parma, or Spain, or any prince of Europe, should dare to invade the borders of my realms; to which, rather than any dishonor shall grow by me, I will myself take up arms."

5. The Armada, as it approached Lizard Point, was descried by a Scotch pirate, who was cruising in those seas, and he, hoisting every sail, hastened to give notice of the enemy's approach. The information was well timed, for Effingham had just time to get out of port; if he had been shut up there, his superior naval skill would have been useless, and his fleet would have been destroyed by the superior force of the enemy.

6. He was hardly out before he saw the Invincible Armada coming full sail towards him in the form of a crescent, and stretching over a distance of seven miles. He soon perceived that the Spanish ships were ill built and unmanageable, and his chief fear was, that these huge vessels might run upon, and, by their weight, sink his own.

7. But their great size proved of advantage to him, for whilst the Spanish shot all passed over the heads of his people, his own had a large mark. In the mean time vessels poured forth from every English port, and, joining Effingham, hovered upon the skirts of the enemy, cutting off such ships as were so unlucky as to be separated from the rest.

8. Vessels filled with combustibles were set fire to, and sent into the midst of the Spanish fleet, which dispersed in the utmost alarm. By this warfare the enemy was nearly disabled, while the English had lost only one small vessel; and the Spanish commander determined to return home.

9. The wind being contrary, he was obliged to sail to the north to make the circuit of Scotland; but the English still pursued, and had their ammunition held out, would probably have taken every vessel. As it was, very few escaped, for the tempests lent their aid in the work of destruction. Those Spaniards who lived to return home, gave such accounts of the bravery of the English, and the tremendous dangers of their coasts, as effectually repressed all inclination to attempt another invasion.

fleet? 3. What of the queen's conduct? 4. What did she say to the troops? 5. Who gave information of the Spaniards' approach? Why was this information well timed? 6. What was Effingham's fear? 7. Why was the size of the Spanish ships of advantage to the English? 8, 9. What became of the Spanish fleet?

## CHAPTER CLI.

*Sir Walter Raleigh.—Virginia settled.—About the Earl of Essex*



SIR WALTER RALEIGH EMBARKING FOR VIRGINIA.

1. AMONGST those who fitted out ships at their own cost to oppose the Armada, was Sir Walter Raleigh, who was born in 1552, and after passing through the University of Oxford with great reputation, volunteered as a soldier to assist the Protestants in France and the Netherlands.

2. Here he made good use of his time in acquiring valuable knowledge, so that upon his return home, in 1578, he was considered as being in all respects one of the most accomplished gentlemen in England. His active mind would not let him be idle, so he engaged heart and hand in an expedition which his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a distinguished commander, was fitting out to make discoveries in America.

3. The expedition was very unfortunate, but Raleigh gained a knowledge of seamanship which made him afterwards one of the most skilful naval commanders. A man of his great abilities could not fail to gain the favor of the queen, but he recommended himself particularly by a little act of gallantry.

4. As Elizabeth walked abroad one day, attended by some of the

CLI.—1. What of Sir Walter Raleigh? In what expedition did he engage with his half-brother? 2. With what result? By what act did he gain the notice of the queen?

courtiers, she chanced to arrive at a very muddy place, which she could not cross without wetting her feet. Raleigh, without hesitation, took from his shoulder a new and very rich cloak, and spread it on the ground ; treading gently upon this, the queen passed over clean and dry.

5. This attention fixed Raleigh in her good graces, and a wag remarked that the sacrifice of a *cloak* obtained for him many a *good suit*. The great favor which he enjoyed at court enabled him to procure an extensive grant of lands in America, and in 1584 he sent out an expedition to make a settlement there.

6. The first attempt was made on the coast of what is now called North Carolina, in commemoration of which event the capital of that State is now called Raleigh. The ships brought back no gold or silver, which was the chief object of the adventurers, but were so well freighted with other merchandise, as to induce Raleigh to send out a second expedition the next year. A tract of country rather more to the north was taken possession of, and named, in honor of the maiden queen, Virginia.

7. Leicester was alarmed at the progress which Raleigh made in the queen's favor, and brought forward, as a competitor, his own son-in-law, the Earl of Essex. This young nobleman possessed a noble and generous nature, and his lofty and impetuous spirit, which would not stoop to that mean subservience in which all others were held by the queen, quite won her heart.

8. She permitted him to speak to her with more freedom than she would allow to any of her old and faithful servants. On one occasion he became so heated in an argument with her as entirely to forget the rules of good breeding, and turned his back upon her in a contemptuous manner.

9. She took fire at this, and gave him a sound box on his ear, telling him she would not bear his impertinence. Instead of apologizing for his affront, the impatient youth laid his hand on his sword, and, declaring he would not bear such usage, withdrew from court.

10. His friends endeavored to persuade him that a blow from a woman ought not to be resented ; but Essex said that the character of *woman* was sunk in that of *sovereign*, and would not make any advances towards reconciliation. But the queen herself was too fond of him to bear his absence patiently ; the quarrel seemed to increase her affection, and he was recalled and enjoyed more than his former favor.

---

5. What grant did he obtain ? 6. What colony did he attempt to found ? What colony was afterwards established ? Whence its name ? 7. Who was brought forward as the rival of Raleigh ? How did Essex win the queen's favor ? 8. How did he treat her ? 9, 10. Relate an instance of his impetuosity.

## CHAPTER CLII.

*The Fashions of Dress in the Time of Elizabeth.*

1. THERE was one striking difference between Sir Walter Raleigh and the Earl of Essex. The former was minutely particular in his dress, whilst the latter, as his secretary, Sir Henry Wotton, tells us, was so little of a coxcomb in his attire, that he hardly knew what he had on. His dressing-room was filled with friends and suitors, to whom he gave his attention, while his servants put on his clothes, "with little care of his own."

2. This is quite remarkable, for dress was then a matter of great importance. Even old Lord Shrewsbury directs some one in London to send him down some new clothes into Yorkshire, and desires the person "to talk with the tailor, and devise some new jerkin of thin pretty silk, or else one of perfumed leather, with satin sleeves, as the fashion is."

3. The queen herself set the example of wearing costly apparel. Her conceit of her beauty, and her desire to make an impression on the hearts of beholders, made her fond of wearing a great variety of rich dresses. As she never gave any away, there were found in her wardrobes, at her death, above three thousand different habits.

4. Of one of these dresses a foreigner has given us a description. "When I saw Elizabeth, she was in her sixty-seventh year, and had in her ears two pearls with very rich drops. She wore false red hair, and her bosom was uncovered. She was dressed in white silk, bordered with pearls of the size of beans, and over it a mantle of black silk, shot with silver threads, and instead of a chain, she had an oblong collar of gold and jewels. Wherever she turned her face, as she went along, every one fell down on his knees."

5. He does not mention the perfumed gloves, ornamented with tufts of rose-colored silk, which were so much her delight that she would always be painted with a favorite pair—brought to her from Italy, by the Earl of Oxford. Nor does he speak of her silk stockings, which were then a great novelty. Mrs. Montague, her silk woman, having presented to her a pair of black silk hose, she declared she never would wear cloth ones again.

6. But why not wear knit ones? Because the art of making them was almost unknown. One of Henry VIII.'s wives is said to have had a pair of knitted stockings, but all other people wore them of cloth, laced or buttoned tight to the leg. Towards the end of Elizabeth's time, a man named Lee invented a machine for weaving stockings, and set it up with great success in a village near Nottingham; but the stocking-knitters, fearing it would spoil their trade, drove him away. He retired to Paris, where he died of disappointment. His invention, however, did not die with him; and it is a remarkable cir-

CLII.—1. What difference in habits between Raleigh and Essex? 2. Why remarkable in Essex? 3. What of the queen's fondness for dress? 4. Give a description of her

cumstance that Nottingham should still be the principal place in England where the stocking manufacture is carried on.

7. There were some curious fashions at this time. The fardingale, an enormous petticoat, was introduced from Spain. Ruffs, made of lawn and cambric, and well stiffened with yellow starch, reaching to the upper part of the head behind, were worn both by ladies and gentlemen.

8. The size of these ruffs appears to have alarmed her majesty, for we are told that certain grave persons were appointed to stand at the gates of the city of London, for the purpose of cutting down every ruff that was more than a yard in depth. These ruffs gave great offence to a religious party called the *Puritans*, of whom we shall hear more presently.

9. A writer of this sect, in a book called "The Anatomy of Abuses," thinks it a heinous addition to the sinfulness of the ruff, that it was so "clogged" and "pestered" with needlework. He tells us, also, that the lords of the court were very choice about their shirts, which were often made of cambric, with open-work down the seams, and sometimes cost fifty dollars each, which, he adds, "is horrible to think of."

### CHAPTER CLIII.

*Queen Elizabeth's Progresses.—Anecdote of Sir Thomas Gresham.—About Sir Philip Sidney.—Change in the Manners of the People.—Shakspeare's Plays.*

1. QUEEN Elizabeth was very fond of travelling about the country, or making *progresses*, as it was called, and visiting her wealthy subjects at their own houses. Upon such occasions great entertainments were given. The most celebrated was that at Kenilworth Castle, provided by the Earl of Leicester. It lasted several days, and invention was exhausted to furnish all sorts of diversion.

2. There were stag-hunts, and bull-baitings, and pageants of every kind; indeed, so numerous and magnificent were the shows, that the account of them fills quite a large volume. The queen did not confine her visits to the nobility. Sir Thomas Gresham, a rich London merchant, who erected, at his own cost, a building for an Exchange, had the honor of entertaining her at his magnificent house called Osterley.

3. Elizabeth, after viewing the whole mansion, remarked as she was going to bed, "that it would have been much more handsome if the court-yard had been divided by a wall." Sir Thomas heard the remark, and instantly set to work such a number of masons and laborers, that when the queen arose in the morning, she found that a wall had risen, as if by magic, in answer to her wish.

dress. 5, 6. What of the use of gloves and stockings? What of the manufacture of stockings? 7. What droll fashions of dress? 8, 9. What of the ruff?

CLIII.—1. What is said of Elizabeth's progresses? 2. What of Leicester's entertain



ELIZABETH IN PROCESSION.

4. Before we return to our general story, we must say something of Sir Philip Sidney, who was one of the great men of this reign, so prolific in genius and talent. He was a perfect model of what a true knight should be,—courteous, brave, eloquent, accomplished, and learned. His fame and great merits were so well known throughout Europe, that the Poles thought of electing him their king, but Elizabeth would not consent.

5. He received a mortal wound in an engagement near Zutphen, in Holland, Sept. 22d, 1586. As he was stretched on the ground, his attendants brought him some water to quench his raging thirst. Just as he was raising it to his lips, he saw a poor wounded soldier, who was lying near him, looking wistfully at the cup. "Take this water to him," said Sir Philip; "his necessity is greater than mine."

6. Sir Philip was the author of a sort of pastoral romance, called the "Arcadia," which was thought very delightful at the time it was published, though to us it appears somewhat dull. Indeed, in the time of Elizabeth, a conceited, hyperbolical style of writing and speaking was necessary to every one who wished to be thought a fine gentleman.

7. A change had taken place, in every respect, since the days of Henry VIII., who himself set the example of running, jumping, and wrestling, with all kinds of boisterous sports. Elizabeth's courtiers, out of compliment, we suppose, to their female sovereign, affected a measured behavior, and quieter recreations.

8. Lord Mountjoy, who is described as being a pattern of what a nobleman should be, "delighted in study, in gardens, in riding on a pad to take the air, in playing at shovel-board, in fishing in a

ment? 2, 3. What of Sir Thomas Gresham? 4, 5. What of Sir Philip Sidney? 6. What of his Arcadia? What was thought necessary for a fine gentleman?

fish-pond, or in reading play-books." He showed a good taste in this last occupation, if he were occupied with Shakspeare's plays; and we may suppose he was, for they were written in the reign of Elizabeth, and were the delight of the court, the town, and the country.

9. These plays were all acted by men and boys, it being considered a great indecorum for women to appear on the stage. The play-houses were little better than barns; and we are told that, instead of painted scenes to represent the places where the action was supposed to pass, there used to be only a board hung up over the stage, with an inscription on it to tell the spectators where they were to imagine the scene to be!

## CHAPTER CLIV.

*Death of Lord Burleigh.—Lord Essex appointed to the Government of Ireland.—Is reproved by Elizabeth.—His Interview with the Queen.—Last Cause of Offence.*

1. ELIZABETH had one faithful servant, who, without courting her, or making any improper concessions to her, maintained his place in her confidence from her accession to his own death. This was Cecil, Lord Burleigh. For forty years he was prime minister of England, and the most sagacious one that country ever had.

2. This wise and cautious minister had always endeavored to check the queen's fondness for the headstrong Essex, who, from a love of military glory, would have kept the country continually in a state of war. Burleigh died in 1598, and Essex remained without a competitor in her regard.

3. In 1599, he received the appointment of Governor of Ireland, under the title of lord lieutenant, for the express purpose of putting an end to an insurrection which had broken out there, headed by a powerful chief, the Earl of Tyrone. Nothing doubting of his own abilities, Essex hastened to his task; but he found greater difficulties than he expected.

4. After some months of harassing warfare, in defiance of the queen's commands, he entered into a treaty with Tyrone. Elizabeth sent a sharp reproof for this and other disobedience, at the same time commanding him to remain in Ireland till further orders. Essex, however, instantly set off for England, and arrived at court before it could be known that he had left Ireland.

5. Splashed with dirt, he rushed into the presence-chamber, although he knew the queen was exceedingly punctilious about the neat

7. What change in manners? 8. What author was a favorite? 9. What of acting plays?

CLIV.—1. What faithful servant had Elizabeth? What of Lord Burleigh? 3. What appointment did Essex receive? How did he discharge its duties? 4, 5. How did he

and seemly apparel of those who approached her. Not finding her there, he hurried forward to her bed-chamber, where she was barely risen, and sitting with her hair about her face.

6. Essex fell on his knees before her, and Elizabeth was so taken by surprise at this sudden appearance of her favorite, that she received him most graciously. But when he was gone, and she had time to reflect on his conduct, she considered this last presumption as an aggravation of his former faults; upon his next appearance, a few hours after, his reception was quite different, and he was placed in the custody of Lord Egerton.

7. Essex, from the agitation of his mind, fell seriously ill. The tenderness of the queen returned when she heard of his danger. She ordered eight physicians to consult on his case, and sent one of them to him with some broth, saying, while the tears ran down her cheeks, that if she could, consistently with her honor, she would visit him. Essex upon this recovered, and was permitted to remain in retirement in his own house.

8. Elizabeth, after a severe struggle between her affection for her favorite and her sense of justice, at length consented that Essex should be called to account for his mismanagement of affairs in Ireland. He did not attempt to excuse himself, but made a humble submission to the queen, who received his contrite messages with great complacency.

9. He then ventured to apply for a renewal of a grant she had formerly made him, but she refused, saying that "an ungovernable beast must be stinted in his provender." These contemptuous expressions were too much for the proud heart of Essex. His temper, hitherto restrained with difficulty, now broke loose. He declared, in his rage, that "the queen, now that she was an old woman, was as crooked in her mind as in her person."

10. This was reported to Elizabeth. It was bad enough to call her, who was so vain of her person, crooked; but to call her old was even worse; so great a dread had she of being thought aged, that she contrived, when she was nearly seventy, to be surprised by the French ambassador in the act of dancing a *galliard*, a sort of figure dance, to the music of a little fiddle, upon which, we believe, she herself played.

---

## CHAPTER CLV.

### *Execution of the Earl of Essex.—Death of Queen Elizabeth.*

1. THE breach between Elizabeth and her favorite now seemed to be irreparable. Essex, completely maddened by passion, sought to overturn the government. But his open nature made him a bad

---

observe the queen's orders? 6. How did the queen receive him? 7. How did Essex bear his disgrace? 8. Were they reconciled? 9. What new cause of offence did he give? 10. What instance of the queen's vanity?

plotter. His designs were all known to the ministers, and he was seized and committed to the Tower. His trial soon followed, and his guilt was too clear to give the queen the least pretext for granting him a pardon.

2. Her former tenderness and her late resentment reduced Elizabeth to the most pitiable state of mind. She signed the warrant for the execution; she countermanded it; she again resolved on his death; she felt a new return of tenderness.

3. It appears that, aware of his impetuous temper, she had formerly given him a ring, telling him that whatever disgrace he should fall into, she would promise him, on receiving that ring, to grant him a favorable hearing. This pledge she had fully expected to receive at this juncture of his fate, and she attributed his not sending it to sturdiness and obstinacy.

4. When she had given him, as she thought, ample time for repentance, and there came not the important ring, she no longer delayed his execution, which took place February 25th, 1601, in the thirty-fourth year of his age. For a time her feelings of resentment supported her under the loss of her favorite.

5. But this consolation, such as it was, was taken from her when, two years after the death of Essex, the Countess of Nottingham, being on her death-bed, besought the queen to come to her, as she had something to reveal. She then confessed that Essex had intrusted her with the ring to restore it to her majesty, but that she had been prevailed on by her husband to withhold it.

6. Elizabeth, in an agony of grief at this disclosure, shook the dying countess in her bed, saying, "God may forgive you; I never can." She then broke from her, and when she had regained her own apartments, threw herself on the floor, and gave herself up to the most incurable melancholy.

7. For ten days and nights she lay on the floor, supported by cushions. She refused to go to bed, or to take anything that her physicians prescribed. Her end visibly approaching, her attendants requested her to appoint her successor, and she named the King of Scotland. When she became too weak to make resistance, she was laid in her bed, where she died, March 24th, 1603, in the seventieth year of her age, and the forty-fifth of her reign.

8. Such was the melancholy end of the most brilliant reign in English history. Notwithstanding her haughty temper, and her arbitrary government, Elizabeth was a favorite with the people, who long afterwards referred with pride and pleasure to the "golden days of good Queen Bess."

9. Being looked upon as the head of the Protestant interest in Europe, she exercised a great influence upon its affairs. Her fame even reached the ears of the Grand Seignior at Constantinople, who till then had supposed England to be a dependent province of France.

CLV.—1. What did Essex now attempt? 2. What effect had his conduct on the queen? 3. What reason had she to suppose Essex obstinate? 4. When did he die? 5. 6. How had the queen been deceived? What were her feelings at the discovery? 7. Relate the particulars of her death. Her age? Her length of reign? 8. What were the feelings of the people towards her? 9. What of the Grand Seignior?

He sought to atone for the insulting idea by the high compliments he paid the queen, whom he styled "a fountain of honor," and a "comfortable cloud of rain."

## CHAPTER CLVI.

*Character and Anecdotes of Elizabeth.—Spenser, the Poet Laureate.*

1. NEXT to her personal beauty, her learning was the object of Elizabeth's vanity. For this there was somewhat more of reason. To an address in Greek by the University of Cambridge, she replied without any preparation, in the same language. Once, when the Polish ambassador had said something to displease her, she made a spirited reply in very good Latin; then, turning to her attendants, she said, "I have been forced, my lords, to scour up my Latin, which has been long rusting."

2. She also aspired to the reputation of a wit, and one of her own jokes, though a very poor one, saved a Dr. Man from a severe rebuke. Philip of Spain had sent an ambassador, of the name of Gusman, to Elizabeth, and she in return sent Dr. Man, who conducted the affair with which he was intrusted so badly, that the queen thought of punishing him.

3. But happening to say to one of her courtiers that Philip had sent a *Goose-man* (*i. e.*, a Gusman) to her, but that she had sent a *Man-goose* to him, this conceit diverted her so much, that she let the matter pass, and Dr. Man escaped without any more serious censure.

4. Elizabeth was fond of music, and played "indifferently well" on the lute, and on the virginals, an ill-shaped, clumsy instrument, with strings and keys. She seems to have thought there was something royal and stately in loud noises; for, when she dined, she would have twelve trumpets and two kettle-drums, besides other instruments, all thundering at once in her ears.

5. Upon a certain occasion she went in great state to hear a sermon preached. Besides a numerous train of lords and ladies, she had a thousand soldiers, and ten great cannons dragged after her, with an abundance of drums and trumpets; and, besides all these, there was a party of morris-dancers, and two white bears in a cart.

6. It was the custom in her day, as it is now, for the sovereign to keep a maker of verses, by the title of *poet laureate*, whose duty it is to compose odes for the royal birth-days, and other like occasions. Elizabeth was fortunate enough to have a real poet upon whom to bestow the office. Such was Edmund Spenser, whose poems of the *Fairy Queen* and the *Shepherd's Kalendar* are among the most beautiful in the language.

7. For some time he only wore the barren laurel, and held the place without the salary. The queen was so well pleased with one of his stanzas, that she ordered him a hundred pounds for it.

“What,” said the economical Burleigh, “all this for a song!” “Give him, then, what is reason,” said the queen, who already repented of her generosity.

8. Spenser, to whom the conversation had been told, waited for some time with patience, but at length presented his petition:

“I was promised on a time to have reason for my rhyme,  
From that time unto this season, I’ve received nor rhyme nor reason.”

The queen forthwith ordered the hundred pounds to be paid.

TABLE OF THE LINE OF TUDOR.

Began to reign. Reigned.

1485	24	Henry VII.
1509	38	Henry VIII., son of Henry VII.
1547	6	Edward VI., son of Henry VIII.
1553	5	Mary, daughter of Henry VIII.
1558	45	Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII.

CHAPTER CLVII.

*James I.—Change in the Manners of the Court.—Sir Walter Raleigh introduces the Use of Tobacco, and the Cultivation of Potatoes.*



JAMES I. EXAMINING AND TASTING TOBACCO.

1. THE crown of England was never transmitted more quietly from father to son, than when it passed from the family of Tudor to

6. What is the poet laureate? Who served Elizabeth in that capacity? 7, 8. What anecdote of Burleigh’s economy?

that of Stuart. James I. of England, and VI. of Scotland, was thirty-seven years old, when the death of Elizabeth made him the sovereign of the whole island of Great Britain. His character was an odd mixture of sense and folly, which it is very difficult to describe.

2. He had a natural shrewdness and sagacity, with a great share of vanity and conceit, and he made even his learning, which was considerable, appear ridiculous by his pedantry and pomposity. With all this he had a great deal of childish simplicity, and there was an openness of temper about him, which, though a virtue, made him unfit to control the jealousies which arose between his English and Scotch subjects.

3. His person was awkward, and his manners uncouth and without dignity; and these defects, together with his broad Scotch accent, soon made him an object of contempt to those who had been accustomed to the stately majesty of Elizabeth. A graceful and dignified wife might have made up for the king's deficiencies. But Anne, daughter of the King of Denmark, whom he married, is described as very homely and unprepossessing.

4. From these causes, the manners of the court became so rude and unpolished as to disgust the old courtiers of Elizabeth. Indeed, James hated pomp and parade, and used to discourage all who had no particular business at the court from coming to it. He used to say to the country gentlemen, "At London you are like ships in a sea; you look like nothing; but in your country villages you are like ships in rivers, which look like great things."

5. James was fond of study; he read much, but it was chiefly on religious subjects, upon which he was a warm controversialist. Argument was his delight and his glory. He loved to exhibit his wisdom and learning in long harangues. But though he could talk, he could not act; he wanted both decision and exertion; and the parliament, soon finding out his weakness, listened to his speeches, but paid no other attention to them; and contrived by degrees to strengthen its own power at the expense of the crown's; so that while he was perpetually talking of his royal prerogative, he gradually lost much of it.

6. James was also ambitious of the reputation of an author. One of his books was on the duty of a king, and another was called "A Counterblast to Tobacco," to the use of which he was much opposed; and he was accustomed to say he had no notion of men's making chimneys of their mouths. This herb was first brought to England in 1596, upon the return of Sir Walter Raleigh's unfortunate settlers from Virginia, where they did not succeed in establishing a permanent home. Sir Walter himself was one of its first admirers, but for some time preserved great secrecy in his attachment, till the foible was discovered by a ridiculous accident.

7. He was one day enjoying his pipe in solitude, forgetful that he had ordered his servant to attend him with a goblet of ale. The faithful domestic suddenly entering the study, and finding, as he

thought, his master's brains on fire, and evaporating in smoke and flame through his nostrils, did his utmost to extinguish the conflagration, by emptying the goblet on his head; then rushing out of the room, he alarmed the family with an account of the frightful scene he had witnessed.

8. But Raleigh conferred a less questionable benefit on his country. It was the fashion in those days to make, what we should call piratical, expeditions against the West India islands, and the continent of America in that vicinity, all of which was then in the possession of the Spaniards. Captain Hawkins, on his return, in 1565, from such an expedition, presented to Sir Walter some roots which he said furnished an article of food for the inhabitants of New Spain, or Mexico.

9. Sir Walter planted them upon some land the queen had given him in Ireland. When the plant came to maturity, the fruit was gathered, but was found to be so nauseous, that he had nearly consigned the whole crop to destruction. Fortunately the merits of the real potato were discovered. No one then imagined that the plant which Sir Walter cultivated as a dainty, would be the means of saving the Irish nation from famine.

---

## CHAPTER CLVIII.

*Conspiracy to place Lady Arabella Stuart on the Throne.—Conclusion of the Story of Sir Walter Raleigh.*

1. THE tranquillity of James' reign was soon interrupted by a conspiracy to place Lady Arabella Stuart upon the throne. By referring to the table of the family of Henry VII., you will see that she was related to that monarch in the same degree with James; being a daughter of a brother of Lord Darnley, the king's father. The plot was soon discovered, and the conspirators punished.

2. Lady Arabella was neither qualified nor desirous to be a queen, and was totally ignorant of the conspiracy. Although brought up in great privacy, yet being nearest to the throne after James, she had been an object of jealousy both to him and to Elizabeth. James, however, treated her with great kindness, so long as she remained unmarried. At last she was united to a Mr. Seymour. For this offence both she and her husband were imprisoned.

3. Though confined in different prisons, they both contrived to make their escape at the same time, and hoped to join each other abroad. Mr. Seymour was so fortunate as to get safely to Flanders, but poor Lady Arabella was retaken on the road to Calais, and brought back. This disappointment deprived her of her reason. She never

---

the king fond? What of the parliament? 6. What of the use of tobacco? What anecdote of Raleigh's use of it? 8, 9. What of potatoes?

CLVIII.—1. What first disturbed the tranquillity of James' reign? 2. What of Lady

recovered it again, and died in a few years. Some of her letters are preserved, and show her to have been an amiable woman, of a cheerful temper, and without any ambition to be a queen.

4. Sir Walter Raleigh was accused of being concerned in the conspiracy in favor of Lady Arabella. He was hated by the people on account of his known enmity to their darling, the unfortunate Earl of Essex. He had also made himself obnoxious to the king, and to his minister, Cecil, Earl of Salisbury, a son of the great Lord Burleigh, who possessed much of his father's capacity, but without his integrity.

5. Under such circumstances, Raleigh, whether guilty or innocent, could have no hope to escape conviction. He was sentenced to death, but reprieved and held for many years in imprisonment, which he employed in writing a "History of the World," and other works which have gained him a high reputation as an author. He was cheered in his confinement by the friendship of Henry, Prince of Wales.

6. The prince, who was as unlike his father as possible, sincerely admired the splendid talents of Sir Walter, and used to say that "no king but his father would keep such a bird in a cage." He would have seen, had he lived, that this poor bird was at length permitted to enjoy a short period of liberty. Thirteen years of imprisonment had subdued Raleigh's pride and haughtiness. The people had forgotten his enmity to Essex, and now exceedingly desired his liberation.

7. This was at length granted, probably by the application of bribes to the king's favorite, Villiers, of whom we shall soon hear more. No formal pardon was granted, but might readily have been purchased; Sir Walter, indeed, thought of doing this, but he was told by Lord Bacon, whom he consulted, that it was not necessary, since the king's appointment of him to the command of an expedition to Guiana, with the power of life and death over those under him, was a sufficient pardon.

8. This expedition was fitted out, at the instigation of Sir Walter, to go in search of a very rich gold mine, of which he said he had obtained information in a former voyage. He sailed with several ships, and directed his course to the river Orinoco. Nothing was effected but the destroying of a small Spanish town, in the attack on which Raleigh's eldest son was killed.

9. The Spanish government complained of this act, and James, who was desirous to keep on good terms with that government, resolved to sacrifice Raleigh to appease their resentment. He was first tried for misconduct in the late expedition, but after frequent examinations, the commissioners insisted that there was no ground for complaint. James then ordered the old sentence to be put in force. On the 29th of October, 1618, he was brought to the scaffold, where he behaved with great manliness and dignity.

---

Arabella Stuart? 4. What befell Sir Walter Raleigh? 5. How did he employ his time in prison? 6. What of Prince Henry? 7. Why did not Raleigh demand a formal pardon? 8. What expedition did he go upon? With what success? 9, 10. Relate the remaining particulars of his life.

10. He desired to see the axe, and, feeling the edge of it, said to the sheriff, "This is a sharp medicine, but a sure remedy for all evils." This act of deliberate cruelty is the greatest blot on James' reign, and caused great indignation among the people, who felt that they had lost the only man in the kingdom who had any reputation for valor or any military experience.

---

### CHAPTER CLIX.

#### *The Gunpowder Plot.*



GUNPOWDER PLOT.

1. FOR the sake of giving the life of Sir Walter Raleigh to its conclusion, without interruption, we have gone a little before our story, and must now return to the year 1605. The Roman Catholics had expected great indulgences from James on his mother's account; but they found, to their great chagrin, that he was no less steady than Elizabeth had been to the cause of the Protestants.

2. To this disappointment was owing the famous *Gunpowder Plot*. Two Catholic gentlemen, named Percy and Catesby, being in conversation about public affairs, became highly excited, and in their heat, agreed to attempt the destruction of the king, lords, and commons, at one stroke. This was to be done by blowing up the Parliament House with gunpowder, at a time when the lords and commons

should have met together to hear the speech which the king makes at the opening of each session.

3. The design was communicated to a few persons, and Guy Fawkes, a man of known courage and zeal, who was then serving as an officer in the Spanish army, was sent for to aid in its execution. Percy hired the building next to the parliament-house, and the conspirators began to undermine the wall between the two houses. After they had worked some time, they learned that the cellar of the parliament-house was to be let.

4. This was exactly what they wished; Percy at once hired it for the ostensible purpose of storing fuel. Thirty-six barrels of gunpowder were secretly placed in it, and covered over with fagots and billets of wood. To complete the deception, the doors were boldly kept open, and everybody admitted as if it contained nothing dangerous.

5. The secret, though intrusted to above twenty persons, had been faithfully kept for nearly a year and a half, during which time there had been no meeting of parliament. At length the members were ordered to assemble on the 5th of November, 1605. A few days before the time appointed for the meeting, Lord Montegue received a letter from an unknown hand, begging him not to be present at the opening of parliament.

6. It warned him not to think lightly of this advice; "for though there was no appearance of any stir, yet they will receive a terrible blow this parliament, yet they shall not see who hurts them." Montegue knew not what to think of this letter, and showed it to Lord Salisbury, who was not inclined to pay much attention to it; but who, nevertheless, laid it before the king.

7. The king had sagacity enough to perceive, from its earnest style, that something important was meant; and this forewarning of a sudden and terrible blow, yet with the authors concealed, made his suspicions come very near the truth. The day before the meeting of parliament, he sent the Earl of Suffolk to examine all the cellars under the buildings where they were to assemble.

8. Suffolk was surprised to see so many piles of wood and fagots in the cellars under the house of lords, and was struck also with the dark and mysterious countenance of Guy Fawkes, who called himself Mr. Percy's servant. Suffolk departed, however, without giving any intimation of his suspicions, but resolved to make a more thorough search at an hour when the conspirators would probably be making their last preparations.

9. Accordingly, about midnight, a party of officers proceeded to the cellar. Near the door they seized Guy Fawkes, dressed in a cloak and boots, and carrying a dark lantern; and in his pockets were found matches and everything requisite for setting fire to the powder. On turning over the fagots, the barrels of gunpowder were discovered. Fawkes at first appeared undaunted, but his courage afterwards failed him, and he made a full confession.

10. Percy, Catesby, and some others fled into Warwickshire, where

Sir Everard Digby, another of the band, had already taken up arms, so confident was he that the "terrible blow" had been given in London. The country was soon roused against the criminals, who took refuge in one of those fortified houses, so common at that day.



SEIZURE OF GUY FAWKES.

11. But the same fate awaited them which they had designed for so many others. Their gunpowder took fire and blew up, maiming and destroying several of them. The rest rushed out upon the multitude, and were literally cut to pieces, except a few who were taken alive, and afterwards tried and executed.

12. The 5th of November is still observed as a holiday in England, and was also observed in this country so long as it remained in a state of dependence upon Great Britain. One of the most noisy observances of the day is the burning of Guy Fawkes in effigy. But the bundle of rags which serves as his representative, by no means does justice to him.

13. We are told that during his trial and imprisonment he was richly appareled, to the great scandal of the people; some, it is said, were especially indignant at him for "taking tobacco out of measure;" tobacco being then a novelty, it was doubtless considered too great a luxury for a traitor.

## CHAPTER CLX.

*Prince Henry.—The Condition of the English People under James.—Masques.—Baronets first created.*

1. PRINCE Henry has been introduced to the reader in so favorable a manner, that he may doubtless be willing to hear something more of him. He is always spoken of in history as an extraordinary young man. He was fond of study, and before he was seven years old he could write Latin correctly; he was also exceedingly expert in all manly and active exercises.

2. He was sincerely religious, and when he was old enough to have an establishment, would keep no persons in his service whom he did not think worthy of his good opinion. We are told that he kept his numerous household in the most exact order, and that a glance of his eye served instead of a command; but though a strict, he was a very kind master.

3. He was warm and ardent in his friendships, and a great proof of his sense was that his friends were always well chosen. He had an anxiety to know all great and distinguished persons, and he cultivated the correspondence of learned men, his own countrymen as well as foreigners.

4. There was one trait in his character which might have been productive of national evils. This was his ambition of military glory. His mother, because his person had a real or a fancied resemblance to Henry V., used to tell him that he was born to conquer France like that hero. He had too much good sense to be misled by such a foolish prognostic; yet it is certain that he indulged in many visionary schemes of future prowess.

5. He took great interest in the navy, and made frequent visits to Chatham, where there was and still is a dock-yard, to examine and learn all he could about shipping. He was never idle, and his extraordinary diligence gave him time to attend to a great many things. Possessed of so many noble qualities, it is no wonder that the English looked forward with pleasure to the time when he should rule over them.

6. But all their anticipations were disappointed by his death at the early age of eighteen. When first taken ill he did not show his usual discretion. He had such confidence in his own strength of constitution that he would not give up his accustomed duties and exercises so long as he could rise from his bed. The ignorance of his physicians completed what his own imprudence had begun.

7. The death of this prince was a peculiar disappointment to all the restless and ardent men who hoped for an opportunity to signalize themselves under a prince of martial genius. To such, the peaceful and inactive disposition of his father was matter of complaint; but to the great mass of the people it brought comfort and happiness. There were no expensive wars, and therefore few taxes.

CLX.—1, 2, 3. What of Prince Henry's character? 4, 5. What sovereign was he said to resemble? What was predicted on this account? 6. How were the hopes of all dis-

8. By discouraging the thronging of the higher orders to court, James kept many of the principal families quietly at home, where they lived both frugally and usefully among their tenantry. A contemporary writer says, "There is no people in the whole world where men of all conditions live so peaceably, and so plentifully, yea, and so safely also, as in England."

9. We are also told that "the houses of farmers were often furnished with a garnish of pewter on the cupboard; three or four feather-beds, with as many coverlets, and carpets of tapestry, a silver salt, a bowl for wine, and a dozen spoons to finish out the suit." This is an establishment superior to that of earls in the time of Henry VII.

10. James himself was probably the poorest man in his dominions. Though not extravagant in his habits, he was always embarrassed, from his ignorance of the value of money, and from his thoughtless profusion to his favorites. It is said, that one day as he was standing in the midst of his courtiers, a porter passed by loaded with money for the royal treasury. The king observed that Rich, Earl of Holland, one of these favorites, whispered something to his neighbor.

11. Upon inquiry he found that Rich had said, "How happy would that money make me!" Without hesitation, James bestowed it all upon him, though it amounted to 3000 pounds. He added, "I think myself very happy in having an opportunity to oblige a man whom I love."

12. The queen also brought great expenses upon him by her passionate love of shows and entertainments, especially of masques. These were a kind of play, generally performed by ladies and gentlemen in private houses. The queen was excessively fond of appearing in these masques, in which the characters had little else to do than to display their fine dresses.

13. On one occasion she and the ladies of her court performed a masque in the character of Moorish women, and had their faces and arms blackened in order to look like Moors, and the effect, as we are told by one of the spectators, was "horridly ugly." The court masques were got up under the direction of Ben Jonson, who, after being a bricklayer, a soldier, and an actor, finally, by the assistance of his friend, Shakspeare, attained to great celebrity as a dramatic writer. He died in 1637, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. On his grave-stone is this inscription: "O! Rare Ben Jonson."

14. To meet all his expenses, James was obliged to have recourse to various expedients; amongst others, to the sale of titles and dignities; though at his accession he had given these away in such profusion as to lead some wag to advertise to teach an art by which people could remember the names of the new nobility. A species of hereditary knighthood, unknown in other kingdoms, was invented; it was that of *baronet*, and was sold to any one for a thousand pounds.

## CHAPTER CLXI.

*Anecdotes of James I.—The Bible translated.—Couches introduced.*



TRANSLATING THE BIBLE.

1. NEXT to controversy, the employment which James loved best was hunting; and he carried it to such an extreme, that he led his poor courtiers, who were not equally fond of it, a weary life. One of them makes heavy complaints of being obliged to ride with him, in heat and cold, dry and wet, from eight in the morning till four in the afternoon, in full career, from the death of one poor hare to that of another.

2. James had a hunting-palace at Newmarket, and another at Royston. When he and his attendants were there, they consumed all the provisions in the place, and made such a bustle that the quiet inhabitants did not at all like these visitations. In one of these *hunting bouts*, Jowler, the king's favorite hound, was missing.

3. The king was exceedingly vexed at his loss; but the next day Jowler reappeared with a piece of paper tied to his collar, bearing these words: "Good Mr. Jowler, we pray you speak to the king, (for he hears you every day, and so doth he not us,) that it will please his majesty to go back to London, or else the country will be undone; all our provision is spent, and we are not able to entertain him any longer."

4. James, like his predecessor, sometimes attempted a joke. We will give one as a specimen. A gentleman of the name of Lumley was boasting to him of the great antiquity of his family. "Hoo, mon," exclaimed the king in his broad Scotch, "I did nae ken that Adam was a younger son of the Lumley family."

5. Though we are very apt to ridicule James for his folly and pedantry, yet we ought not to forget that we owe him one obligation, which it would be very ungrateful not to remember. We are indebted to him for the excellent translation of the Bible now in use. Cranmer's Bible, having been made from very defective Latin translations, was in many places not faithful to the originals. James therefore employed some very learned men to make a translation from the original languages; the Old Testament being in the Hebrew, and the New Testament in the Greek language. Nearly fifty persons were occupied about it for four years.

6. Although James was of so peaceful a temper, he took great pride in his navy, and built many large vessels. These were employed in protecting commerce, which had much increased, and in visiting the new colonies of Virginia and Plymouth, which were successfully planted during his reign. The increase of commerce brought increase of wealth and luxury. Ladies and gentlemen had become too effeminate to ride on horseback, but must needs have coaches. The first coach we read of as used in England is one that Lord Arundel had in 1580. But in the reign of James there were even hackney coaches.

7. These early coaches were very like modern wagons; they were cumbrous, jolting vehicles, and so capacious as to hold eight persons commodiously. Six individuals, three on each seat, sat opposite to one another; the two others sat back on two stools that faced the two doors. But the favorite Villiers, Duke of Buckingham, was too effeminate to ride in a coach even. He introduced sedan chairs, to the great scandal of the people, who thought it degrading to men to make them do the work of horses.

## CHAPTER CLXII.

*The King's Favorites, Carr, Earl of Somerset, and Villiers, Duke of Buckingham.—Romantic Expedition of Prince Charles into Spain.—Death of James I.*

1. As we have frequently spoken of the king's favorites, it is time to say something more particularly about them. It was one of his follies to have an exclusive regard for some one person, who was generally chosen for his agreeable exterior. The first of these was

Robert Carr, a Scotch youth of good family, but of a neglected education.

2. James undertook to be his tutor, and to teach him Latin. As he grew older, he loaded him with dignities, and finally created him Earl of Somerset. This favorite had a sincere and wise friend, Sir Thomas Overbury, who, on his wishing to marry the Countess of Essex, strongly advised him against it. The countess, irritated at this, persuaded Somerset to have him put in the Tower, where he was soon after poisoned.

3. Somerset and the countess, the guilty contrivers of his death, then married; but he, being less hardened in wickedness, sunk into melancholy, and became such a dull companion that the king grew weary of him. The guilt of Somerset and his wife was some time afterwards discovered.

4. They, and all who had been accessory to the murder, were tried and convicted. The accomplices were executed, but Somerset and his wife were only banished. They lived many years, dragging on a most miserable life; their former love, which had led them into guilt, being turned to the most deadly hatred.

5. As the king was one day listening to a play which was represented for his entertainment by the scholars of Cambridge, he was attracted by the handsome person and fine clothes of George Villiers, who had purposely been placed in a conspicuous situation. James at once took him into his service. Villiers soon gained an unbounded influence over the king, who created him Duke of Buckingham.

6. James was exceedingly desirous of marrying his son, Charles, who was now the heir to the throne, to a daughter of the King of Spain. A Spanish match was not at all to the liking of the people, who remembered the days of Philip and Mary. It found, however, a warm advocate in the Duke of Buckingham. This nobleman, who enjoyed the rare good fortune of being in equal favor with the reigning monarch and with the heir to the throne, possessed Prince Charles with a desire to undertake a romantic journey into Spain, to see the princess, and to woo her in person.

7. It was with great difficulty that the king could be persuaded to consent to this. At last, entirely against his own judgment, he agreed to permit the departure of his son and Buckingham. To the latter he gave many charges to take care of the "baby Charles," as he was accustomed to call the prince, though then in his twenty-second year.

8. The prince and the duke left England disguised and undiscovered. In their way through France, they attended, without being recognized, a ball, where Charles first saw the French princess, Henrietta Maria, whom he afterwards married. When he arrived at Madrid, he made himself and his errand known.

9. The King of Spain treated him with great respect; but whether it was that Charles did not like the Spanish princess so well as the beautiful sister of the King of France, or whether Buckingham,

who thought himself slighted by the haughty Spaniards, to whom his insolent manners were highly offensive, persuaded him to abandon the suit, it is certain that after some months' absence, he returned to England, wholly unwilling to pursue the negotiation into which James had entered.

10. It was accordingly broken off, and overtures of marriage made to Henrietta Maria. Whilst this negotiation was still pending, the king fell ill of an ague. Finding his end approaching, he took an affectionate leave of his son, and died March 27th, 1625, in the fifty-ninth year of his age, and the twenty-second of his reign over England. He had been recognized as King of Scotland, as will be recollected, almost from his birth.

#### FAMILY OF JAMES I.

##### WIFE.

Anne, Princess of Denmark.

##### CHILDREN.

Henry, died November 6th, 1612, in the eighteenth year of his age.

Charles, who succeeded his father.

Elizabeth, who married Frederick, ex-King of Bohemia. From her, through her daughter, Sophia, who married the Elector of Hanover, the present royal family of England derive their title to the throne.

### CHAPTER CLXIII.

*The great Philosopher, Lord Bacon.—Lord Napier invents Logarithms.—Sir Edward Coke.—The Puritans.*

1. WE have had no opportunity, in the course of our story, of introducing, except by name, the brightest ornament of this reign. Francis Bacon, Viscount St. Albans, better known as Lord Bacon, first came into notice in the reign of Elizabeth. She was sensible of his great talents, but his advancement was steadily opposed by Lord Burleigh, who assured Elizabeth that, though he was a man of extraordinary genius, his head was filled with philosophy, and not with political knowledge.

2. James raised him to the office of chancellor, and his misconduct in that high post fully justified the sagacious Burleigh's opinion. One of the most important duties of the chancellor is to act as judge, and as his court is the highest in the kingdom, the most important causes, in respect to property, are brought before it.

3. Bacon was accused of taking bribes from suitors in his court; and being brought to trial for the offence, he confessed that he had connived at the reception of them by his officers. He was dismissed

match broken off? 10. When did James die? How old was he? How long did he reign?

CLXIII.—1. When did Lord Bacon come into notice? Who opposed his advancement? Why? 2. By what conduct did he justify Burleigh's opinion? 3, 4. What of

from his station, and sentenced to pay a heavy fine, and to be imprisoned during the king's pleasure. James, in consideration of his many merits, released him from prison, and remitted the fine.



LORD BACON.

4. Bacon survived his disgrace five years, during which time he employed himself in prosecuting those philosophical studies in which he was naturally fitted to excel, and in which he has attained a higher reputation than, perhaps, any other writer of any age or country. He died in 1626.

5. There is another man of science who deserves a passing notice. This is Lord Napier, who immortalized himself by the invention of a system of artificial numbers, called *logarithms*, which greatly facilitated the calculation of great sums in arithmetic.

6. This age was so prolific in great men, that we hardly know where to stop. We can mention but one more. Sir Edward Coke was the most eminent lawyer of this age. He met with many changes of fortune; but he made the best of adversity, and King James used to compare him to a cat, who always falls upon her feet.

7. Before beginning the story of King Charles, we must notice a new sect which had arisen among the Protestants. Many of these had taken refuge from the persecution of Mary, at Geneva, and had there learned the doctrines of Calvin, the Swiss reformer.

8 These *Puritans*—for so they were called from their strict manner of living—laid a most serious stress on many minute trifles. Square caps, like those still worn by the students at the English universities, had hitherto been a part of the dress of the clergy. The puritans attacked the use of them as being a sinful remnant of popery; and the respective merits of square caps and round caps became a subject of furious contention.

9. The puritans found no favor with the court, for they did not acknowledge the supremacy of the queen, any more than of the pope, in spiritual matters; yet their doctrines made rapid progress among the people. Their public preachings and private exhortations had a visible effect on the manners of the age, particularly in regard to the Sabbath, which, by their example, began to be observed with seriousness, instead of being made, as heretofore, a day of pastime, and often of excess.

---

## CHAPTER CLXIV.

*Charles I., sometimes called the Martyr, is opposed by the Parliament in his Attempts to increase the Royal Power.—Murder of the Duke of Buckingham.*

1. CHARLES was in the twenty-fifth year of his age when he ascended the throne. His features were regular, and he would have been handsome, if it had not been for the melancholy cast of his countenance. His deportment was exceedingly dignified, though during the early part of his life it was somewhat ungracious from its too great stateliness and formality; but this wore off as he grew older.

2. In the morality and regularity of his conduct he set a good example to his court and people; he was moderate in all his habits and his expenses, humane and gentle in his disposition, was a man of kind affections, and a most tender husband and father. His mind was highly cultivated, and he had extraordinary talents for reasoning and argument; but through his indecision of character, he seldom acted as wisely as he could talk, and was often swayed by the counsels of men of far inferior capacity. His temper was somewhat hasty, but he was generous and forgiving.

3. But Charles had imbibed some notions, which, notwithstanding his many fine and good qualities, at length brought about his destruction. He had too high an idea of the royal prerogative; many of the unjust usurpations of power made by Elizabeth he considered as the natural rights of the sovereign, which he could not fairly be expected to resign.

4. From the very commencement of this new reign, much popu-

7. What new sect arose? 8. Why called Puritans? 9. What of the progress of their opinions?

CLXIV.—1. 2. What of Charles I.? 3. What notions of power had he imbibed? 4

lar dissatisfaction prevailed, chiefly because the king surrendered himself entirely to the control of Buckingham, who, implacable in his hatreds, fickle in his friendships, imperious and grasping in his desires, was regarded with universal dislike. The king's marriage with Henrietta Maria was also very displeasing to the people, because she was a papist, and their religious feelings were shocked at her being allowed publicly to exercise her own form of worship.

5. She also offended the more serious part of the nation by the change her elegance and gayety wrought in the manners of the court; and the puritans found less to dislike in the homely vulgarity of the late Queen Anne, of Denmark, than in the grace and beauty of Henrietta. She possessed great influence with the king; and much of his subsequent suffering is to be attributed to his yielding to the dictates of her violent and imperious temper.

6. It was a great error in James, as also in his son Charles, to be occupied with abstract speculations, and not to see what was passing under their eyes. Thus, while James was writing books on kingly government, he never perceived that the house of commons was no longer that subservient body it had been in all former reigns, but that it had at last found out its own strength, and that from being the slave of kings, it was now in fact their master.

7. Charles was equally blind to this change, and was not aware of the difficulties which he was bringing on himself by his rash treatment of this great organ of the will of the people. The first year of his reign was spent by him in making attempts to extend his authority, and by the commons in trying to curb it. Provoked by this opposition, Charles hastily dissolved the parliament, and thus the king and the commons parted in mutual disgust and animosity.

8. One source of discontent was soon removed by the death of Buckingham. In revenge for some personal affront, he had persuaded Charles to declare war against France, and to send some troops under his command to relieve Rochelle, in which a body of *Huguenots*, as the French Protestants were called, were closely besieged by the troops of the king, who was a strict Catholic.

9. The expedition was ill planned and badly executed; and Buckingham was compelled to return to England, where he set about preparations for a new expedition, in which he hoped to recover his lost reputation. Portsmouth is one of the great naval stations of England, and thither he went to superintend some of the preparations.

10. At the same time with the duke, a man of the name of Felton arrived there, a puritan of a melancholy and enthusiastic turn of mind, who, learning the universal complaints made against Buckingham, persuaded himself that he should do his country a service by taking his life. He had, too, been disappointed in his hopes of promotion in the army, and felt some personal resentment against the duke.

11. For several days, Felton followed the duke like his shadow,

---

What rendered the new king unpopular? How did the queen offend the people? What of her influence over the king? 6. What error did both James and Charles commit? 7.

without having any opportunity to effect his purpose. At last, as Buckingham was passing through a doorway, he turned to speak to Sir Thomas Fryer, who was following him, when an arm was suddenly stretched over Sir Thomas' shoulder, which struck a knife



DEATH OF THE DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM.

into the duke's breast. All passed in a moment. No one saw the blow, or the person who gave it; the bystanders heard Buckingham exclaim, "The villain has killed me!" and saw him pull the knife from the wound, and fall dead at their feet. This happened on the 23d of August, 1628.

12. It chanced that the duke had been engaged in an animated conversation with some French gentlemen, who, as is the custom with that lively nation, had made use of much gesticulation and a loud tone of voice. Those who did not understand the conversation conjectured that there had been a quarrel between the parties, and that the duke had been murdered by the French gentlemen, upon whom it was proposed to execute summary punishment. There were others present, however, who, though equally persuaded of their guilt, were in favor of having them dealt with according to law.

13. But the matter was soon set right. A hat was found, in which was pinned a paper, containing some written words and a

short prayer, which proved to have belonged to the murderer. A search was now made for a person without a hat, though most agreed that it was hopeless, as sufficient time had been allowed the criminal to escape. In the midst of the confusion, a man without a hat was seen walking very composedly before the door. One cried out, "Here he is!" Others ran up, asking, "Which is he?" The man very sedately answered, "I am he!" He was accordingly taken, tried, and executed.

---

### CHAPTER CLXV.

*Wentworth, Earl of Strafford.—The King finds the Parliament very unyielding.—He resorts to illegal Measures to obtain Money.—About the Scotch Covenanters.*

1. AFTER the death of Buckingham, a change took place in the policy of the king, which is worthy of remark, as it may be considered almost as a change in the constitution of England. Hitherto the king had chosen his ministers from personal favor, or from his own opinion of their abilities, without regard to the opinion of the people.

2. Charles now selected his chief ministers from the leaders of those who opposed the assumption of new power by the crown, and who were chiefly puritans, thus making it for their interest to maintain the power, of which they had become the partakers. But the king did not derive from this measure all the advantages which he expected; for his views were so directly opposed to those of the puritans, that the leaders whom he had gained lost from that moment all influence with their party, and were even pursued as traitors with implacable resentment.

3. The chief of these was Sir Thomas Wentworth, who was created Earl of Strafford, a man whose great abilities were from that time devoted with as much zeal to increase the royal power as they had hitherto been to diminish it. Indeed, like all proselytes, he seemed to have wished to remove all suspicion of the sincerity of his conversion by the ardor of his new faith. The opinions which he now advocated would have better suited the despotic times of the Plantagenets, than those in which he was placed.

4. The late king had left an exhausted treasury, and the parliament had granted such scanty supplies to Charles, that he found himself in want of money to pay the necessary expenses of the government. The right of imposing taxes had always belonged to the parliament; but such was the subserviency of that body in all former reigns, that possession of it was of no great practical value, for the king's wishes were always complied with.

---

CLXV.—1. What change in policy after Buckingham's death? Whom did Charles select for his ministers? Why? With what result? 3. What of Sir Thomas Wentworth? 4. Who possessed the sole right to impose taxes? 5. What of the king's power

5. It is a part of the king's *prerogative*, that is, constitutional right, to summon a parliament, to appoint the time and place of meeting, to adjourn the meetings from time to time, and to dissolve the parliament, all at his own pleasure. The want of money compelled Charles to summon a new one, but, upon finding it no more complying than the first, he dissolved it, declaring that he would govern the kingdom without one.

6. He now had recourse to the most arbitrary and unjust expedients to obtain money. The court of the Star Chamber was made an instrument to wring money from his subjects. The most insignificant trifles were made the occasion for imposing enormous fines. In one instance, a nobleman's servant quarrelled with a citizen. The servant displayed his master's badge, which happened to be a swan, upon his sleeve; the other said, "What do you suppose I care for that goose?" For these words he was summoned before the Star Chamber, and severely fined for having insulted a nobleman's crest, by calling a swan a goose.

7. Charles also attempted to collect taxes upon his own authority. Amongst others, he imposed a tax, called *ship-money*, because it was to be used for the maintenance of the navy. Though the money thus raised was applied to the specified use, yet the imposition of it being illegal, the people were highly indignant.

8. Things were in this condition in England, when Laud, Archbishop of Canterbury, with more zeal than discretion, persuaded the king to attempt the introduction of the forms of the English church into Scotland, where Presbyterianism prevailed. The Scots, instead of submitting to the dictation of the king and his prelate, drew up a *covenant*, whereby they bound themselves to resist all religious innovation; and this covenant all persons, from one end of Scotland to the other, were required to sign.

9. The covenanters also made preparations to resist the proscelytes by force of arms. An army was assembled, the command of which was given to the Earl of Argyle. The town of Leith was hastily fortified; such was the zeal of all classes, that noble ladies were to be seen mixing with the lowest of the people, carrying loads upon their shoulders to complete the works. Charles marched an army as far as Berwick, but was soon forced to disband it for want of money to pay the troops. He was obliged to purchase the submission of the Scots by many concessions.

---

over parliament? 6. How did Charles seek to obtain money? 7. What of ship-money? 8. What gave offence in Scotland? 9. What of the covenanters?

## CHAPTER CLXVI.

*The King reduced to great Distress.—Death of Strafford.—Indiscreet Zeal and Death of Laud.—The Breach between the King and Parliament widens.—Charles withdraws from London.*

1. IN 1640, Charles found himself in such a distressed condition, that after an interval of eleven years, he once more summoned a parliament, in hopes it would grant him some assistance. But as soon as it met, instead of paying any attention to the necessities of the king, it entered upon a discussion of the grievances of the people.

2. In a moment of irritation, the king dissolved the parliament, a rashness which he had afterwards too much reason to repent. His necessities were now so great that he was compelled to borrow money of his courtiers; and at length, as a desperate resource, to summon a new parliament. The dissolution of the former one had not served to put the commons in better humor with the king or his ministers. Their first measure now was to impeach Strafford. He was tried, and, notwithstanding an eloquent defence, was condemned to death.

3. The king could not for a long time be induced to consent to his execution, although the queen and his other advisers besought him to make the sacrifice to the popular clamor. At length it was extorted from him, but no suffering of his own gave him so severe a pang as the death of his faithful friend and servant.

4. He sent a letter to the peers, entreating them to confer with the house of commons, and obtain their consent to a mitigation of Strafford's punishment, or a delay in its execution. But the commons were inexorable, and he was beheaded May 12th, 1641. Thus was literally executed the threat of Pym, one of the most active of the puritans, who, when Strafford left that party, had said to him, "You have left us; but we will not leave you while your head is on your shoulders."

5. The zeal with which Laud defended the royal usurpations of power, rendered him very acceptable to the king, and not less obnoxious to the people. This odium was still further increased by the extravagant pretensions which he put forth in behalf of the clergy of the established church. He sought too to restore many of the imposing ceremonies of the Catholic religion—a measure which shows how much his zeal had blinded his judgment, for the great mass of the nation at this time held in the greatest abhorrence everything that reminded them of the Church of Rome.

6. As may be well supposed, Laud did not escape the censure of the parliament. He was imprisoned, and all his property confis-

CLXVI.—1. To what was Charles forced by his distress for money? What was the result? 2. Relate what followed. What befell Strafford? 5. What of Laud's conduct? 6. What was his fate? 7. To what bill did the king give his consent? 3. What happened

cated, but he was not brought to trial for three years. He was then found guilty of high treason, and beheaded January 10th, 1645.

7. Soon after the condemnation of Strafford, a bill was passed by parliament, by which it was enacted that it should not be dissolved, or adjourned, without its own consent. This bill was brought to the king, at the time when his mind was in a state of great agitation, caused by Strafford's pending fate, and he gave it his assent without much consideration, and, by this thoughtless act, completely fettered himself. The parliament applied itself to the redress of grievances, the greatest of which was the court of the Star Chamber, which was abolished.

8. A dangerous rebellion now broke out in Ireland, and all the English in the island, without regard to age or sex, were massacred, except a few who took refuge in Dublin. Charles applied to parliament for assistance, who raised money and collected ammunition on pretence of the Irish service, but in fact kept the whole supply, in order to employ it against the king, in opposition to whose authority many factions had now united themselves.

9. One party was composed of men of moderate views, who wished merely to put a stop to the abuses of the royal power. The puritans went farther than this, and insisted on a separation between church and state. The independents, who were puritans in religious belief, were republicans in political faith, and sought the overthrow of both established church and monarchy.

10. In 1642, the quarrel between the king and the parliament had reached such a height, that Charles withdrew from London to York, taking with him his two sons, Charles and James. Here the chief nobility and gentry of the kingdom flocked to him, offering him their services. The peers, with the exception of the Earl of Essex and a few others, adhered to the king, while the puritans supported the parliament.

## CHAPTER CLXVII.

*The Dress of the Cavaliers and Puritans.—Costume of the Ladies.—Vandyke.—The first Museum.*

1. THE two parties differed in dress almost as much as in principles and manners. In a work published about this time, there is a print of a *cavalier*, or *malignant*, as the partisans of the king were called by their opponents. His conical-shaped hat, decorated with a large feather, is cocked most pertly on the right side of his head. From beneath its broad brim, the long hair falls upon his shoulders. The tress on the left side, so much longer than the rest, is the *love-*

in Ireland? What advantage was taken of it by parliament? 9. What of the different parties in the state? 10. When did Charles withdraw from London?

CLXVII.—1. What were the king's partisans called? Describe the dress of a cav-

*lock*, which was so particularly obnoxious to the puritans, that Mr Pym wrote a quarto volume against it.



DRESS OF 1642.

2. His *doublet* reaches no lower than the waistband of his breeches, which are very large, with puffs like small blown bladders, quite round the knees; his boots are very short, with fringed tops, which are nearly as ample in their dimensions as the brim of his hat; his sword is enormous, and is suspended to a belt which comes over his right shoulder. To this we may add, that men of fashion, and women too, wore black patches upon their faces, which made them look all over spots.

3. We must now give a description of the dress of his majesty, as described by a learned antiquary, from a portrait in his own possession. "He has a falling band, (a decoration for the neck, which, in this reign, supplanted the ruff, which had maintained its place in public favor for several reigns,) a short green doublet, the arm-parts towards the shoulders, wide and slashed, zig-zag turned-up ruffles; very long green breeches, (like a Dutchman,) tied far below the knee with long yellow ribands; red stockings, great shoe-roses, and a short red cloak, lined with blue, with a star on the shoulder."

4. The ladies dressed their hair low on the forehead, and parted in small ringlets. Many wore it curled like a peruke, and some braided and rounded in a knot, on the top of the crown. They frequently wore strings of pearls in their hair. Ear-rings, bracelets, and other jewels, were worn in profusion. The shoes of a lady of quality, as

an author of that day tells us, had such high heels, that she could not walk without some one to lead her; and her gown was so long, that she could not stir to the next room without a page or two to hold it up.

5. Laced handkerchiefs, resembling the large falling bands of the men, were much worn; and the fashion of these has since been revived under the name of *Vandyke*. They are thus called, because they were copied from the portraits of a distinguished painter of that name, who flourished in this reign. He was a native of Antwerp, and was invited to England by Charles.

6. He painted the portraits of many of the most distinguished personages of the court. All his portraits are distinguished by their extraordinary grace and elegance; but whether that was owing to the skill of the painter, or that he was fortunate in those who sat to him, is more than historians can pretend to tell. Charles was a great admirer of paintings, and was also a good judge of them, and had made the finest collection of pictures at that time in Europe; but after his death it was dispersed.

7. The taste for collecting rare things was not confined to the king, for his gardener, John Tradescant, made the earliest museum, or assemblage of curiosities, known in England. The greater part of this collection is yet preserved in the Ashmole Museum, at Oxford. A living curiosity of this reign was for upwards of a century to be seen at Lambeth, the palace of the Archbishop of Canterbury. It was a tortoise, which had belonged to Laud, and which lived till 1753, when it was killed by accident.

8. A word or two about the dress of the puritans, and we will proceed with our history. The puritans were in every respect the reverse of the cavaliers. They wore short hair, short bands, short cloaks, and long faces, which they still further disfigured by wearing a little black cap, edged with white. The ladies tied their heads up in hoods, as if they had got the toothache. In ridicule of the close-cropped hair of the puritans, the party of the parliament received the name of *Round-heads* from their opponents.

---

## CHAPTER CLXVIII.

*Hampden.—Pym.—Sir Henry Vane.—The Military Commanders on each side.—Commencement of Hostilities.—Battles of Edgehill and of Marston Moor.—Character of the Troops on each side.*

1. WE left the parties apparently on the verge of a civil war, but before we give the details of this, we must describe the leaders on each side. The most influential men in the parliament house

---

his portraits? 7. What of Charles' taste for paintings? 8. What of the dress of the puritans? Why called "Round-heads"?

were John Hampden and John Pym. The former had the boldness, alone and unsupported, to resist the illegal tax, of which we have already spoken, called *ship-money*.

2. The courtier-judges decided against him; but the loss of his cause was more than compensated to him by the veneration and respect with which he was treated by his countrymen. No one doubted the purity of his motives in opposing the king, and his death, which happened very early in the ensuing contest, was regretted alike by cavaliers and round-heads.

3. Sir Henry Vane was another promoter of the cause of the people. When quite young he came to America. His grave and solemn deportment won the hearts of the people of Massachusetts, and in 1636 he, being then about twenty-four years old, was elected governor of that colony. But his popularity was short-lived, and he soon returned to England, where a sympathy with the puritans, and a personal pique against Strafford, induced him to join the opponents of the king. He was a man of considerable ability; he was fond of theological discussions, and was the founder of a very fanatical sect, called *Seekers*.

4. Those whom we have now mentioned were more distinguished as speakers than as generals. The military leaders were the Earl of Essex and Lord Fairfax, both of whom were honest, well-intentioned men. The former was a son of Queen Elizabeth's wayward favorite. His pleasing manner and address were well calculated to gain the favor of the people. He was a good soldier, having had much experience in the wars of foreign countries.

5. The king's generals were his nephew, Prince Rupert, and the Marquis of Newcastle. Prince Rupert, who was a son of Charles' sister, Elizabeth, was a brave soldier, but too rash and impetuous to make a good general. He was the inventor of the style of engraving called *mezzotint*, which is said to have been suggested to him by observing the effect of rust upon an old gun, which a soldier was cleaning.

6. The Marquis of Newcastle was a man of immense wealth, and of great abilities, both in council and in the field. His high character induced many persons to join the royal army, and while he held the command, the royal cause prospered. The reader, doubtless, remembers Seymour, the husband of Lady Arabella Stuart. He had now become Lord Hertford, and though he held no high command in the army, was a great accession to the royal cause. He was fond of retirement and literary pursuits, but he cheerfully relinquished these to serve a master whose family he had no great reason to love.

7. There were many other men who attained to eminence in these troubl'd times, but these are all that we need to mention now. On the 25th of August, 1642, in the evening of a very stormy day, the king set up his royal standard at Nottingham. It did not stand

CLXVIII.—1. Who were the most influential of the puritans in parliament? What of Hampden? 3. What of Sir Henry Vane? What sect did he found? 4. Who were the military leaders for the parliament? 5. Who led the king's troops? What of Prince Rupert? 6. What of the Marquis of Newcastle? What of Lord Hertford?

long, for the violence of the wind soon laid it on the ground; an ill omen, which added to the gloom and sadness felt at that moment by all the king's friends.

8. The character of Charles seemed in some respects to have changed with the times. He now displayed a vigor and address which astonished those who knew his former studious and inactive habits. The stateliness and formality of his manner were relaxed into a more free and engaging deportment. He had formerly been impatient of injury or opposition; now he submitted with exemplary resignation and cheerfulness to the necessities of his hard condition. One fault remained unchanged—the wavering indecision of his mind, which led to a continual change of measures, according to the last opinion he heard.

9. His greatest difficulty was to raise money. The queen found means to get to Holland with her own and the crown jewels, which she disposed of in that country; and with the proceeds she purchased a small supply of arms and ammunition. The fleet having taken the side of the parliament, the little vessel that conveyed this supply to England had great difficulty in getting safely over, and at last escaped being taken, by running aground at a place where the water was too shallow for large ships to follow.

10. For the next six years England suffered the horrors of a civil war. Garrisons were placed in all the towns, and the people thought of little else but sieges and warfare. The first battle was fought October 3d, at Edgehill, in Warwickshire. In this contest neither party gained any decided advantage. Many engagements followed, in which the royal army, composed of well-trained soldiers, under officers experienced in the art of war, commonly proved successful over the undisciplined forces of the parliament.

11. But as these gained skill and experience, they became superior to any troops the king could bring into the field; for every man of them considered the cause of parliament to be his own, and heartily entered the service. But Charles was obliged to enlist any soldiers he could get, and amongst them many dissolute men, who ridiculed the precise and rigid character of the puritans, and expressed their contempt of them, not by setting a better example of what was right, but by showing themselves to be deriders of all religion and virtue.

12. Nothing was so ruinous to the king's cause as the conduct of these men, who committed all kinds of violence and excess; and the country-people naturally liked that party best by which they were most humanely treated. The parliament, finding it less easy to crush the king than they had expected, called in the aid of the Scots, and entered into what was called a Solemn League and Covenant with them.

13. As the parliament exercised without reserve the right of levying taxes, they were enabled, under continual defeat, to bring fresh

---

7. When was the king's standard raised? 8. What change in Charles' character?  
9. What of his supply of money? 10. Where and when was the first battle fought?  
What of the parliament's troops? 11, 12. What of the king's troops? Whose aid did

troops into the field. But it was not till 1644 that they gained any decisive victory. The first was at Marston Moor, about nine miles from York. The battle was fought in opposition to the advice of the Marquis of Newcastle; and he, despairing to benefit a cause where such rash counsels prevailed, gave up his command the morning after the conflict, and retired to Holland. After this there was a cessation of arms, and the country enjoyed a few months of rest, during which an attempt was made to reconcile the two parties.

---

### CHAPTER CLXIX.

*Oliver Cromwell.—Anecdotes of his Childhood.—His Character when he first appeared in Public Life.—About his Ironsides.*



OLIVER CROMWELL.

1. DURING the progress of the events just narrated, the republican party in the house, who in religion were known as *Independents*, had been gradually gaining the ascendancy. The chief leader of this party was Oliver Cromwell. This man, who was destined to act a very important part in the world, was born at Huntingdon, April 25th, 1599. There is a curious story told of a narrow escape which

---

the parliament solicit? 13. In what battle were the parliament's troops victorious for the first time?

CLXIX.—1. What party gained the ascendancy in parliament? Who was their

he had, when an infant, from the mischievous tricks of a monkey. He had been taken to visit his grandfather, old Sir Henry Cromwell, at Hinchinbroke, and while his nurse was out of the way, a great monkey, which was allowed to run loose about the house, snatched him out of the cradle, and ran with him upon the roof.

2. Here it was seen dancing about, with the child in its arms, to the great terror of the whole family. It was impossible to attempt to catch the animal; the only thing that could be done was to place feather-beds and carpets all round the house, for the child to fall on in case the monkey should let him drop. However, after some time the creature returned down into the house by the way it had got up, and brought the boy back in safety. From his infancy, Cromwell was distinguished by the activity of his body and of his mind. In cricket, football, and other athletic sports, he always took the lead.

3. There is another incident which is said to have happened at Hinchinbroke, which is not so well authenticated. It is related, that Oliver was there at a time when King James and his son Charles were on a visit to that hospitable mansion, and that the two boys quarrelled. Oliver was at an age and of a character to make little distinction between royal and plebeian blood, and, as the story goes, gave the prince a sound drubbing; which circumstance wiseacres in after times are glad to bring up, as an illustration of the saying, that "coming events cast their shadows before."

4. The study of the law was too sedentary an occupation to suit Cromwell's active disposition; so, relinquishing that pursuit, at the age of twenty-one he married and retired into the country, where he turned puritan, and soon became distinguished as a preacher and expounder of Scripture. In 1626, he was elected member of parliament, and was a warm opposer of the crown. Having, in the support of his religious opinions, much impaired his fortunes, in 1637, he agreed with Hampden, Pym, and some other disaffected persons, to leave England, and establish a settlement in America on republican principles.

5. They and their families were already embarked, and the ships were on the point of sailing, when the king, in an evil hour for himself, forbade their departure. As his character became known, Cromwell acquired a wonderful influence over the minds of men, and this is to be ascribed solely to the powers of his mind, for he had none of that address or pleasing exterior which is generally necessary to obtain popularity. He knew the precise moment when a thing was to be done; and he had that wonderful penetration into people's characters, that he seemed almost to see into their hearts and read their thoughts.

6. With all this, he could neither write nor speak with common ability. He had a vehement manner, which made people suppose there was some great matter in his speeches; but it was a hidden matter, for they were generally so confused, that it was almost im-

possible to find out his meaning. We will give a passage from one of his speeches, and the reader may make sense of it if he can.

7. "I confess, for it behoves me to deal plainly with you, I must confess, I would say I hope I may be understood in this, for indeed I must be tender in what I say to such an audience as this, I say I would be understood that in this argument I do not make a parallel between men of a different mind, and a parliament which shall have their deserts." The whole speech is in the same strain; but this is doubtless enough.

8. Cromwell was, at this period of his life, a sloven in his dress, which was the more conspicuous at a time when gentlemen's attire was unusually graceful. A royalist memoir-writer thus speaks of him: "The first time that I ever took notice of him, was in November, 1640. When I came one morning to the house of commons, I perceived a gentleman speaking, very ordinarily apparelled; for it was a plain suit, which seemed to have been made by an ill country tailor. His linen was plain, and not very clean, and I remember a speck of blood upon his hand.

9. "His stature was of a good size; his countenance swollen and reddish; his voice harsh and untunable, and his eloquence full of fervor." Cromwell's appearance, however, was afterwards improved; for the same writer adds, "I lived to see this very gentleman, by multiplied good successes, and by real (though usurped) power, having had a better tailor, and more converse among good company, appear of a great and majestic deportment, and comely presence."

10. At length hostilities commenced between the king and the parliament, and a scene of action more agreeable to Cromwell's character was opened to him. It was chiefly owing to his exertions and activity that the parliament's army became so well disciplined and organized. He raised a body of cavalry among the hardy young farmers, which he commanded in person. It was Cromwell and his *Ironsides*, as his troop was called from its unyielding courage, that gained the victory at Marston Moor; for in the early part of the day fortune had inclined to the royal side.

## CHAPTER CLXX.

*The Battle of Naseby decides the Contest.—The King takes refuge with the Scots.—Is sold by them to the Parliament.—He is seized by the Army.—Cromwell lays aside the mask.*

1. THE Earl of Essex, with many others who had joined the parliament side with a wish to redress grievances, and not to overthrow the monarchy, were now anxious to make an accommodation

client? 8. What of his personal habits and appearance? 10. What of his military talents? What was his body of troops called? Why?

with the king, but they were overruled by the independents. Essex was obliged to resign the command of the army, which was given to Lord Fairfax, an honest, easy man, who was the mere tool of Cromwell, who was next in command. This was a very clever contrivance on the part of the latter; for, if things went well, he had the advantage; if they went ill, Fairfax had the blame.

2. Many thought that the cause of the parliament would be much injured by this change; but the event proved them to be wrong; for, after the renewal of the war, their troops were everywhere victorious. The battle which decided the contest was fought near Naseby, June 14th, 1646. The king, as he was marching northwards with his army, received information that Fairfax, with his troops, which he supposed to be in another part of the country, was within five miles of him.

3. He halted, and called a council of war, in which he proposed to remain where he was till all his forces could be collected; but the eagerness of Rupert's temper prevailed over the better judgment of the king, and persuaded him to march immediately against Fairfax. The king showed himself to be a prudent general and a valorous soldier. Had he been opposed to Fairfax alone, he probably would have prevailed. But Cromwell and his Ironsides brought terror and conquest wherever they appeared.

4. The king's troops could not stand their onset, but gave way. Charles exhorted his cavalry to rally, by calling out to them, "One charge more, and we recover the day!" But the day was too far lost to be regained. Cromwell gained a complete victory; and Charles was obliged to abandon his artillery and baggage to the enemy. Amongst other things which fell into their hands was a cabinet, containing copies of the king's private letters to the queen, which the parliament published.

5. After the battle of Naseby, the king's affairs went fast to ruin. At length his condition became so desperate, that there seemed to be no alternative but to wait and be taken prisoner by the army of the triumphant parliament, or to throw himself upon the tender mercies of an army of Scots, who were engaged in the cause of the parliament. He chose the latter, and accordingly set out one night in the beginning of May, 1646, disguised as the servant of Mr. Ashburnham, who accompanied him. He reached the camp in safety.

6. The Scottish generals were much surprised to see the king; and though they affected to treat him with great respect, they placed a guard upon him, and made him in reality a prisoner. The preachers did not restrain their zeal, but insulted him to his face. One of these fanatics, in a sermon preached before the king, reproached him severely, and ordered the fifty-second psalm to be sung:

"Why dost thou, tyrant, boast thyself,  
Thy wicked deeds to praise?"

On this the king stood up, and, with a dignity and meekness that

---

CLXX.—1. What change in the command of the army? 2. What resulted from this change? What battle decided the contest? 5. What became of the king after the battle? 6. How was he treated by the Scots? 7. What negotiation between the parlia-

touched even the rigid enthusiasts, called for the fifty-sixth psalm in turn:

"Have mercy, Lord, on me, I pray,  
For men would me devour!"

which was sung accordingly.

7. The king was now obliged to issue orders for all his troops to submit. The Marquis of Worcester, who was above eighty-four years of age, held out his castle of Rayland till it was reduced to the utmost extremity, and was the last man in England who laid down his arms. As soon as the parliament knew that the king was in the hands of the Scots, it began to treat with them for the possession of his person. The Scots finally agreed to surrender him, upon receiving 400,000 pounds sterling, which was due to them, as pay.

8. A private letter, giving information of the bargain, was brought to Charles while he was playing at chess; and his self-command was so great, that he continued his game without betraying, by his countenance or manner, that he had received any distressing news. In a few days he was given up to commissioners, appointed by parliament, from whom he selected Mr. Herbert and Mr. Harrington, to attend upon him in the place of his own servants, who had been dismissed.

9. The war being at an end, the parliament was desirous of disbanding the army; but the officers and soldiers found it more for their interest to remain together. Cromwell continued at his place in parliament, but secretly kept up his correspondence with the disaffected troops, and by his advice they formed the bold design of taking possession of the king's person. An officer named Joyce was sent with five hundred men to seize him. This man, armed with pistols, made his way into the king's presence, and told him that he must come along with him.

10. The king asked by what warrant he acted, and Joyce answered by pointing to his soldiers, who were a fine body of men, drawn up in the court-yard. The king said, smiling, "Your warrant is indeed written in fair characters and legible," and immediately accompanied him to the head-quarters of the army.

11. The parliament were thrown into the utmost consternation when they heard of this, and beginning to see through Cromwell's designs, resolved to commit him to the Tower; but he eluded their purpose, and hastened to the army, where he was received with acclamations of joy. A body of troops was sent to London, and both the city and the parliament were subjected to the authority of Cromwell, who now became the acknowledged chief of his party.

---

ment and the Scots? 2. What instance of Charles' self-command? What was done with him? 9. What of the troops? What design was formed? By whom executed? 11 What of Cromwell?

## CHAPTER CLXXI.

*Cromwell discovers the Insincerity of the King.—The latter attempts to escape, but is detained in the Isle of Wight.—His manner of Life there.—Colonel Pride's Purge.*

1. THE situation of the king was now more comfortable than it had been for some time. He was allowed to worship God according to the forms of his own faith ; and he frequently had the happiness of seeing two of his children, Henry and Elizabeth. Cromwell, who was present at one of these interviews, confessed that he had never witnessed such a touching scene. It is said that Cromwell at this time was ready to come to terms with the king, but that the discovery of his insincerity and double dealing, a proneness to which was the greatest defect in Charles' character, made him abandon all thoughts of it.

2. It will be remembered that there were two powerful bodies, the army, with Cromwell at its head, who were supported by the independents, and the more moderate party of Presbyterians, who had a majority in the parliament, and who were in correspondence with their religious brethren in Scotland. One day Cromwell received information that the king, contrary to his professions, had secretly made an arrangement with his political opponents, and that he and the other leaders of the independents were doomed to destruction.

3. He also received information that Charles had written a letter to his wife, giving the details of the plan ; and that this letter would be sewed up in the flap of a saddle, which would be brought, at ten o'clock at night, to a certain inn at London, by a man who would saddle a horse and ride off to Dover. Upon this information, Cromwell, with another leader of his party, named Ireton, went on the appointed night to this inn, disguised as troopers. They left some person to keep watch at the stable, who was to tell them if any man came with a saddle, and they themselves went into the house, and sat drinking beer like common soldiers.

4. At the specified hour they had notice that the man was come. They then went out, and taking the saddle away from him, opened the lining, and found the letter. They then returned the man his saddle, and he, knowing nothing of his loss, pursued his way to Dover. The letter confirmed the information which Cromwell had before received, as to the intentions of the king, and from that hour he vowed his destruction.

5. Charles lived in constant apprehension of being murdered by some of the religious fanatics, and his fears at length drove him to attempt his escape from the country. He reached the coast of Hampshire in safety, but his usual fortune attended him ; for the

---

CLXXI.—1. What of the king's condition ? 2, 3, 4. Relate the anecdote of the king's double-dealing. 5. Relate the particulars of the king's attempt to escape. Where was

vessel which he expected to find there had not arrived. He then sought refuge in the Isle of Wight, which was held for the parliament by Colonel Hammond. Here he was once more made a prisoner, and on being placed in close confinement in Carisbrook Castle, Herbert and Harrington alone were allowed to attend upon him.

6. Colonel Hammond behaved with great feeling towards his royal prisoner, and allowed him every indulgence in his power. He caused a bowling-green to be prepared outside the castle, and built a summer-house upon it. Bowling was one of Charles' favorite amusements; and he could enjoy from the summer-house a better view of the sea, than from the melancholy walls of his prison. A part of the day the king always set aside for his devotions, and he spent much of his time alone writing in his chamber.

7. The rest of the day he employed in reading, in exercise, and in conversing with his two attendants, who were both of them accomplished men, particularly Mr. Herbert, who had travelled much in Persia and other countries of the East. The zeal of the puritan preachers brought some of them to Carisbrook, with the intention of preaching before the king; but he civilly declined hearing their sermons.

8. In September, 1648, he entered into a new treaty with commissioners sent by parliament, which had for a time recovered some of its authority. When the king met the commissioners, an affecting change was perceived to have taken place in his aspect since the preceding year. His countenance was pale and dejected; his hair was turned white, and it brought tears into the eyes of the spectators, to see his "gray and discrowned head." These words are from a sonnet which he composed about this time.

9. The treaty was seemingly drawing to a favorable conclusion, when Cromwell, by one daring act, annihilated the power of parliament, and destroyed all Charles' hopes of security. On the 7th of December, 1648, he sent Colonel Pride with a body of troops to summon the parliament-house, a little before the time when the members were to assemble, with orders to exclude all who did not belong to the independent and republican party.

10. Those who were disposed to make merry with this dethroning of a portion of those who had dethroned the king, gave to this exclusion the name of *Colonel Pride's purge*, by which it is at this day commonly known. Those members of parliament who were admitted, about fifty or sixty in number, immediately appointed themselves governors of the kingdom, and declared that no further negotiations should be had with the king.

---

he afterwards confined? 6, 7. How did he spend his time? 8. When were negotiations renewed with the parliament? 9. What put an end to the power of the parliament? When? In what manner?

## CHAPTER CLXXII.

*Charles is tried for High Treason.—His Execution.*



TRIAL OF CHARLES I.

1. BEFORE his attack on the parliament, Cromwell had secured the possession of the king's person; for, two days before that *purg-ing*, Charles had been removed by his orders to Hurst Castle, a dreary fortress on the coast of Hampshire, one of the counties of England, and which, at high tide, was nearly surrounded by the sea. In this melancholy place the king passed nearly a month. The room he generally sat in was so dark as to require candles at noonday, and his only recreation was in walking up and down the narrow sand-bank that connected the castle with the mainland, and in watching the ships that sailed past his prison.

2. Charles supposed that he had been brought to this lonely place for the purpose of being murdered, and lived in the full expectation that each day would be his last. One night he was waked from his sleep by hearing the drawbridge of the castle let down, and soon after he heard the clatter of horsemen in the court. His alarm was not lessened when he learned that Major Harrison had arrived, for he had been warned that this person was one of those who intended to kill him.

3. He was soon informed, however, that the object of the major's coming was to convey him to Windsor, and he was not sorry to leave Hurst Castle, even under such an escort. Though Charles had

lived in the daily expectation of a violent death, it had not occurred to his mind that he, a king, could be accused and brought to trial as a criminal, by his own subjects; an indignity which royalty till then had never suffered. He was not prepared, therefore, for the information, that, on the 6th of January, 1649, an accusation, or, as it is called, an *impeachment*, of high treason had been brought against him, for having presumed to appear in arms against the parliament.

4. On the 18th of January, Charles was removed from Windsor to the royal palace in London, called *St. James' Palace*. This was, until quite recently, the residence of the sovereigns of Great Britain, and is still made use of upon state occasions; whence the name, *Court of St. James*, frequently applied to the British government. Charles was now treated with more severity; his guards and attendants were ordered to conduct towards him as being no longer a sovereign, and to call him merely Charles Stuart. His own servants were not permitted to wait on him at table, and common soldiers, in their armor, were appointed to bring him his meals.

5. Charles was much shocked at this disrespect, but, soon recovering his composure, said, "Nothing is so contemptible as a despised king;" and, to avoid the disagreeable attendance of the soldiers, ate alone in his bed-chamber. The preparations for the trial were soon made, and on the 20th of January, 1649, the judges assembled in Westminster Hall for that purpose. The names were called over, and on the name of Fairfax being spoken, a voice from among the spectators called out, "He has more wit than to be here;" and when, in the articles of impeachment, the king was said to be accused "in the name of the people of England," the same voice exclaimed, "Not a tenth part of them!"

6. The soldiers were ordered to fire at the spot from whence the voice had proceeded; but on its being discovered that Lady Fairfax was the speaker, they, in consideration of her sex and rank, did not fire. Lady Fairfax had been a warm politician, and had urged her husband to oppose the king; but now, seeing that the struggle was likely to end in his sacrifice, and the exaltation of Cromwell, they both heartily repented of the part they had taken. On the 27th of January, Charles was declared guilty of having appeared in arms against the parliament, and sentenced to be beheaded on the third day after.

7. As he passed along the streets, the soldiers uttered the most insulting and unfeeling cries. Some even spit upon him; but one uttered a blessing, for which his officer struck him to the ground. The king, observing it, said, "The punishment, methinks, exceeds the offence." On the day preceding that fixed for his execution, he was permitted to see his son Henry and daughter Elizabeth; of the rest of his children, two were in Holland, and one, Henrietta, in France.

8. Henry was only seven years old, and his father said to him, as he sat upon his knee, "Mark, my child, what I say: they will cut

off my head, and will want, perhaps, to make thee king; but thou must not be king, so long as thy brothers Charles and James are alive: therefore, I charge thee, do not be made a king by them." The child looked earnestly in his father's face, and exclaimed, "I will be torn in pieces first!"—an answer that made the king shed tears.



CHARLES I. TAKING LEAVE OF HIS FAMILY.

9. On the 30th of January, 1649, Charles was led, through an opening made in the wall of the banqueting-room of the palace of Whitehall, to a scaffold erected in front of that building. He addressed a few words to those about him; he declared himself innocent towards his people; but acknowledged that the execution of an unjust sentence was now deservedly punished by an unjust sentence inflicted on himself; so heavily did the death of Strafford still press upon his heart. Turning to Bishop Juxon, who attended him, he said, "*Remember*," and then laid his head upon the block. One blow severed it from the body, and the executioner, holding it up, said, "This is the head of a traitor!"

10. Those present were curious, as the reader may be, to know what the king meant by the word "*Remember*," and called upon Juxon to explain it. He said that it was meant to enforce the king's earnest injunction, that he would exhort the prince, his son, to forgive his father's murderers. Charles was in the forty-ninth year of his age, and the twenty-fifth of his reign. It will be less interruption to our story to state at once what became of his family. The queen lived in France, uncomfortably enough, on a pension allowed her by Louis XIV., who was her nephew.

11. This pension must have been very small, or ill paid, as her daughter, Henrietta, was at one time obliged to remain in bed

for want of fuel to make a fire. When Prince Charles, her son, became King of England, as you shall hear presently, the queen returned to England; but she interfered so much in public affairs, that her son was obliged to send her back to France, where she died in 1669. Prince Charles was eighteen years old when his father died, and of him, and his brother James and sister Mary, we shall hereafter have more to say.



EXECUTION OF CHARLES I.

12. The parliament wished to bring Prince Henry up to some mechanical trade; but Cromwell sent him abroad to his mother. He died at an early age, leaving an excellent character behind him. The Princess Elizabeth was to have been apprenticed to a button-maker; but her death, caused, it is said, by grief for her father's fate, prevented the execution of the intention. The Princess Henrietta was unfortunate from the beginning to the end of her life.

13. She was born after the commencement of the civil war, and brought up at the dissipated court of Louis XIV., of France. She married that king's brother, the Duke of Orleans, and behaved in such a manner as to give him just displeasure; she died suddenly, in the pride of youth and beauty, and is supposed to have been poisoned by her husband. How enviable was the fate of a little sister compared with hers!

10. How old was he? What became of the queen? 12, 13, 14. What became of the king's children?

14. This little princess, being only four years old, lay upon her death-bed. One of her attendants desired her to pray. She said she could not say her long prayer, meaning the Lord's prayer, but that she would try to say her short one: "Lighten my darkness, O Lord! and let me not sleep the sleep of death." She then laid her little head on the pillow and expired.

#### FAMILY OF CHARLES I.

##### WIFE.

Henrietta Maria, daughter of Henry IV., called the Great, King of France.

##### CHILDREN.

1. Charles, Prince of Wales, } afterwards Kings of England in succession.
3. James, Duke of York,
6. Henry, Duke of Gloucester.
2. Mary, who married the Prince of Orange.
4. Elizabeth, who died young.
5. Anna, who died before her father's death.
7. Henrietta, Duchess of Orleans.

### CHAPTER CLXXIII.

*Anecdotes of Charles I.—The Icon Basilike.—Inigo Jones.—The Public Buildings mutilated by the Puritans.—William Harvey.—The Sect of Quakers rises.*

1. THE late king had many well-wishers and warm friends, but these were, in general, helpless people, or persons who had already exhausted all their means in his cause. But they took various methods of making known the sympathy which they felt for him in his misfortunes, and, at the risk of being punished by the parliament, showed him many little acts of kindness.

2. As he was on his way to his prison at Carisbrook Castle, one day in November, a lady presented him with a damask rose, which had blown in her garden at that unusual season. The gift, to be sure, was nothing in itself, but, as showing the feelings of the giver, was of great value to the poor prisoner. The day before his execution, one of his old servants sent his humble duty to him, and begged he would read the second chapter of Ecclesiastes. The king sent his thanks to the good old man for his kind remembrance of him, and immediately read the chapter with much satisfaction. He was in the habit of reading the Bible every day, and found in it his best support and consolation in his afflictions.

3. A few days after the death of Charles, a book was published called *Icon Basilike*, or, as these words have been rendered, "The king's portraiture in his solitudes and his sufferings." This book purports to have been written by the king, and so general was the belief

that it passed through fifty editions in one year. The authorship of this book is still a matter of dispute; but most persons suppose the real author to have been Dr. Gauden, afterwards Bishop of Exeter.

4. Charles was fond of literature, and was found fault with by some for paying more attention to style in writing than was proper for a great monarch. He was also a lover of pictures, and sometimes handled the pencil himself. The pieces of foreign masters were bought up at a vast price; and the value of pictures doubled in Europe in consequence of the rivalry of Charles and Philip IV. of Spain to possess themselves of the best. All the king's pictures were sold by order of parliament, who carried their hatred of royalty to such a length as to cause some of the royal palaces to be pulled in pieces, and the materials to be sold.

5. Many of these palaces had been built or improved by Inigo Jones, a celebrated architect, much favored by Charles and by his father. Jones incurred the displeasure of parliament by his fidelity to his royal master, and for having, in rebuilding the great church of St. Paul's in London, pulled down some houses to make room for it, in obedience to the orders of the government. The Puritans considered these great churches and cathedrals as remnants of Popery, and took especial delight in destroying and disfiguring them.

6. The beautiful painted glass in the windows, the statues of the saints on the outside, and even the monuments of the dead, were destroyed. The lead was stripped from the roofs, and the brass plates from the tombs, and used for making bullets and cannon. Many of the cathedrals were used as barracks. In Chichester Cathedral, the place is pointed out where Cromwell's soldiers littered down their horses. The king's library at St. James' palace was saved by the prudence of John Selden, a distinguished scholar and philosopher, one of the liberal party in politics, though opposed to the extreme measures of his friends.

7. Most of the men of genius and ability who lived at this time were on the side of the parliament. But William Harvey, who discovered the circulation of the blood and the proper office of the heart in animals, was the king's physician, and the king took much interest in his investigations. This important discovery occasioned a great loss of practice to its author. So absurd did the doctrine appear, which now seems so clear that it is absurd to doubt its truth.

8. The patience and resignation with which Charles bore his misfortunes excite our sympathy, but should not prevent our doing justice to the motives and character of his opponents. Many, if not most, of the leaders were actuated by the most conscientious regard for the public good, without any personal feelings of selfishness or ambition. In private life, the members of this party were, on the whole, far more estimable in their conduct than the royalists.

9. There is one sect of Christians which arose about this time, whose pure morals and peaceful lives make them worthy of regard.

This was the sect of Quakers. The founder was George Fox, who was born of poor parents, and bound apprentice to a shoemaker. He was never a student of books, but the great success of his preaching is a proof that he had studied human nature to some purpose.

---

## CHAPTER CLXXIV.

*England a Commonwealth.—Incident connected with the Siege of Pontefract Castle.—The Scots invite Prince Charles to be their King.—They are defeated at Dunbar by Cromwell.—Charles marches into England, and is defeated at Worcester.*

1. THE first act of parliament, after the death of the king, was to abolish the house of lords, as being useless and dangerous. A new great seal of England was made, with this *legend*, as the inscription on a seal is called, "The first year of Freedom, by God's blessing, restored 1648." In 1633, an equestrian statue of brass had been erected in honor of King Charles. The parliament ordered this, which was the first equestrian statue set up in England, to be broken in pieces and sold for old brass. The state, under its new form of government, was called *The Commonwealth of England*.

2. It was made high treason, which is the highest crime against any government, to call Prince Charles by any other name than Charles Stuart. But some of his friends had the courage to print and distribute a paper proclaiming him King of England. Small bands of the royalists still maintained themselves in different parts of the country, chiefly in the fortified castles. These were all subdued, and the castles, for the most part, destroyed, to prevent their again becoming a source of annoyance. There is quite a romantic story told about the final capture and destruction of one of these.

3. Pontefract Castle had been taken and retaken more than once during the war, and in 1649 was held by a party of Nottinghamshire gentlemen, who valiantly defended themselves. Cromwell himself had gone to Ireland, from which quarter the English had reason to apprehend the most danger, since the Irish were almost all royalists. He therefore sent Lambert, one of his generals, to reduce Pontefract Castle. The garrison were soon obliged to solicit terms; and Lambert agreed that, on giving up the castle, all the garrison should have leave to depart in safety, six persons excepted, whose names he mentioned, who, having been particularly active against the parliament, must be put to death.

4. The garrison could not bear the thought of giving up any of their brother soldiers to certain destruction, and demanded of Lambert that they might have six days allowed them before they surrendered

the castle; during which it should be permitted for their six companions to use any honorable means of making their escape. Lambert granted their desire, saying that he knew these six persons to be brave and gallant gentlemen, and that, if he might, he would gladly save them all.

5. During the first four days the garrison made frequent sallies, and four of the six contrived to effect their escape. Sir Hugh Cartwright and one other remained behind; and they, being unwilling to expose any more of the lives of their friends, contrived another way of saving themselves. They found a convenient nook amongst the walls, where they caused themselves to be walled up with a month's provisions, trusting to the hope that the king's troops would retake the castle in that time.

6. The rest of the garrison then sent word to Lambert that they were ready to surrender. When they had left the castle, Lambert, luckily for the two immured heroes, destroyed the castle, and left the place in ruins. Sir Hugh and his companion, after ten days, finding all quiet, left their hiding-place, and made their escape.

7. It might naturally be expected that the Irish, who were for the most part Roman Catholics, should be opposed to the parliament; but this body was also opposed to the Scottish Presbyterians, who refused to acknowledge the English republic, and, resolving to adhere to the monarchy, invited Charles to take possession of the throne; but upon such hard conditions that his best friends counselled him not to make such sacrifices for the empty title of king. But Charles, who entertained, probably, the dishonest intention of breaking his promise as soon as his power was established, agreed to everything, and went to Scotland.

8. He found his situation in that country comfortless enough. He was treated with none of the respect usually paid to a sovereign, and was, indeed, little better than a helpless prisoner in the hands of merciless tormentors. He was naturally of a lively disposition, and delighted only in gayety; but he was not allowed to enter into any kind of amusements, and was harassed from morning till night by the covenanters, who sought, by dint of sermons and exhortations, to convert him to their faith.

9. Under these circumstances, he was secretly rejoiced to learn that Cromwell, who in a few months had reduced Ireland to subjection, was now advancing with a powerful army to drive him from his uneasy throne. Cromwell posted himself at Dunbar, where he was attacked on September 3d, 1650, by the Scots under General Leslie. Though twice as numerous as the English, these met with a terrible defeat, and Cromwell would soon have made himself entire master of the kingdom, had he not been attacked with a violent fit of illness, and obliged to return to England.

10. But the next year he again entered Scotland, and advanced so far into the country as to leave the army of the royalists between himself and England. Charles, seeing the road to England open,

---

the rights of Prince Charles? 8. What of Charles' situation in Scotland? 9. When and where was the battle between the Scots and English fought? 10. What bold project did

formed the bold resolution of marching forward into that country, believing that he should there be joined by all his friends. But he was deceived in this hope, and he arrived at Worcester with only his 14,000 Scots.

11. Cromwell, when he found that Charles had slipped by him, left his army in Scotland under the command of General Monk, and followed him with all possible expedition, calling upon the people of the country through which he passed to join him in repelling the invaders. The call was promptly obeyed, so that by the time he reached Worcester he mustered a considerable force. The next day, September 3d, 1651, he surrounded the town with his troops, and, attacking the royal army, soon destroyed it.

## CHAPTER CLXXV.

*Adventures of Charles after the Battle of Worcester.*



KING CHARLES IN THE OAK.

1. AFTER a desperate resistance, Charles was forced to seek safety in flight, and he did not stop till he reached Whiteladies, a house twenty-six miles from Worcester, on the borders of Shrop-

shire and Staffordshire, and occupied by a staunch royalist named George Penderill. The prince met with a most kind reception ; but it was thought that he would be safer at a place called Boscobel, situated about a mile distant on a wild hilly common, where lived Richard Penderill, a brother of George's.

2. Richard was sent for, and soon arrived. What followed we will give in the words of the narrative, which was published in the king's name after his restoration. "Richard was no sooner come in than he was called upon to make haste and bring his best clothes, which were a jump and breeches of green, coarse cloth, and a doe-skin leather doublet ; the hat was borrowed of Humphrey Penderill the miller, being an old gray one, that turned up its brims ; the shirt, which in that country language they called burden, of cloth that is made of the coarsest of the hemp, was had of one Edward Martin, George's band, and William Creswell's shoes, which the king, having unstripped himself of his own clothes, did nimbly put on.

3. "His buff coat and linen doublet, and a gay pair of breeches, which he wore before, were buried in the ground. The jewels off his arm he gave to one of the lords who attended him. Then Richard came with a pair of shears and rounded the king's hair, which my Lord Wilmot having before cut with a knife, had untowardly notched ; and the king was pleased to take notice of his good barbering, so as to prefer his work before my Lord Wilmot's ; and now his majesty was *à la mode* the woodman."

4. Taking an axe in his hand, Charles proceeded to a neighboring wood, where he passed the day without being discovered by the enemy's troops, who had come to Whiteladies in search of him. At nightfall he went to Boscobel, where he ate a hearty supper, and then started for Wales, whence he hoped to escape into France. But after one night and day spent in a barn at Madeby, he returned to Boscobel. Here he found Colonel Careless, who had been his companion in arms at Worcester.

5. Being told that it was dangerous for them either to remain in the house or to go again into the wood, they both mounted into a large oak. This tree had been lopped three or four years before, and being grown out very bushy and thick, could not be seen through ; but the fugitives could see the soldiers passing backward and forward, searching for them. Notwithstanding his perilous situation, Charles enjoyed a good nap, resting his head in the colonel's lap. When he awoke he was very hungry, and his friend regaled him with some bread and cheese, which Penderill's provident dame had not forgotten.

6. It was not deemed safe for Charles to remain long in one part of the country ; accordingly, at night, on the 7th of September, he set out for Morseby. His feet were so bruised and galled that he could not walk ; so Humphrey, the miller, mounted him on his mill-horse, and thus he made his journey in safety. On the 9th he went to the

house of Colonel Lane, a steady royalist, whose wife, Mrs. Jane Lane, had some time before obtained permission from the parliament's general, to proceed with a servant to Leigh, near Bristol.

7. It was arranged that Charles should act the servant. Accordingly, early on the 10th, having put on a suit of country gray cloth, and taking the name of William Jackson, he set out on horseback, with Mrs. Lane on a pillion behind him. They stayed that night at the house of Mr. Tombs, at Long-Maston. Will Jackson, of course, passed the evening in the kitchen. The cook, a great rough countrywoman, told him to wind up the roasting-jack for her.

8. This was novel work for Charles, and he set about his task in such a blundering way, that the cook exclaimed to him in a passion, "What countryman are you, that you know not how to wind up a jack?" The king answered, with all appearance of humility, that he was a poor Staffordshire lad; that they seldom had roast meat at home, and that when they had, they did not make use of a jack.

9. On the 12th they arrived safely at Leigh. Upon the pretence that he was sick of an ague, a better chamber was provided for Will Jackson than servants are usually treated with; and some of the best meat, a matter about which he seems to have been by no means indifferent, was sent to him from the master's table.

10. We have not space to relate all Charles' romantic adventures and hair-breadth escapes between this time and the 15th of October, when he succeeded in embarking at Shoreham in a small vessel, from which he was landed the next day in Normandy. During his wandering he was obliged to confide in a large number of persons, both of high and low degree; but not one of them violated this confidence, notwithstanding an enormous sum of money was promised by parliament to any person who would arrest him, and the most severe punishment threatened to be inflicted upon all who should assist in concealing him.

---

## CHAPTER CLXXVI.

*Success of the English in a War with Holland.—Cromwell makes himself sole Ruler.—Curious Names adopted by the Puritans.*

1. WHILE Charles was wandering about, an unhappy fugitive, the party in power went on triumphantly. Monk was successful in Scotland; Ireton held everything quiet in Ireland. The fleets under Admirals Blake and Ayscue kept off foreign invaders, and reduced to obedience the colonies in America and the West Indies. The country was now in a condition to demand redress for the injuries and insults that had been received from foreign states.

---

of the time? 6. Relate the particulars of his escape from Boscobel. What happened to him till his final escape from the country?

2. The demand was first made upon Holland, which, from the superior excellence of her ships and the skill of her seamen, was supposed by herself and other countries to be invincible upon the ocean. But the British navy, manned by sailors whom the circumstances of the times had made bold and valiant, and commanded by the gallant Blake, soon convinced them of the contrary. For, with greatly inferior forces, he repeatedly gained victories over the veteran admirals Van Tromp, De Ruyter, and De Witt.



CROMWELL DISSOLVING THE PARLIAMENT.

3. But the parliament, who were the nominal rulers of the country, were entitled to no share of the praise for these successes. A government, to be well administered, must have one efficient head. There were many men of ability in the parliament, but each had his own particular ideas about the best mode of carrying on the government, which he would not surrender.

4. Things could not long continue in this state; the safety of all required a change. Whilst they were quarrelling about the best mode of steering, the good ship of state was in danger of being dashed to pieces on the rocks; some one man must take possession of the helm; and who should this be but Cromwell, to whose energy and watchfulness she had been indebted for her prosperous course thus far?

CLXXVI.—1. What of the successes of the parliament? 2. What demands on foreign nations? With what success against Holland? 3, 4. What of the leaders in parliament?

5. He resolved to do so; and his credit was too firmly established to need any artifice; accordingly, on the 20th of April, 1653, he went to the parliament-house, while the members were assembled, and, placing a file of soldiers at the door, entered the hall and sat down. After sitting some time, he suddenly started up, exclaiming, "This is the time,—I must do it!" meaning, that what he was about to do, was to be done by the express command of God. We have already stated that the Puritans were remarkably strict in all religious observances.

6. The Independents were the most rigid of Puritans; they took the Bible for their law-book; and, being ardent and enthusiastic, persuaded themselves that God took an immediate part in the affairs of the world, and made known his will to such as asked it of him by sincere and earnest prayer. Acting upon this belief, the leaders, on important occasions, resorted to prayer, and their decision was in accordance with the answer supposed to be returned—a very unsafe mode of proceeding, since, the interpretation resting with themselves, it would always be in correspondence with their own wishes.

7. Thus, the execution of Charles was asserted to have been in compliance with a divine command directly made known to them. Doubtless, many of the Puritans were sincere; perhaps some were hypocrites. The enemies of Cromwell say that he belonged to the latter class; for a man of his great abilities, they assert, could not have so deceived himself. This, however, is one of the points in history that can never be decided; certain it is, that he exhibited every mark of sincerity.

8. We shall now understand his exclamation. He had been seeking counsel from on high, and the result was now to be made known. Turning to the members, he loaded them with reproaches; he then stamped with his foot; on which signal the soldiers entering the hall, he ordered them to drive all the members out; first saying, "You are no longer a parliament; the Lord has chosen other instruments for carrying on his work. I have sought the Lord night and day, that he would rather slay me than put me upon this work."

9. He stayed till the hall was cleared; then, ordering the door to be locked, he put the keys into his pocket, and returned to the palace at Whitehall, where he and his family had taken up their residence. He was now the sole head of the government, and assumed more authority than even the most arbitrary of the king had done. To keep up something of the appearance of a commonwealth, he summoned a parliament, consisting of the most ignorant religious fanatics.

10. One of the chief orators in this parliament was one Barebone; hence it was called *Barebone's* parliament. The Puritans, to show their religious zeal, discarded the usual Christian names as being heathenish, and adopted others which they deemed more holy. Even the New Testament names of James, Thomas, Peter, &c.,

---

8. Relate the particulars of Cromwell's attack on the parliament. 9. What of the extent of his power? 10. What was the parliament called? What is said of names?

were not held in such regard as those borrowed from the Old Testament, such as *Habakkuk* and *Zerubbabel*. Sometimes a whole sentence was adopted. Thus we read of *Stratford-upon-Avon*, *Kill-Sin*, *Pimple*, *Fight-the-Good-Fight-of-Faith*, *Worcester*, *More-Fool*, *Fowler*, *Good-Reward* Smart.

11. Barebone himself was named *Praise-God*, and he had a brother named, *If-Christ-had-not-died-for-you-you-had-been-sinner*. Barebone. This was too long a name to be repeated every time he was addressed, so people generally called him *Leaden* Barebone. The parliament went to work as pompously as if it really possessed power; but its conduct was so absurd, that Cromwell became ashamed of it, and sent all the members about their business.

## CHAPTER CLXXVII.

*Cromwell made Protector.—Prosperous State of England under his Government.—A Conspiracy formed by the Royalists, but Cromwell gets information of it by means of the Post-office.—Newspapers.—The Members of Cromwell's Family.—His Death.*

1. THE officers of the army, acting under the direction of Cromwell, now prepared a new constitution, which vested the supreme authority in him, with the title of *Protector*. He now assumed all the state of a king, and acted his part with the greatest dignity; his wife was called *Her Highness*; and his daughters were waited upon by ambassadors and foreigners as if they had been princesses. The great mass of the people were thankful to get rid of the oppression of the parliament, and to enjoy a settled government. Justice was administered promptly, and order maintained.

2. Under Cromwell's wise and energetic government, England enjoyed prosperity at home, and the respect and consideration of foreign powers, to a degree to which she had never before attained. The Dutch were soon obliged to sue for peace. Jamaica was taken from the Spaniards, and still remains a possession of Great Britain. A new parliament, which he summoned, offered Cromwell the title of king, but he refused it; and was contented to have the protectorship confirmed to him for life, with the power of conferring it on whomsoever he pleased at his death.

3. The royalists did not remain idle; and in 1655, a plan for a general rising was adopted. But Cromwell had full information of their designs, having the carriers and postmasters so fully under his control, that no treasonable letters could pass undiscovered; and before the appointed day many of the royalists were taken up; some were punished with death, and some were sold for slaves, and

sent to Barbadoes. This act struck terror through the disaffected, and no considerable attempt was afterwards made to overturn the protector's power.



CROMWELL REJECTING THE CROWN.

4. Post-offices, which proved of such service to Cromwell, had not been long established. Charles I. appointed a post to carry letters once a week between London and Edinburgh. But the system was much extended and improved under Cromwell. In earlier times, there were persons whose business it was to carry letters; and in the time of Henry VIII., there were established carriers; but the system was very imperfect and irregular. The curious way in which letters were formerly directed would puzzle a modern postmaster.

5. A letter addressed by a nobleman of Henry VIII.'s court to Lord Shrewsbury, was thus directed: "To the right honorable and our very good lord the Earl of Shrewsbury, president of the king's majesty's council in the north parts. Haste for thy life, post—haste, haste, haste—for thy life, post, haste." The letter did not require any extraordinary haste; and indeed Lord Shrewsbury's correspondent, either in that letter or in some other, apologizes for putting so much speed in the direction, and adds, "The only cause is that the posts be so slow."

6. The mention of the post-office naturally reminds us of newspapers. These were first circulated in the reign of Elizabeth, in order, we believe, to apprise the country of the defeat of the Spanish Armada. After this, they must have been discontinued for many years, since the date commonly assigned to their first publication is that of 1642.

7. Though no attempts were openly made against him, Cromwell knew, by means of his spies, that many persons had formed the design of taking his life. Though he had so often braved danger in battle with intrepidity, he now betrayed a more than common fear of death; and every moment of his life was made miserable by the apprehension of losing it. If any stranger looked earnestly at him, it made his heart sink within him. He always wore armor under his clothes, and he never dared to sleep in the same apartment more than two or three nights at a time.

8. His mother, who had been brought from her retirement to share his greatness, also shared his apprehensions; she never heard a gun go off, or a sudden noise, without exclaiming, "My son is shot!" and she was never satisfied of his safety unless she saw him twice a day. Cromwell was very fond of his mother, who was worthy of his love, and he was always an affectionate and dutiful son. Her dying request, however, he disobeyed; for, instead of burying her as she desired, in a private manner, he caused her to be interred with more than royal pomp.

9. Cromwell's wife was also an excellent woman, and brought up her children very well. She was always apprehensive of a change of fortune; and often besought her husband to secure himself from danger from the royalists, by offering his youngest daughter in marriage to Charles. It is believed that prince would have made no objection to such a match; but Cromwell's usual answer was, "I tell you, Charles Stuart will never forgive me for his father's death."

10. The loss of his favorite daughter, Mrs. Claypole, added much to Cromwell's gloom; and from the time of her death he never was observed to smile. She was a zealous royalist, as were also his daughters Lady Franconberg and Lady Rich. His other daughter, who had first married General Ireton, and afterwards General Fleetwood, was a violent republican—that is, in favor of a government conducted by representatives of the people.

11. Nor did Cromwell receive much sympathy or support from his eldest son, Richard, whom he designed to be his successor, for he was a man of inferior abilities, and of no ambition; he much preferred the quiet of his little farm to all the splendors of royalty, which, with its accompanying cares and fatigues, he was soon called upon to endure. Henry, the youngest son, was a man of great talents and extraordinary goodness. Although very young, he was intrusted with the government of Ireland, which he conducted with so much prudence as to gain the love of the people, whose condition he did all in his power to improve.

12. It is not surprising that Cromwell's bodily frame sunk under the weight of cares and anxieties. He died September 3d, 1658, in the fifty-ninth year of his age; and his body was deposited with great pomp in Westminster Abbey. It was a long time before anything like justice was done to the character of Cromwell by his own countrymen. The zealous royalists could see nothing good or great in any person who denied that kings have a natural right to rule, whatever may be their capacity, or however much they may oppress their subjects.

13. Others thought to curry favor with the monarch who succeeded to the throne, by heaping abuse upon the memory of one whom they called a usurper. But the great mass of the English people have now adopted the opinion which foreigners held from the beginning, that Cromwell was one of the greatest men that England has produced, taking the world's estimate of greatness. He was, indeed, a great general, statesman, and sovereign.

## CHAPTER CLXXVIII.

*Richard Cromwell proclaimed Protector.—He finds himself unable to maintain himself in office, and resigns.—General Monk marches with his Army to London, and proclaims Charles II. King, who returns to England, and everything is restored to its ancient footing.*

1. RICHARD CROMWELL was proclaimed protector upon his father's death. But the nation soon found the difference between the strong hand of Oliver Cromwell, and the weakness and indecision of his son, and showed a disposition to cast off his authority. But Richard quietly resigned a dignity which he had neither the power nor the inclination to keep; thus wisely saving himself from being dispossessed by violence. He held the protectorship only a few months.

2. Henry Cromwell also resigned his command in Ireland, though his popularity in that country was very great, and he might have retained his power there if he had chosen to do so; but he preferred the tranquillity of a private station to the dangerous and uncertain enjoyments of ambition. He well describes his own character in a letter which he wrote to his brother when he resigned his power. "I would rather," he says, "submit to any suffering with a good name, than be the greatest man on earth without it."

3. The country was now left without any government, and each party was full of hopes of establishing its own favorite form. Those members of parliament who had been so unceremoniously expelled by Cromwell in 1658, met and assumed the control of affairs.

10. What of his daughters? 11. What of his sons? 12. When did Cromwell die? 13. What led to a false estimate of his character?

CLXXVIII.—1. What of Richard Cromwell? 2. What of Henry Cromwell? 3. What

But they found no support from any party, and were once more put to flight by General Lambert, who commanded the army, and who hoped by its assistance to obtain the vacant protectorship.

4. In the mean time, Charles, on hearing what was passing in England, came to Calais, that he might be at hand to take advantage of any circumstance favorable to his cause. For some time there seemed to be little chance for him; but at last, what the efforts of his friends could not do, the rivalry of his enemies brought about. Lambert and Monk had long hated each other; and Monk, partly to disappoint Lambert in his ambitious hopes, and partly to please his wife, who was a zealous royalist, formed the design of restoring Charles, and entered into correspondence with him.

5. But so well did Monk conceal his design, that it was thought he was acting for the parliament, so that he was able to march from Scotland to London, not only without opposition, but he was even joined on the way by Lambert's troops, who arrested their general and put him in the Tower. On the 1st of May, 1660, Monk ventured to propose to a new parliament, which he had assembled, the restoration of the king. The proposition was received with joy



CHARLES II. LANDING AT DOVER.

by the people, who were tired of the anarchy which had prevailed since the death of Oliver Cromwell, and which his good government made the more striking.

6. The peers hastened to assemble and to assume their old rights as one of the houses of parliament. On the 8th of May, Charles was formally proclaimed king, and a committee sent to invite him to return and take possession of the throne. He was met at Dover by General Monk, who conducted him to London, which he entered May 29th, 1660. As a reward for these great services, Monk was created Duke of Albemarle, and received a large sum of money to support his new dignity.



CHARLES II. ENTERING LONDON.

7. Everything about the court was now restored to its former condition. Old courtiers returned to their old places; even the statue of Charles I. resumed its ancient pedestal; for it seems the brazier to whom it was sold, thought he might make a better speculation by saving it whole, than melting it down; so he disobeyed the orders of the parliament to break it in pieces, and buried it in the ground, from which it now made its reappearance.

8. Having thus seated Charles upon the throne, we must dispose of the Cromwell family, and then give an account of some of the other great men who flourished during the Commonwealth. Though Charles showed no disposition to molest Richard Cromwell, still he thought it safest to leave the country for a time. In the course of his travels he was introduced, under a borrowed name, to the French Prince of Conti, who, talking of English affairs, broke out into admiration of Cromwell's courage and capacity. "But what," said the prince, "has become of that pitiful fellow Richard?"

9. He returned to England, and, taking the name of Clark, lived

Who proposed the calling of Charles II. to the throne? 6. When was he proclaimed? When did he arrive in London? 7. What followed the restoration of the monarchy? 8. What became of Richard Cromwell? What of Henry?

to be a very old man. Henry became a highly respected country gentleman. King Charles was out hunting one day, and seeing a gentleman's house, rode up to it to obtain some refreshment. When Henry Cromwell, whose residence it was, saw the king, he was somewhat embarrassed; but Charles, by his gracious manner, soon set him at ease, and the visit went off very agreeably. The king was as much pleased with the kindness and simplicity of Mr. Cromwell's manners and appearance, as the latter was with the good humor and plausibility of the king.

---

## CHAPTER CLXXIX.

*Account of Milton.—Andrew Marvell.—Algernon Sydney.—James Harrington.*

1. WHITELOCKE, one of the officers of state during the commonwealth, wrote an account of what happened at that period; and, amongst other things, he tells us that one Milton, a blind man, was employed to translate into Latin a treaty which he had himself negotiated with Sweden.

2. "Sir Bulstrode Whitelocke, one of our Lords of the Treasury," would have thought the assertion too ridiculous to be a matter for anger, if any one had said that long after his name should be forgotten by all but learned antiquaries, the name of this same Milton would be familiar to all, from the palace to the cottage. But so it is. A person must be very ignorant indeed, who does not know that John Milton wrote the *Paradise Lost*, a poem which, for sublimity and purity, has never been equalled.

3. Milton, in his youth, had light-brown hair, regular and handsome features, and he was so fair, that at the University of Cambridge he was called "the lady of Christ College." He was about the middle size, well proportioned and active, but never very healthy. Being a puritan, and very learned, he was appointed Latin Secretary to the council in the early days of the commonwealth, and was retained in that office by Cromwell, for whom he had the greatest admiration and respect. In those times the Latin language was used in the intercourse between nations.

4. Intense application to study gradually destroyed his sight, but this did not destroy his usefulness; for others wrote down what he dictated. His two youngest daughters used to read to him, and in eight different languages, though they themselves understood only the English; "one tongue," their father was wont to say, "was enough for a woman." He had also a kind quaker friend, named Thomas Ellwood, who paid him a daily visit, and acted as his scribe. He wrote an answer to the "Icon Basilike," and many other political works, which made him very obnoxious to the royalists.

---

CLXXIX.—3. What of Milton in his youth? What appointment did he hold during the commonwealth? 4. What personal misfortune did he meet with? What of his

5. At the restoration he was obliged to conceal himself for a time, and afterwards lived in poverty in London. There were, however, some men of rank and distinction, who delighted to converse with the blind bard, as he sat before his door, clad in a coarse gray coat, enjoying the refreshing breezes of a summer evening. It was now that he composed his great poem of *Paradise Lost*, which he modestly submitted to the judgment of his friend Ellwood. The latter read it, and, on returning it to him, expressed his approbation, adding, "Thou hast said much here of *Paradise Lost*, but what hast thou to say of *Paradise Found*?"

6. The hint was not lost; Milton composed the "Paradise Regained," and when it was finished, putting it into the hands of Ellwood, he said, "This is owing to you; for you put it into my head by the question you put to me." For the *Paradise Lost*, Milton received from the publishers only fifteen pounds, (less than seventy-five dollars,) a smaller sum than is sometimes paid for a single article in a modern magazine. Milton was born December 9th, 1608, and died in November, 1674.

7. Milton's assistant in the office of secretary was Andrew Marvell, who was a man of great wit, as well as learning. After the restoration, he wrote many pamphlets against arbitrary government, which contained so much humor that they were exceedingly popular, and much dreaded by the court party. It was thought advisable to try to buy him over to their side. So the king sent his minister, Danby, to make a bargain with him. Danby with some difficulty found his way to his mean lodgings, in an obscure court.

8. Marvell supposed his visitor had lost his way, but when informed that Danby came from the king, who wished to know what he would do to serve him, he answered that it was not in his majesty's power to serve him. When pressed to accept any office the court could give, Marvell replied, that he could not take any, for in such case he must either be ungrateful to the king by opposing him, or false to his country by supporting his measures. Danby then said that he was the bearer of £1000 from the king as a mark of his respect; but the inflexible patriot rejected it, though he had to borrow money to pay for his dinner.

9. There were many eloquent speakers and writers on government and law in Cromwell's time; the most distinguished were Algernon Sydney and James Harrington. The former was the son of the Earl of Leicester. He was a violent republican, and took the old Roman Marcus Brutus as his pattern. Harrington wrote a book called "Oceana," which is a description of an imaginary republic, such as he thought one ought to be.

---

daughters? What of his friend Ellwood? 5. What befell him at the restoration? When did he die? 7. What of Andrew Marvell? 8. Relate the anecdote of his integrity. 9. What of other distinguished speakers and writers?

## CHAPTER CLXXX.

*Character of Charles II.—How he treated the Puritans.—Death of Archbishop Sharp.—Great Change in the Habits of the People.—Samuel Butler, the Author of Hudibras.—More of Richard Penderill.*

1. CHARLES II. was thirty years old, when, after sixteen years' exile, he was so unexpectedly placed on the throne of his ancestors. He had a good figure, and though his features were harsh, there was something agreeable in his countenance; and his cheerful, easy, and graceful deportment made him altogether a very engaging person. He hated business, and to live idly and merrily was all he cared for. He had no wish to be a great or a good monarch, and he only valued his country because he found it an agreeable dwelling-place.

2. The first measures of the king gave general satisfaction. The Earl of Clarendon, who had attended him during his exile, had the chief influence in his council, and by his integrity and wisdom the government was carried on for a time with justice and moderation. A general pardon was proclaimed to all who had taken part against the king during the civil wars, excepting to those who had been active in procuring the death of Charles I. About sixty persons had been concerned in that act. Of these, many were dead, and others had left the kingdom.

3. Of those brought to trial, only ten were executed; of this number, was Hugh Peters, a preacher, who had not only been very active in stirring up the minds of the people against the king, but also, it was supposed, was one of the masked executioners who beheaded him. Sir Henry Vane was also executed; Lambert was exiled to the island of Guernsey, where he lived thirty years, and from being a rigid puritan, became a Roman Catholic.

4. Having thus satisfied their revenge at what may be deemed a moderate expense of human life, the government set about restoring the old forms of religion. The Episcopal church was re-established in England without difficulty, but the attempt to force it upon the Scots was not so successful. The king was exceedingly desirous to introduce it into Scotland; perhaps the more so because he remembered the insults he had suffered from the Scotch Presbyterians, when he was formerly among them.

5. He induced Sharp, a Presbyterian leader, to accept the archbishopric of St. Andrews. Sharp was a bigoted man, and behaved in such a manner as to exasperate the people yet more against Episcopacy. He was at last killed by a zealous covenanter, called Balfour of Burley, who, with a small party of men, chanced to meet him, as he was travelling with his daughter, dragged him out

---

CLXXX.—1. What of Charles II.'s personal appearance and character? 2. What of his early measures? How did he treat the puritans? 3. Who were executed? 4. What

of his carriage, and murdered him. This act put an entire stop to the attempt to introduce Episcopacy in the Scotch church.

6. In 1662, Charles married Catharine of Braganza, daughter of the King of Portugal. The new queen had been educated in a convent, and was very formal and grave; she rejected the company of the English ladies, and would only have about her a set of old, solemn *duennas*, as the Spanish call the stiff, formal old women, whom it is the custom of that country to set over young ones, to keep them out of mischief. The king found her and her court so dull, that he neglected her society, and spent most of his time with a set of idle, dissolute companions.

7. The example of Charles had a most pernicious influence; few persons could equal him in wit, yet those of the meanest capacity could imitate his vices, and the coarse and vulgar jokes in which he often indulged himself. The public taste was corrupted; and the books written at that time, which acquired any popularity, were polluted with the same vicious spirit which prevailed in society.

8. The people were all the more ready to rush into dissipation, for having been so long restrained from their customary amusement. Under the rule of the parliament, all recreation was deemed to be unchristian; a cheerful countenance and a ruddy complexion were considered as the marks of a *malignant*. Some of the sports which were suppressed exhibit the rude manners of the times.

9. Thus we are told that Colonel Henson, with pious zeal, marched his regiment into London, and destroyed all the bears, which were there kept for the diversion of the citizens; bear-baiting, that is, fastening up a poor bear, and then setting dogs upon him, being a favorite amusement. This exploit of Colonel Henson is said to have given occasion to the humorous poem of *Hudibras*, which, however, was not published till 1663.

10. It was written by Samuel Butler, who lived for some time as steward with Sir Samuel Luke, a famous commander under Cromwell. Sir Samuel is supposed to be the hero of the poem, in which he and his party are delineated in the most absurd and ridiculous colors. It did greater service to the royal cause, by exposing the fanaticism of the puritans, than a thousand dry treatises could have done; for no one would read those, while the pleasantries and humor of *Hudibras* gave it universal circulation.

11. The king was so delighted with it, that he learned a part of it by heart; yet he suffered the author to die in want. Ingratitude was, indeed, one of the revolting traits in Charles' character. Thousands of his subjects had reduced themselves from affluence to absolute want by their exertions in his behalf; but he took no notice of their petitions, and suffered them to remain in distress, whilst he lavished the public money upon his favorites, both male and female.

12. There were a few exceptions to this. After his restoration, he sent for Richard Penderill, and calling him "Friend Richard," made him give the courtiers an account of all their adventures together, and of the escape from Boscobel. This the old man did, to the great entertainment of all present, telling them "how he got a sorry jade for the king, with a bad saddle and bridle; and how his majesty complained of the steed, and how his brother Humphrey said the king should not find fault with the poor animal, for it never before carried the weight of three kingdoms on its back." The king maintained the old man during the remainder of his life.

---

### CHAPTER CLXXXI.

*Great Plague in London, followed by a great Fire.—About the Lord Mayor.—Great Improvements in London after the Fire.—Sir Matthew Hale draws up Rules for the Settlement of Land Titles, and Sir Christopher Wren is employed as an Architect.*

1. IN the autumn of 1665 a most violent plague broke out in London, and in a short time 90,000 persons are said to have died of it. The court and the richer classes of people retired at the beginning of it into the country, dismissing their servants, who were turned into the streets to perish. These poor wretches, more than 40,000 in number, being refused admittance into any house in the city, wandered into the country; but the villagers drove them back with pitchforks, lest they should bring the infection of the plague with them.

2. The Lord Mayor of London, Sir Thomas Lawrence, then supported them till his means were exhausted; and a subscription was afterwards raised for them, to which the king contributed a thousand pounds a week. Whilst the city was yet suffering under this calamity, it was assailed also by another. On the 3d of September, 1666, a fire broke out near London bridge, and after raging three days and three nights, and destroying 18,000 houses and eighty-four churches, was finally stopped by blowing up buildings in its way.

3. Mr. Evelyn, a truly excellent country gentleman, who kept a daily journal, which has lately been published, has given us a very animated description of the terrible scene. On the evening of the 3d of September, he went to the bank-side of the river Thames at Southwark, and from thence he beheld the flames spreading on the opposite side of the river, in one sheet, all along the bank. He went again early the next morning to the same place, and saw the fire still raging furiously. It was then catching to the great church

---

is it said to have given occasion? What of Butler? 11. What bad trait in Charles' character? 12. What exception to his general conduct?

CLXXXI.—1. When did the plague desolate London? What calamity followed the

of St. Paul's, and soon spread itself on all sides, destroying every thing in its way.



THE FIRE IN LONDON.

4. All the sky was of a fiery aspect, like the top of a burning oven. The light was seen at forty miles' distance, and not by night only, but by day; and the smoke, which rose in thick, black clouds, was supposed to spread through the atmosphere for fifty miles round. The air in and about London was so hot and inflamed, that it was quite stifling. The melted lead ran in a stream from the foot of St. Paul's and the other churches which took fire. The pavement of the streets glowed with so intense a heat, that neither man nor horse was able to tread upon it.

5. Under St. Paul's church were some vaults, and the neighboring shopkeepers thought to save their goods by depositing them there while the fire was yet at a distance. Four days after the fire had ceased, some of them, anxious to know the state of their goods, opened one of the vaults; but no sooner were the doors opened than the current of air fanned the heat within, and caused the flames to burst out in the vault; and thus everything in it was burnt. The rest, taking warning, waited till rain had cooled the air. They then opened the other vaults, and found their goods uninjured.

6. The people at first seemed to lose their senses in the greatness of the calamity. The king, however, soon regained his presence of mind. He, with his brother, the Duke of York, attended late and

early to encourage and reward the workmen, to whom he gave the most judicious orders for arresting the progress of the flames. On the 6th of September the fire began to yield to their efforts, and on the 7th, Mr. Evelyn, as he tells us, was able to walk through the burnt district; a scene of desolation, in which he often did not know where he was. The ground was still so heated that the soles of his shoes were burnt.

7. London, in ancient times, was comparatively a small place, and, like other towns in those days, was surrounded by high walls. The city was entered through large gates, which were closed in times of danger. This was the case in the time of King John, who granted the city a charter, that is, a written constitution, empowering it to elect its own officers, as the lord mayor, &c. As it was the usual place of residence of the king, and very conveniently situated for carrying on an extensive commerce, great numbers of people came there to live; many more than could be accommodated within the walls.

8. These people built houses in the neighboring villages; and as this has been going on ever since, what is generally called London has, in the words of a late historian, "ingulfed one city, one borough, and forty-three villages;" and since he wrote, two more villages have been swallowed by the insatiate monster. Thus the different parts of London are under different governments, and lie in different counties. The city of London, strictly so called, is the space included within the old walls; though these have long since disappeared.

9. It is governed by a lord mayor, who, on public occasions, rides in a great coach, which is gorgeously painted and decorated; the mace-bearer sits on a stool in the middle, facing one window, and the sword-bearer upon a stool also, facing the other. His lordship himself is dressed either in scarlet or purple robes, richly furred, with a broad hood, and a gold chain or collar. He lives in a magnificent house called Guildhall. The *city* is principally occupied by persons connected with trade. The nobility, for the most part, have their town residences in what is, in fact, an outskirt of the city, and which is commonly called the *West End*.

10. The houses of the nobility were, in the time of Charles, surrounded by large gardens, so that if a fire had broken out in one of them, it could readily have been prevented from spreading. But in the city, the houses were generally built close together, usually of wood, and with very narrow streets. As the fire extended but little beyond the limits of the city, the principal sufferers were merchants and tradesmen, and the poor laborers dependent upon these. There was, therefore, great private distress. But the fire was an incalculable public benefit.

11. Before this time, the plague used to be a terrible scourge, but it has never been known in London since this conflagration. The filth was burnt out that used to harbor infection. The old wooden houses, with windows not made to open, could never be purified by fresh air. They were now succeeded by larger and more airy dwellings, and the streets were made wider. Though a great

improvement was made, yet much more might have been done, but for the jealousies of the land-owners, many of whom refused to sell their land, or to agree to any plan for general improvement.

12. The king was very desirous that all the land should be thrown into common, and the city laid out regularly, according to a plan of a distinguished architect, Sir Christopher Wren; the old proprietors to receive payment in money, or in land equally well settled with their old lots. But this could not be effected, much to the regret of the posterity of those owners; for a similar opportunity, it is to be hoped, will never occur again. As may be supposed, it was a difficult matter to give every person exactly his own again, since all the old landmarks were destroyed.

13. But Sir Matthew Hale, a wise and excellent man, and also a most learned judge, framed, with the assistance of other judges, a set of rules for adjusting the different claims. Sir Christopher Wren, the greatest architect that England ever produced, was employed to rebuild the public edifices. From his designs, fifty-eight churches were built. Of these, St. Paul's is his greatest work. Indeed, it is considered to be the finest church in Europe, with the single exception of St. Peter's, at Rome, which many travellers assert to have the advantage only in size.

14. It required one hundred years to build St. Peter's. The first stone of St. Paul's was laid in 1765, and the whole building was completed in thirty-five years, with the exception of a few decorations. It seemed as if the life of the venerable architect was lengthened, that he might enjoy the pleasure of seeing the accomplishment of his great work. He died in the year it was finished, aged ninety-one.

## CHAPTER CLXXXII.

*Charles sacrifices the Earl of Clarendon to the Cabal.—The King becomes a Pensioner of France.—Great Discontent in England.—Habeas Corpus Law.*

1. THE calamities of which Charles had been a witness were not without some good effect on his disposition, and detached him for a while from the idle and dissolute habits into which he had sunk; but his vicious companions soon came about him and rallied him out of all his good resolutions, and he relapsed into his former way of life. These dissolute associates, the chief of whom was the Duke of Buckingham, the *witty* duke, as he was called, had long meditated the overthrow of Lord Clarendon, whose virtue and integrity made him the particular object of their dislike.

2. Charles, forgetting how faithfully this great statesman had served him in all his wanderings and necessities, and how much his

improvements were proposed? 13. Who framed the rules for adjusting land claims? What architect was chiefly employed?

CLXXXII.—1. What effect had these calamities on Charles? What of Clarendon?

wisdom had contributed to strengthen him on the throne, readily acceded to a plan which was to remove a man who was some check upon his vices. Clarendon was, therefore, on various frivolous pretences, found guilty of neglect of duty, and sentenced to banishment.

3. He retired into France, and employed the remainder of his life chiefly in composing his excellent "History of the Rebellion," and also in writing an account of his own life. His youngest daughter, Anna Hyde, married the Duke of York, and was the mother of Mary and Anne, subsequently queens of England.

4. After Clarendon's disgrace, Rupert, the Duke of Ormond, Sir Orlando Bridgeman, and other men of wisdom and experience, had for a time the chief weight in the council. But in 1670, their influence declined, and the king, whose carelessness about public affairs daily increased, committed the entire management to five of the most unprincipled men in the kingdom, Clifford, Ashley, Buckingham, Arlington, and Lauderdale, who were called the *Cabal*, from the first letters of their names.

5. One of the last acts of Clarendon had been to make peace with the Dutch, with whom the country had been several years at war. This war was carried on principally on the sea, and in the course of it the English had established that superiority, of which Blake, in the time of Cromwell, had laid the foundation. The naval commanders in this war were Prince Rupert and the Duke of Albemarle.

6. In those days there was no great distinction between the land and sea service. A good general was thought fully competent to command at sea. Events proved the correctness of this opinion. For Blake, who is the most distinguished of Britain's naval commanders, with the exception, perhaps, of Nelson, whom we shall soon have occasion to notice, did not go to sea till he was past fifty years of age, and was then transferred from the command of an army to that of a fleet.

7. One of the first acts of the *Cabal* was to renew the war with Holland. Charles at first hesitated to adopt a measure to which the people of England were very much opposed; but Louis XIV., King of France, who was himself at war with Holland, and desired the assistance of England, overcame his scruples. The persuasive arguments of Henrietta, who visited her brother on this business, were supported by some more solid and effective reasons, in the shape of gold, a large quantity of which was annually to be at the service of the king, so long as he should sacrifice the interests of his own country to those of France.

8. Charles no longer hesitated; his pleasures were very expensive, and money was hard to be obtained from his subjects for such vile uses. A secret treaty was made between the two monarchs, by which Charles became the pensioner of Louis. War was declared against Holland. The chief distinction gained by the English in this war was upon the sea. The Duke of York commanded the fleet, and under him were Prince Rupert and Lord Sandwich.

---

4. Who governed after Clarendon's disgrace? What was the *Cabal*? 5. What of the British power on the ocean? Who were the naval commanders? 7. How was Charles

9. In 1674, the Cabal was broken up by the death of Clifford, and the disgrace of Ashley, now become Lord Shaftesbury. Honest ministers came into place; peace was made with Holland; but Charles still maintained his secret treaty with Louis, and rendered such services as might entitle him to his annual pay. This treaty with France was, as we have said, secret, and the receipt of money by him from Louis was also secret; but his manifest predilection for that country excited distrust among his subjects, and he and the parliament were on very bad terms.

10. This parliament, which had assembled in 1660, in all the intoxication of joy, loyalty, and hope, which it was natural to feel at the king's restoration, was dissolved in 1678, and separated with feelings of severe disappointment at his utter want of conduct and principle. The king was supposed to be a papist at heart, and the Duke of York, who was heir to the throne, was an avowed papist. The people, who entertained as great a horror of popery as ever, were naturally alarmed for the safety of the Protestant church.

11. The king must have money, and so he was compelled to summon a new parliament to pass a law authorizing him to collect taxes. No sooner was it assembled, than an attempt was made in the house of commons to pass a law excluding the Duke of York from the throne, and settling the succession upon his daughter Mary, who was now married to her cousin William, Prince of Orange. This attempt was not successful.

12. This parliament is memorable for passing what is called the *Habeas Corpus* law, by which enactment, it was rendered illegal to detain any person in prison, unless he were accused of some specific offence, for which he was by law subject to punishment; it also secured to all a prompt trial. Thus it affords a complete protection against arbitrary punishment. Every person who is imprisoned has a right to demand to be brought before some magistrate, who is bound to inquire into the cause of his imprisonment, and if it shall appear to be insufficient, is required to set him at liberty.

13. The judge, upon the demand of the prisoner, issues an order, technically called a *writ*, commanding the jailer to have the body of the prisoner brought before him, &c. These writs were formerly in Latin, and the two first words were *Habeas Corpus*; and hence the name commonly given to the law. This law has been adopted from England by each of the United States; and it can only be set aside in cases of rebellion or war.

---

persuaded to renew the war with Holland? 9. When, and by what event, was the Cabal broken up? What of the state of feeling in England? 11. What attempt did the new parliament make? 12, 13. What of the *Habeas Corpus* act?

## CHAPTER CLXXXIII.

*Origin of the terms Whig and Tory.—Distracted State of the Country.—The Rye-house Plot.—Death of Russell and Sydney.—Death of Charles II.—His Habits.—Fashions of Dress.*

1. THE country was now divided into two parties; those who wished to exclude the Duke of York from the throne, and those who were opposed to this measure. This was a renewal of the old struggle between the people and the court, which had resulted before in the death of Charles I. and the establishment of the Commonwealth. The two parties, which had hitherto been distinguished as the court party and the country party, in 1680 received designations which have continued to this day.

2. The court party reproached their antagonists with being no better than *Whigs*, a name by which certain religious fanatics in Scotland were known. The country party found a resemblance between the courtiers and certain banditti in Ireland, to whom the appellation *Tory* was affixed. These names, which were at first terms of reproach, were soon generally used to distinguish the two parties, and we shall adopt them for the future.

3. The whigs were the strongest in numbers, and they received daily accessions; for the conduct of the king and his brother gave more and more dissatisfaction. While the country was thus filled with discontent and apprehension, the king was urged by the vindictive temper of the duke to exercise severities foreign to his nature, and many persons were taken up and executed, on suspicion of being engaged in plots against his majesty's life. One of these persons was Lord William Russell, a nobleman of high character, who was accused of being concerned in what was called the Rye-house plot, from the name of a house where the conspirators held their meetings.

4. The witnesses against him were of the most infamous character; but Russell was condemned and executed. Algernon Sydney, whom we have before mentioned, was also tried and executed. Nothing was proved against him, but he was known to be attached to republican principles, and that was sufficient reason for suspecting him of a design to murder the king.

5. These executions were in some degree in retaliation of the execution of certain papist friends of the Duke of York, who, five years before, in 1678, had been condemned and beheaded on the charge of a design to introduce popery; the chief witness against them being Titus Oates, a man of infamous character. Though the king permitted these things to be done, he does not appear to have approved of them, and often opposed his brother's violent counsels.

6. One day he said to him, "Brother, I am too old to go again on my travels; you may, if you choose it,"—meaning that the measures which the duke wished him to pursue would provoke the people to open rebellion. Charles, though he was so careless and idle, had good sense; he plainly perceived the discontents that were rising, and we are assured that he had determined to take the best way of appeasing them, by dismissing his bad advisers.

7. But he had no opportunity of trying the experiment; for in the midst of a life of vicious indulgence, he was attacked by apoplexy, and died, after a few days' illness, February 6th, 1685, in the fifty-fifth year of his age, and twenty-fifth of his reign. He married Catharine of Braganza, by whom he had no children. The character of Charles was very well portrayed in a lively epigram, which was made on him while yet alive by one of the wits of his court:

8. "Here lies our sovereign lord, the king,  
Whose word no man relies on;  
Who never said a foolish thing,  
And never did a wise one."

This was shown to Charles, and he said, in his pleasant way, that it was very true; for his words were his own, but his actions were his ministers'.

9. His agreeable manners made him a greater favorite with the people than he deserved to be. He would sit for hours on the benches in St. James' Park, amusing himself with some tame ducks and his dogs, amidst a crowd of people, with whom he would talk and joke. These dogs were a particular breed of spaniels, of which Charles was most troublesomely fond.

10. He had so many in his bedroom and other apartments, that Mr. Evelyn says the whole palace was made offensive and disagreeable by them. This particular breed were called King Charles' dogs, and have been very much in request. It is believed that none of the true breed are now left, except some beautiful black and tan spaniels, which belonged to the Duke of Norfolk, and which used to riot over Arundel Castle, one of his residences, much in the same way in which their ancestors racketed about the palace at Whitehall.

11. The Restoration brought as great a revolution in dress as in government or manners. The precise, plain attire of the puritans gave place to ribands, and feathers, and shoulder-knots. Shoe-buckles became the rage, but those who affected plainness in their dress continued to wear strings. To avoid as much as possible the imputation of being a round-head, the loyal subjects wore long flowing wigs of curled and frizzled false hair. Men of tender consciences were greatly scandalized at this fashion, considering it more indecent than long hair, because it was unnatural.

12. Many preachers held forth against it in their sermons, and cut their own hair shorter to express their abhorrence of it. It was observed that a periwig gave an appearance of dignity, and procured for

the wearers a respect to which they were strangers before. The judges and physicians, who thoroughly understood the magic power of a wig, gave it all the advantage of length as well as size, for they enveloped the upper parts of the body in a huge mass of hair three feet in length.

13. Wigs, however, established themselves in the public favor, and maintained their place till the middle of the last century. Young boys even were emulous of wearing them. A hair-dresser, in her advertisement—for the artists were sometimes females—boasts that she could cut and curl boys' hair in so fine a way, that it should be impossible to distinguish it from a wig.

14. The ladies' heads, too, were frizzled and curled with the nicest art, and they frequently set them off with *heart-breakers*. Sometimes a string of pearls or an ornament of ribbon was worn on the head; and, in the latter part of this reign, hoods of various kinds were in fashion. We cannot answer for the prevalence of blue stockings, but we are told that one of the court beauties sometimes sported green.

---

## CHAPTER CLXXXIV.

*Of the Poets and Philosophers who lived in the time of Charles II.—Many new Manufactures introduced into England.*

1. As may be readily supposed, the gay court of Charles was not without its poets. But their verses, for the most part, were grossly infected by the prevailing licentiousness. Waller, however, who has been styled the parent of English *verse*, was a man of respectable character. He was a friend of Cromwell, and some of his best verses are a panegyric upon the protector. Cowley was more praised and admired during his lifetime than the great Milton; yet his verses are as harsh as Waller's are smooth.

2. But of all the poets who flourished during this period, John Dryden, "glorious John," as he was called, is, next to Milton, the most esteemed at the present time. He was born in 1631, and did not die till 1701. He was somewhat of a time-server, for in 1658 we find him writing verses extolling the protector, and in 1660 he hails the return of Charles II. in a poem called "Astrea Redux." That monarch showed his sense of his merit, by appointing him, in 1668, to be the poet-laureate.

3. To please James II., Dryden became a Catholic; but in this he overreached himself; for when he was driven from the throne, as we shall presently see, Dryden lost his office; he vented his

---

of his habits? 10. What of his dogs? 11. What change in dress? What of the new style of head-dress? 14. What of ladies' head-dress?

CLXXXIV.—1. What poets are mentioned of Charles II.'s time? What of Waller

spleen against his successor in a satirical poem called "Mac-Flecknoe." In his old age he wrote the Ode to St. Cecilia, which of all his works displays the most imagination, and a translation of the Latin poet Virgil's works into English verse, which Pope declared to be the most noble and spirited translation in any language.

4. We have said so much about the corruption of the times, that it might almost seem there were no good men left in the kingdom. Yet there were many such, even of those whose rank brought them in contact with the court. There was the Duke of Ormond, and his only son, Lord Ossory, who was the most popular man in the kingdom, as he was also one of the most virtuous. He died early, to the great grief of his father and of the whole nation.

5. The bereaved old duke used to say, "He would not change his dead son for any living son in Christendom." So precious to him was the remembrance of his virtues! There was, likewise, a little knot of wise men who contrived to enjoy in peace and quietness the tranquil satisfactions of science and philosophy. Bishop Wilkins, Mr. Evelyn, and Sir Christopher Wren—two of whom have before been mentioned—Mr. Boyle, and a few others, were of this set.

6. Bishop Wilkins was a man of great talent and merit. He was the brother-in-law of Oliver Cromwell, and by his influence with the protector, contrived to save the University of Oxford, where he was head of one of the colleges, from pillage. Mr. Evelyn was a man of taste and literature, and was a patron of many artists, whose merits might not have been known but for him. He first brought Gibbons, a celebrated carver in wood, into notice.

7. Wood-carving naturally suggests to our minds the grotesque figures which once ornamented the walls of country churches, and the figure-heads of ships. Without seeing them, one can form no idea of the exquisite beauty of the wreaths of flowers with which Gibbons ornamented the walls of various edifices, and those of some rooms in Windsor Castle. Mr. Evelyn was a great planter of trees, and layer-out of grounds. He wrote a book on trees, called the *Sylva*, which even those who have no land to plant may read with pleasure.

8. He turned the attention of gentlemen owning land to this subject, and many millions of trees were consequently planted; so that he was a great benefactor to the present generation. Robert Boyle was distinguished for his ability and goodness, and devoted his life to science and religion. He was one of the founders of the *Royal Society*, the most distinguished and useful scientific association in the world.

9. None but men of the highest attainments are admitted to this society; so that, to be a member of it, is a proof of great merit. Charles was himself a lover of the sciences, particularly of chemistry and mechanics; but he encouraged them more by precept than by

example; for his erring courtiers left little money to be expended in the encouragement of science.

10. Still the useful arts made great progress in his reign. The art of dyeing woollen cloth was introduced into England from France, and the art of making glass from Venice. Manufactures in iron, brass, silk, hats, paper, &c. were established. The empire of Great Britain in America was increased by the conquest of New York from the Dutch, and by the settlement of South Carolina and Pennsylvania.

---

### CHAPTER CLXXXV.

*James II. and his Wife, Maria d'Este.—General Dalziel and his long Beard.—About Beards in general.*

1. THE Duke of York was in the fifty-third year of his age when he succeeded his brother on the throne of England, and took the title of James II. The Duke of Buckingham used to say that the difference between James and his brother was, that Charles *could* see things, if he *would*; James *would* see things, if he *could*; meaning, that Charles possessed a natural quickness, which enabled him to comprehend with facility everything that he desired to learn; but that James, though not so clever, was more persevering and willing to study.

2. As he was very young when the civil war broke out, it is probable he received no regular education. He was about thirteen when he saw his father for the last time. They were both prisoners in the hands of the parliament. At this interview the king told him that as he was old enough to be trusted with a secret, he would tell him one. This was, that Colonel Banfield was to contrive means of conveying him abroad, and that he must do all that the colonel should desire, and be very discreet.

3. At last, Banfield found means to let James, who was confined in St. James' palace, know that all was ready, and that he would wait for him at one of the doors of the park. James was allowed to play with his sister Elizabeth in a room which opened on a back stairs that led to a door into the garden. That evening they had been left alone, and James took the opportunity of running down into the garden.

4. From thence, without either hat or cloak, he contrived to get unperceived to the door where Banfield was waiting. James was hurried to a house not far off, where a woman's dress had been provided for him. Thus disguised, he succeeded in getting on board a vessel which was about to sail for Holland; this country he reached

---

Royal Society? 9. What of Charles' love of science? 10. What new manufactures were introduced?

CLXXXV.—1. What of James II.? 2. Relate the particulars of his escape from En-

in safety, and was placed for a short time under the care of his sister, the Princess of Orange.

5. From that time to the restoration he passed many uncomfortable years, sometimes at Paris with his mother, who treated him with great rigor, and sometimes at Bruges, or Brussels, in his brother Charles' court—if that could be called a court which had nothing but high-sounding titles to distinguish it. The lords of the bed-chamber had scarcely a bed to lie on, and masters of horse were obliged to go on foot.

6. The good humor and easiness of Charles, who could never find a vexation in anything that he could turn into a joke, did something, indeed, to cheer and enliven the circle which surrounded him. At the restoration, James was made commander of the English navy; which post suited him, as he had great courage, and was of an active, enterprising spirit. He either invented sea-signals or greatly improved them, and made many beneficial alterations in the management of naval affairs.

7. After the death of his first wife, he married Maria Beatrice, of Este, daughter of the Duke of Modena. This proved an unfortunate marriage; for she was an ill-judging woman, and meddled indiscreetly in affairs of state. She was a very beautiful, but a very proud woman. Of the latter we may give an instance. At the time she was Duchess of York, the duke invited old General Dalziel to dine with him; but she refused to sit at the table with him, because he was a subject!

8. She at last consented to sit down to the table, upon her husband's remonstrating, and telling her that, but for the good services of such men, he might still have been a miserable exile. This General Dalziel had been a faithful servant to Charles I., and on the day his master was executed, he made a vow never to shave his beard again, but to let it grow, in token of his mourning. He lived to be very old, and his beard grew to be of an enormous length, and reached down to his girdle, while his head was entirely bald. After the restoration, he used to come up every year from Scotland to pay his respects to the king.

9. His grotesque appearance caused much amusement to the courtiers, but Charles always received him with real kindness, and made him very welcome. It might be thought that everybody wore beards in old times, as the Turks do now; but the mode of dressing the chin in England varied as much as the fashion of clothes. The Normans shaved their chins close; and William the Conqueror almost drove the Anglo-Saxons to desperation by requiring them to do the same.

10. In the time of the Tudors the beard appears to have been permitted to grow long; for Henry VIII. is always painted with a beard; and in some of Holbein's pictures there are very long ones. In Elizabeth's reign, Lord Burleigh, Lord Essex, and many others, are

represented with huge beards spread out, and cut square at the bottom ; but in the time of Charles I., the beard was reduced to a little pointed lock on the chin, which was thought to give rather a fine expression to the countenance, except when qualified, as it generally was, by two fierce mustachios on the upper lip.

## CHAPTER CLXXXVI.

*James II. seeks to restore Popery.—Great Cruelties practised by Jeffries and Kirk in consequence of Monmouth's Rebellion.—Rash Conduct of James.—The Prince of Orange invades England.—James flies to France.*



BISHOPS SENT TO THE TOWER BY JAMES II.

1. JAMES, as soon as he came to the throne, declared his intention of maintaining the existing laws, both in church and state ; and, as he had always been found sincere, this declaration served greatly to tranquillize the minds of the people. Yet, notwithstanding this, he soon after sent a Catholic priest to Rome to negotiate a reunion with that church. The pope, Innocent XI., had more prudence than James, and advised him to attempt nothing rashly.

2. The king's security was much increased by the suppression of a rebellion which had broken out, headed by the Duke of Monmouth.

CLXXXVI.—1. What was James' declaration to his subjects? How did his acts con-

The punishment of the rebels was very severe; and the cruelties perpetrated by Judge Jeffries and Colonel Kirk, have left indelible stains on their memories, and on the memory of James II. Having by this means, as he supposed, suppressed the discontents of his subjects, the king thought the way clear for the restoration of popery.

3. Being led on by the rash counsels of his confessor, and the vehemence of the queen, he removed many Protestants from their offices, both in church and state, and filled their places with Catholics. In one instance he sent six bishops to the Tower, for a mild remonstrance against his measures. So severe was he, that his friends, the Catholics, thought his conduct dangerous and ill judged. At last the pope sent a *nuncio*, as his ambassador is called, to England, warning the king of the imprudence of his conduct.

4. There was one great drawback on the king's zeal for the restoration of popery. He had no son, and the Princess of Orange, who would succeed him, was a Protestant; indeed, her husband was looked up to as the great support of the reformed religion in Europe. All that James might do would, therefore, be undone immediately after his death. His hopes, therefore, rested upon having a son; and when, on the 10th of June, 1688, the desired event happened, he thought that everything would result according to his wishes.

5. This very event, however, hastened his own expulsion from the throne; for the people, who had been cheered by the hope of a Protestant sovereign after James' death, now seeing themselves cut off from any further indulgence of this expectation, became anxious for the king's dethronement; and many persons of rank entered into secret negotiations with the Prince of Orange. Meanwhile, James' conduct seemed nothing but a course of blind infatuation.

6. At last, his ambassador in Holland sent to warn him that he might expect an invasion from that country. The letter fell from his hand, and it was some time before he recovered the power of thinking and acting. When at last he roused himself from this state of consternation, the only means that occurred to him of averting the impending storm was to retract some of his late obnoxious measures. But these concessions gained him no credit, and were attributed only to fear.

7. At this juncture a declaration from the Prince of Orange, that he was coming to England to redress their grievances, was received with joy by the people throughout the kingdom. William landed at Torbay, November 5th, 1688. The whole country was soon in commotion. The people combined almost universally against their misjudging and ill-advised king. The nobility, one after another, joined the invader. Even those upon whom James thought he could most surely rely deserted him; Prince George, of Denmark, who had married his daughter Anne, among the rest.

8. This princess herself left London. When the news of her departure was brought to the poor monarch, he burst into tears. "God

help me," he exclaimed, "my own children have forsaken me." In the extremity of perplexity and dismay, he assembled the few noblemen who had not yet deserted him. Addressing the Earl of Bedford, father of Lord William Russell, who, it will be recollected, was executed by James' intrigues in the preceding reign, "My lord," said he, "you are an honest man, have great credit, and can do me signal service."



LANDING OF THE PRINCE OF ORANGE.

9. "Ah, sir," replied the earl, "I am old and feeble; I can do but little service; but I once had a son that could have assisted you, but he is no more." The king was now left to the influence of the priests and the queen, who were continually urging him to flight, holding up the fate of Charles I. as a warning. Yielding to their fears and clamors, he forbore to make one effort to preserve his throne. Sending his wife and infant son secretly away, he himself left London on the 12th of December, attended only by Sir Edward Hales.

10. His intention was to get on board a ship at Sheerness, and to escape into France. But he was stopped at Feversham, and led back to London, much to the dissatisfaction of the Prince of Orange, who had promised his wife that her father should receive no personal injury. William therefore secretly assisted James in a second attempt to escape. On the 25th of December he landed in France, and proceeded to St. Germain, near Paris, where he was received by Louis XIV. with great generosity and commiseration. He had reigned three years.

to avert it? With what effect? 7. When did William land in England? How was he received? 9. Relate the remainder of James' story.

## FAMILY OF JAMES II.

## WIVES.

1. Anne Hyde, daughter of the Earl of Clarendon.
2. Maria D'Este, daughter of the Duke of Modena.

## CHILDREN.

Mary, married to the Prince of Orange,	}	Children of Anne Hyde.
Anne, married to Prince George, of Denmark,		
James Francis Edward, called the Pretender,	}	Children of Maria D'Este
Maria Louisa, who was to have been a nun, but death prevented,		

## CHAPTER CLXXXVII.

*The Revolution of 1688.—William and Mary called to the Throne.—William makes himself very disagreeable to the People.*

1. THE country was now virtually without any government. Parliament was assembled as speedily as possible. After a long contest between the whigs and tories, it was finally decreed that the throne was vacant by the abdication of James II. They proceeded to fill it, by making the Prince and Princess of Orange joint sovereigns, and they took the title of William and Mary. They received the crown upon certain terms set forth in what is called the "Bill of Rights."

2. By this "Bill," the powers of the sovereign and the rights of the people were defined; thus settling the questions which had so long vexed the nation. In case these sovereigns died without leaving children, the Princess Anne was to succeed; and in 1701, when it had become probable that this princess would die, leaving no family, a further law was passed, settling the crown on Sophia, wife of the Elector of Hanover, and her descendants, being Protestants.

3. Sophia was the grand-daughter of James I., being the daughter of the Queen of Bohemia, as she was called, from an imaginary dignity assumed by her husband. Thus resolute were the parliament in excluding the Prince of Wales; whom many, without any reason, declared not to be the son of James and Maria D'Este, but an infant acknowledged by them for the purpose of depriving Mary of her right to the succession.

4. The abdication of James II. and the election of William and Mary, are called *The Revolution of 1688*. William III. was in his thirty-ninth year when called to the throne. He was of middle height, and very thin. It is said that he was so feeble, that he was commonly

---

CLXXXVII.—1. What did parliament do after James II. left England? 2. What is the Bill of Rights? Upon whom was the crown settled if William and Mary left no children? 4. What was the change in sovereigns called? What of William III.? 6. What of Mary?

obliged to be lifted on horseback; but that, when once mounted, he managed his horse with admirable skill, and seemed as if he imbibed the strength and spirit of the animal he rode. He had an aquiline nose, a high forehead, fine eyes, and a very grave aspect.

5. His countenance was an index to his mind; for he was gravity itself; cold and inflexible; reserved, but not artful. Nothing enlivened him but the animation of a battle. He then seemed to put on a different nature, and was full of spirit and alacrity. His chief favorites were two Dutchmen, Bentinck, whom he created Duke of Portland, and De Ginkel, whom he made Earl of Athlone. They were able men, and much respected, and faithful servants to the king, who was as grave and reserved with them as with everybody else.

6. Mary had a fine person, with an engaging countenance, accompanied by an air of great dignity. She had a good understanding, which she had cultivated by reading. She took great delight in the conversation of learned and pious men, especially of John Tillotson, Archbishop of Canterbury, a truly good man, who died in 1694. Mary was also fond of needle-work, and introduced the fashion, which was so prevalent a hundred years ago, of working tent-stitch, and cross-stitch for carpets and chair-cushions.

7. The example of the queen would seem to have had great influence over female manners; for, before her time, the ladies of England were remarkable for being never employed. William had not been long King of England before he and his new subjects became mutually discontented with each other. He had been bred in camps, and was accustomed to the implicit obedience which is always paid to a general. He found the management of a free people so troublesome, that at one time he was very near resigning the crown in disgust.

8. The English, on their side, were out of humor with a monarch who, instead of living among them in a social way, as former sovereigns were wont to do, spent most of his time either alone in his closet, or at a camp he had formed near Hounslow; and when he did show himself in his court, appeared sullen and out of humor. Another ground of complaint, was his partiality for his native country, to avenge whose quarrels he was willing to involve England in a war with France.

---

What fashion did she introduce? 7. What of the feeling of William towards the people? 8. What was the feeling of the people?

## CHAPTER CLXXXVIII.

*The Highlanders refuse to acknowledge William and Mary.—The Massacre of Glencoe.—French Troops invade Ireland.—Battle of the Boyne.—Death of James II.*

1. The neighboring countries of Scotland and Ireland did not submit so quietly as England to the rule of the new sovereigns. The parliament of Scotland had, indeed, declared their throne to be vacant, and offered it to William and Mary. But a considerable portion of those Scots who inhabit the mountainous parts of Scotland, and are hence called *Highlanders*, refused to abandon their old sovereign. These people were at that time not much more civilized than our Indians.

2. Their chief delight was in war and in hunting. They were very strict in keeping up relationships; and all persons who were descended on the father's side from the same ancestors were considered as belonging to one family or *clan*. The head of the family was the *chief* of the clan. The attachment which the rest bore to the chief was of the most ardent kind, and they were always ready to follow wherever he chose to lead them.

3. Lord Dundee and other chiefs, taking the part of James, summoned their clansmen to follow them. They met and defeated a large body of William's troops at Killiecrankie. Dundee himself was, however, killed, and his death so broke the spirit of the Highlanders, that the different clans in a short time submitted to the authority of William. A general pardon was offered to all who should take the oath of allegiance—that is, should swear to obey William—on or before a particular day.

4. Macdonald, of Glencoe, a Highland chief, had put off taking the oath till the last day, and then, unfortunately mistaking the place where it was to be received, went to Fort William instead of Inverary. When he found his error he set off in all haste for Inverary; but the roads being bad and the snow deep on the ground, he did not arrive there till after the stated day. In consideration, however, of the circumstances, he and his clan were allowed to take the oath, and returned home feeling secure of pardon and protection.

5. The Earl of Breadalbane, chief of one branch of the Campbells, had a private pique against Macdonald, and had savagely sworn to effect his destruction. Under color of his having refused to take at the proper time the required oath, he represented him to the king as an obstinate rebel. The Earl of Stair, the secretary of state for Scotland, seems to have joined also in the horrible plot. In consequence of their representations, William granted a warrant for the destruction, not only of Macdonald, but of his whole clan.

6. A party of the Campbells were sent to Glencoe. They were

received by the Macdonalds as friends, and stayed with them nearly a fortnight. At length, supposing that the passes of the mountains were stopped by troops, they fell like butchers on the unwarned and unsuspecting Macdonalds. Nearly forty persons were massacred. The rest made their escape, the severity of the weather having prevented the troops from actually closing the passes.

7. Many of those who had thus escaped for the present, perished afterwards by famine, by exposure to the weather, or died of grief. This shocking outrage caused a general detestation of William's government, and was the beginning of a long series of troubles in Scotland. The king tried to excuse himself by saying that he signed the fatal warrant in the hurry of business, without being aware of its full import.

8. Louis XIV. of France had a great passion for military glory, and for conquering other countries; but of late years his projects had been defeated, chiefly by the sagacity and courage of William while yet Prince of Orange. Louis was very ready, therefore, to assist James in humbling this rival, and furnished him with a body of troops, with which he landed in Ireland, where the people, who were for the most part Papists, received him with gladness.

9. Londonderry, which was occupied by Protestants, held out for William. James laid siege to it; but the people, after being reduced to the utmost extremity for want of food, were finally relieved. At length William came over to Ireland, at the head of a large army. The hostile forces, commanded by the rivals for the crown in person, came in sight of each other on opposite sides of the river Boyne, on the 29th of June, 1690. William had a narrow escape; for, whilst taking a survey of the enemy, a cannon-ball killed two persons standing near, and slightly wounded him also.

10. The decisive battle was fought the next day. William, who led his troops in person to the attack, remained master of the field. James watched the progress of the battle from a neighboring hill. He was frequently heard to exclaim, "Oh! spare my English subjects!" for, though fighting against him, he could not bear to see them slain. When he saw his troops give way, he turned his horse's head towards Dublin, and fled without making one effort to retrieve the fortune of the day.

11. He had now lost all the resolution and activity which had distinguished him in the former part of his life; his mind seemed to be entirely subdued. When he arrived at Dublin he assembled the magistrates and announced to them his intention of abandoning the country. In a few days he sailed for France, and there passed the rest of his life, practising the austerities of a monk. He died in 1701. After the battle of the Boyne, the *Jacobites*, as the partisans of James were called, made no very serious attempt to overthrow the power of William.

---

ticulars of the massacre of Glencoe. 7. What of the king's part in the outrage? 8. What of Louis XIV.? 9. When was the battle of the Boyne fought? Between whom? 10. What of James' conduct during the battle? 11. What were his partisans called?

## CHAPTER CLXXXIX.

*Peace of Ryswick.—Death of Mary; of William.—Peter the Great's Visit to England.—Evelyn's Garden at Sayers Court.*

1. As the three kingdoms were now reduced to submission, William was at liberty to attend personally to the conduct of the war on the continent of Europe. Leaving England in January, 1691, he landed in Holland, narrowly escaping death by drowning; for, in his impatience, he had attempted to land from his ship when she was at a distance from the shore, in an open boat; but the wind rising, he was tossed about for eighteen hours. He spent nearly the whole of the next three years on the continent.

2. During his absence Queen Mary governed the kingdom with great firmness and judgment, and at the same time with great mildness. She endeared herself much to the people, who sincerely lamented her death, which was occasioned by the small-pox, December 28th, 1694. William was in England at the time, and suffered as much from the event as his cold temper would permit. He returned to the continent, and continued the war against France till 1697, when the peace of Ryswick, as it is called, because concluded at that place, restored tranquillity to Europe.

3. This endured, however, but a short time, and William was making active preparations for a renewal of hostilities against France, when an accident put an end to his life. On the 21st of February, 1702, as he was riding from Hampton Court to Kensington, his horse fell with him, and he was thrown with so much violence that he broke his collar-bone. His attendants conveyed him back to Hampton Court, where the bone was set; but the same evening he went to Kensington in a coach, and the jolting of the carriage again dislocated the bone.

4. Recovering partially from the effects of the accident, he again relapsed, and died on the 8th of March, 1702, in the fifty-second year of his age, and fourteenth of his reign. After his death, a ring, containing some of the late queen's hair, was found fastened by a black ribbon to his arm. William appears to have had a regard for one portion of his subjects at least, for he appropriated his palace at Greenwich as a hospital for sick and disabled seamen. The poor, worn-out soldier was already provided for in the hospital at Chelsea, founded by Charles II.

5. During the cessation of hostilities which we have mentioned, England received a visit from a very remarkable personage. The people of Russia at this period were quite barbarians; they knew few of the arts, and none of the refinements of life. Their sovereign, or

CLXXXIX.—1. What of William after peace was restored in his kingdom? 2. When did Mary die? When was peace restored? What is it called? 3. What caused William's death? When? 4. In what year of his life? Of his reign? To what purpose was Greenwich palace appropriated? What of Chelsea hospital? 5. What of Peter I. of

*czar*, as he is called, Peter I., was of an active mind and great capacity, and he was filled with the highest ambition of a great monarch, that of improving the condition of those whom he is appointed to govern. His first attempt was to promote the discipline of his troops.

6. He enlisted as a common soldier in one of his own regiments; he procured German officers, and set the example of learning the exercise. He next attended to the formation of a navy. He spent many months at Archangel, living for the most part on board the Dutch and English ships which happened to be there. But a full knowledge of ship-building could not thus be acquired; so, laying aside his rank and title, he went in the train of his own ambassador to Holland, passing by the name of Peter Michaellef.

7. Here he worked for some time as a common ship-carpenter. The shed under which he worked, and a boat of his building, are still preserved at Saardam. From Holland he passed over to England, still using his assumed name, that he might avoid all the tedious ceremonies he must have submitted to, had he appeared as a royal personage. Still it was very well known who Peter Michaellef was, and care was taken by William that he should have every attention consistent with his wishes.

8. Peter established himself at Deptford, a great naval station. Our old friend, Mr. Evelyn, had a house at Deptford, called Sayes Court. Having great skill in gardening, he had spared no expense in adorning the grounds about it, and it was considered a pattern of elegance. The grounds were laid out in a style which would not suit the taste of the present day. It was called the Dutch style, in compliment to William, but was, in fact, the French style, being in imitation of Louis XIV.'s gardens at Versailles.

9. It was very formal and artificial, the garden being principally laid out in flower-borders, which were disposed in regular shapes and patterns. The more fantastical the shapes of the flower-beds, and the more complicated the walks, the more they were admired, provided the opposite sides of the garden corresponded with one another. There were walks between clipped hedges, cascades, fountains, statues, yew-trees cut into all kinds of shapes, arbors, and terraces.

10. With all the variety, there was a regularity and formality which the poet Pope well describes, when he says,—

“Grove nods at grove; each alley has its brother,  
And half the platform just reflects the other.”

Unluckily for Mr. Evelyn, William desired him to accommodate Peter with his house. The czar, whose mind could embrace great objects, had no taste for neatness; and the house and grounds were soon reduced to a lamentable state of disorder by the hard-working czar, who made no ceremony of destroying the shrubs and trampling down the flowers.

---

Russia's character? 6, 7. Relate such particulars of his life as are given. - 8. What is said of Mr. Evelyn's garden? What style is this called? Of what is it an imitation? 9. What of the style? 10, 11. What of Peter's amusements at Sayes Court?

11. One of his diversions was to be wheeled in a wheelbarrow through the neat-clipped hedges that had been raised with so much care and cost. The czar stayed three months at Deptford; and he and his people, who, as Mr. Evelyn's old servant said to his master, were "right nasty," left the place in a deplorable condition. The king paid for the actual damage they did, but could not restore the beauty of the gardens.

---

## CHAPTER CXC.

*Changes in Style of Living and Manners during the Civil Wars.—About the Arms and Dress of the Soldiers.—The Healing Art.*

1. IN old times, as the reader will remember, the nobles lived in their castles like petty sovereigns, and maintained a splendid hospitality; and when they came to London they kept open house, and friends and retainers were sumptuously entertained. But the civil wars had made a great change in this respect. Many of the old nobles had lost all their property, and of those who had any, the larger part had acquired other tastes during their exile.

2. A writer of the time of Charles II. tells us that "the English are generally great *flesh-eaters*, although, by the nearness of the sea, and abundance of rivers, there is no lack of fish. In former times their table was covered four times a day; they had breakfasts of meat, dinners of meat, beverages of meat, and suppers; but in the late troubles, many eminent families being impoverished, a custom was taken up by many of the nobility and gentry, of eating a plentiful dinner, but little or no supper."

3. Charles I. was the last sovereign of England who lived in that style of magnificence and abundant plenty, which used to excite amazement in the foreigners who visited the country. There were daily in his palace at Whitehall eighty-six tables, well furnished at each meal, as we may suppose, when we learn that there were more than five hundred dishes at each meal, with bread, wine, beer, and all other necessaries, liberally served. In this hospitality he followed the example of his father, who hoped thereby to endear the English to his royal house, as they had ever been fond of good cheer.

4. We are reminded of another change which took place about the close of the civil war. Before this time the officers generally wore defensive armor, and the soldiers leathern coats, or *buf' jekins*, as they were called. But now this armor went entirely out of use, and in William's reign, the armor-makers presented a petition to the house of commons, praying them to compel the use of it, for that otherwise their trade would be ruined. Their trade was

OXO.—1. What change in the style of living among the nobles? What occasioned it? 3. What of Charles I.'s hospitality? 4. What of the use of armor? 5. What of

indeed ruined, for it would have been absurd to load the body with a weight of iron, which the use of fire-arms rendered no longer a protection.

5. Fire-arms were not adopted in the English army till long after they were invented; and, indeed, when we learn what strange, clumsy things the first guns (or arquebusses) were, we are not surprised that the English bowmen, who excelled all others, should be averse to using them. These old guns were so heavy, that it was necessary to rest them on a forked stick before they could be levelled; and when the gun was propped on its staff, or rest, a lighted match was used for firing it.

6. The pistol was the next improvement on this unwieldy weapon, and had its name from being originally made at Pistoja, in Tuscany; but this was a very clumsy thing, being only a short arquebuss. In time, the contrivance of striking fire with a flint, and a reduction in the size and weight of fire-arms, brought them into general use, and the bow and arrow were entirely laid aside, as was also the pike, another formidable weapon, which was much in use in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

7. The first account we have of any attempt to dress soldiers in uniform, is in an order of Henry VIII. for the clothing of some troops raised for an invasion of France. The coats were to be blue with a great deal of red about them, and every man was to wear a red stocking on his right leg, and a blue one on his left. In Queen Elizabeth's time there were some regulations respecting soldiers' dress. One company, as we learn, was to be "clothed in motley, or some other sad-green color." A regular national uniform was not established before the time of George I.

8. As we have been speaking of the improvement in the weapons of war, it may not be amiss to say something of the progress in the art of healing wounds. On the first introduction of fire-arms, it was an opinion among the surgeons that there was something venomous in gunpowder, which poisoned all gunshot injuries, and their method of cure was to pour boiling oil into the wound. Happily, a young surgeon, Ambrose Paré, in the army of Francis I., of France, having on one occasion expended all his oil, was obliged to dress the remainder of the soldiers' wounds without it.

9. He could hardly sleep, as he tells us, thinking of his patients, and rose early in the morning, expecting to find all those whose wounds had not been scalded, either dead or "empoisoned." But to his surprise he found that they had rested well, and were free from pain, while the others were in fevers, and their wounds inflamed; "which being the case," he adds, "I resolved with myself never to burn gunshot wounds any more."

---

the use of fire-arms? 6. From what did the pistol derive its name? 7. What of the uniform dress of soldiers? 8. What was the old mode of dressing gunshot wounds? Who introduced a change?

## CHAPTER CXI.

*Queen Anne.—The Duke of Marlborough.—Battle of Blenheim.*

1. WILLIAM and Mary having no children, Queen Anne succeeded to the throne, being in the thirty-ninth year of her age. She had a good natural capacity, but it had been very little cultivated. In private life she would have been a very estimable character, but she wanted the decision and energy necessary to make a great queen. Her person was engaging, but without dignity. Her features were regular, but her complexion was too florid, and her face too full and plump to be perfectly handsome.

2. She had married, in 1683, George, son of the King of Denmark. The husband of a queen, in her own right, does not become a king, and Prince George had no greater dignities in the state than those of commander-in-chief of the queen's forces, and lord high admiral, or commander-in-chief of the navy. They had many children, who all died in infancy, except one son. This young prince lived to be eleven years old.

3. His death was occasioned by catching cold, after having been heated in dancing. It caused the most bitter grief to his parents, especially his mother, who, after that event, never regained her former vivacity. She considered the early death of all her children as a punishment inflicted by Heaven for her failure in filial duty. Though Anne took part with her sister and William against her father, she never seemed satisfied with her conduct in so doing; and it was generally believed that, had James outlived William, she would have declined the crown.

4. She did not feel the same scruples with regard to her brother; still, however, her heart inclined to his cause, and nothing but her anxiety for the Protestant establishment prevented her from taking a decided part in favor of his claims to succeed herself upon the throne. This question about the succession agitated the kingdom during her whole reign. The tories were in favor of the Pretender, as he was called, and of the house of Stuart, while the whigs were friends of the house of Hanover and the Protestant succession, as it had been established by law.

5. The greatest weakness in Anne's character, was that of being too much influenced by her favorites, to whom she attached herself ardently, and whom she permitted to treat her with more freedom than it was judicious for a queen to allow. The first and chief favorite was Sarah Jennings, wife of John Churchill, who became Duke of Marlborough. The duchess was a clever woman, but of an imperious and meddling temper. So great was the intimacy between her and the queen, that for a long time they corresponded

OXOL.—1. What of Queen Anne? 2. What of her husband? What of her children? How did the death of her children affect her? 4. What of the question of succession? 5. What weakness had Anne? Who was her first favorite? What of the Duke of Marl-

with each other, under the assumed names of Mrs. Freeman and Mrs. Morley.

6. The father of John Churchill held some inferior place in the court of Charles II. Young Churchill entered the army at twelve years of age, and was engaged in active service nearly the whole of his life, which proved a long one. His great abilities recommended him to William, who made him Earl of Marlborough, and appointed him to the command of his armies, first in Ireland, and afterwards on the continent.

7. On the accession of Anne, he was appointed to the command of the English troops in the new war which England, in connection with Germany and Holland, was about to undertake against France and Spain, and for which William was preparing at the time of his death. Marlborough was also appointed by the Dutch to the chief command of their troops. The campaign of 1702 was not distinguished by any great event.

8. There is a story told of a remarkable escape which Marlborough himself met with at this time. He had embarked on the river Meuse, with some Dutch deputies and a guard of soldiers, and was intending to go to the Hague. At the close of the evening, some French troops, who had been lurking about, and were on the watch for plunder, suddenly darted out from among the reeds by the river side, and, seizing the hauling-line, rushed into the boat.

9. They immediately secured the soldiers, and would have made the Dutch deputies prisoners also, had they not produced their passports. Marlborough was not provided with a passport, but one of his attendants, having an old one, slipped it into his hand; and the French officer, not having time to examine it, let him go, after plundering the boat and carrying off the soldiers. Marlborough and his companions arrived safely at the Hague, where they found the town in the utmost consternation, a report having reached it that they had all been taken prisoners.

10. The war was carried on with great activity during 1703. In 1704, the English and Dutch armies, under the command of Marlborough, who had now become a duke, were joined by the army of the Emperor of Germany, under Prince Eugene. On the 13th of August, 1704, the combined armies gained, at Blenheim, a complete victory over the French. The consequences of this triumph were of immense importance, and the Duke of Marlborough, who was from this time looked up to as the greatest commander since the Black Prince, received a corresponding reward. The queen bestowed on him the estate of Woodstock, near Oxford, and a noble mansion was there built for him at the public expense, to which was given the name of Blenheim.

11. The duke's success in war was not accidental. He possessed the qualities which insure success in every profession. He was a man of extreme calmness and tranquillity; nothing flurried, nothing disconcerted him. Commanding an army composed of men of dif-

ferent nations, whose interests were perpetually clashing, he listened to no cabals, but acted for the public cause.

12. Of his command of temper, we remember one very striking instance. Prince Eugene had proposed, at a council of war, that an attack should be made the next day on the enemy. Though nothing could be more evidently judicious than this proposal, the duke positively refused to consent to it. The prince called him a coward, and challenged him to fight a duel; but Marlborough kept his temper, and declined the challenge. Upon this, Eugene, being violently enraged, left the council.

13. Early the next morning he was awakened by Marlborough, who, coming to his bedside, desired him to rise, as he was preparing to make the attack, and added, "I could not tell you my determination last night, because there was a person present who I knew would betray our plans to the enemy." The prince, ashamed of his own intemperate conduct, asked pardon of the duke, who accepted his apologies, saying, "I thought, my dear prince, you would in time be satisfied."

## CHAPTER CXCII.

*Gibraltar taken from the Spaniards.—Ingratitude of the Country to its Captors.—Sir Cloudesley Shovel.—Robinson Crusoe.*

1. THE treatment of the Duke of Marlborough by his sovereign and fellow-subjects, contrasts strangely with that received by a distinguished naval commander. The fortress of Gibraltar, which commands the entrance to the Mediterranean Sea, had hitherto been deemed impregnable. It stands on the summit of a steep and rocky mountain, and is almost inaccessible, even when the approach is unopposed. A few brave troops, under a skilful commander, could hold it against the most numerous armies.

2. Sir George Rooke, returning with a squadron from an unsuccessful expedition against Barcelona, determined to retrieve any reputation which he might have lost, by taking this fortress. The Prince of Hesse, who commanded the land forces, very unwillingly yielded his assent to what he considered a hopeless attempt. So it proved, so far as the land forces were concerned. The soldiers could effect nothing.

3. A detachment of sailors was then landed, who, mounting the rocks with the ease and alacrity of the monkeys who make their home among them, soon compelled the governor to surrender; and the Prince of Hesse entered the town, amazed at the success of so desperate an enterprise. Sir George might well have expected rewards and honors for so brilliant an exploit. But he had no influential wife at the side of the queen, no powerful friends in parliament.

fought? Between whom? 11. What of Marlborough's abilities? 12, 13. What instance of his command of temper?

CXCII.—1. What of the fortress of Gibraltar? 2. Relate the particulars of its cap-

4. An attempt was made by some one to get a vote of thanks from the latter, but that body decided that the exploit was not worth their thanks, and Sir George was suffered to pass the rest of his life in retirement and obscurity. From all Marlborough's victories, England derived no permanent advantage, but merely the name of having beaten her enemies. But Gibraltar still remains to her, and is one of the most important of her foreign possessions.

5. There was another naval commander who is worthy of mention. This was Sir Cloudesley Shovel, who was born of poor parents, and apprenticed, when very young, to a shoemaker. This employment was not at all to his taste, so he left his master, and became a cabin-boy on board a ship of war. During the heat of an engagement, the admiral wished to send some despatches to another ship, and young Cloudesley volunteered to perform the dangerous service. Taking the papers in his mouth, he conveyed them in safety through the enemy's line of fire.

6. This bold deed obtained for him the notice of the officers of the fleet. In time he was made a lieutenant, and after that, his rise was rapid. Both James and William promoted him. From Anne he received many honors and distinctions; but none of these altered the original simplicity of his manners and character. In 1705 he was sent with a fleet to aid the operations, in Spain, of the Earl of Peterborough, a general whose exploits have all the character of the age of chivalry.

7. As Sir Cloudesley was returning from this expedition, in 1707, his ship, with three others, was wrecked on the rocks of the Scilly Isles. Out of the four ships' crews, only one captain and twenty-four seamen were saved. Sir Cloudesley's body was found on the shore, having been stripped by the country people and buried in the sand. It was afterwards taken up and deposited in Westminster Abbey, where lie buried the bodies of most Englishmen who have been distinguished in any profession.

8. Many years after the shipwreck, an old woman sent for a clergyman, and told him that she wished, before she died, to confess to him a dreadful crime, which burdened her conscience. She then told him that Admiral Shovel had survived the wreck, and had reached her hut in a very exhausted state; that he lay down on her bed to rest, and that she, tempted by the value of the things he had about him, had murdered him.

9. This shipwreck reminds us of Robinson Crusoe, whose adventures were written by Daniel Defoe, a voluminous author of Queen Anne's reign. It is not a real history, but a fictitious story. It is supposed that the adventures of Alexander Selkirk, who lived some years on the island of Juan Fernandez, in the Pacific Ocean, suggested to Defoe the idea of writing this delightful book; a work which has been translated into more languages than perhaps any other book of amusement.

## CHAPTER CXCIII.

*Marlborough continues his victorious Career.—He loses the Favor of the Queen and the People.—Peace of Utrecht.—Contests between the Whigs and Tories.—Death of Anne.—Union between Scotland and England.*

1. WE left the Duke of Marlborough enjoying the reward of his successful campaign on the continent. He gained many more victories during the war; of which the most celebrated are those of Ramillies, May 23d, 1706; of Oudenarde, July 11th, 1706; and of Malplaquet, September 11th, 1709. All this time his enemies and rivals at home were busily endeavoring to undermine his favor with the queen; and they at last succeeded.

2. He had always had great influence in the political councils of Anne; but he was now supplanted by Mr. Harley, afterwards Earl of Oxford. At the same time a Mrs. Masham supplanted the Duchess of Marlborough as the queen's favorite. Marlborough, as his favor diminished at court, seems to have lost the affections of the people. On coming into England in 1710, instead of being caressed as formerly, and received with a triumphant welcome, he saw himself insulted and reviled.

3. He returned to the army, and continued to conduct the affairs of the war with his usual ability and success. But the tories, at the head of whom was the Earl of Oxford, were not content till they procured his dismissal from the command of the army; which they effected in 1711. Animosity towards him was not the sole motive for this; the war had been a favorite measure with the whigs.

4. The tories were desirous of peace, and they could not effect their wishes so long as Marlborough retained any power, for it was believed, and his well-known avarice gave some foundation for the belief, that all his influence would be exerted to continue the war, that he might retain his lucrative offices. The tories prevailed, and peace was signed at Utrecht in April, 1713. By this treaty, Newfoundland, Hudson's Bay, and the Island of St. Christopher were ceded by France to England.

5. Louis also agreed to abandon the cause of the Pretender, who had now assumed the name of the Chevalier St. George. Louis, however, still continued to protect him. He had married a daughter of John Sobieski, King of Poland. He had two sons, Charles Edward and Henry. The eldest was afterwards known as the young pretender. Henry became a Roman Catholic priest, and was afterwards Cardinal of York.

6. The intolerable dissensions between the leaders of the two great

CXCIII.—1. What other victories did Marlborough obtain? Give the dates. 2. By whom was Marlborough supplanted in Anne's favor? Who supplanted his wife? What of Marlborough's favor with the people? 3. What did his opponents do? 4. What of the peace? When and where was it signed? 5. What of the Pretender? What of his sons? 6. What of the quarrels between the whigs and tories? What did the whigs do?

parties, the whigs and the tories, who never met at the council without violent altercations, kept the queen in such a state of disquietude, as at last to destroy her health. The whigs proved in the end the strongest; and at length, the queen's death visibly approaching, a letter was sent to George, Elector of Hanover, who, by the death of his mother, Sophia, was the head of the Protestant succession, desiring him to come to Holland, where a fleet should be in waiting to escort him to England.

7. Heralds were kept in waiting to proclaim King George the instant the queen should expire. The seaports were all secured, and every precaution was taken to prevent the tories and Jacobites from attempting the restoration of the Stuarts. The queen died August 1, 1714, in the fiftieth year of her age, and the thirteenth of her reign. Prince George died several years before her. With Anne the line of sovereigns of the house of Stuart ended.

8. Though Anne was a woman of no very brilliant qualities, yet many lasting benefits were in her reign conferred on the country. Among these was the union with Scotland. Hitherto England and Scotland had been considered as separate countries; each had its own parliament, and regarded itself as an independent kingdom, subject, however, to the same sovereign.

9. This was a very troublesome arrangement, and a perfect union had long been desired by the most discreet persons of both kingdoms. This was now effected; the two kingdoms were henceforth to be one country; each was to retain its own peculiar laws, and one parliament was to serve for both. This measure, which met with much opposition at the time, has proved of incalculable benefit to both countries.

#### FAMILY OF ANNE.

##### HUSBAND.

George, son of the King of Denmark.

##### CHILDREN.

She had nine children, all of whom died in infancy except one son, named George, who lived to be eleven years old, and died in 1700.

#### TABLE OF SOVEREIGNS OF THE STUART FAMILY.

Began to reign. Reigned.

1603 . . 22 . . James I. of England and VI. of Scotland, great great-grandson of Henry VII.

1625 . . 24 . . Charles I., son of James I. Beheaded by order of the parliament.

#### COMMONWEALTH.

1653 . . 5 . . Oliver Cromwell, Lord Protector.

1658 . . . . . Richard Cromwell, Lord Protector, resigns his power.

---

when the queen became ill? 7. When did she die? 8, 9. What particular benefit did she confer on the country?

## HOUSE OF STUART RESTORED TO THE THRONE.

Began to reign. Reigned.

- 1660 . . 25 . . Charles II., son of Charles I.
- 1685 . . 3 . . James II., son of Charles I. He abdicates the throne.
- 1688 . . 14 . . William III. and Mary. The latter the daughter of James II.
- 1702 . . 12 . . Anne, daughter of James II.

---

## CHAPTER CXCIV.

*Of the great Men of Queen Anne's Time.—Newton—Locke—Clarke—Pope—Addison—Swift—Watts.*



1. THE reign of Anne was a very brilliant epoch in English history, and very few other periods can be named in which so many men of genius flourished together. We have already spoken about the chief naval and military heroes. We must now mention some of those who contributed to give the age a much more lasting reputation.

2. First comes Sir Isaac Newton, who was not only one of the profoundest philosophers, but also one of the most sincere and humble Christians that ever lived. His father was a gentleman of small estate at Woolsthorpe, and died when his son, who was born on Christmas-day, 1642, was very young. His widow married again, and Isaac was employed by his step-father as a shepherd-boy.

3. One day, while he was keeping the sheep, a gentleman passing by observed that he was deeply occupied in some book, and had the curiosity to ask him what it was. To his surprise, he found that it was a work on practical geometry. This circumstance was mentioned to his mother's relations, who took him from his humble employment, and placed him at school at Grantham. His progress there was quite astonishing; and he was noted for his strange inventions, and extraordinary inclination for mechanics.

4. He had a little shop of tools, as little saws, hatchets, and hammers, with which he amused himself in making models in wood of various things. Whilst his companions were flying kites, he was occupied in investigating the best form which could be given to them, and the most advantageous place for tying the string. From school he was sent to the University of Cambridge; of which, at a very early age, he became a professor.

5. Newton made many discoveries, any one of which would be sufficient to bestow a lasting fame. The chief are the theory of colors, and the laws of gravitation, or that force by which the sun, moon, and planets are kept in their relative positions. To men of genius the most trifling incidents sometimes suggest matters of deep importance. The plague broke out at Cambridge, and Newton was obliged to return home.

6. As he was one day sitting in his garden, the falling of an apple from a tree led his thoughts to the subject of gravity, and considering that this power does not sensibly diminish at the points the most remote from the earth's centre, even at the tops of the highest mountains, he thought that it must extend much further. Why not to the moon? was his next question to himself.

7. He pursued the inquiry thus suggested, until he discovered that the law which keeps the moon revolving about the earth, and the planets revolving about the sun, is the same with that which causes an apple to fall to the ground, that is, draws it towards the centre of the earth. Newton's extreme modesty and gentleness of temper were more extraordinary than even his talents and acquirements. He lived to the age of eighty-five years, retaining to the close of his life the full use of his powers of mind.

8. He was never guilty of any one excess, except it be excess of study. We are told that one day, when his favorite little dog, Diamond, destroyed a manuscript which he had spent much time in completing, all that he said was, "O Diamond, Diamond, thou little knowest the mischief thou hast done!" and then quietly set to work to repair the mischief by days and nights of hard study.

9. In his person this extraordinary man was of middling stature; his countenance was pleasing, but did not display that deep sagacity which is everywhere perceptible in his writings. Contemporary with Newton was John Locke, a distinguished moral philosopher, who wrote Essays on the Human Understanding, and works on Education, Government, &c. At the request of his friend, Lord

---

What discoveries did he make? 6, 7. Relate the incident connected with that of the laws of gravitation. 8. Relate the anecdote showing his mildness. 9. What of

Shaftesbury, he prepared a constitution for the colony of North Carolina, which that nobleman and others were about to establish.

10. Queen Caroline, wife of George II., of whom you will presently hear, was a great admirer of men of profound talent. Her pavilion at Richmond was adorned by the busts of Bacon, Newton, Locke, and Clarke. The last-named, Dr. Samuel Clarke, was another of the truly great men who flourished in the time of Queen Anne. He is alike distinguished for his theological and his philosophical works.

11. But the men we have mentioned are not those usually intended by the phrase "the writers of Queen Anne's time," who rendered that period an epoch in the history of taste and literature. The chief of these were Pope and Addison, who, perhaps, did more towards the improvement of the general style of thinking and writing than any other authors have done.

12. Pope stands next to Milton in the list of English poets. He was happier in one respect, for his merits were appreciated by his contemporaries, and produced to him a handsome fortune, which enabled him to entertain his friends at his villa at Twickenham. Addison, assisted by Steele and others, published the *Spectator* and *Tatler*.

13. These were the first periodical papers which pretended to any literary merit, published in England. They were read with the greatest assiduity by all classes of persons, and were long referred to as models upon which to form a correct style of writing. Youthful readers are perhaps more familiar with the works of another great genius of this age, Dean Swift, the author of *Gulliver's Travels*.

14. Perhaps they do not know that what seems to them merely a fabulous story about *Liliputians*, was a very severe satire, well understood at the time. We should not be forgiven if we omitted to mention that great and good man, Dr. Isaac Watts, who may emphatically be called *the benefactor of children*.

15. It is true he did not die till 1748, but he was then at the advanced age of seventy-five years, so that he was in the maturity of his powers during Queen Anne's reign. His name is now most familiar to us as the author of many beautiful hymns, and a poetical version of the Psalms; but he was also distinguished as a writer on philosophical subjects.

## CHAPTER CXCV.

### *George I.—Rebellion in Scotland.—Fight of Sheriff-Muir.*

1. THE arrangements of the whigs were entirely successful. The breath was hardly out of Anne's body, before proclamation was made

of the Elector of Hanover as king, by the title of George I. He was met at his landing in England by many persons of high office and rank; amongst others, by the Duke of Marlborough, whom he ever treated with great distinction.

2. George, at his accession, was in the fifty-fifth year of his age. He was a man of plain, steady understanding, grave in his manners, and simple in his habits. He had an honest, sensible countenance, without anything very striking. A late nobleman tells us, that when he was a little boy he had a great desire to see the king; and as his father held a high office, his wish was indulged, and he was allowed to go into a room where the king was at supper.

3. He "there saw a short hale man, with an aspect rather good than dignified, having on a large wig, and dressed in a complete suit of snuff-colored clothes, with stockings to match; and this man was George I." As the king could speak but little English, and his chief minister, Sir Robert Walpole, understood neither German nor French, the intercourse between them was carried on in Latin.

4. In all his notions and ways the king was too much of a German to be popular in England. He had married the Princess Sophia Dorothea, of Zell, and either had, or supposed himself to have, so much reason to be displeased with her conduct, that he shut her up in the castle of Ahlden, not far from Hanover.

5. In this gloomy building, on the banks of the river Aller, she passed the last forty years of her life. Her only son, George, when he grew to be a man, had a strong desire to see her; but he tried in vain to accomplish it. One day he swam his horse across the Aller, made his way to the gates of the castle, and passed the outer moat, or ditch; but when he got to the draw-bridge of the inner moat, the governor of the castle met him, and made him retire.

6. George I. did not leave room for any doubt as to the political party which was to have his support. The whigs were received by him with the greatest courtesy and kindness, whilst the tories met with decided marks of disapprobation. If he had been content with this, it would have been better for his reputation and his quiet, but he suffered the whigs to persecute the tory leaders. Lord Oxford was committed to the Tower on a charge of treason. The Duke of Ormond and Lord Bolingbroke fled to France to escape a similar fate, and their names were stricken from the list of English peers.

7. These violent proceedings excited indignation, and the discontent at length broke out into open rebellion. The Earl of Mar, a Highland chieftain, assembled his vassals, and on the 6th of September, 1715, proclaimed James Stuart to be king; about the same time the Earl of Derwentwater and Mr. Foster took up arms in the north of England, in the same cause. They were joined by Lords Kinmuir and Nithsdale, and other Scottish gentlemen.

8. On the other side, the Duke of Argyle summoned his clansmen, the numerous and powerful Campbells, to take up arms for King

---

CXCV.—1. What of the success of the whigs' arrangements? 2. What of George? 3. How is he described by one who saw him? What of his knowledge of the English language? 4, 5. What of his wife? 6. What of his treatment of the political parties.

George. With these he met the Earl of Mar near Dumblane, at Sheriff-Muir. The earl's troops were at the first onset successful, and General Whetham, who commanded a division of Argyle's army, fled, full gallop, to Stirling, exclaiming that the king's army was completely defeated.

9. In the mean time Argyle's own division had defeated the body of the rebels opposed to them, but on returning to the field, met the victorious insurgents. Neither party felt disposed to renew the contest, so they stood looking at each other for several hours, and at length drew off different ways, each party claiming the victory. One of the Jacobite songs, in allusion to this battle, begins thus:

10. There's some say that we won,  
Some say that they won,  
Some say that none won  
At a', man.

But one thing I'm sure,  
That at Sheriff-Muir  
A battle there was,  
Which I saw, man.

And we ran, and they ran,  
And they ran, and we ran,  
And we ran, and they ran,  
Awa', man.

11. The Duke of Argyle, however, had all the fruits of victory. On December 22d, the Pretender arrived in Scotland, attended by only six gentlemen. In the expectation that the whole country would rise in his cause, he fixed January 16th, 1716, for the day of his coronation at Scone, where his ancestors for many generations had been crowned Kings of Scotland. But before the appointed day arrived, he was so closely pursued by Argyle, that he was glad to abandon his enterprise, and get back to France.

## CHAPTER CXCVI.

*Of the Rising in England.—How Lord Nithsdale effected his Escape from Prison.—The South-Sea Scheme.—Death of George I.*

1. ON the very day of the fight at Sheriff-Muir, November 12th, the English Jacobites under Derwentwater and his companions had been compelled to surrender to the troops of King George. The prisoners were treated with the greatest cruelty. The leaders were sent to London, and were led through the streets to the various prisons, pinioned like common malefactors. Derwentwater,

7. What was the consequence of the violence against the tories? What of the rebellion in Scotland? 8, 9, 10. What of his fight of Sheriff-Muir? 11. What of the Pretender?

Kenmuir, and Nithsdale were condemned to be beheaded, and the two former were executed.

2. Many of the rest were hung, and more than 1000 were banished to America. Lord Nithsdale effected his escape in a manner which is worth relating. His wife was in Scotland when she heard of her husband's danger. She set off at once for London, and rode the greatest part of the way on horseback, and in so deep a snow, that it was frequently up to her saddle-girths. On her arrival, she personally petitioned the king for her husband's life, but in vain. She therefore set herself to work to effect his escape from prison.

3. Having permission to visit her lord, and to bring with her one friend at a time, to take leave of him before his death, she took a Mrs. Mills and another lady in a coach to the Tower, and left the former waiting in the carriage, while she and the other lady went into Lord Nithsdale's apartment. This lady, who was of a slender shape, had on two suits of clothes, and two riding-hoods.

4. One of these suits she took off and left with Lord Nithsdale, and then went back to the carriage, where she waited while Mrs. Mills paid *her* visit. Mrs. Mills changed her dress for the one the other lady had left, and then returned to the coach. As Mrs. Mills was a large, stout woman, her clothes fitted Lord Nithsdale very well; but as he was of a dark complexion, and she of a fair one, with yellow hair, some further contrivance was necessary before he could pass for her without remark.

5. However, by the help of white and red paint, and painting his eyebrows yellow, and putting on a woman's wig of yellow hair, he was made a very tolerable copy of good Mrs. Mills. When his disguise was completed, his wife, who had assisted at his toilet, conducted him out of the room, and, in the hearing of the guards, called him Betty, and told him to run quickly and send her maid to her. The guards, suspecting nothing, opened the doors for the supposed Betty.

6. Thus Lord Nithsdale got out of prison, and was conducted to a lodging that had been provided. In the mean time, Lady Nithsdale returned to the room that had been her lord's prison, and began to talk in a loud voice, and sometimes imitated his, to make the guards on the outside of the door believe they were conversing together. How she had the power to do this, we can hardly imagine, for her poor heart must have been beating all the time with fear lest her husband should be discovered in his disguise.

7. After she had carried on the pretended conversation for some time, she left the prison, and hastened to the place of her lord's concealment. A miserable place it was, being a small room in a wretched house, full of all sorts of lodgers. In this apartment they remained three days; and that it might not be known that it was inhabited, they sat perfectly still during the whole time, with nothing to eat but some bread and wine which Mrs. Mills, who came to them once or twice, brought in her pocket.

8. At last this indefatigable friend, having prepared everything for

his leaving the kingdom, released the prisoners, and took Lord Nithsdale to the house of the Venetian ambassador, who was about to send his carriage to Dover. Nithsdale put on a suit of livery, as the uniform dress usually worn by the servants of the rich is called, and so passed safely to Dover, and thence to Calais. The passage across the channel from Dover to Calais was so short, that the captain of the vessel observed, that the wind could not have served them better if his passengers had been flying for their lives.

9. No further attempt was made by the Jacobites in England during the reign of George I. in favor of the pretender. Indeed, after he had been in Scotland, and his adherents had seen that he was not the high-minded hero they had enthusiastically fancied him to be, his cause visibly declined. He was, in fact, a man of very slender abilities, and of a mean, selfish character.

10. Little else worthy of mention occurred during the reign of George I., if we except the *South-Sea Scheme*, as it was called. This was contrived by Sir John Blount, a speculating man, and the object was to enable an association of men, called the South-Sea Company, because it was originally formed to trade to the Pacific or South Seas, to buy up all the debt of Great Britain. This debt amounted to a very large sum, and the greater part was contracted by William, in carrying on his wars upon the continent.

11. It was made to appear that the speculation would be enormously profitable to the company, and the whole nation, as if by a general impulse of avarice, became eager to engage in it. Multitudes advanced their whole fortunes, in the expectation of receiving a great return. But the bubble soon burst, and the whole was found to be a fraudulent scheme of a few unprincipled speculators.

12. The king was much attached to Hanover, and made frequent visits thither. In 1727, he set out with the intention of going there once more. He had proceeded as far as Delden, a small town on the frontiers of Germany, when he was taken extremely ill. Instead of stopping, he pushed forward, in the hope of reaching the palace of his brother, who was Bishop of Osnaburg. But he did not live to get there. When the carriage stopped at the gate of the palace, he was found lying a corpse within. He died in the sixty-eighth year of his age, and thirteenth of his reign.

#### FAMILY OF GEORGE I.

##### WIFE.

Sophia Dorothea, of Zell.

##### CHILDREN.

George Augustus, Prince of Wales.

A daughter, married to Frederick William, King of Prussia.

---

particulars of Nithsdale's escape. 9. Were any other attempts made in this reign to restore the Stuarts? 10. What of the South-Sea Scheme? 12. Relate the particulars of the king's death. What was the length of his life? Of his reign?

## CHAPTER CXCVII.

*George II.—Queen Caroline.—War on the Continent.—Battle of Fontenoy.—Anson's Voyage round the world.*

1. GEORGE II. was in the forty-fifth year of his age, when, by the sudden death of his father, he became king, 1727. In his person he was below the middle height, well shaped and upright. His complexion was fair, his nose aquiline, and his eyes remarkably prominent. His abilities were inferior to those of his father, and his temper hasty. He was simple in his tastes and habits. His strongest feeling was a preference for Hanover to England.

2. His wife, Queen Caroline, united brilliant beauty to a strong understanding and great goodness of heart. We have already mentioned her regard for men of science, and with such she delighted to converse. She died in 1737, and the king's grief for her loss was sincere and excessive, though during her life he had not always treated her with tenderness; for which her mischievous interference in politics furnished some apology.

3. George II., on his accession, found the country in a state of great tranquillity, and little occurred for many years to disturb it. The winter of 1740 was remarkable for the most severe frost that had ever been known in England. It began at Christmas, and lasted till the latter end of February. The Thames was so strongly frozen over, that tents and booths were raised upon it, and various sports were exhibited upon the ice for the diversion of the people.

4. But these amusements could not divert the poor from the feeling of the privations they suffered from the continuance of the severe weather. The watermen and fishermen were thrown out of work, and fuel and provisions became so dear, that, if it had not been for the charity of the rich, many persons must have perished with cold and hunger.

5. A contest arose about this time between Maria Theresa and the Elector of Bavaria, for the throne of Germany. Nearly all the states of Europe became involved in the quarrel on one side or the other. The King of England espoused the cause of Maria Theresa, and, in 1743, took the command of his troops on the continent in person. The only engagement in which he had a part, appears to have been in repelling an attack of the French upon his army, while posted at Dettingen.

6. In this he displayed great personal courage, exposing himself 'o the fire of the musketry and cannon, riding along the line and encouraging the men to fight for the honor of England. This was the last occasion on which a king of England exposed his person in battle. Upon his departure, the command of the army devolved upon his son, the Duke of Cumberland, who, on the 30th of April, 1745, was defeated by the French at Fontenoy.

CXCVII.—1. What of George II.? 2. What of Queen Caroline? 3. What of the state of the country? 4. What of the winter of 1740? 5. In what war did he engage?

7. The English naval forces conducted themselves with their usual gallantry during this war, but there is nothing worthy of special mention, except the expedition of Commodore Anson. On the 18th of September, 1740, he sailed from England, with a small squadron, to act against the Spanish settlements in Chili and Peru, on the western side of South America. Touching at the island of Madeira, he proceeded thence to the Cape de Verd Islands; thence sailing along the coast of Brazil, he stopped at the island of St. Catharine.

8. At this delightful island, which lies in twenty-seven degrees south latitude, and which enjoys all the verdure and fruitfulness of that luxurious climate, he remained some time, for the purpose of recruiting the strength of his men. He then again set sail, coasting along the shores of Patagonia, and, in about five months from the time he left England, he entered the Straits of Magellan. His own ship, the Centurion, at last reached the island of Juan Fernandez, in the Pacific Ocean, after encountering the utmost perils from most horrible tempests, by which the rest of the fleet were dispersed or wrecked.

9. Here he was joined by the Gloucester ship of war and two small vessels with stores. After repairing the ships, which were much shattered, and refreshing the men, a large number of whom were ill of the scurvy, a disease which the constant use of salted provisions is apt to bring upon seamen, he proceeded to execute the object of the expedition. He plundered and burnt the town of Paita, in Quito, and took several Spanish vessels. By this time he had lost so many of his men by sickness, that he was obliged to abandon all his vessels, except the Centurion.

10. Although the survivors of all the crews had been taken on board this ship, yet the sickness made such ravages, and the ship itself was in such a disabled condition, that Anson found himself obliged to leave the enemy's coast. He then stretched across the Pacific Ocean, and reached with difficulty the beautiful little island of Tinian, one of the Ladrones, of which he gives a most delightful account, and where he says verdant fields, groves, cascades, and flowers, contributed to please the senses.

11. What was of more consequence to them, they found in great abundance all that a sea-beaten company of mariners could desire; clear and wholesome water, medicinal herbs, domestic animals, and the materials for refitting their vessel. When his men had recovered their health, Anson proceeded to Canton, where he obtained a reinforcement of Dutch and Indian sailors. He then returned towards the coast of America, in the hope of intercepting a rich treasure-ship, which was known to sail annually from Acapulco, a port of Mexico, to Manilla, in the Philippine Isles.

12. On the 9th of June, 1743, the ship they were in search of came in sight. She was much stronger than the Centurion, heavily armed, and having twice as many men. Still Anson did not hesitate to attack her, and, after a short engagement, she surrendered. He

then returned to England by the way of the Cape of Good Hope. He arrived at Spithead, June 14th, 1744, having been absent nearly four years, and having sailed round the globe; a frequent occurrence in our days, but which, in Anson's time, was thought to be no small achievement.

13. The quantity of money he brought home was so great, that it required thirty-two wagons to convey it to London. This train of vehicles made quite a procession, and was accompanied with music playing and people shouting. A part of the stout ship Centurion is yet in existence. The huge red lion, that once was its head, now adorns a garden in Sussex. Anson received many public honors, and became quite an oracle in naval affairs.

## CHAPTER CXCVIII.

*The young Pretender lands in Scotland.—Is victorious at Prestonpans, and marches into England.—Is compelled to retreat.*

1. THE possession of Hanover by the crown of Great Britain has been from the beginning a source of evil to the latter country; since it has involved her in all the quarrels between the states of the continent, of which her insular situation would otherwise have made her a mere spectator, or, perhaps, a mediator. The great bodies of troops, and immense sums of money, which were annually sent out of the kingdom, excited the discontent of the people.

2. At length the contests in parliament became so violent, and the murmurs of the people so loud, that the friends of the pretender were induced to believe that his presence in England would produce a general rising of the people in his favor. James himself was of too sluggish a nature to engage personally in the contest; he, therefore, deputed Charles Edward, his oldest son, to be his representative.

3. In June, 1745, this prince embarked, with a few Scotch and Irish gentlemen, in a small frigate. His supply of arms was put on board a French ship, which was so much disabled in an engagement with an English vessel, that it was obliged to put back to France. The prince's vessel was more fortunate, and, on the 16th of July, he landed at Borodale, and was joined by a considerable number of Highlanders.

4. A moment more favorable for this enterprise could not have been chosen. The king was in Hanover; the Duke of Cumberland, with the best part of the troops, was in Flanders; and the ministers

---

the particulars of Anson's voyage, till he reached Juan Fernandez. Till his arrival at Canton. The remainder of the voyage. 13. What of the remains of his ship?

CXCVIII.—1. What of the possession of Hanover by England? 2. When did the young pretender embark for Great Britain? What of his voyage? 4. What rendered

and parliament were divided, as usual, by vehement political disputes. But Charles could not make the most of these advantages, for want of the arms which were in the French ship, on board of which a considerable number of French officers had embarked, whose experience would have been of incalculable benefit to him.

5. The news of his arrival threw all England into commotion. But the result was not such as the prince had expected; instead of being joined by the opponents of the measures of the government, the political disputants forgot their animosities, and joined in the common cause against the Jacobites. The king soon returned, and messengers were instantly despatched, and a reward of \$150,000 was offered to any one who would seize Charles Edward; Charles, in retaliation, offered the same price for the head of the "Elector of Hanover."

6. Meanwhile, the army of the prince was daily increasing in number, as he advanced into the country. On the 16th of September he took possession of the town of Edinburgh, but could not take the castle, which held out for King George. Sir John Cope, who commanded that king's forces in Scotland, hastened to its relief, and on the 20th of September, encamped at Prestonpans, about nine miles distant. The next morning Charles advanced to meet him, and the half-armed Highlanders attacked the king's troops with so much fury, that the latter could not stand the assault, but fled with the utmost precipitation.

7. By this victory the prince obtained what he wanted most of all, arms, ammunition, and a train of artillery. A considerable portion of Scotland was now in the possession of the Jacobites. The good conduct of Prince Charles greatly increased the popularity of his cause. He showed himself both vigorous in action and prudent in council, and bore his success with moderation. The King of France, seeing that his affairs were prosperous, sent him a supply of arms and officers, and promised that a large body of French should be landed in the south of England.

8. Relying on this promise, Charles passed the borders of Scotland, and advanced as far as Derby, which is within four days' march of London. Indescribable alarm and consternation prevailed in that city. Those who were in London fled into the country, while those in the country fled to London, every person thinking the place he was in the place of danger. The king acted with energy and decision, and prepared to take the field in person.

9. But at the time when the alarm in London had risen to the utmost height, and the approach of the rebels was hourly expected, the threatening storm suddenly dispersed. The Scotch officers, hearing no tidings of the landing of their French allies, began to be afraid that they should be hemmed in by the English troops, which were collecting from all parts; they, therefore, resolved to retreat homewards.

10. This measure was much against the wishes of the prince, who

---

the time favorable for his attempt? 5. What effect did his arrival produce? 6. What of his success? In what battle was he victorious? 8. What induced him to march into

was for pushing on to London, before the consternation had subsided or the preparations for its defence were complete. Reluctantly compelled to submit to the decision of the rest, Prince Charles, disappointed and spiritless, followed in the rear of the army. It is worthy of remark, that, during the six weeks which the Scotch troops had been in England, they committed no kind of outrage or robbery, although they had often suffered greatly from hunger.

---

### CHAPTER CXCIX.

*The Pretender is victorious at Falkirk, but is defeated at Culloden.—Horrible Cruelties practised by the Victors.—Romantic Adventures of Prince Charles Edward.*



BATTLE OF CULLODEN.

1. CHARLES soon recovered his spirit when the opportunity for active operations offered itself. On January 13, 1746, he obtained a victory at Falkirk, over a part of the English army. Meanwhile, the Duke of Cumberland, who had returned from the continent, had taken the command of the king's forces, and now advanced to Nairn, which is nine miles distant from Culloden, where the prince was posted.

2. Charles, hearing of the approach of the English army, set out on the night of the 15th of April, with the design of surprising the enemy. He began his march in two columns; but his men, having

---

England? What of the effect of his progress? 9. Why did he retreat? 10. What of the prince? What of the conduct of the Scotch troops?  
CXCIX.—1. In what battle was the prince victorious? In what was he defeated?

been under arms all the night before, were many of them overpowered by sleep and weariness. Many fell down from fatigue, and were unable to proceed. It now became absolutely necessary to abandon the intended attack, and to retreat.

3. When they got back to Culloden, the poor wearied soldiers lay down on the bare heath and slept; but they were soon roused from their repose by some of their companions, who had lain down by the way during the retreat, and who, having been awakened by the noise of the English army, which was advancing, had hastened to inform the prince of its approach. The king's troops came in sight about noon, and, in less than half an hour from the first firing, the army of Charles was totally defeated.

4. The dreadful cruelties practised upon the vanquished, by the orders of the Duke of Cumberland, made his name to be execrated throughout Scotland, and have fixed an indelible stain upon his memory. It is said that, in a district of nearly fifty miles round Lochiel, there was, in the course of a few days, neither house nor cottage, neither men nor beasts to be seen—so complete was the ruin, silence and desolation.

5. The jails of England were now filled with prisoners. Many were executed, and many were transported to America. Lords Balmerino, Kilmarnock, and Lovat, and Mr. Radcliffe, who were the principal persons concerned, were carried to London and executed. They were the last persons who suffered the punishment of behcading in England. Mr. Radcliffe was a brother of that Lord Derwentwater, who was *out* in 1716, as the Jacobites expressed the being concerned in open hostilities to the king.

6. We must now return to the young prince, and give an account of his escape. He remained upon the field at Culloden as long as any hope remained of retrieving the battle, and then rode off, attended by a few friends. The safety of all required that these should part company, and conceal themselves as they best could from the soldiers, who scattered themselves over the country in pursuit of Charles, with an eagerness much increased by the enormous reward offered for his capture.

7. During the next five months the prince wandered among the Highlands, owing his preservation to the fidelity of the poor inhabitants, who concealed him in their huts and caves, at the risk of their own lives. There is an interesting account of a young lady who contrived to assist him. Charles was desirous to go from the Isle of Lewis, where he had been some time concealed, to the Isle of Skye; but it was difficult to get there, on account of the troops who were yet on the watch for him. Miss Flora Macdonald offered to conduct him, if he would put on woman's clothes and pass for her maid.

8. The prince readily agreed, and assumed the name and dress of Betty Bourke, an Irish girl. He embarked with Flora in an open boat, and they landed safely at Skye. After they reached this place, they had some distance to walk; and the prince, who was very tall,

and looked excessively awkward in woman's clothes, drew the attention of every one who passed, and was every moment in danger of being discovered. At last they arrived at Kingsborough, a house belonging to one of the clan of Macdonalds.



ESCAPE OF THE PRETENDER.

9. Here the prince enjoyed the luxury of lying on a bed, a pleasure which he had not experienced for many weeks; and he slept so soundly that he did not awake till the middle of the following day. They then proceeded to Portree; but before they reached that place the prince changed his dress, and, putting on a Highland plaid and a Scotch bonnet over his wig, was metamorphosed from Betty Bourke into a stout Highlander. Here he parted with his female guide, and was conducted by Malcolm Macloud to his home at Rasay.

10. He was there concealed in a small hut, with a bed of dry heather to lie on; and it was with difficulty that provisions were procured for him. Even this wretched place was not one of safety, so they returned to Skye, and, landing at Strath, took shelter in a cow-house. After remaining at Skye for a short time, they passed over to the mainland. During the time Charles was with Macloud, he passed for a servant of that gentleman, and the better to disguise himself he tied a handkerchief over his head, put a nightcap over that, and tore the ruffles of his shirt, to make his appearance more shabby.

11. He was afterwards concealed for nearly six weeks in a cave where seven Highlanders had previously taken refuge. While he was there he lived on the venison which these men contrived to kill by night. Being at length obliged to quit this concealment, he and his new associates made their escape into the mountains by walking

along the rocky channel of a torrent. In the course of their journey Charles became so exhausted for want of food, and fatigue, that he could walk no further; and two of the men carried him over the rugged paths to a place where their friends had provided food for them.

12. On the 29th of August the prince reached a place of concealment which had been prepared by him, and which was called the Cage, a habitation formed in the hollow of a small cluster of bushes, which grew out of a high rock. The floor was composed of trunks of trees, and was made level by having earth spread on it. The trees which grew at the sides were interwoven with ropes, made of heath, and the top was thatched with long grass.

13. This singular dwelling was large enough to contain seven persons, and here the prince, with Cameron of Lochiel, stayed till September 18th, when he received information that two French ships had arrived off the coast. He got on board one of them, but his dangers were not yet over, for British ships guarded all the neighboring seas. Under shelter of a dense fog he passed through the midst of the enemy's squadron, and on the 29th of September, 1746, landed safely in France.

14. He was so worn out by the fatigues and hardships he had undergone, that he was scarcely to be known as the same handsome and sprightly youth, who had left France, full of animation and hope, the year before. By the terms of a general peace, made at Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748, Louis withdrew his protection from the Stuart family, who retired to Rome. The young pretender long kept up a secret correspondence with the Jacobites in England, and once, if not oftener, he came privately to London.

15. As he advanced in years, his character underwent a great change for the worse, and his friends abandoned his cause in disgust. He took the name of Count d'Albany, and died in 1784, leaving no children. His brother, Cardinal York, who then became the sole representative of the royal house of Stuart, died at a very advanced age, in 1807, and with him the family became extinct.

## CHAPTER CC.

*The Style of Dress in George II.'s Time.—Of the Farmer's Festival.—Old Style and New Style.—New-year's Day changed.*

1. IN noticing the changes of dress, we may remark that the long flowing wigs of the preceding age had now given place to a snug kind of tie-wig; but in other respects the style of dress had by no

---

*voyage to France?* 14. What of his appearance? 15. Relate the remaining particulars about the Stuart family.

means improved. Ladies wore very long waists, and laced so tight that they suffered great pain from their endeavors to acquire what they esteemed a fine shape.

2. They also wore such enormous hoops, that they could not, without difficulty, go through a moderately wide doorway; and their heads and shoulders looked as if they were rising out of a tub. The gown was commonly of rich silk, ornamented with a variety of trimmings. The head was dressed exceedingly high, and the hair drawn tight off the face. At the elbows hung long ruffles, something like the ears of a poodle dog, which were often catching fire at the candles, or dipping in the dishes at table.

3. It may be well to give a particular description of the dress of a lady of fashion in the early part of the last century. In the first place, she had on a black silk petticoat, trimmed with a red and white calico border, and a cherry-colored bodice, trimmed with blue and silver. She wore, in addition, a yellow satin apron, and a train of dove-colored silk, brocaded with large trees. The ladies appear to have been as stiff and formal in their intercourse with one another, as in their style of dress.

4. As for the gentlemen, those at least who lived in towns, they generally spent their evenings at clubs and coffee-houses; and drinking was so much the custom amongst them, that they rarely met without becoming intoxicated. A foreigner, who visited London about the end of the reign of George I., has given us the following account of his way of spending his time there: "We rise by nine, and either attend great men's levees, or tea-tables, till about eleven or twelve, the fashionable folks assemble in several chocolate and coffee-houses.

5. "We are carried to these places in sedan chairs. If it be fine, we take a turn in the park till two, when we go to dinner with a party at the tavern, where we sit till six, and then go to the play. After the play the best company commonly go to Tom's or Will's coffee-houses, and spend the time till midnight in conversation, cards or politics; but party runs so high here that whigs and tories have each their coffee-houses, and would not, on any account, be seen at any other. If you like the company of the ladies, there are assemblies at most houses of people of quality."

6. Among the country people a variety of peasant customs prevailed a century ago, which have now almost disappeared. Among the happiest was the festival of harvest-home. This merry-making was common throughout England, but different ceremonies were observed in different places, though everywhere they ended with a good feast at the house of the proprietor of the land, to which all the neighbors, as well as the laborers on the farm, were heartily welcomed. In England the farms are generally large, and a great many laborers, both male and female, are employed upon them.

7. In some places, the last handful of grain reaped in the field was called the *maiden*. It was contrived that this should fall into the

Q.C.—1. What change in head-dress? What of the dress of ladies? 2. Give a description of a lady's dress at the beginning of the last century. 4, 5. What of the manners of the gentlemen? 6. What festival was observed by the farmers? 10. What

hands of one of the most comely lasses in the field, who became the queen of the coming feast. The *maiden*, gayly decorated with ribbons, was placed on the top of the last load of grain which left the field, the wagon itself being gayly decked with flowers and ribbons, and was thus borne home in triumph, with music and shouting.

8. There, to use the language of an old poet,

—“For your mirth,  
You shall see, first, the large and chief  
Foundation of your feast, fat beef;  
With upper stories, mutton, veal,  
And bacon, which makes full the meal,  
With several dishes standing by,  
And here a custard, there a pie,  
And here all-tempting furmety.”

9. Dancing and various mirthful games succeeded, in which the good man of the house and his wife took part. At the close of the festivities, the maiden is hung up in some conspicuous part of the farm-house, where it remains till the next year, and it would be esteemed a very unlucky omen if any accident should happen to it.

10. The young reader may have been puzzled with the words “old style” and “new style,” affixed to dates; it may be well, therefore, to explain their meaning. Julius Caesar, the Roman general, caused some calculations to be made to determine the length of the year. These calculations made it three hundred and sixty-five days and six hours. But the increased knowledge of astronomy has enabled the modern scientific men to ascertain that this reckoning was eleven minutes too much.

11. In the lapse of time, these eleven minutes accumulated to eleven days. In the year 1572, Pope Gregory XIII. corrected this error, and reduced the year to its exact length. The reader will learn elsewhere how he guarded against a recurrence of the error. The pope made use of his power to secure the adoption of the *new* or *Gregorian* style, in all the Catholic countries of Europe, but England, Sweden, and Russia still retained the *old* or *Julian* style.

12. The English merchants found it a great inconvenience to use a different mode of computing time from their foreign correspondents, and the hatred of the pope, which had led to the retention of this error for so long a time after it was pointed out, having in a great degree subsided, in 1752, the British parliament ordered the new style to be adopted in England. The eleven days were taken out of September; the day after the 2d of September being called the 14th, instead of the 3d. The year, also, which, till that time, had been reckoned to begin at the 25th of March, has since been computed from the 1st of January.

## CHAPTER CCI.

*The Seven Years' War.—General Washington gains his first Laurels.—Capture of Quebec, and Death of General Wolfe.—Lord Clive extends the British Empire in India.—Death of George II.—About Sir Robert Walpole.*

1 THE peace which had been made at Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748 continued till 1755, when the encroachment of the French upon what were then British colonies, and are now the United States, led to a war, which entirely involved all Europe, and is often called the *Seven Years' War*. It was in this that General Washington first distinguished himself, though then very young, by his prudent conduct in an expedition sent out to act against the French, who were endeavoring to connect their settlements in Canada and Louisiana by a chain of forts in the rear of the English colonies.

2. The operations of the war were at first very unfavorable to the English. The ministry were divided in opinion, and very inefficient. The man of all others most competent to conduct the affairs of the nation was William Pitt; but his political principles were too liberal to suit the king, and it was not till the will of the people was too loudly expressed to be any longer disregarded, that George consented to commit the reins of government to his hands.

3. A decisive change now took place in the fortunes of the war; Canada was entirely subdued, and the French power annihilated in that part of the American continent. This was not effected, however, without the loss of one of the most popular and distinguished commanders whom the English ever had to boast of; namely, General Wolfe, who was killed in the moment of victory at the siege of Quebec, in 1759.

4. Upon the continent of Europe, the war was carried on by England with only Frederick, King of Prussia, commonly called Frederick the Great, for its ally, against all the other powers combined. But the sagacity and military skill of Frederick, and the energy of Mr. Pitt, enabled her to sustain with success the apparently unequal contest. Hanover, which, in the beginning of the war, had been conquered by the French, was recovered, and the King of Prussia established its position as one of the first-rate powers of Europe. The principal battle was that of Minden, fought August 1st, 1759, in which the English and Prussians defeated the French.

5. In the East, Lord Clive, who had rapidly risen, by the force of his own abilities, from the humble situation of clerk to that of commander-in-chief of the forces, laid the foundations of the British empire in India. Upon the ocean the British flag was completely

CCI.—4. How long did peace continue? What occasioned the renewal of war? Who distinguished himself for the first time in this war? 2. What of the success of the war on the part of England? What change in the ministry? 3. What change followed in the fortunes of the war? What of General Wolfe? 4. What of the war upon the continent of Europe? Who was the principal battle? 5. What affairs in the east? 6. When

triumphant. In the midst of these successes, the king, without any previous complaint, was suddenly seized with the agonies of death. He had hitherto enjoyed a degree of health and bodily vigor very unusual at his advanced age, and which seemed to give the promise of a much longer life.

6. On the 25th of October, 1760, he rose at his usual hour, and observed to his attendants, that, as the morning was fine, he would walk in the garden. He was still at the window, observing the weather, when he fell to the ground, and almost immediately expired. He was in the seventy-seventh year of his age, and the thirty-fourth of his reign. During the whole time he was upon the throne, political contests were carried on with great animosity. The most distinguished political leaders were Robert Walpole, Sir William Wyndham, Mr. Pelham, Sir William Pulteney, and Mr. Pitt.

7. Sir Robert Walpole was the prime minister during the first half of this reign. He made use of very disreputable means to keep himself in office. Since the revolution of 1688, England has been essentially a free government, and no man can sustain himself in office as minister, unless his measures are approved by a majority of the votes of the house of commons, who are in theory the representatives of the people of England.

8. To secure to himself this majority, Walpole made a most liberal distribution of money and offices, a mode of retaining power which cannot forever be successful, since all who are venal will oppose for the very purpose of being bought over; and to the minister's means there must be a limit. And so Sir Robert found, for, in 1742, he was forced to resign. He was, however, made Earl of Orford.

9. One great cause of the popular discontent against Walpole, was his taking the king's part in a quarrel between his majesty and his son Frederick, Prince of Wales. We do not know the original cause of this quarrel, but it was conducted with such animosity on the king's part, as to excite the sympathy of the people, with whom the prince was very popular, on account of his estimable qualities. He did not live to be king, but died in 1751, leaving many children.

#### FAMILY OF GEORGE II.

##### WIFE.

Caroline of Anspach.

##### CHILDREN.

Frederick, Prince of Wales, died in 1751.  
 William, Duke of Cumberland, died in 1765.  
 Anne, married the Prince of Orange.  
 Amelia, died in 1786.  
 Caroline, died in 1757.  
 Mary, married the Prince of Hesse-Cassel.  
 Louisa, married the King of Denmark.

## FAMILY OF FREDERICK, PRINCE OF WALES

## WIFE.

Princess of Saxe-Gotha.

## CHILDREN.

George, who succeeded his grandfather.  
 Edward, Duke of York, died in 1767.  
 William Henry, Duke of Gloucester.  
 Henry Frederick, Duke of Cumberland.  
 Frederick William, died young.  
 Augusta, married the Duke of Brunswick.  
 Caroline, died in 1759.  
 Louisa, died in 1768.  
 Matilda, married the King of Denmark.

## CHAPTER CCII.

*George III.—The Quiet of the Country disturbed by Political Contests.*  
*—John Wilkes.—Passage of the Stamp Act results in the Independence of the United States.*

1. GEORGE, son of Frederick, Prince of Wales, had completed his twenty-second year, when the death of his grandfather placed him on the throne. He was tall, his features well formed, his complexion fair, and his countenance open and cheerful, with a great expression of goodness. As his parents had been on ill terms with George II., the young prince had been in a manner excluded from court, and not interfering in any of the political parties of the day, he had led a retired life, associating with a small, but select circle.

2. This was, in some respects, a disadvantage to him, as it gave him an awkward and diffident manner, which an earlier introduction to general society might have remedied. His usual way of speaking was hurried and confused; but when called upon to speak in public, it was quite graceful, for his father, though he neglected other parts of his education, had caused him to be well instructed in the art of declamation, by Quin, a celebrated actor. The king's first speech being much applauded for grace and distinctness of utterance, Quin exclaimed, with great glee, "I taught the boy."

3. The chief characteristic of his mind was obstinacy; and the pertinacity with which he maintained his opinions was the occasion of much injury to his country. He had no great or brilliant qualities; but he had many good ones. He was kind and charitable; his greatest happiness was in the tranquillity of domestic life: and he was anxious to fulfil his duties to his family with fidelity.

4. He was a truly religious man, and there are many anecdotes related of him illustrative of this. In some cases his conduct might be

CCII.—1. What of George III.'s person? What of his education? What of his style of speaking? 3. What of his character? 4. What anecdote of his religious feeling?

imputed to affectation, were it not that we know his humility to have been genuine. Soon after he came to the throne, a clergyman introduced some high panegyrics upon him, in a sermon preached in his presence. The next day, the king sent a message to the preacher, desiring him to forbear doing so for the future; adding that he went to church to hear God praised, and not himself.

5. In the prayer-book, which he was accustomed to use in private, he scratched out the words "sovereign lord," before his own name, and wrote instead, "thy servant," and in another place he put the word "sinner." The number of marked passages in his Bible showed that he was a diligent student of it. He married, August 7th, 1761, Charlotte, Princess of Mecklenburg-Strelitz. The last service which the veteran admiral, Lord Anson, performed, was that of bringing the new queen to England.

6. The accession of George III. caused no alteration in public affairs; the war was continued with vigor, though the nation had become weary of the great expense of carrying it on. It would be impossible for us to give an account of all the events of this busy period, or even to select the most important. It must suffice for us now to say, that the British arms were everywhere successful. Several valuable West India islands were taken from France; and the rich town of Havana in Cuba, and the Philippine Isles in the East Indies, were taken from Spain.

7. France and Spain at length became desirous of peace, which was concluded at Paris, February 10th, 1763. By this treaty, Canada was definitely ceded to Great Britain, but in most other respects the countries were restored, as to territory, to the condition they were in before the war. So far, nothing could be more prosperous than the new reign. The country was manifestly increasing in wealth and power. But the internal peace of the empire was soon disturbed.

8. This was occasioned in no small degree by the obstinacy of the king in maintaining his own views, and in supporting those ministers who agreed with him in opinion. Though averse to the pomp of royalty, he was fond of the power, and could not bear any attack upon the dignity or prerogatives of the crown. The first open expression of public discontent was in behalf of John Wilkes, who was a man of considerable ability, but of profligate character.

9. Soon after the accession of George III. to the throne, Mr. Pitt had retired from office, receiving as a reward for his services the title of Earl of Chatham. The new ministers were taken from the tory party. The names of whig and tory were still retained, though some change had taken place in the principles of the parties. The tories were for maintaining everything as it was; whilst the whigs were for making such alterations in the constitution of the country, as advanced civilization, and the increase of wealth, especially among the mercantile and manufacturing classes, from time to time made necessary.

---

5. Whom did he marry? 6. What of the war with France and Spain? 7. When and where was peace concluded? 8. What disturbed the internal quiet of the kingdom?

10. There were many violent political writers on both sides; but none so much so as Mr. Wilkes, who was a whig and a member of parliament. He published a periodical paper, called the *North Briton*; and, in the forty-fifth number, made a very violent attack upon Lord Bute and other persons, supposed to have an undue influence with the king, and upon the government in general. Wilkes was arrested by order of the government, and committed to the Tower. But being brought before one of the courts of law by a writ of *habeas corpus*, he was discharged, upon the ground that his arrest was illegal.

11. His arrest had produced a great excitement; it was considered as a violation of the freedom of the press; he was looked upon as a martyr to liberty; and the cry of "Wilkes and liberty!" was long the watchword of the popular party. Whilst affairs were quite in a disturbed state at home, an act of the ministry threw the North American colonies into a state of convulsion. The taxes levied for the support of the wars bore very heavily upon the people of Great Britain; and to ease them of the burden, it was resolved to levy taxes upon the colonies.

12. The act for this purpose, which levied a duty upon stamped paper, and forbade the importation of any other into the colonies, was passed by parliament. The events which followed the passage of the *Stamp Act*, and which led at last to the independence of thirteen of the North American colonies, forming a part of the history of our own country, are doubtless familiar to our readers, and need not be detailed here.

### CHAPTER CCIII.

*What the English People thought of the War with America.—Death of the Earl of Chatham.—Great Mobs in London.—Instance of British Generosity at the Siege of Gibraltar.—Peace of Versailles.—John Adams' first Interview with the King.*

1. THE English people were very much divided in opinion as to the justice and expediency of taxing the American colonies. A considerable portion were decidedly opposed to it. At the head of the opponents was the eloquent Earl of Chatham, who defended the ground taken by the colonists, that as they were not represented in the British parliament, they could not be justly taxed by that body.

2. But when the war was actually commenced, Chatham was in favor of maintaining it with vigor, and of sending at once to the

---

9. What of the parties of whig and tory? 10. How did Wilkes give offence? 11. What followed his arrest? What measures did the government adopt to raise money? What was the consequence of the Stamp Act?

CCIII.—1. What were the opinions of the English people about taxing America?

colonies a force large enough to put down the so-called rebels. But the ministry, who underrated the strength of the colonists, thought that a small body of regular, well-disciplined troops, under experienced and veteran officers, would be quite sufficient to cope with a raw militia, commanded by men who knew nothing of war from actual experience.

3. The surrender of the British general Burgoyne, and his army, in 1777, produced a great excitement in England. Some persons then were for abandoning the attempt to reduce the colonies to obedience, and this opinion gained strength when it was found that a continuance of the contest would involve England in a war with France, whose government had now openly assumed the part of the colonists. But the king would not consent to relinquish so large a part of his dominions, so long as any hope remained of being able to retain it.

4. In this he was sustained by the Earl of Chatham, who, on the 2d of April, 1778, appeared in the house of lords to oppose a motion for the withdrawal of the troops from America. Though he was suffering from severe illness, and unable to walk without assistance, he made one of the most animated and eloquent speeches that had ever been heard in that house. Venerable for his years and experience, and regarded as the first statesman of the age, his urgent appeal to his countrymen to make one more effort, made a deep impression upon all present.

5. He was answered by the Duke of Richmond, and Chatham rose again, with a countenance animated with disdain, and eager to reply; but the excitement was too great for his feeble frame, and while he was attempting to speak, he sank down on the floor, and was carried out of the house apparently lifeless. He revived, but it was only to linger out a few weeks longer. His death, under these circumstances, made a great impression throughout the whole country. He was honored with a sumptuous funeral at the public expense, and every possible respect was shown to his memory.

6. In the month of June, 1780, London was thrown into consternation by the violence of a mob, which had taken an alarm in respect to Popery. This mob, which was excited chiefly by Lord George Gordon, a gloomy fanatic, had the control of the city for several days, during which they burnt several Roman Catholic chapels, and destroyed many private dwellings. The greatest loss which the public sustained, was by the destruction of the manuscripts of the Earl of Mansfield, the most distinguished lawyer of his time; he had made himself obnoxious by the part which he had taken, as a judge, in sustaining prosecutions for libels against the government.

7. In the month of October, 1781, Lord Cornwallis, one of Britain's ablest generals, surrendered himself and his whole army to General Washington. From this time, it was apparent to every one that the subjugation of the American colonies could not be any longer expected. Spain and Holland had become the active allies of the United

States. Russia, Sweden, and Denmark were united in what was called an *armed neutrality*, and were indirectly assisting the enemies of England.



RIOTS IN LONDON.

8. The British fleets, under Lord Rodney, kept the supremacy of the seas; and the defence of Gibraltar showed that the British troops had lost none of their courage. In the course of this defence, there was an exhibition of that humanity for which the English have always been distinguished. For two years the place had been blockaded by combined fleets of France and Spain, when, on the 13th of September, 1782, a grand attack was made by land and sea. The garrison, under General Elliot, consisted of seven thousand men, whilst the assailing force amounted to forty thousand.

9. The firing on both sides was continued furiously through the day; but the garrison perceived, as night approached, that the enemy's cannonading abated, and could see that the whole fleet was in commotion, and that some of the ships had taken fire. The darkness of the night was soon dispelled by the flames arising from the burning vessels; and the cries and groans of the Spaniards on board of them were dreadful beyond description.

10. Amidst this scene of horror, General Curtis and Sir Charles Knowles, assisted by a body of marines, ventured to the rescue of these miserable men, whom they now no longer considered as enemies, but as suffering fellow-creatures; and they succeeded, though with imminent hazard to themselves, in saving many of them from the dangers by which they were surrounded. A few days after this attack, Lord Howe arrived with a fleet to the relief of the place.

11. In 1783, peace was concluded between all the belligerent

powers. England acknowledged the independence of the United States, and gave up to France and Spain various lands and possessions in different parts of the globe. The United States, after the ratification of the treaty, sent John Adams, who, next to Washington, had acted the most prominent part in the revolution, as envoy to the British court.

12. The king looked forward with considerable anxiety to his first interview with this distinguished rebel, and declared to some of his attendants that he viewed it as one of the most critical moments of his life. He received the envoy, however, most graciously, and said to him, "I was the last man in the kingdom, sir, to consent to the independence of America; but now it is granted, I shall be the last man in the kingdom to sanction a violation of it."

#### CHAPTER CCIV.

*The Writers of the Reign of George II., and the early part of that of George III.—The most distinguished Poets.—Dr. Johnson.—A new form of Novel and Romance introduced.—Magazines and Reviews make their first appearance.*

1. As we are now approaching a new era in English literature, we must say something of the epoch which is drawing to a close. During no period had England produced so many men of letters as during the fifty years comprised in the reign of George II., and part of that of his successor; yet it exhibited very little of originality or vigor. The great reputation of Pope and his contemporaries overawed the poets of the next half century, who wrote in servile imitation of those whose works had already the sanction of public applause.

2. Something, doubtless, is to be attributed to the state of society, which, during the same period, was dainty, formal, and pedantic; a very natural transition from the ease and licentiousness which prevailed in the reign of Charles II. The collected editions of the British poets contain the works of upwards of seventy persons who wrote during the period of which we are now speaking. But very few of these are worthy of notice.

3. The first, in point of time, is Edward Young, who died in 1765. His best work is the *Night Thoughts*, a serious poem, containing many passages of sublime expression, and of striking imagery, as well as much bombast and affectation. The most popular poet of this period was James Thomson, who died in 1748. He was by birth a Scotchman, but removed to London at an early age, where he published a series of poems, called *The Seasons*, describing, in blank verse, the various appearances of the year, in a very rich and eloquent, and often sublime style of language.

---

CCIV.—1. What of literature during the reign of George II. and the succeeding years? 2. What of Young? What of Thomson? 6. What of Gray and Collins? What of

4. Thomson's father was a clergyman, with a small salary and a large family, so that he could furnish his son with but a stinted outfit. The poet took with him, however, letters of recommendation to several persons of consequence, which he tied up carefully in his handkerchief; but as he passed along the streets of London, with the gaping curiosity of a country lad, his attention was upon everything rather than his pocket, and his magazine of credentials was stolen from him.

5. For the supply of his necessities, his whole fund was his poem of *Winter*, and he was sadly in want of a pair of shoes. After a long time he succeeded in finding a purchaser for his treasure, but at a very low price; and the purchaser for some time thought he had made a foolish bargain; but the merits of the poem becoming known by accident, the sale became rapid, and Thomson's reputation was established.

6. Gray, who died in 1771, and Collins, who died in 1756, are distinguished for writing *lyrical* poems, which originally meant poems intended to be sung accompanied by the harp. The most celebrated piece of the former is the *Elegy in a Country Church-Yard*, and of the latter, the *Ode to the Passions*. Mark Akenside, who died in 1770, at the age of twenty-three years, published a poem called the *Pleasures of the Imagination*, a work full of fine imagery, expressed in rich, copious, and musical language.

7. Oliver Goldsmith, who died in 1774, was born in Ireland, but spent the greater part of his mature life in London. Of all the poets of this period, his works are, perhaps, the most read at the present day. His chief poems are the *Deserted Village*, and the *Traveller*. He was also a very popular prose writer, and has strong claims upon the regard of all young persons; for he was the author of various histories—of Rome, Greece, England, &c.—and of the natural history, which have afforded them so much pleasure and instruction.

8. Samuel Johnson, who died in 1784, wrote verses. But he was more admired for his prose writings. His style, though elegant and pure, is more majestic than suits the taste of the present age. He published a periodical paper, called the *Rambler*, in which he sometimes condescends to treat of common things, but in the same solemn language which he uses in moralizing on the awful destinies of man. The *Lives of the Poets*, which were written to be prefixed to a collection of the poets of Great Britain, is perhaps the best of his productions. His dictionary, though now considered too limited, is still referred to as of the highest authority.

9. Fictitious tales in prose, by the title of romances and novels, had long been known in France and Italy, and had been imitated in England. But they were quite different from the works known at the present day by the same names. The first example of the modern English romance, was the *Castle of Otranto*, published in 1764, by Horace Walpole, a son of the celebrated minister, Sir Robert.

Akenside! 7. What of Goldsmith? 8. What of Johnson? 9. What was the first example of modern romance writing? When published, and by whom composed?

This was full of horrors, and was so popular as to call forth a host of imitators.

10. In 1739, Samuel Richardson, a printer in London, being remarkable for his expertness in letter-writing, was requested by two booksellers to write a volume of letters, referring to the common concerns of life, for the improvement of persons of ordinary education. He thought the work might be more lively and interesting, if the letters were made to narrate a story. Thus was produced the novel of *Pamela*, a work so vastly superior in style and in its moral tendency to all which had preceded it, that it obtained a great reputation, and was even recommended by the clergy from the pulpit.

11. Encouraged by this success, Richardson commenced with a more elaborate novel, called *Clarissa Harlowe*, four volumes of which were published in 1748, leaving the story unfinished. This work excited the greatest interest, both in England and on the continent, and the comfort of the reading world seemed to depend upon the result of the story. A report got abroad that it was to end tragically; when remonstrances poured in upon the author from all quarters, entreating him to reward the virtue of the heroine. It is said that the work was intended to fill twenty-eight volumes, but was finally reduced to eight.

12. We cannot, of course, mention all who were eminent in every branch of literature; we can only speak of those who originated any particular form of composition, or who were most eminent in it. Many gained celebrity as philosophical writers. They were, however, chiefly natives of Scotland, in which country great attention was paid, at this period, to English literature; and societies were formed to encourage not only the *writing*, but the *speaking* of pure English.

13. The success of these efforts is made apparent by the historical works of Hume and Robertson, which not only excited a taste for historical reading in England, but also a desire in literary men to rival them. To the former we are indebted for much of the interesting matter of our present story; Hume's *History of England* was the first example of the highest kind of historical writing in English literature. Though defective in style, and not so complete as to facts as some which have succeeded it, its great merits will probably enable it to retain the first place for a long time to come.

14. Hume's history only comes down to the revolution in 1688; and so much of Smollett's *History of England* as embraces the period between that event and the death of George II, is usually published with it; being better than any other, though vastly inferior to Hume. Edward Gibbon, who died in 1794, was the author of a *History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*; a work which takes rank with those of Hume and Robertson.

15. We must mention one more class of works which made its appearance for the first time during this period. In 1731, Edward Cave, a printer, commenced a publication called the *Gentleman's*

10. When, and by whom, was the first novel of the modern kind composed? 13, 14. Who were the most distinguished historians of this period? 15. When did the first maga-

*Magazine*, being, as the name *magazine* was intended to express, a depository of the principal discussions and intelligence contained in the newspapers during the preceding month. This work, which met with great success, soon became open to original articles of a literary character.

16. The success of the Gentleman's Magazine, led to the establishment of many others, but none, for a long period, possessed so much merit as this, which has been continued without interruption to the present day. The first periodical work devoted to the criticism of books, was commenced in 1749, and was called the *Monthly Review*. This review took the whig side in politics, and to counteract its influence, the tories, in 1756, established the *Critical Review*, under the direction of Smollett, of whom we have already spoken as an historian; and who likewise gained much distinction as a miscellaneous writer, and more as a writer of novels.

### CHAPTER CCV.

*Attempts to murder the King.—The King loses his Reason, but it is restored to him.—The younger Pitt.—Duties of the King's Ministers.*



MARGARET NICHOLSON'S ATTACK UPON THE KING.

1. THOUGH George III. never evinced any disposition to engage personally in war, it was not because he was deficient in courage

sometimes make their appearance? Whence the name *magazine*? 16. What of Rev

for he exhibited this quality on many occasions much more trying than amid the excitements of the field of battle. In 1787, an attempt was made on his life by a poor insane woman, named Margaret Nicholson, who, while she was with one hand presenting a petition, attempted with the other to stab him with a knife.

2. She was instantly seized by the attendants; and the king, forgetful of the danger his own life had been in, only exclaimed, "Don't hurt the poor woman; she must be mad." This, on inquiry, proved to be the case, and she was sent to a hospital. On another occasion he was shot at, and the ball passed through his carriage. His attendants were thrown into the utmost agitation, but the king continued tranquil, and said to them, "One is *supposing* this, and another is *proposing* that, forgetting that there is One above all, on whom alone we depend, and who *disposes* of all things."

3. Notwithstanding these, and many other attempts upon his life, he never would take any precautions against danger, always saying that none he might take would secure him from the attempts of a determined assassin, and that he would not give up his custom of mixing freely, and without attendants, with all ranks of people. In 1788, the king suffered a real calamity in the loss of his reason. It became necessary, therefore, to appoint some person to act in his name during the continuance of the illness.

4. The Prince of Wales, who was now twenty-six years old, was manifestly the most proper person who could be invested with this important office. He had no fixed principles of any kind himself, but his friends and associates were the political opponents of the party now in power. When, therefore, his friends moved in parliament for his appointment on the ground of constitutional right, the ministry opposed it on that ground, but allowed that it was proper and expedient, and offered to bestow it, but with many restrictions and limitations of power.

5. Before the question could be settled between the two parties, the king recovered his reason, and of course the necessity for a regent—as the person who governs the kingdom during any temporary incapacity of the king is called—was at an end. The 24th of October, 1788, was the last day on which, previous to his illness, the king had appeared in public; and on the 23d of April following, being then recovered, he went to St. Paul's Cathedral to return public thanks to God for his restoration to health and reason.

6. He was attended by the royal family, and by an immense concourse of the nobility and of the people; so that when the procession entered the church, it was crowded to excess. The scene is described as peculiarly impressive and interesting, and particularly so when the 6000 children from the charity schools, who were in the church, joined in the choruses of the psalms and anthems.

7. The king's physicians did not deem it safe for him to engage at once in public business. He therefore indulged himself, more than he had before done, in the quiet enjoyment of domestic life. He loved

to have his family about him, and it is said to have been a very pleasing sight to see the whole royal family, when they were in the bloom of youth, assembled, as they frequently were, round their parents. They made quite a party by themselves; for the king had thirteen children who lived to grow up.

8. These children were all comely, and had open, cheerful countenances. They enjoyed a privilege which seldom falls to the lot of princes, of being brought up under the eye of parents who set them the example of the most perfect family harmony. The queen was a woman of strong sense, and of superior acquirements. She was never popular, for her manners were cold and reserved. But as a wife and mother, her conduct was exemplary. She showed herself constantly averse to every kind of vice and immorality, and the character of her court was irreproachable.

9. The king was very grateful to his prime minister for opposing the appointment of his son to be regent, with all the powers of a sovereign; for, as we have already stated, he was very jealous of encroachments upon his royal prerogative, and he was, besides, displeased not only with the political, but with the moral, conduct of his son. Such being the feeling of the king, the minister had, indeed, merited his thanks, for it required no little firmness to oppose the wishes of one who might, in the course of nature, at any moment become his sovereign.

10. But William Pitt, who now held the office of first lord of the treasury, that is, of prime minister, was not a man to be deterred from the discharge of any duty by motives of personal interest. He was the second son of the Earl of Chatham, and is sometimes called the younger Pitt, to distinguish him from his illustrious father. He was appointed to the high office which he now held, in 1783, and retained it, with only one short interval, for twenty-two years.

11. At the time of his appointment he was only twenty-four years old, but he had already exhibited his great ability and political sagacity as chancellor of the exchequer. By the constitution of Great Britain, all laws for raising money must have their origin in the house of commons; the reason for which, is, that the greater part of the taxes are paid by those whom this house represents.

12. It is one of the duties of the chancellor of the exchequer to propose the measures by which money is to be raised; he is, therefore, always a member of the house of commons; not by right, but, as all other members are, in theory, by the election of the people. But suppose he should not be elected, we may ask what he would do then. This never happens, for if he loses his election in one place, he can procure it in another, either by bribing the voters, or by the influence of some political friend.

13. There are many *boroughs*, as they are called, which have a right to send more than one member to parliament, and which are entirely under the control of some rich man. This abuse existed to a much greater extent formerly than now, for it was, in part, corrected by the Reform Bill, passed in 1832.

14. The deciding as to the mode in which money shall be raised, is one of the most difficult things a ministry has to perform. It must ultimately be raised by taxes, and the personal interests of some class or classes of persons must be affected by every tax that is imposed.

15. Hence there will always be many objections made to every measure proposed. The chancellor of the exchequer has to answer all these objections; therefore, the most able commoner on the side of the party in power, is selected to fill this office. He naturally becomes the spokesman of the ministry on all important occasions, and as the ministry usually has a majority of the members on its side, he is sometimes called "the leader of the house of commons."

16. The prime minister sometimes chooses to hold this office himself, in addition to that of the first lord of the treasury, who is not necessarily a peer. This was the case with William Pitt, who chose to defend the measures which, though nominally the acts of many ministers, were virtually his own, for he was the soul of the government. He did not possess the brilliant eloquence of his father, or of his great rivals for power and fame, Fox and Burke; but he had the faculty of convincing, by the force of his arguments, which were always presented in the clearest manner, and in the most natural order.

17. He governed the country during one of the most stormy periods in the history of the world; and brought her through it not only in safety, but with glory. George III. never displayed so much sagacity during his long reign, as in retaining him in power, in spite of the clamors of the opposite party, which were sometimes loud enough to have shaken the purpose of a less obstinate sovereign.

## CHAPTER CCVI.

*The French Revolution breaks out.—Measures adopted by the other States of Europe in consequence of it.—What Effect the News produced in England.—War between France and England.*

1. THE repose which Europe now enjoyed was destined to be broken by an event which, while it gave joy to the lovers of liberty, struck terror into the hearts of the despotic rulers of Europe. In 1789, the French people, who had for centuries been subjected to the most grievous oppressions on the part of the nobles, asserted their natural rights. Their representatives assembled in convention, abolished all royalty, with its attendant distinction of ranks, and established a republic.

2. This proceeding was very alarming to the absolute kings of the

of the office of chancellor of the exchequer? Why does it require a man of abilities? 15, 16, 17. What of Pitt's abilities?

CCVI.—1. What disturbed the repose of Europe in 1789? 2. What course was adopted

neighboring states. Their own subjects might be infected with a love of liberty; so the sovereigns of Austria and Prussia determined to put down this impudent attempt of an independent people to establish a government to their own liking, and for this purpose to march their armies into France.

3. This was a very unwise measure; they should have remembered that their armies were not invincible; and that if they were beaten, the French conquerors might not content themselves with driving them out of their country, but might, in retaliation, become themselves invaders. In such case, the liberal principles they so much dreaded would come with infinitely greater force. Had they been wise, they would have left the French to settle their own affairs.

4. The people of France, indignant at this attempt of strangers to dictate to them a form of government, rushed with the greatest enthusiasm to repel the invaders, and did not stop in their victorious career till they had taken nearly the whole of the Austrian Netherlands. Such was the commencement of a war, which, with little intermission, ravaged Europe for above twenty years.

5. We must now consider how the people of England were affected by the events which were taking place on the continent. The destruction of the Bastile by the inhabitants of Paris first drew their attention to the efforts of the French people to redress their wrongs. This prison was a stone structure, which, in ancient times, had been a fortress to protect Paris from foreign aggressors, but for many centuries it had been used only as an instrument of domestic tyranny.

6. A mere order from the king was sufficient to consign any person to this gloomy prison. This power was most shamefully abused, for not only were the orders against those who had committed the slightest offence in word, deed, or even in supposed thought, against the king or his favorites, but they were even made a source of revenue to these favorites, for they were sold to individuals to be used to gratify private malice and revenge. Thousands of victims had languished out their lives in this horrible abode.

7. Its destruction, therefore, excited a feeling of joy amongst the English people, who heartily sympathized in the attempt of their neighbors to establish a more liberal form of government. But the sympathies of the king were for the royal family of France; and, as Elector of Hanover, he entered into the views of the other sovereigns of Europe. His prime minister, also, was a believer in the necessity of strong governments, as they are called, that is, governments in which the chief power is permanently placed in the hands of one person.

8. The French people were like wild beasts who had long been subjected to cruel keepers, upon whom was now vented their long pent-up rage. The sanguinary excesses committed by the mob, who at first ruled in France, excited the horror and fears of many

by the other governments of Europe? 4. What was the consequence? 5. What event drew the attention of the people of England to French affairs? 6. What of the French king's despotic power? 7. What feeling was first excited in England? What were the opinions of the king and of his prime minister? 8. What measure did the English gov-

good people in England; so that the king and his ministers were not without a party to support them in their refusal to recognize the new republic, or to receive its ambassador,—a measure which unavoidably led to war.

9. This was declared by the French convention on the 1st of February, 1793. About the same time the French invaded Holland, and the Duke of York, the king's second son, was sent, with a considerable army under his command, to assist the Dutch. But he effected nothing, except to make a good retreat and a safe return to England in the following winter. Holland soon submitted, and a new state, called the Batavian Republic, was established, in alliance with France, whose victorious arms soon compelled the King of Prussia to sue for peace.

10. England and Austria maintained the war for several years longer, but with such ill success on the part of the latter, that, in 1797, she was compelled to accept such terms of peace as France would allow her. This success on the part of the French is to be ascribed chiefly to Napoleon Bonaparte, a young Corsican, whose wonderful abilities had raised him from the rank of lieutenant of artillery to the command of the French army in Italy. The treaty between France and Austria was signed at Campo Formio, October 17th, 1797. Thus England was left alone in the contest.

---

## CHAPTER CCVII.

*Gloomy State of Affairs in 1797.—The Bank of England suspends Payment.—Mutinies among the Seamen.*

1. THE year 1797 was a gloomy period in England. The national finances, burdened with debts contracted to carry on former wars, seemed unequal to meet the expenses of a lengthened contest. The Bank of England, by orders of the government, stopped the payment of its notes in gold or silver, and paper became the only money in circulation. To add to the public distress, an alarming mutiny broke out among the sailors in the ships of war, who demanded an increase of pay and amelioration of their condition, which was in truth worse than that of slaves.

2. If they had entered into that service of their own accord, they would have had less reason in their complaints. But it was not so. Instead of inducing men to serve as sailors on board the ships of war by offering sufficient wages and kind treatment, the British government resorted to force to man her navy. A party of soldiers, with an officer, went about, seizing upon all persons who looked like sailors, or who the officer thought would make good seamen, and carried them by

---

ernment adopt in reference to France? 9. What was the consequence? What of the success of the French as to Holland and Russia? 10. What of the war between Austria and France? By what treaty was it concluded? When?

CCVII.—1. What is said of the year 1797? What events caused a depression of feel-

force on board of a ship, where they were generally compelled to serve till death relieved them from oppression.

3. The toils and sufferings of the sailor's life bear hardly enough upon those who adopt it from choice, and are habituated to its dangers from infancy. In addition to the ordinary perils of the sea, these impressed seamen were exposed to all the evils of war. We can conceive better than we can describe the feelings of men torn from their families without a moment's warning, and subjected to treatment which made the public ships so odious that sailors by profession carefully concealed themselves, when on shore, to avoid being pressed into them.

4. In the month of April, the whole body of sailors in the grand fleet which guarded the British Channel, declared their determination no longer to submit to the officers, unless an increase of pay and a change in the regulations concerning provisions should be granted to them. A council, composed of two delegates from each ship, took command of the squadron. The consternation caused by this event was very great; for the security of England from invasion depended mainly upon the fleet.

5. It was deemed by government to be most expedient to accede to the required terms, and a bill was hastily passed through parliament securing to the seamen what the ministers had promised. The delegates of the fleet declared themselves satisfied, and harmony and good order were restored. But the spirit of insurrection was contagious, and no sooner was it quelled in the Channel fleet, than it broke out in the ships lying at Sheerness and at Yarmouth.

6. New grievances were required to be redressed, and the facility with which the demands of the Channel fleet had been granted, encouraged the present insurgents to make demands not quite so reasonable. The government now determined to yield no more, and made every disposition to force the ships to submission. Guards were placed to prevent any communication between them and the shore, and no water or provisions was suffered to go to them. For a time, the mutineers were able to get a supply of these from merchant vessels which they seized.

7. At length, being reduced to great want of water, and distrust prevailing among themselves, ship after ship deserted, until at last all came in and surrendered. The leaders were tried and executed. The ships were soon after ordered to sea, to watch the motions of a Dutch fleet, and any unfavorable impressions which might remain were effectually removed by the complete victory which they gained on the 11th of October; as a reward for which, Admiral Duncan, the commander of the fleet, was raised to the peerage.

---

ing in England? 2. How were British ships of war supplied with men? 4. What was the consequence of the bad treatment of the seamen? 5. What is said of the second mutiny? 7. What victory did Admiral Duncan gain?

## CHAPTER CCVIII.

*Bonaparte, after conquering Egypt, returns to France, of which he becomes the Ruler.—He leads his Army over the Alps, and defeats the Austrians in Italy.—Expedition against Copenhagen under Lord Nelson.*

1. AT this period Bonaparte was in Egypt, apparently in a very hazardous situation, for the fleet which had carried him thither had been destroyed by the English fleet, under Admiral Nelson, who now had the undisputed control of the Mediterranean Sea, thus cutting off the French from receiving any supplies or reinforcements. But the genius of the French general inspired the troops with confidence and spirit. Egypt being conquered, their arms were turned against Syria, which, like Egypt, was subject to Turkey.

2. Proceeding onward in their victorious course, they laid siege to Acre, a very strong fortress on the shores of the Mediterranean. Bonaparte now felt the want of a fleet, with which to prevent the town from receiving succor by sea. The Turks defended the place bravely; it must, however, have been surrendered, but for the arrival of some English ships under Sir Sydney Smith. Landing with his sailors, he assisted in repulsing an assault, which the Turks, without his assistance, could not have withstood.

3. Returning to Egypt, Bonaparte received information which induced him to leave the army and go back to France. Embarking on board one of his remaining frigates, he made the voyage in safety, and, on the 9th of October, 1799, landed at Frejus, a small port in France, after having been for forty-one days exposed to capture by the enemy's ships, which traversed the sea in all directions. This passage is not one of the least extraordinary events of his wonderful life.

4. The French people were very much dissatisfied with their present rulers; and Bonaparte was hailed as the deliverer of France. Soon after his arrival at Paris, he was able to effect a change in the government, which was now intrusted to three officers, called consuls, of whom he was the chief, and in whom all power was, in fact, vested. One of the first acts of the First Consul, as he was styled, was to offer peace to England and Austria. But neither power thought fit to accept the proposal, and the British government did not even deign to reply.

5. The most active preparations were made on all sides for carrying on the war with vigor. The first consul in person took the command of the army destined to act against the Austrians in Italy. The Austrian general made the best arrangements for defending the passage round the Alps into Italy, thinking it impossible for an army to enter it by any other route.

6. But nothing seemed to be impossible to Bonaparte. Crossing directly over the Alps; transporting his army, with all its baggage, stores, and artillery, by ways hitherto deemed almost impassable for unincumbered travellers, he took the Austrian general completely by surprise. The battle of Marengo decided the fate of Italy. The French arms being equally successful in other quarters, Austria was once more compelled to sue for peace, and negotiations were commenced.

7. The Emperor of Germany demanded that England should be included in the treaty, to which Bonaparte agreed. The requisitions of the English government were, however, such as Bonaparte would not accede to; so the negotiations were broken off, and the emperor renewed hostilities. His principal army took the field on the 24th of November, 1800, and, on the 3d of December, was totally defeated at Hohenlinden by the French under Moreau.

8. Nothing remained for Austria but to accept such terms of peace as the first consul would grant. These were very liberal, and the treaty was signed at Luneville, in February, 1801, and England was again left to sustain the war alone. New enemies, too, now appeared. Paul, Emperor of Russia, enraptured with the abilities and military glory of Bonaparte, declared himself the warm friend of France, and to show his regard, he seized upon all the British vessels in his ports.

9. Denmark and Sweden seemed to be on the point of joining with Russia in a confederacy against the maritime power of England. But this project was defeated by the promptitude of the British government. A force was sent, under Lord Nelson, to destroy the Danish ships at Copenhagen. The expedition was completely successful, and Denmark agreed to remain at peace with England.

10. Nelson then proceeded towards Russia. But his operations in that quarter were interrupted by the death of Paul. His son and successor, Alexander, immediately disclaimed all hostile intentions towards England. About the same time, the French forces were driven out of Egypt by the British, under Sir Ralph Abercrombie; a success which was dearly purchased by the loss of that commander.

---

6. 6. What of the war in Italy? 7. When, and between whom, was the battle of Hohenlinden? 8. When and where was peace concluded between France and Austria? 9. What new enemies against England appeared? What measure did England adopt in consequence? 10. What of the French army in Egypt?

## CHAPTER CCIX.

*Peace of Amiens.—Hostilities renewed between France and England.—Battle of Trafalgar.—Death of Lord Nelson.—Condition of Europe in 1808.*

1. PREVIOUS to the transactions which we have just mentioned, a change had taken place in the English ministry. On the 11th of January, 1801, Mr. Pitt resigned the offices he had held for eighteen years. The new ministers at once commenced negotiations for peace with France, which was concluded at Amiens, March 27th, 1802. All England rung with joyful acclamations at the attainment of this long wished-for object.

2. But the joy was of short continuance. By the terms of the treaty, England was bound to surrender Malta, an island in the Mediterranean Sea, to the Knights of St. John, an order which had been founded at the time of the crusades, and which, after maintaining a war against the Turks for many hundred years, had quietly established itself on this island.

3. England was also bound to give up to the Dutch the Cape of Good Hope, which it had captured from them. But when the demand was made upon her to comply with these stipulations, she declined. The true reason for this refusal was, that the British government foresaw that other causes would soon bring about a new war, and they thought they would save themselves the trouble of capturing these places anew. Hostilities were renewed in 1803, and Mr. Pitt resumed his place at the head of the ministry.

4. In 1804, Bonaparte was proclaimed Emperor of the French. He had now acquired unlimited sway, not only in that country, but also over a great part of Europe. England alone remained entirely independent. As she had no allies on the continent of Europe, her active operations were confined principally to the ocean, on which she maintained her usual superiority. The most celebrated naval battle was that fought off Cape Trafalgar, in Spain, on the 21st of October, 1805, when the British fleet, under Lord Nelson, defeated the combined fleets of France and Spain.

5. In the midst of the engagement, Lord Nelson received a mortal wound. When he felt himself wounded, he covered his face with his handkerchief, and concealed the decorations of his coat, fearing lest his crew should be disheartened by knowing that the commander had fallen. He was carried down to the surgeon's room, where he lived long enough to know that his fleet was victorious. His last orders, given almost with his dying breath, were that the ships should be anchored. These orders were not obeyed, and the consequence was,

---

CCIX.—1. When did Mr. Pitt go out of office? When and where was peace made? 2, 3. Were the terms of this treaty executed? When were hostilities renewed? 4. What naval victory did the English gain? Who commanded in the battle? 5. Relate the particulars of Nelson's death. 6. What powers joined England in the war? Where, and by whom, were they defeated? 7. When did Mr. Pitt die? Who succeeded him?

that most of the ships they had taken were driven on shore in a gale which sprang up in the night.

6. The money and diplomacy of England induced the Emperor of Austria, in conjunction with the Emperor of Russia, once more to try his fortunes in a war with France. But he soon found reason to repent of his rashness. Napoleon, as Bonaparte was called after he became emperor, advanced at once into Austria with a powerful army. Vienna, the capital, was taken, and the Russian and Austrian troops were defeated at Austerlitz.

7. Nothing remained for the Emperor of Austria but to make peace, which he did, upon very humiliating terms, at Presburg, December 26th, 1805. The death of Mr. Pitt, on the 23d of January, 1806, produced a change in the British ministry. Charles James Fox, who had through life been his great rival for power, was placed at the head of affairs. His administration was cut short by his death, September 13, 1806. Of the ministry which succeeded, Mr. Perceval is usually considered the head.

8. In the mean time, Napoleon continued his victorious career. The King of Prussia, who had taken up arms against him, was compelled, in 1807, to purchase the *Peace of Tilsit*, by the surrender of a considerable portion of his territories. The Emperor of Russia also found it expedient to come to terms with the French. Thus, in 1808, Napoleon had nearly the whole continent of Europe under his control. Out of the territories which he had taken from Austria and Prussia he formed a new kingdom for his brother Jerome.

9. Upon the throne of Naples he placed Murat, his brother-in-law. The King of Spain was a prisoner in France, and Joseph Bonaparte, brother of Napoleon, was seated on his throne. Louis Bonaparte, another brother, was King of Holland. Portugal was also under the dominion of this great conqueror. The papal power was overthrown, and the pope himself a resident in France. The Bourbon claimant of the throne of France was living in England, under the name of the Count de Lille, with little prospect of ever being restored to his rank.

## CHAPTER CCX.

*Sir Arthur Wellesley sent into Spain.—Death of Sir John Moore.—The Walcheren Expedition.—The Cabinet.—Melancholy Condition of George III. during the last Years of his Life.—A Regent appointed.*

1. THE Spaniards did not rest quietly under a foreign yoke. They rose in arms against their invaders. In July, 1808, a British army, under Sir Arthur Wellesley, was sent to their assistance. Finding that Portugal offered a better field for operations, Wellesley went

thither. He was so successful that the French were compelled to withdraw themselves from the country.

2. Sir John Moore, who arrived in Spain in November, with another British army, was not so fortunate. Having advanced into the country, he found himself compelled to make a rapid retreat. He arrived at Corunna, January 16th, 1809, closely followed by the French, under Marshal Soult, who attacked the British as they were embarking. Sir John Moore was among the killed. He was buried on the ramparts of Corunna; an event which is commemorated in the beautiful and familiar verses of Wolfe.

3. On the 8th of April, 1809, Austria again declared war against France; but after having suffered a decisive defeat in the battle of Wagram, July 21, was compelled again to sue for peace. This new treaty was cemented by the marriage of the Emperor Napoleon with Maria Louisa, a daughter of the Emperor of Austria. The most remarkable event of the year, so far as England was concerned, was the Walcheren expedition, as it is called, fitted out against Holland, and which was most disgracefully unsuccessful.

4. The reader has doubtless remarked the great change which has taken place in the notice we have to take of the King of England. In olden times, it was, "the king did this," and "the king did that," —the history of the events which took place being little more than an account of the king's doings and adventures. But as the great body of the people had now increased in wealth and intelligence, the relation between the monarch and the people had greatly changed.

5. All power was now virtually in the people; a minister, supported by the king, might for a time induce a majority of the members of parliament to vote as he wished, and against the wishes of a majority of the people; but eventually the will of the people prevails. It is a maxim of English law, that "the king can do no wrong," therefore he cannot be held responsible, or punished for his conduct by law. To guard against the evils which might result from this, it is a provision of the British constitution that the king himself shall perform no act of government.

6. Everything must be done by certain great officers of state, corresponding to the secretaries of state, treasury, &c., in the government of the United States. These officers are called the king's "ministers," and sometimes "the cabinet." They are responsible for the measures that government adopt; and formerly they generally answered with their lives for unpopular measures. Indeed, as late as the reign of George I, it was almost a matter of course that, upon every change in the ministry, the chief ministers who went out of power should be impeached for high treason.

7. Though the sovereign took so little active part in affairs, yet he necessarily possessed a great influence in the state; we cannot, therefore, entirely neglect him. In November, 1810, the death of his youngest and favorite child, the Princess Amelia, brought upon

George III. a return of his former complaint, and he sank into a state of incurable insanity. About the same time he became totally blind. He had a few lucid intervals. During one of these he heard a bell tolling for a funeral, and asked whom it was for.

8. On being told that it was for a tradesman's wife in Windsor, he said, "I remember her well; she was a good woman, and brought up her family in the fear of God. She is gone to heaven; I hope I shall soon follow her." Little, however, is known of the last years of the king's life; for the queen, with true feeling and delicacy, could not bear that his calamities should be exposed to the public gaze, and by her particular desire he was seen only by his physicians and necessary attendants.

9. He passed his time chiefly in roving from room to room of the long range of apartments which had been prepared for his accommodation in Windsor Castle. In these apartments were placed several harpsichords and pianofortes, and he would occasionally play a few bars of Handel's music on them as he passed. Sometimes he would hold long dialogues with imaginary persons. At other times he would suppose himself to be dead, and to be conversing with angels, and would talk of what he fancied the queen and his children were doing in this world.

10. His piety was continually gleaming through all his wanderings, and he would often pray with a fervor of devotion affecting to those who overheard him. As his mental disease was evidently incurable, it was absolutely necessary to select a regent, and the Prince of Wales was appointed without any opposition. He retained all his father's ministers, and no change was made in the system of conducting public affairs.

---

## CHAPTER CCXI.

*The overbearing Conduct of Great Britain leads to a War with the United States.—War in the Peninsula, where Lord Wellington commands the British.—Expedition of Napoleon into Russia.—Disastrous Result.—The rest of Europe combines against France.—Napoleon sent to Elba.—Returns to France and recovers his Power there.—Battle of Waterloo.—He is dethroned by the Allies, and sent to St. Helena.*

1. GREAT BRITAIN exercised her superiority on the ocean in a very overbearing manner towards those nations who took no part in the war, and subjected the commerce of *neutral* nations to innumerable vexations. The citizens of the United States, being the most largely engaged in commerce, were the greatest sufferers. They were

fortunes befall George III. in 1810? 9. How did he pass the rest of his life? 10. By whom was the country governed?

also subjected to a peculiar outrage, rising from the common origin of the two nations.

2. Great Britain denied the right of any person to renounce his country and become the citizen or subject of any other state or power. In pursuance of this principle, her press-gangs would go on board neutral ships, and take from them such persons as they chose to consider British subjects. The common language, and great resemblance between the English and the Americans, made it very difficult to distinguish between them.

3. Nor were the British officers very careful in making their selections, so that a large number of American citizens were seized in this outrageous manner, and held in bondage on board British vessels. A British press-gang had, indeed, no more right to go on board an American vessel, than they had to enter our house, and to take one of us to serve in their vessels. The government of the United States remonstrated in vain against this and other outrages, and at length, when other measures had been tried without effect, in 1812 they declared war.

4. This contest was carried on at such a distance from home, and upon so small a scale, compared with the wars which were waging in Europe, that it attracted comparatively little attention in England. We must therefore pass it over, referring the reader, for full details, to another volume.\* We now return to Spain, where, during the years 1811 and 1812, the British troops, under Sir Arthur Wellesley, who had been made Lord Wellington, gained many victories, but were at last obliged to retire into Portugal.

5. In 1813, Lord Wellington succeeded in driving the French out of Spain and Portugal, or the *Peninsula*, as it is called, and, on the 7th of October, entered France. He advanced into the country, and on the 11th of April, 1814, defeated the French army, under Marshal Soult, at Toulouse. We must now go back to Napoleon, whom we left at the pinnacle of greatness, ruling most of the nations of Europe. On the continent, Russia alone was not subject to his will. The attempt was now to be made to subdue that country also.

6. On the 24th of June, 1812, Napoleon passed the river Niemen, the boundary of Russia, at the head of an army of 400,000 men. Sweeping all before him, he entered Moscow, the ancient capital of the country, on September 15th, with the intention of passing the winter in that city. But the Russian governor, before he left the town, had caused it to be set on fire in various places. The houses being chiefly of wood, the flames spread with so much rapidity, that all the attempts of the French to arrest it proved vain, and two-thirds of the city was destroyed.

7. It had never entered into the mind of Napoleon, that a people

CXXI.—2. What right did England deny? What did she do in pursuance of this denial? 3. To what did her conduct lead? Where, in Europe, were the British troops successful? Who commanded? 5. When did Lord Wellington enter France? What battle did he gain? 6. When did Napoleon pass the Russian boundary? What was his

would destroy their own capital; he had therefore made no provision for the support or shelter of his army during the long Russian winter, relying upon finding every necessary thing in the captured city. He was now, therefore, in great difficulty. His stores were exhausted; his supplies were cut off by the Russian troops; his soldiers were dispirited and worn out by fatigue and exposure. A retreat was all that remained to him.

8. The horrors of this retreat are past our powers to describe. The route of the army might, in many places, be traced by the dead bodies of those who perished from hunger, cold, and fatigue. Of the host that entered Russia, not more than 50,000 re-crossed the boundary of the country on the return. On the 4th of December, Napoleon left the army, and set off on a rapid journey to Paris.

9. These reverses encouraged the subject nations to endeavor to shake off the yoke of France. Prussia was the first to join the advancing armies of Russia. Sweden and Austria followed her lead, and, in November, 1813, Holland joined the allies, as did Denmark, in January, 1814. The immense armies of the allies compelled the French to retreat to their own country, whither they pursued. On the 30th of March, 1814, the combined armies gained a great victory before Paris, and the next day entered the city in triumph.



NAPOLEON ON BOARD THE BELLEROPHON.

10. On the 4th of April, Napoleon abdicated the throne, and retired to the small island of Elba, on the coast of Italy, which was assigned to him by the allied powers. The Empress Maria Louisa and her infant son had previously gone to Vienna. On the 3d of May, Louis XVIII., brother and heir to Louis XVI., who was be-

headed, made his entry into Paris. On the 30th of May, peace was concluded between the allied powers and France. A few months afterwards peace was made between England and the United States.

11. But the French could not reconcile themselves to a king who was forced upon them by foreign bayonets. They longed for an opportunity to get rid of him. This was soon offered. In March, 1815, all Europe was alarmed by the news that Napoleon had landed in France, and had been received by the people with acclamations of joy. On the morning of March 20th, Louis XVIII. fled from Paris, and on the evening of the same day Napoleon took up his residence in the royal palace, and resumed the government without opposition.

12. His first act was to propose to the allies to maintain the peace on the terms which had lately been settled. But they rejected the proposal, and put their armies in motion for the purpose of crushing the man whose ambition troubled the world. To prevent their entrance into France, Napoleon advanced at the head of 150,000 men into the Netherlands. On the 17th, after some bloody conflicts, the allied army, under Lord Wellington, posted itself near the village of Waterloo.

13. About ten o'clock the next day began one of the severest battles recorded in history. It raged furiously during the whole day, and ended in the total defeat of the French. When all was lost, Napoleon quitted the field, attended by five or six officers, and arrived at Paris on the night of the 20th. Seeing no hope of retrieving his affairs, he went to Rochefort with the intention of proceeding to the United States.

14. Finding that the harbor was guarded by an English frigate, he came to the resolution of throwing himself upon the generosity of the English nation; a confidence which was requited, by the regent and party in power, by banishment and confinement for life at St. Helena, a little rocky island rising up in the middle of the Atlantic Ocean. Here he died, May 5th, 1821. In 1840, the whigs being in power in England, and a new family on the throne of France, an expedition was sent out under the king's son to bring the body of Napoleon to France. It was borne to Paris, and there re-entombed, with vast pomp.

15. After the battle of Waterloo, the victorious army advanced upon Paris, which made no resistance. On the 8th of July, Louis XVIII. re-entered his capital; but the foreign troops retained possession of it till peace was finally restored, which took place in October. By the treaty the allies were to retain several fortresses on the side of the Netherlands for five years, as security for the preservation of peace, and to have the troops in readiness to put down any rising of the French people. The expense of supporting these troops was defrayed by France.

---

11. What of the feelings of the French? What of Napoleon? When was the battle of Waterloo fought? Who were victorious? What became of Napoleon? 15. What was done as to France after the battle of Waterloo?

## CHAPTER CCXII.

*The National Debt of Great Britain.—Hargraves and Arkwright make great Improvements in Machinery.—Watt and the Steam Engine.—Great Importance of the latter in England.*

1. It may well excite our surprise that Great Britain should be able to obtain money enough to sustain her long wars. She not only had her own troops to support, but the assistance of Austria, Prussia, and other powers was purchased at great cost. They were in fact bribed to take part in the wars which were ostensibly carrying on for their own deliverance. The immediate means by which England obtained her supplies of money consisted in loans.

2. There are a great many men in England who have money which they do not wish to employ in business, and which they are willing to lend to the government, receiving a certain sum for the use of it, which sum, or *interest*, is usually paid half-yearly. The government issues a written paper, specifying the sum lent, and the rate of interest, or amount of half-yearly payment. This debt, on the part of the government, constitutes what is called *the public funds*. It is divided into very small sums, and portions of it are bought and sold like bank stock, or railroad stock.

3. This debt, which was commenced by William III., now amounts to four thousand millions of dollars. There is no idea that the principal of it will ever be paid. The interest on it amounts to a very large sum, and as this must be raised by taxes, a very heavy burden is imposed on the people. But they submit to this cheerfully, rather than violate the public faith. The punctuality in the payment of interest gives such confidence to the people who have money to lend, that upon one occasion during the war, the enormous sum of ninety millions of dollars was borrowed in fifteen hours.

4. But we may ask how the people of England became so rich. Chiefly by commerce and the increase of manufactures, especially that of cotton. Until the middle of the last century the spinning of cotton was performed by hand, with the aid of the common spinning-wheel. In 1767, Richard Hargraves, a carpenter, invented the *spinning-jenny*, a machine by which a great many threads could be spun with as much ease as one could before.

5. This was a great improvement, but the spinning-jenny required to be worked by hand. In 1770, Richard Arkwright, a barber of Preston, in England, made public his invention of the *water-spinning-frame*, a machine which may be moved wholly by water or steam, and which does the work of a vast number of human fingers in the same time, and with much more precision.

6. This invention gave an immense impulse to industry, and by enabling Great Britain to manufacture at a cheaper rate than any

other nation, added enormously to her wealth. Arkwright may well be called a benefactor of his country, for by diminishing the cost of an article of clothing, he added to the comforts of the poor, who are by far the largest portion of the people. An immense fortune was the reward of his ingenuity.

7. But as there are in Great Britain, compared with our own country, few streams which have a sufficient fall of water to move machinery, the inventions of Arkwright would have been of comparatively little advantage, without the aid of the steam engine which, about the same time, was rendered an efficient agent, and brought into general use, in consequence of the improvements made in it by James Watt, a mechanic of Glasgow, in Scotland.

8. Of the immense value, in England, of these improvements in a machine which was before of comparatively little worth, the following extract from an English author may convey an idea. "Considered in its application to husbandry, the farmer looks out upon the neat paling in front of his dwelling; it was sawed by steam. The spade with which he digs his garden, the rake, the hoe, the pickaxe, the scythe, the sickle,—every implement of rural toil,—are produced by steam.

9. "Steam bruises the oil-cake which feeds his cattle; moulds the ploughshare which turns up his fields; forms the shears which clip his flock; and cards, spins, and weaves the produce. Applied to architecture, we find the hundred arms of the steam engine everywhere at work. Stone is cut by it, marble polished, cement ground, mortar mixed, floors sawed, doors planed, chimney-pieces carved, lead rolled for roofs, and drawn for gutters, rails formed, gratings and bolts forged, paints ground and mixed, and paper made and stained.

10. "By the same power is worsted dyed and carpet wove, mahogany veneered, door locks ornamented, the stuff for curtains made, printed and measured; fringes, tassels and bell-ropes, chair covers and chair-rails, bell-wires, linens and blankets manufactured; china and earthen ware turned; glass cut and pier-glass formed; the drawing-room, dining-room, kitchen closets, all owe to steam their most essential requisites.

11. "Should it be asked, what has enabled the mechanic to wear two hats a year instead of going bareheaded or sporting the bonnet which their father wore; what has clothed them in suits of cloth as good as that worn by the highest in the land; what has donned for their wives the apparel of ladies, made their boys rejoice in a plurality of suits;

12. "What has, in the bridal hour, dressed their daughters in robes, delicate in texture as the spider's web, beautiful in color as the rainbow's hues, and for elegance such as never, in their grandames' younger days, even duchesses wore; what plaited her bonnet, tamboured her net, wove her laces, knitted her stockings, veneered her comb, flowered her ribands, gilded her buttons, sewed her shoes,

and even fashioned the r<sup>o</sup>sette that ornamented their ties? The answer is,—*steam.*"

---

### CHAPTER CCXIII.

*Lord Exmouth's Expedition to Algiers.—The African Slave-Trade suppressed.—John Howard, the Philanthropist.*

1. THE Algerines and the other states of Barbary, on the African coast of the Mediterranean Sea, had for many centuries been little better than hordes of pirates. Fitting out cruisers, they seized upon the vessels of all nations frequenting the Mediterranean, and made slaves of the unhappy persons whom they found in them. It is unaccountable that the powerful nations of Europe should so long have submitted to their depredations.

2. Instead of sending forces to break up the nests of these pirates, commercial nations were in the habit of purchasing the safety of their vessels by the annual payment of large sums of money to the chiefs of the several states. We believe the United States were the first who made any vigorous attack upon them. In the spring of 1816, the British government sent Lord Exmouth to remonstrate with the Dey or Governor of Algiers against his piratical depredations.

3. The dey released some Christian slaves, and promised to abstain from making any for the future. But not long after, the news reached England that some Italians, who were fishing for pearls at Bona, had been carried off for slaves. This want of faith highly incensed the people of England, and Lord Exmouth was sent out with a squadron to compel the Algerines to perform their promises.

4. It is usual for commercial nations to keep a representative, called a *consul*, in each of the principal foreign ports. It is the duty of the consul to protect the rights of the people whom he represents. Lord Exmouth's first act was to send a vessel to bring away the British consul from Algiers. The dey, who had received information of the intentions of the English, had already put the consul in prison; but his wife and daughter, disguising themselves, contrived to reach the British vessel.

5. The consul's youngest child, a little infant, was, for better concealment, put into a basket, which one of the English sailors was to carry on board, as if it was only a bundle of clothes; but the poor little baby began to cry, and thus betrayed itself to the Moors, who seized upon it. The poor mother passed many wretched hours in terrible uncertainty for the fate of her child; but the dey had the humanity to send it to her the next morning, and thus her grief was changed to transport.

6. On May 27th, 1816, Lord Exmouth with his fleet came in sight

of Algiers. He sent at once to demand of the dey, that all Christian slaves should be set at liberty. Receiving no answer after having waited several hours, he began to fire upon the town. The batteries of the town returned a tremendous fire upon the ships. But this soon ceased; for in a short space of time, the dey's magazines, shipping, and a large part of the town, were destroyed.

7. The next morning the dey sent to inform Lord Exmouth that he would agree to the terms demanded; and before noon most of the Christian slaves were released, and the English fleet in a few days sailed from Algiers. We must not forget to mention the efforts which were made during this reign to put an end to the traffic in Africans, carried on by the subjects of Christian countries, commonly called the *slave-trade*.

8. The law forbidding British subjects to be concerned in it was passed during the short administration of Mr. Fox; after a contest of several years with those interested in the continuance of the trade. That the measure was finally carried, is to be attributed to the persevering exertions of Mr. Wilberforce, seconded, out of parliament, by those of Mr. Clarkson, who devoted his whole life to the cause.

9. Neither must we forget to mention the efforts of John Howard, another friend of humanity, who devoted his time to the amelioration of the condition of persons confined in prisons and jails. He visited all the jails in England, and made known their condition to the public, which, with scarcely an exception, was horrible; thus securing the adoption of measures for its improvement. He then passed over to the continent, and made several journeys to the different countries, visiting the prisons and the hospitals.

10. In 1789, he published an account of these institutions, and made known his intention of visiting Russia and Turkey, and the countries of Asia, on the same benevolent errand. A little before he left England, when a friend expressed his concern at parting with him, he cheerfully replied, "We shall soon meet in heaven;" and as he knew the risk he incurred of dying of the plague in Egypt, he added, "The way to heaven from Cairo is as near as from London." This good man did fall a victim to his humanity; for, in visiting a sick prisoner at Cherson, in Russia, he caught a malignant fever, and died January 20th, 1790.

## CHAPTER CCXIV.

*Death of George III.—The Authors who flourished in the latter part of his Reign.*

1. DURING the last nine years of his life, George III. was in a melancholy state of blindness, deafness, and mental incapacity, which was

---

particulars of Lord Exmouth's conduct at Algiers. ". What of the African slave-trade? 6. What of Howard? 10. Where did he die?

ended by his death, January 29th, 1820. He was in the eighty-second year of his age, and the sixtieth of his reign. He continued his active habits till within a few days of his death; and, notwithstanding his want of sight, he constantly dressed himself without assistance. At last, the powers of life seemed quite worn out, and he died without any apparent suffering.

2. George III. not only *reigned* longer, but also lived to a greater age, than any other English monarch. Before closing our account of this long and eventful reign, we will mention some of the men of letters who gained distinction during the latter part of it. We shall not attempt to give an idea of their respective styles or merits; for this we must refer the reader to critical works, or, what is better, the productions of these authors themselves. We can do little more than mention names and dates, so as to indicate when those authors lived whose names are so constantly occurring in books and conversation.

3. About the time of the French Revolution, as great a change took place in the style in which ideas were presented to the public, as in that in which the body was arrayed. In the preceding period, it appears to have been impossible for the writers to shake off the formality and precision which accompanied full-bottomed wigs and hoop-petticoats. The old Greek and Roman heroes and sages seemed to wear the wigs and brocades and the stately manners of George II.'s reign. But now more natural and easy fashions prevailed, and writers adopted language and a style suitable to the objects and times to be represented.

4. A collection of old ballads, published in 1755, by Bishop Percy, familiarly known as *Percy's Reliques*, was the immediate means of exciting a taste for simple and unaffected poetry. The change in style was gradual, for authors are very reluctant to acknowledge that any manner can be better than the one which they have adopted. It was not, therefore, till a new generation of authors should appear, educated amid the influence of the improved public taste, that a very decided change was to be expected. Among the first to throw off the trammels, was William Cowper, who seems to have been hardly conscious of his poetical talent, till he was fifty years old, at which age, in 1782, he published the *Table Talk*, and, two years afterwards, *The Task*.

5. Cowper expresses, in unaffected language, his own feelings, which were deeply tinged with melancholy, a trait of character which we should hardly expect in the author of the humorous ballad of *John Gilpin*. George Crabbe, a country clergyman, who was born in 1754, wrote some natural and pleasing sketches, in verse, of rural life. The first poems of the Scottish peasant, Robert Burns, were published in 1786. He was then twenty-seven years old. His beautiful songs soon acquired for him a reputation, not only in England, but also in foreign lands.

6. In the same year, Samuel Rogers, a London banker, published his first volume of poems, which were followed, in 1792, by *The Pleasures of Memory*, the poem by which he is best known. The poets of the preceding reign had a strong similarity in their style, because it was formed upon the received model, Pope. But Cowper, Crabbe, Burns, and Rogers, are very different from each other, and William Wordsworth, born in 1770, adopted yet another and a peculiar style. He sought to express, in common language, the ordinary incidents of life, conveying, however, a deep and touching moral and meaning.

7. Samuel Taylor Coleridge, a man of genius, but too much inclined to metaphysical studies to be popular, was born in 1773, and began to publish verses in 1794. The struggle for liberty, first in America, and afterwards in France, the breaking up of customs and institutions which had held the human mind in bondage for so many centuries, could not fail to excite young men of genius. Wordsworth and Coleridge were stirred up by the exciting events of the day, as was Robert Southey, a poet of the first rank, born in 1774.

8. Southey was at first an enthusiastic admirer of the French Revolution, and an advocate for the utmost liberty and equality among men. In his twenty-first year he published a poem, the heroine of which was Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans, whose history we have briefly noticed. He proposed to carry his notions into practice, by establishing, in connection with Coleridge and a Mr. Lovell, a philosophical government on the banks of the Susquehanna, in Pennsylvania. But the scheme was broken up by the marriage of the three young enthusiasts with three sisters, who, we suppose, were not so ready to sacrifice real comforts for ideal advantages. In later life, Southey was a staunch friend of the church and state, in England, and became poet-laureate under George III.

9. The next of the great modern poets is Thomas Campbell, born in Scotland, in 1777. His *Pleasures of Hope* was published in 1799. Every one is familiar with his poetry, for his shorter pieces are to be found in all the "readers" and "class-books." Next comes Sir Walter Scott, whose delightful tales have entertained and instructed many grandchildren, besides Master Hugh Littlejohn. It was as a poet that he first gained a reputation. He was born in Scotland, in 1771. *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, his first long original poem, was published in 1805. This, and the other poems which succeeded it, were received with an avidity hitherto unexampled.

10. He maintained his place as the most popular poet till he was supplanted in public favor by Lord Byron, born in 1788, who, in 1812, published the first part of *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*. Finding himself eclipsed in public favor, Sir Walter abandoned poetry, and devoted himself to another species of composition. In 1814, a novel, called *Waverley*, made its appearance. The name of the author was carefully concealed. Other novels, by the "author of Waverley," followed in rapid succession, and placed the "Great Un-

6. What of Rogers? What of the style of those poets? What of Wordsworth? 7. What of Coleridge? What of Southey? What project did he form? 9. What of Campbell? What of Scott? Who supplanted Scott in public favor as a poet? 10. What

known," as this author was familiarly called, far above all writers of prose fiction, and in the rank with Shakspeare, Milton, and the great masters in literature.

11. We can hardly conceive the interest with which the question of authorship was discussed, or the enthusiasm with which the works themselves were received. The battle of Waterloo, upon the result of which depended the fate of empires, hardly excited more interest, than the announcement of a new novel by the author of *Waverley*. Public opinion soon fixed on Scott as the author, but it was not till 1827 that he publicly acknowledged it.

12. We must now go back a little to speak of a few novel-writers of an earlier date. In 1777, Miss Burney, afterwards Madame D'Arblay, published *Evelina*. She was then but about twenty years old, and she had carefully concealed from every person, even her parents, that she was writing a book. It was received with great favor by the public, and, as the author's name was not given, all were eager to know who it could be. The parents of Miss Burney were not less pleased and curious than the rest of the world; and we may well suppose the author never enjoyed a happier moment, than when she told them that the work which everybody was praising, and which had afforded them so much pleasure, was the production of their own youthful daughter.



HANNAH MORE.

13. Mrs Radcliffe, who wrote romances abounding in terrors, was born in 1764, and published her first book in 1789. Miss Edgeworth Mrs. Opie, Mrs. Barbauld, and Miss Hannah More, flourished during the period of which we are now speaking. Hitherto we have only

noticed authors of works of imagination. There were no historical works of so much brilliancy and polish as those produced in the preceding period, but many which exceed them in accuracy. In 1784, Adam Fergusson published a *History of the Roman Republic*.

14. In 1786, Adam Gillies published *The History of Greece*, a work long esteemed, but now superseded by Mr. Mitford's history. William Roscoe, a lawyer, and afterwards a banker, published, in 1795, the *Life of Lorenzo de' Medici*, and in 1805, a *Life of Pope Leo X*. The other distinguished historians of this period, are Sharon Turner, to whom we are indebted for many stories of the Anglo-Saxon times; John Lingard, a Catholic priest, who has written a history of England, which is adopted as the standard history among Catholics; Henry Hallam, and Charles James Fox, the distinguished statesman.

15. This period was particularly rich in voyages and travels. Periodical literature also made a great advance in merit. In 1802, a few young men, just out of the University of Edinburgh, established the Edinburgh Review, whose pages exhibited so much talent, as soon to throw all other works of the kind quite into the shade. The writers were all whigs, and advocated liberal principles. To counteract its influence, the tories, in 1809, commenced the publication, in London, of a similar work, by the title of the Quarterly Review. These works still maintain their place at the head of this department of literature.

#### FAMILY OF GEORGE III.

##### WIFE.

Charlotte, Princess of Mecklenburg-Strelitz.

##### CHILDREN.

George, Prince of Wales, afterwards George IV.

Frederick, Duke of York, died January 5th, 1827, leaving no children.

William Henry, Duke of Clarence, afterwards William IV.

Charlotte Augusta, married the Duke of Württemberg.

Edward, Duke of Kent, died January 23d, 1820.

Augusta Sophia, died September 22d, 1840, unmarried.

Elizabeth, married the Prince of Hesse-Homburg.

Ernest Augustus, Duke of Cumberland, afterwards King of Hanover.

Augustus Frederick, Duke of Sussex.

Adolphus Frederick, Duke of Cambridge.

Mary, married her cousin, the Duke of Gloucester.

Sophia.

Octavius, died in 1783.

Alfred, died in 1782.

Amelia, died in 1810.

##### GRANDCHILDREN.

Alexandria Victoria, daughter of the Duke of Kent, and now queen, born May 24th, 1819.

George Frederick, son of the King of Hanover.

George William, son of the Duke of Cambridge.

Augusta, daughter of the Duke of Cambridge.

## CHAPTER CCXV.

*George IV.—His Character, Person, Education, and Habits.—Mrs. Fitzherbert; new Marriage Act.—The Marriage of the Prince to Caroline of Brunswick.—His singular Conduct and Change in his Mode of Life.—The great Discontents which prevailed during the last Years of his Regency.*



GEORGE IV.

1. GEORGE IV. was fifty-eight years of age when he succeeded his father. Nature had given him warm feelings, more than ordinary abilities, and not a bad heart. He often, in the course of his life, performed kind actions; but he also allowed himself to be easily offended, and when he was, he seldom forgave. His mind was cultivated, his manners graceful and dignified; and he could assume, when he chose, an urbanity quite irresistible. He was of a fair complexion, and, in his youth, had a fine face and person.

2. The king, his father, had often felt and lamented the disadvantages of his own limited education, and was anxious that his son should have nothing to regret on that score. Very able men were appointed to be his preceptors. It has been said that these, in their great zeal to fulfil their duty, did not sufficiently study the temper and character of their royal pupil, or the peculiar circumstances in which he was placed, and that they subjected him to too much restraint.

3. On being emancipated from his pupilage, he surrounded himself

CCXV.—1. How old was George IV. when he succeeded to the throne? What is said of his character? 3. Whom did he take for his model, when a young man?

with gay companions, and launched into an excess of folly and extravagance. It was said, by way of apology, that the young prince had chosen Henry V. for his model, and that he meant only to divert himself a while, and that, when the time should come for assuming a more elevated character, he, too, would cast away his follies, and rise superior to his former self.

4. But, unfortunately, this time was so long in coming, that he at last became confirmed in frivolity and dissipation, setting at nought good precepts, good example, and even good report. He is said to have declared to a friend, a short time before his death, that he found too late that he had made a fatal mistake; and that, were his life to come over again, he would aim at something better than being a man of pleasure.

5. When the prince was about twenty-two, he became attached to Mrs. Fitzherbert, a lady many years older than himself, but of great beauty and agreeableness. It was rumored that the prince had privately married her. The marriage would not have been binding, because, by a law made in the early part of George III.'s reign, all marriages entered into by members of the royal family, without the written consent of the sovereign, were declared to be void.

6. This law was made in consequence of the king's two brothers having followed their inclinations, and married agreeable English ladies, in preference to foreign princesses, with whom, for reasons of state, George III. would have been better pleased. The report, however, of the Prince of Wales' marriage caused great agitation throughout the kingdom, and became a matter of discussion in parliament. Mr. Fox, then one of the prince's friends, by his authority denied the marriage, calling the report "a monstrous calumny."

7. At this time, and for some years afterwards, the personal expenses of the prince were enormous, and far exceeded his allowance; so that, in 1794, his debts amounted to little less than three and a half millions of dollars. His thoughtless extravagance brought upon him, in spite of his otherwise popular qualities, the contempt of the public, and the serious displeasure of his father, who, however, in the hope that his character would be benefited by his forming new ties, promised him that his debts should be paid if he would marry such a person as should be selected for him.

8. The prince reluctantly consented, and, in 1795, married his cousin, the Princess Caroline of Brunswick. This union, as might have been expected under such circumstances, was not a happy one, and, after the birth of one child, the Princess Charlotte, a separation took place. The wife of the prince for some time led a very secluded life, shut out from court by the personal dislike of Queen Charlotte; but the king continued to show her unvaried kindness, until, by his insanity, she lost her best and almost only friend.

9. From the time of his marriage, the prince withdrew himself almost wholly from public affairs, until they were forced on him by his being made regent in 1810. We have already related the prin-

5. What is the law of England with regard to the marriage of members of the royal family? 7. What of the prince's habits of expenditure? What did his father propose to him? 8. Whom did he marry? 9. What of the state of public feeling after the close

cipal events which happened while he was regent. During the first half of this period, the public attention was absorbed by the great conflict going on upon the continent. When the national exultation for the great victory of Waterloo had subsided, the people began to feel the pressure of the taxes which the long wars had rendered necessary.

10. The English manufacturers had been able to carry on their business during the war, and with great success, because the people of the continent, being directly exposed to the ravages of war, had been obliged to give up all peaceful occupations. When quiet was restored on the continent, the people of the different countries were able to return to their former employments; and as the great mass had gained very much in intelligence since the commencement of the French Revolution, they were better able to compete with the skilful mechanics of England.

11. In consequence of this, there was a great falling off in the business of the manufacturers, and much distress among the work-people, who were thrown out of employment. Discontents prevailed, therefore, in all parts of the country. In 1816, a plot was formed in London to overthrow the government, and correspondence was had with people in other parts of the country. The government adopted prompt measures. The habeas corpus act was suspended, many persons were arrested, and two or three tried and executed.

12. Thus the spirit of discontent was stifled for a time, but broke out again in the manufacturing districts in 1819. In August, a mob of not less than 80,000 persons collected at Manchester, which is the chief seat of the cotton manufacture. The troops were called out to disperse it, and many persons were killed and wounded. This had the effect of quelling the tendency to riots for the time.

13. In the spring of the following year, government received information that certain persons, who were in the habit of meeting at a stable in Cato street, in London, had formed a plot to destroy all the ministers, and had appointed the next day for its execution, it being known that the ministers would on that day dine together at the house of one of the number. The conspirators were immediately arrested, and, their guilt being proved, were executed.

---

of the war? 10. What took place in 1810? 11. What in 1819? 12. What of the Cato street conspiracy?

## CHAPTER CCXVI.

*The Queen returns to England.—Received with Enthusiasm by the People.—The King refuses to acknowledge her as Queen.—He seeks to deprive her of her Rights by Law, but is disappointed.*



THE TRIAL OF QUEEN CAROLINE.

1. THE two questions which, at the period of the king's accession, were looked to with the most eagerness by the public, were, first, whether he would appoint his early friends, the whigs, to office; and secondly, what his conduct would be towards the queen. Almost all his personal friends were of the whig party, and yet, when he was made regent, he had appointed none of them to office.

2. It was thought probable that he might have been prevented by filial respect from displacing those in whom his father had confidence, and that, when he became sovereign in his own right, he would appoint those to office who would act in accordance with the principles which he had himself professed, so long as he took any active part in politics. All those, however, who looked for such a course on his part, were disappointed; the tory ministers kept their places.

3. The affair of the queen was not so speedily settled. This unfortunate princess had left England in 1814, and at the time of George III.'s death was residing in Italy. When the news of that event reached her, she immediately resolved to return to England, and assert the rights of her station. The king, whose dislike to her, instead of being softened by time and absence, was only increased,

did all in his power to prevail on her to remain abroad, and offered her an increase of income, if she would not return nor assume the title of queen.

4. This offer was indignantly rejected. She landed at Dover, June 5th, 1820. She was met at her landing by multitudes, dressed in their holiday clothes, who all seemed determined, partly out of sympathy for her, and partly, it may be, to show their dislike to the king, to make up, as far as lay in their power, for the neglect and insults he had shown her; for he not only refused to receive her as queen, but had even ordered that she should not be prayed for in the churches.

5. At every place to which she came in her journey to London, the inhabitants poured out to meet her. As she approached the city, the crowd became altogether immense, and escorted her in procession to the house where, for the time, she took up her abode, the use of the palace, usually assigned to the queen, having been refused her. She now became an object of general interest and commiseration, not only to the populace, but also to many very wise and good people in the higher ranks, who took her part from real feeling.

6. She had great good-nature, and was open and affable, and so devoid of pride and stateliness, that all who approached her were won by her condescension. The multitude saw in her not only a princess unjustly deprived of the rightful privileges of her rank, but also a woman unfairly cast off by her husband, and whom that husband had shown, on many occasions, a cruel desire to stigmatize, in the hope of finding a pretext for getting rid of the shackles that still bound him to her.

7. They would not suffer themselves to believe the fact, that she had, in a great degree, brought this treatment on herself. Even in the commencement of her married life she had used no gentle means, none of those soft words that turn away anger, to win the prince's affections. To resent her injuries, and to vindicate her rights, had been the constant tenor of all her subsequent communications to him. Her provocations had, indeed, been great, but her conduct under them had been violent and unconciliating.

8. The manner in which the queen was received by the people only tended to increase the king's bitterness against her. With an eagerness almost malignant, he caught at various rumors of her ill conduct while abroad. By his direction, a bill was brought into parliament, to deprive her of the rights and title of queen, and to dissolve the marriage between her and himself.

9. An investigation was made as to her conduct, and many witnesses were examined both for and against her, but nothing was proved, except that she had indulged in an improper freedom of manners. The bill was, therefore, abandoned, to the disgrace of the ministers who had been instrumental in bringing it forward, and to the extreme mortification of the king, thus baffled in the point for which he had so much labored, and which was the most earnest wish of his heart.

---

in London. 5, 6, 7. How was she received and considered in England? 8. What did the king do? 9. What was his success?

## CHAPTER CCXVII.

*Coronation of George IV.—The Queen dies of a broken Heart.*

1. GEORGE IV. was very fond of display, and he determined that his coronation should be attended with unexampled magnificence. The ceremony took place July 19th, 1821, in Westminster Abbey, which, as well as the adjoining hall, had been fitted up with the greatest splendor. As soon as it was light in the morning of that day, all the avenues to the Abbey were crowded with ladies and gentlemen in full dress, who were hastening to take their places in the galleries fitted up for spectators.

2. At six o'clock most of the royal family had arrived. The king himself entered the Abbey at about ten, and the whole ceremony was not over till eight in the evening. The coronation itself was followed by a grand banquet in the hall. When the king was seated, three noblemen, each in virtue of the office he held in the king's household, rode on horseback into the hall, and waited there while the pages placed the dishes on the royal table.

3. They then retired, backing their horses out of the hall—a piece of difficult horsemanship, but which their well-trained chargers performed admirably. The spectators were scarcely recovered from the excitement of this exhibition, when the sound of trumpets gave the signal of a new approach; and a horseman, clad in full armor like the knights of old, rode into the hall. This was the king's champion.

4. He was preceded by an officer called a herald, arrayed in his *tabard*, an outer garment of velvet, upon which the king's arms are richly embroidered in gold. In old times, this officer was one of considerable consequence, but his chief duties at present are to keep the records of the genealogy of noble families, to read the proclamations of the king, and to bear a part in public ceremonies, such as coronations, royal funerals, &c.

5. The duty of the herald, on the present occasion, was to read the challenge of the champion, defying to single combat any who dared to dispute the king's title to the throne. The champion then threw down his gauntlet, or iron glove, which was given to him again; and this ceremony of reading the challenge, and throwing down the gauntlet, was repeated three times.

6. If any person had been disposed to dispute the king's title, he could have signified his acceptance of the challenge, by taking up the gauntlet. But no one did this on the present occasion: so, having drank the king's health from a gold cup, which he retained as his guerdon, or fee, he backed his horse out of the hall.

7. This custom had its origin in times when it was usual to submit the decision of disputed questions to trial by combat. It is now an unmeaning ceremony, and has been dispensed with at coronations

---

CCXVII.—1. In what did George IV. indulge his taste for display? Give an account of the coronation. 3, 4, 5, 6. What of the champion? Who delivered the challenge?

since that of George IV. Though everything about him was as magnificent as his heart could desire, yet the king must have been far from receiving any real satisfaction from the display.

8. In the first place, the expenditure of the enormous sum of nearly a million and a half of dollars upon a mere ceremony, when the people were loaded with taxes, and in many parts of the kingdom were actually suffering for want of food, gave rise to loud complaints. But the king's greatest vexation was occasioned by the queen. She had demanded to be crowned at the same time with himself; but this was refused, as was also her demand to be present on that occasion.

9. She declared that she would be there in spite of this refusal. It was generally supposed that this was a mere threat, and that she would not so far forget her dignity as to force herself into the king's presence at such a time, and in such a place. Yet this was her real determination; and, on the morning of the coronation, she went to the Abbey at an early hour, and demanded to be allowed to enter; but being refused admittance at all the avenues, she was obliged to retire.

10. Upon this, her partisans set up loud and discordant cries, which were heard by those in the Abbey, and caused an alarm lest the ceremony should be interrupted by some popular outrage; but the populace contented themselves with breaking some of the ministers' windows. The poor queen returned in sadness to her residence. This last mortification had broken her heart. Her health declined from that day, and she died on the 7th of August.

11. She left directions that her body should be taken to Brunswick, in Germany, for interment, and that the inscription on her coffin should be—"Here lies Caroline of Brunswick, the injured Queen of England." The animosity of the king was not appeased by the death of his victim. Her body, instead of being treated with the honors appropriate to her rank, was subjected to insult.

12. The procession, which attended it on the way to Harwich, where it was to be embarked for the continent, was ordered not to pass through the city of London. But the populace were resolved that it should pass through the city, and at last, by tearing up the pavements, placing trees across the roads, and otherwise obstructing them, and after a series of conflicts, in which two persons lost their lives, they effected their purpose. Thus was this most solemn of spectacles turned into a scene of uproar; and it seemed as if even death could not give peace to the unconscious remains of this unfortunate woman.

---

What of heralds? 8. What impaired the king's satisfaction? 9. Relate the remaining events of the queen's life. 12 What happened at her funeral?

## CHAPTER CCXVIII.

*The King visits Ireland and Scotland.—Description of a Highlander's Dress.*

1. THE king did not display the hypocrisy of grieving at an event which removed a thorn that had long festered in his heart. He did not even regard the common requisitions of decorum; and, while the queen lay yet unburied, he set off for Dublin, the chief city of Ireland, where he was received by the lively inhabitants with a glow of joy, which must have been quite grateful to him after the unpopularity to which he had been accustomed at home.

2. After spending a month in Ireland, he returned to England, and on the 20th of September he embarked for Hanover. Here the ceremony of coronation, as King of Hanover, was performed, amidst the most brilliant festivals. The next year he visited Scotland. Here, too, nothing could exceed the apparent joyousness of his reception. No king had visited Scotland since Charles II.'s unhappy sojourn there in 1650; and it seemed as if the Scots were trying to make amends to George IV. for the mortifications his predecessor had undergone.

3. The king himself, also, by the grace and graciousness of his manners, and his evident solicitude to please, showed himself desirous to win the good will of his subjects, flattering, on all occasions, the self-love of the people he visited, by adopting some of their national and popular customs. In Ireland, he drank healths in Irish whiskey; at Hanover, he spoke German; and in Edinburgh, he appeared in the full costume of a Highland chief, wearing the Stuart *tartan*, or *plaid*.

4. Each of the principal clans, or families, in Scotland, was distinguished by the color and arrangement of the stripes in the tartan, and until the rising in 1745, there had been little change in the fashion of a Highlander's dress since the time of the Roman invasion of the island. In 1745, one of the expedients adopted by government to break up the attachment of the clansmen to their chief, was that of forbidding them to wear their ancient dress.

5. Though well suited to the habits of the Highlanders as they were then, it was ill adapted to agricultural and other peaceful pursuits which the government hoped to introduce. They wore no breeches, but a short petticoat of striped woollen cloth, called tartan, reaching from the waist to the knee; this was the *philibeg*; their stockings, generally of the same tartan, were usually gartered below the knee, which was left bare to allow more freedom in running.

---

CCXVIII.—1. What of the conduct of the king after the queen's death? What excursion did he set out upon? How received in Ireland? 2. What other visits did he make? 3. How did the king seek to gain popularity? In what dress did he appear in Scotland? 4. Describe the dress of a Highlander.

6. The body was clothed in a short close jacket, and over this was thrown, in graceful folds, a roll of light tartan, called the *plaid*, which generally was six yards in length, and two in breadth, and coming closely round the right side, was usually fastened on and thrown back over the left shoulder, leaving the right arm at perfect liberty. The weaving, dyeing, and preparing the tartan stuffs formed the principal employment of the females of each clan.

7. On the head was worn a dark-blue bonnet, made of light woollen cloth, in which a sprig of heather was often placed; or an eagle's feather, if the wearer were a gentleman of rank; or two feathers, if he were a chief. In front of the philibeg, was the *sporran*, or purse, by the right side of which hung the dirk. On the other side was the *claymore*, a basket-hilted broad-sword.

8. Imagine an iron musket slung to the back, and a round *target*, or shield, covered with tough hide, and having a long iron spike firmly screwed into the centre, on the left arm, and you have a Highlander in complete costume. As the occasion of his visit was peaceful, George IV. omitted the warlike part of the equipment. The rage for the tartan spread through the kingdom; and the brilliant colors and stripes of the Stuart, imitated in silks and velvets, figured on the backs of good London dames, who would have trembled at the bare idea of meeting a real living Highlander.

---

## CHAPTER CCXIX.

### *A Year of Projects results in much Distress.—The Coinage of England.*

1. THE year 1824 was a year of projects and speculations, some of which might remind us of the philosophers of Laputa in Gulliver's Travels. There were companies for supplying London with milk and with fish, and others for washing all the dirty clothes of the city. There was an association for cutting a canal through the Isthmus of Darien, and projects for railroads without number. The greater portion of these schemes came to nothing, and the latter part of the year 1825 was marked by disappointed speculations and general distress.

2. The Bank of England itself was on the very point of suspending its payments, and was reduced almost to its last *sovereign*, as the gold coin of the value of a pound sterling is called, and which has taken the place of the "golden guinea," of which we so often read; a coin, by the way, no longer in circulation. When Cæsar landed in the island, bits of brass and iron, and iron rings of a fixed weight, were the only money used by the Britons.

3. Within a century from this time, money, in imitation of that of the Romans, was coined there. The coins of Cunobeline, a British

king, who was contemporary with the Roman emperor Tiberius, and who died A. D. 37, are to be found in some collections; but they are so rare and valuable, that no collector has yet been disinterested enough to sacrifice one of them for the sake of ascertaining the proportion of silver or of alloy which they contain.

4. *Alloy* is a certain quantity of some harder and baser metal, which must be mixed with gold and silver, to give the coin sufficient firmness to take a strong impression, and to resist the wear of circulation; gold and silver being of too soft a nature. It is also found necessary that the coin should be of somewhat less than its nominal value, to prevent its being melted down and sold as bullion, whenever bullion, from any cause, is much in demand.

5. Bullion is the general name for the precious metals, that is, for gold and silver. The first money that can properly be called English was coined in the seventh century, by Ethelbert, King of Kent. It was called a penny, from the Latin word *pendo*, which signifies *to weigh*, and contained as much silver as equalled twenty grains of wheat, taken from the middle of the ear; and this is the origin of the weight called a *grain*, which is neither more nor less than a grain of wheat.

6. The coins of Ethelbert were marked with a cross, as a symbol of Christianity; a practice which was continued till the time of the Commonwealth, when it was left off. In imitation of the Romans, the superscription on the coins was in Latin. This practice also was left off during the time of the Commonwealth, but was resumed at the restoration. The Anglo-Saxons divided the silver penny into half-pence, and *fourthings*, or farthings.

7. The nominal money of the Anglo-Saxons was the *pound*, computed at 240 pence, the mark, at 100 pence, and the shilling, at three pence. It is hard to say what the value of the penny was, compared with money at the present time. Two pennies and a fourthing would, in the time of Edward the Confessor, buy a bushel of wheat, which, at the present day, costs nearly two dollars. The silver penny continued to be the principal currency for some time after the Conquest.

8. Henry III. introduced *groats*, or *great* pennies, worth four pence each. He also coined the first English gold money of which we have any authentic account. It was called the gold penny, and was valued at twenty silver pennies. It was afterwards raised to twenty-four pence, and was called a *ryal*, that is, *royal*. The people did not fancy this gold money, and it did not long continue in circulation.

9. Gold coin was at this time very rare all over Europe, except what was coined by the Greek emperors at Constantinople, or Byzantium, as it was then called, and hence called *Bezants*, or *Byzantine* money. Afterwards a gold coin, called a *florin*, from the Latin word *flos*, *flower*, because it had a lily stamped on it, came into use on the

in Britain when Caesar landed there? 3. What coin was used next? 4. What is alloy? 5. What is bullion? Whence the name penny? Whence the name grain? Whence the name farthing? 7. What was the nominal money of the Anglo-Saxons? 8. What coins did Henry III. introduce? 9. What of gold coins? Whence the name florin? Whence

continent; and Edward III. coined, in imitation of it, a *florence*, so called because an artificer from the city of Florence, in Italy, was employed in the coinage.

10. In 1346, he coined a gold piece called a *noble*, in commemoration, as is supposed, of a naval victory he gained over the French. On one side is represented the king standing in a ship. The workmanship of this coin is very neat, and gold nobles are now much esteemed by collectors for their beauty and their rarity. Henry VII. issued a gold coin called an *angel*, because it bore on one side the figure of an angel killing a dragon. The angel was calculated at eight shillings.

11. Henry VIII. issued a magnificent gold coin called a *sovereign*; having on one side a full length figure of the king seated on his throne, and on the other a double rose, for the houses of York and Lancaster. Henry VIII.'s coins were as large in proportion as his sleeves or his shoes; but they diminished in value, though they increased in size; for he increased very much the quantity of alloy, and then required his subjects to take the debased coin at the value of pure coin.

12. The coin continued debased till the reign of Elizabeth, though its quality was a little improved after Mary's marriage, benefited, as it is said, by the twenty-seven chests of silver from the New World, which Philip carried with him to England. Elizabeth called in all the base coin, and replaced it with good money at the public cost. This measure is said to have been advised by Burleigh, who said, "that a monarchy was only to be sustained by sound and solid courses."

---

## CHAPTER CCXX.

### *The Coinage of England—continued.*

1. THE coinage of Charles I. presents a greater variety than that of any other English sovereign, and a review of it may almost show us the changes of his fortune. In the early part of his reign, his coins were very beautiful, and his taste and skill in the fine arts may be observed in their designs. As his troubles increased, both the design and execution of his coins were less attended to, and many of those of the latter part of his reign are little more than pieces of silver cut to the proper weight, and stamped with some rude mark.

2. On some of these coins is still to be seen the pattern of the cup and salver from which they were hastily cut. This money is called "sieve money," and "necessity money." There is some money of James II. which shows still stronger indications of a distressed fortune:

---

that of florence? 10. What coin did Henry VII. issue? 11. What coin did Henry VIII. have executed? 12. What of the value of his coin? What did Elizabeth do in regard to coin?

This money was coined in Ireland, not long before the battle of the Boyne. It was of copper, and was made to pass for shillings, although each piece was not really worth more than a half-penny.

3. This money is called "gun money," because it was chiefly coined from old guns. It is said that, these failing, the kitchens of Dublin were also made to contribute, and that many a cook was robbed of her saucepans for the royal *mint*, which is the name given to the establishment for coining. It is to be remarked to Charles' credit, that he never, in his greatest distress, resorted to the expedient of debasing the coin.

4. The coins of the Commonwealth are remarkable for their clumsiness and want of taste. In spite of their ugliness, they are, however, valued for their rarity, having been called in at the restoration. Cromwell struck a very fine coinage with his own head upon it; but this, we believe, was never circulated. Charles II. made a great alteration in the coinage, and the figure of Britannia, borne by the copper half-pennies, is said to be a representation of a court beauty, the Duchess of Richmond.

5. The *guinea* made its first appearance in the reign of Charles II. It was so called because the gold which furnished the first coinage was principally brought from the coast of Guinea, in Africa. It might have been in allusion to this, that it bears the figure of an elephant on one side. It was originally worth twenty shillings, but in 1728 it was raised to the value of twenty-one shillings.

6. The coinage of the last century was ill executed, the impressions soon wore away, and the shillings and sixpences were little better than flat bits of silver. The copper coin, too, was very bad, and not bad only, but very scarce; and many trades-people issued, for their own convenience, both silver and copper *tokens*, which were by far the best-looking money in circulation. In 1797, a new copper coinage appeared; but many of these were soon melted down for the sake of the copper, which rose to a very high price.

7. This was the year in which the Bank of England stopped payments in coin, and issued one-pound or twenty-shilling notes. As there was no longer any demand for gold coins to circulate, they soon disappeared, and such a thing was rarely seen, except a stray guinea here and there. They were melted down and sent out of the country, or put away safely at home by those good, careful people, who feared an invasion by the French, that they might have a store against time of need.

8. The bank notes had not, in themselves, any value, as gold and silver have; at least, no more value than any other pieces of paper of the same size; their value was derived from the confidence which the people had that they would some day be redeemed with gold or silver. If the bank had been liable to pay gold or silver for them as soon as they were issued, then of course but a limited amount could

---

CCXX.—1. What of the coinage of Charles I.? 3. What is gun money? 4. What of the Commonwealth's coin? What of Charles II.'s? 5. Whence the name *guinea*? 6. What of the coins of the last century? 8. What of bank notes? 9. What is the value of a sovereign?

have been circulated, dependent upon the quantity of gold and silver it possessed.

9. The notes in such case would always be worth as much as they purported to be; but when this restriction was removed, the notes were issued in excess, and lowered in value, so that at one time a guinea in *gold* was worth twenty-eight shillings in *paper*. In 1817, the *currency* (a general name for that which is current, or circulates as money) was again restored to a sound state; although the bank did not resume payment till some time afterwards. The guineas were called in, and *sovereigns* issued. This coin is worth twenty shillings, or, in our money, four dollars and eighty cents.

---

## CHAPTER CCXXI.

*The Princess Charlotte marries Leopold of Saxe-Coburg.—Her Death.—Lord Liverpool.—Catholic Emancipation and Reform.*

1. THE king had one daughter, born to him in 1796, who is known in history as the *Princess Charlotte*. Immediately after the allied armies had replaced Louis on the throne of France, in 1814, the Emperor of Russia and the King of Prussia, with the most distinguished officers and generals who had served in the war, and attended by a host of young princes, who had little of worldly possessions, besides the uniforms upon their backs, visited England. To these the young heiress of the British empire could not fail to be an object of admiration.

2. One among them attracted the attention of the princess by the elegance of his person and the grace of his manners. Leopold, a younger son of the Duke of Saxe-Coburg, a German prince, whose dominions contained about as many inhabitants as a good-sized city, having offered his services to Napoleon, which were declined, had attached himself to the Emperor Alexander of Russia, in whose suite he now visited England. He did not reject the proffered love of the princess, and although his rank by birth was not so high as to lead him to aspire to this honor, neither was it so low as to cause any objection on her father's part.

3. The princess was restricted, in the choice of a husband, to a very narrow circle. State policy would not allow her to marry a subject of England; and a law made at the revolution forbade her marrying any person who was not of the Protestant faith in religion. Now this is professed only in Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, and some of the German states, of which number Saxe-Coburg happens to be one. The princess was married in 1816: but she enjoyed only a short period of domestic happiness, for she died in 1817, leaving no child.

4. When Leopold was disappointed in his hopes of being husband of the Queen of England, he was yet born to be a king; for, after declining the crown of the new kingdom of Greece, which was offered him in 1828, he accepted that of Belgium, another new kingdom, formed from a part of Holland, in 1830, and not long after, he married a daughter of the King of the French. But Leopold's connection with the royal family of England was kept up by the marriage of his sister to the Duke of Kent, fourth son of George III.

5. After the death of the Princess Charlotte, the Duke of York, second son of George III., became the heir *presumptive* to the throne. Mark the distinction between heir *apparent* and heir *presumptive*. The king's eldest son is an heir apparent, because nothing but his own death before that of his father can deprive him of the succession to the crown; but if there be no son, some other relation of the king is heir to the crown. Such person is called the heir *presumptive*, because his right may be defeated by the birth of a son.

6. The Duke of York died in 1827, leaving no children, and William, Duke of Clarence, became heir *presumptive* to the crown. The king had always been fond of the Duke of York, and his death was a severe blow. It was followed by another, in the illness of the Earl of Liverpool, who had been prime minister ever since the murder of Mr. Percival, in 1812. Though not a man of genius, he was laborious and persevering, and his integrity of character gave him great influence.

7. He was succeeded by Mr. Canning, who died in a few months, and was succeeded by Lord Goderich, who was superseded, in January, 1828, by the Duke of Wellington. Two great questions agitated the public mind at this time, commonly called the questions of *Catholic Emancipation* and of *Reform*. In the reigns of Elizabeth and James I., very severe laws had been passed against the Catholics, and these had been followed by others of the same character in the subsequent reigns, in apprehension of a popish successor to the crown.

8. The actual penalties inflicted by these laws had been repealed, but the disabilities for holding a seat in either house of parliament, and to admission to various offices, still remained. These were felt to be a very great grievance, especially in Ireland, where the Catholics far outnumbered the Protestants. At the union with Ireland in 1801, Mr. Pitt had promised the removal of these disabilities; but George III. would never consent to the measure.

9. The country was kept in a state of continual excitement by this question, and the contests between the friends and opponents of this measure were carried on with the greatest asperity. The bill for the repeal was repeatedly passed by the house of commons, and as often rejected by the lords, chiefly through the influence of the bishops of the church of England, who, by law, have seats and votes in that house.

---

What of Leopold? 5. What is the difference between heir apparent and heir *presumptive*? 6. What of Lord Liverpool? 7. What questions agitated England? What of the laws against Catholics? 9. What of the contest about Catholic emancipation? 10. What was the final result?

10. At last the popular will became too strong to be despised, and the Duke of Wellington, taking the matter up as a government measure, procured the passage of the bill through both houses. But it was not yet the law of the land, because, by the British constitution, no bill, though passed by both houses of parliament, is a law, unless it be approved by the king. The king's assent in the present case was given April 13th, 1829.

## CHAPTER CCXXII.

### *Reform in the House of Commons.—History of this Body.*

1. In the earliest times of English history of which we have any record, there were assemblies of the people to deliberate on matters of national interest; but it was not till about 1266 that the people were summoned by the king to appear by representatives in the great council of the nation. The king had a twofold object in view; he wished to raise up a power which should counterbalance the power of the great barons; and he also wished to obtain supplies of money from the growing wealth of the people.

2. There were three classes to be represented in this branch of the legislature. First, the large body of lesser barons, who held land of the king, by knight service, that is, upon condition of serving him in the field in time of war. These were too numerous and too poor to be all called to parliament and to rank with the great barons. They were therefore summoned to appear by two representatives from each county, or *shire*. The representatives of counties retain the appellation of *knights of the shire* to this day, though now chosen without reference to this qualification.

3. In those days of timid navigation, the sea-ports nearest to the continent were deemed of great importance for the defence of the kingdom. Of the principal ports there were *five*, hence called *cinque ports*—*cinque* being the French for five. These were bound to furnish fifty-seven vessels, each manned with twenty-one sailors. It is curious to contrast these ships of war with the mighty fabrics manned with 1000 men each, which now defend these coasts!

4. So important was this service deemed at that time, that the citizens held the rank of barons, and had two representatives in parliament, still called *barons of the cinque ports*. Lastly, there were the towns, or *boroughs*, inhabited by the merchants and traders, who governed themselves by virtue of charters of the king, and were not subject to any great baron. The king summoned such of

---

COXXII.—1. What of assemblies of the people in old times? When were commons summoned to send representatives? 2. What three classes were to be represented? 3. What of the knights? 4. What of the cinque ports? 5. What of the boroughs?

these as he pleased to send representatives, but he would naturally select the most important.

5. The people of a borough are called *burgesses*, a name yet retained by this class of representatives in parliament. The house of commons possessed but little influence at that time, and it was very expensive living at London, and not a little dangerous to travel through the country, so that it was considered a great hardship to serve as a member. Besides, the summons was a sure prelude to a demand for money.

6. But when the house of commons became of consequence as a check upon the power of the king, it was necessary to restrict him in the right which he had at first enjoyed of summoning such places as he pleased, and to require him to issue summonses to all which had usually been summoned, and to no others. In the course of ages, great changes took place in the relative importance of places, and strange anomalies were the consequence.

7. The great city of Manchester had no representative in parliament, whilst perhaps a barren common, where the form of an election must be gone through with under a tree, because there was no house within the limits of the borough, gave its owner a right to send two. The right had originally been given to a certain extent of territory, chartered as a borough, and at the time populous; but by a change in the course of trade, or some other cause, it had since been deserted by its inhabitants, but it still retained its right to send representatives.

8. In rude times, the manufactures of iron, tin, &c. had made Cornwall comparatively very rich; hence it contained within its limits a great number of boroughs; but commerce, and the rise of more important branches of manufacture, had rendered this district very poor as compared with others. These poor boroughs, commonly known as *rotten boroughs*, were, for the most part, owned by rich noblemen who appointed the representatives.

9. These *rotten boroughs*, that is, the right to appoint members of the house of commons, were bought and sold just like any other piece of property. Thus the house of commons, instead of being, as it purported to be, a representation of the great body of the people, was, to a certain extent at least, a representation of the aristocracy, the very body whose power it was designed to check. It had long been the leading object with the *liberal* or *whig* party to bring about a reform in this matter.

10. The friends of the measure had to contend in the house of commons against those who would lose their seats, and in the house of lords against those who would lose their property by the proposed change, which was to transfer the right of sending representatives from the rotten boroughs to those towns which were now not represented at all, or very inadequately in proportion to their population and wealth.

---

6. By what means did representation become unequal? 7, 8. What instances of inequality? What of the rotten boroughs? 10. With whom had the friends of reform to contend?

11. This had been the great question in dispute between the two parties for more than half a century. The clamors of the people for a reform had been growing louder and louder, and the efforts of its friends in parliament more constant and vigorous. It had now become evident that a reform must be made, but it did not take place during the reign of George IV.

---

### CHAPTER CCXXIII.

*Great Change in the Habits of George IV.—His Death.—Improvements in London during his Regency and Reign.—Use of Steamboats and Railways introduced.*



PAVILION ON LONDON BRIDGE.

1. A LOVE of seclusion had for some years been growing upon the king. He lived chiefly in what was called the Cottage, in Windsor Park, in the society of a few friends, his principal amusement being that of sailing about, or fishing, in a small lake called Virginia Water, or in driving about the grounds attached to the castle in a pony carriage. All solitary habits gain strength by indulgence, and at last he could not bear to be seen even by casual passers-by on the road.

CCXXIII.—1. What change in George IV.'s habits? 3. When did he die? What  
27 \*

2. Before he set out on his drives, persons were despatched on horseback to see that the road was clear, and if not, he would turn another way. To avoid, however, as much as possible, this necessity, his favorite drives were carefully planted with trees and shrubs, so as to be screened from the public eye. In the spring of 1830, his infirmities made retirement from public life less a matter of choice than of necessity. The very slightest exertion became painful to him.

3. It was evident to his physicians that he had not long to live, and this opinion was communicated to him. He received the intimation with firmness, and bore his sufferings with fortitude. He could not bear any mention of business, saying, "I have done with politics now." He expired on the 26th of June, 1830, in the 68th year of his age, having reigned ten years, but having governed the country nearly twenty years.

4. George IV.'s love of display and magnificence sometimes led to good results. It was one immediate cause of very great improvements which took place in London under his government. A large tract of ground, containing about 450 acres, had been leased to individuals ever since the reign of Charles II., and used for pasture-fields, with sheds for cattle, and a few mean buildings.

5. When the leases expired, George, then regent, would not allow them to be renewed, but caused the lands to be laid out as a pleasure-ground, with drives and walks, and to be planted with trees; and on the sides of it were erected beautiful houses. It is called the Regent's Park. He also caused alterations to be made in the other royal parks in London, which added much to their beauty; for he possessed an excellent taste in such matters.

6. His example gave an impulse to the spirit of improvement in his subjects, and narrow streets and mean houses gave place to wide avenues and elegant edifices. The brilliancy of the streets was very much increased by the introduction, about 1815, of gas-lights, in place of the old oil lamps. Other great improvements took place in Great Britain under the rule of George IV. Steamboats were introduced into general use.

7. Experiments had been made at various times to devise some method for applying the power of steam to the movement of vessels. Robert Fulton, our own countryman, was the first who succeeded on a large scale, about the year 1807. The first steamboats were used in Great Britain in 1812. The first railway for purposes of general transportation was planned, and for the most part constructed, in the reign of George IV., though not opened till a few months after his death.

8. As long ago as 1680, the coal miners at Newcastle had found it useful to lay down two parallel rows of timber, for the wheels of carriages, which bore the coals from the mines to the places where they were shipped to market, to run upon. From hence they were introduced into other mining districts, and the obvious improvement

of substituting iron rails for the wooden timber was made. They were drawn by horses till 1824, when steam engines were introduced to move the carriages on the railways at Newcastle.

9. But the first railway established on a large scale was one between Liverpool and Manchester; the latter, the great centre of the cotton cloth manufacture, and the former the port at which the raw cotton is received from the United States, Brazil, and other countries where it grows, and from whence the manufactured cloth is shipped to all parts of the world. This railway was opened, September 15th, 1830, amid a great concourse of visitors and spectators.

10. The Duke of Wellington, then prime minister, and a large number of distinguished noblemen and commoners, were present on the occasion, and went by the first train. But the scene was rendered very painful by the fatal accident which befell Mr. Huskisson, one of the most eminent statesmen of the country. He had got out of the carriage at the place where it stopped to take in a supply of water, and was standing and holding the door. Another engine passing, struck the open door, and threw Mr. Huskisson under the wheel, which passed over his leg, and injured him so much as to cause his death in a few hours.

11. Railways now traverse the country in various parts; and one may be carried, in almost any direction from London, as far in one hour, as he could have been, a century and a half ago, in a whole day by the coaches, which, on account of their superiority in speed over all that had been known previously, were called "Flying coaches."

## CHAPTER CCXXIV.

*William IV.—The Reform Bill passes the House of Commons, but is rejected by the Lords.—Great Riots in consequence.—The Cholera appears in England.*

1. WILLIAM HENRY, Duke of Clarence, third son of George III., was nearly sixty years old when he succeeded his brother, George IV., on the throne. He is said to have been a remarkably engaging child; and he retained through life an open simplicity of disposition and manners. At the age of thirteen he was sent to sea; and though he had no opportunity of distinguishing himself in any action of importance, he gave evidence that he was not wanting in courage.

2. He entered the navy as a midshipman, and passed through the various grades of the service up to that of Lord High Admiral, or commander-in-chief, under the king, of all the naval forces of Great Britain. This office had not been held by any individual,

---

boat used in Great Britain? 8. What of the use of railways at collieries? 9. Between what places was the first railway on a large scale constructed? When was it opened? 10. What fatal accident happened?

CCXXIV.—1. What was William IV.'s age when he came to the throne? Relate the

with the exception of a single year, since 1708, when it was held by George, Prince of Denmark, husband of Queen Anne. In 1827, the office was revived for the heir to the throne; and the manner in which he discharged its duties gained for him the affection of all ranks in the service.

3. But he was very lavish in the expenditure of money, and upon receiving a remonstrance from the Duke of Wellington in respect to this, he resigned the office, after having held it about a year. It might have been expected that the Duke of Wellington's conduct on this occasion would have caused some coldness towards him from the new monarch; but the king was incapable of maintaining such a feeling.

4. At the first meeting of the council he made known to the duke his entire approval of his conduct and principles. But whatever might be the king's private wishes, he could not retain the Duke of Wellington and his tory friends in office. By granting the Catholic emancipation, they had lost the support of a large party, and by refusing to grant a reform in the commons, they had failed to gain the support of a new party.

5. In the new parliament, which met soon after the accession of the king, there was a majority in the house of commons against the ministers, which showed that the people did not approve their conduct, and they, in consequence, resigned their offices. The whigs now came into office, with Earl Grey at their head. A bill for a reform in the representation was introduced, but met with so much opposition in the house of commons, that the ministers resolved to dissolve this parliament, though it had only been in existence a few months.

6. The new elections were carried on in the most tumultuous manner, both parties striving to the utmost to secure a majority. It resulted in giving to the friends of reform a majority of one hundred and nine. But the bill, though passed by the house of commons, was rejected by the house of lords. This rejection caused great discontent in every part of the country. In London, a great mob collected, and made assaults upon the persons and houses of various tory noblemen; amongst the rest, of the Duke of Wellington.

7. Nottingham Castle, once a royal residence, but now become the property of a tory, was destroyed. The riot at Bristol exceeded everything of the kind that had been heard of in any part of the kingdom, since the great riots in London in 1780. All the public buildings and a large number of private houses were destroyed, and many lives were lost before the storm could be quelled, for which purpose it was necessary to make use of a large body of troops.

8. The people formed themselves into societies, called *unions*, in which a large portion of the inhabitants enrolled themselves. The object of these unions was to intimidate the legislature to pass the Reform Bill, chiefly by holding out a threat of refusing to pay any

previous incidents of his life. 4. What of the tory ministry? 5. What happened upon the meeting of the new parliament? 6. What of the Reform Bill? How did the people receive its rejection? 7. What riots are mentioned? 8. What of *unions*? What disease appeared? 9. What of its progress?

taxes. To add to the gloom which hung over the country, a disease, since known as the cholera, broke out at Sunderland.

9. This malady seemed to be the same as one of that name which had appeared in Bengal, in Asia, about the year 1817, and had afterwards desolated a large portion of India. Spreading to the west, it continued its ravages, and at length reached Warsaw, in Poland, in April, 1831, and the city of Hamburg in the October following. The first cases which occurred at Sunderland were on the 26th of the same month. From thence it spread over Great Britain, and it did not cease till the autumn of 1832. In 1848, this disease again visited Europe, but its ravages were not extensive.

## CHAPTER CCXXV.

*Reform in the House of Commons.—Of the different Political Parties.—Death of William IV.—Accession of Victoria.—Her Marriage.—Recent important Events.—Character of the English.*



QUEEN VICTORIA GOING TO OPEN PARLIAMENT.

1. THE Reform Bill was passed without difficulty through the new parliament, for the lords who were opposed to it, fearing any longer to resist the will of the people, left their seats when the question came up for discussion; and it finally received the royal assent, June 7th, 1832. The first parliament under the new law was elected in the autumn of the same year.

2. The reformed parliament proceeded to make various improvements; the principal one was the abolition of slavery in the British West India Islands; the owners of the slaves being allowed twenty millions of pounds sterling, nearly one hundred millions of dollars, as an indemnification for the loss they would thus sustain.

3. The king, to whom the conduct of public affairs appears to have been for some time distasteful, in November, 1834, dismissed the whigs from office, and gave the reins of government to the tories, at the head of whom were the Duke of Wellington and Sir Robert Peel; the latter being a man of great abilities, and of enormous wealth, which he inherited from his father, who had gained it by his own industry as a manufacturer of cotton cloth.

4. As there was known to be a majority against the new administration in the parliament, it was dissolved, and a new one summoned. The greatest exertions were made by the tories or *Conservatives*, as they were now called, (because they were opposed to alterations in the constitution, and for preserving it as it was,) in the elections; but their adversaries were too strong for them, and, after holding office for a few months, they resigned, and the whigs were restored, Lord Melbourne being the prime minister.

5. The party which still retained the title of whig was strengthened during the whole of these struggles by various adherents of very different classes of opinion. Of these, some were the advocates of a still more extensive reform in the house of commons, and of great changes in the constitution of the church, and in other institutions. This party was known as the *Radicals*. The *Liberals* were those who attached less weight to the forms of government than to its spirit and principles.

6. The whigs also received the support of the Irish members, at the head of whom stood Daniel O'Connell, a man of great energy, and impassioned eloquence, and possessed of an extraordinary degree of personal influence with his countrymen. The leading, avowed object of this party was to procure a repeal of the act of union between Ireland and England, which they regarded as the cause of the depressed state of Ireland, and of the degraded condition of the great body of the people of that country, it being now governed by a parliament in which English influence predominates.

7. By the aid of these several parties, Lord Melbourne maintained his place during the remainder of this reign, which was terminated by the death of the king, June 20th, 1837. As William IV. left no children, he was succeeded by the present sovereign, Alexandria Victoria, daughter of his brother, the Duke of Kent, who had died in 1820. Queen Victoria was married on the 10th of February, 1840, to her cousin, Prince Albert, of Saxe-Coburg.

8. In May, 1843, the Melbourne ministry resigned, in consequence of the smallness of their majority in the house of commons on a leading measure; and Sir Robert Peel attempted to form a new ministry. He required to have the ladies of the queen's bed-chamber removed,

but this being refused by her majesty, "as contrary to usage, and repugnant to her feelings," the whig ministry, at her request, resumed their places.

9. In August, 1841, the whig ministry resigned, and a tory ministry soon after came into power, Sir Robert Peel being at its head. He conducted the government with great prudence and energy, but in 1845, he gave his influence in favor of a repeal of the corn laws, and a species of free-trade tariff. A change of ministry followed, and the whigs, under Lord John Russell, came into power, which they held for a long time.

10. Several important events have occurred in Great Britain within the reign of the present queen. A war has been carried on against China, the result of which has been to compel that great country to open four of her ports to the commerce of Christendom.

11. In Ireland the most extraordinary spectacles have been exhibited. A Catholic priest, known as Father Mathew, has induced nearly six millions of persons, of all ages and sexes, to sign the pledge of temperance, by which they engage never to partake of intoxicating drinks. The benefits of this wonderful movement are beyond calculation to thousands long held in degradation by the vice of drunkenness.

12. Other movements, no less wonderful, have also been exhibited in Ireland. O'Connell roused a portion of the nation to a sense of their wrongs, and a series of mass meetings were held, some of which numbered hundreds of thousands of persons. These were called upon by the most thrilling eloquence, as well from O'Connell as others, to demand a repeal of the union, as the only means of their deliverance.

13. This agitation was characterized by a deep enthusiasm, restrained, however, within the bounds of general good order, and observance of established laws. O'Connell was tried, and though the "monster" meetings were adjudged illegal, the Agitator himself was released on technical grounds. His career seemed, however, to be at an end, and, in 1847, he died while on his way to Rome.

14. In January, 1840, a new law went into successful operation in Great Britain, establishing the rates of postage on letters of common weight at *one penny* for any distance. This system has proved completely successful, and may be regarded as one of the greatest triumphs of government, which is able to scatter knowledge at so cheap a rate, and thus to knit together, by easy intercourse, every portion of its dominions.

15. During the year 1847, famine spread over a part of Europe, and fell with melancholy fatality upon Ireland. It was attended by pestilence, and in the space of a twelvemonth, it is said, half a million of persons perished, by disease and starvation, in that unhappy island. The British government made great efforts to remedy these evils, and liberal donations, in money and provisions, were sent from the United States.

16. But all aids could not prevent spectacles of calamity, vice,

and crime, which, even to think of, make the heart sick. Influenced by these circumstances, and incited by the revolution of 1848 in France, which drove Louis Philippe from the throne, and established a republic there, some Irish patriots attempted a rebellion against the British government. Their plans, however, were crude, and not seconded by the people, and they became the victims of these sincere but misguided efforts in behalf of their country.

17. The French revolution, just mentioned, occasioned great agitation in England, and a number of persons, called *Chartists*, made a movement for reform. Their efforts were abortive, and some of the leaders were punished for treasonable practices.

## CHAPTER CCXXVI.

*The Crimean War.—English Views of the Civil War in America.—Marriage of the Prince of Wales.*

1. IN 1854, the English government, in connection with the French and Sardinians, determined to take the part of the Turks against the Russians, and to resist the encroachments of the latter upon Turkish territory and the increase of their navy upon the Black Sea. But it was not out of love for the Turks that this step was taken.

2. The English, besides being unwilling to see the balance of power, as it then existed, disturbed, were afraid that if Russia possessed a powerful navy in the Black Sea, with an access, through the Bosphorus, into the Mediterranean, their route to India and the East might at any time be cut off, and their rich possessions isolated from the mother country. France and Sardinia were actuated by similar considerations.

3. This struggle, known as the Crimean War, lasted two years, and closed with the capture of the Russian stronghold, Sebastopol, which had till then held out against the besiegers. The losses of the English in killed and wounded were large, but larger still from hardship, exposure, and insufficient supplies.

4. The treaty of peace which followed the war,—known as the Treaty of Paris,—required the Emperor of Russia to dismantle the fortress of Sebastopol, and neutralized the Black Sea, that is, opened it to the commerce of all nations, and forbade either the Turks or the Russians to maintain a navy upon its waters. These conditions the Russians assented to, yielding, as was afterwards made evident, upon compulsion, and not from conviction that the requirements of the treaty were just.

try of 1841? 10. What of the war in China? 11. Father Mathew? 12, 13. O'Connell? 14. The penny postage law? 15. Famine? 16. Rebellion? 17. The Chartist?

CCXXVI.—1. What of war with Russia? 2. What were the motives of the English? Of the French and Sardinians? 3. What is the struggle called? How did it end? 4.

5. For, fifteen years afterwards, when the principal ally of England, France, had become powerless in consequence of a disastrous war with Prussia, Russia "denounced" the treaty, that is, declared some of its provisions intolerable, and gave notice that she would no longer abide by them. This step caused great agitation in England, and it was for some time feared that war would inevitably be the consequence.

6. The Russian government finally consented, however, to a conference of the several nations that were parties to the treaty of Paris, in which they could state their grievances and ask that the objectionable clauses be peaceably withdrawn or suitably modified. This conference assembled in London, in January, 1871, and decided to accede to the claims of Russia.

7. By far the greater part of the glory of the Crimean war had fallen to the share of the French, and a very natural consequence was a feeling of alarm in England that Napoleon III., Emperor of the French, presuming upon the inferred superiority of his soldiers, should invade the shores of Great Britain. The question was seriously asked and discussed throughout the kingdom, how such an attack could be repelled, if indeed it could be repelled at all.

8. The agitation upon this subject had become a panic in the year 1860. In July of that year the French emperor addressed a letter to his ambassador in London, disclaiming any hostility towards England, with a view to calming the prevailing apprehension. All fears of a war with France at once subsided.

9. In the autumn of the same year, the Prince of Wales, travelling as the Baron Renfrew, visited the United States and Canada. In December, 1861, Prince Albert died at Windsor Castle, in his forty-third year, to the great grief, not only of the royal family, but of the entire British people.

10. In July, 1862, the freedom of the city of London was presented to Mr. George Peabody, an American banker doing business there, in acknowledgment of a gift from him of \$750,000, for the benefit of the poor of London. This sum was afterwards increased to nearly two million dollars; and, when Mr. Peabody died, in 1869, the queen directed his body to be conveyed to America in an English man-of-war.

11. The war against secession had now been in progress in the United States nearly two years, and the consequences to the cotton-spinners of England, owing to the stoppage of a supply of the raw material from America, were distressing in the extreme. At the close of the year 1862, 275,000 persons had applied for relief.

12. In spite of their sufferings, however, these people did not desire the raising of the blockade of the cotton ports, being convinced that the United States were fighting in the cause of free labor, and in this belief they remained firm to the end. Large sums of money

---

What of the treaty of Paris? Its conditions? 5. What happened in 1870? The consequence in England? 6. What of a conference? 7, 8. What of fears in England of a French invasion? 9. The Prince of Wales? Prince Albert? 10. What of the city of London and Mr. Peabody? 11. The effect in England of the war against secession? 12

were raised for them both in England and America, and from the latter country several shiploads of breadstuffs were sent in addition.

13. The aristocratic and governing classes of England, however, favored—though they now seek to gloss it over—the cause of secession. They had come to fear the United States as a rival power, and would have been glad to see the country broken up. They therefore gave the seceding states what aid and comfort they could, but, as the sequel will show, had serious cause to regret it.

14. In March, 1863, the Prince of Wales was married at Windsor, to the Princess Alexandra of Denmark. The royal bride had been previously received, upon her landing at Gravesend, with every demonstration of delight. The event was celebrated by illuminations and festivities in almost every town and village in the kingdom. While the popularity of the princess has remained unimpaired to this hour, that of the prince, from his own misconduct, has been constantly declining.

## CHAPTER CCXXVII.

*The Atlantic Cable.—Expedition against Abyssinia.—Disendowment of the Irish Church.—The Alabama affair.—The Fisheries.—Conclusion.*

1. IN July, 1866, after several unsuccessful attempts, a telegraph wire was laid across the Atlantic Ocean, connecting the continents of Europe and America. The ships and the men engaged in the enterprise, as well as the money embarked in it, were for the most part English; the original idea, however, was American, and to the spirit and perseverance of an American, Mr. Cyrus W. Field, the final success of the undertaking may be largely attributed.

2. A number of English travellers having fallen into the hands of the Emperor Theodore of Abyssinia, in Africa, who refused to give them up, the government sent an expedition to release them. The force arrived before Magdala, the enemy's capital, in April, 1868. In less than a week, the Abyssinians had been beaten, their city burned, and their emperor killed. The prisoners were rescued, and, with the troops, at once embarked for home.

3. In 1869, the question of the abolition of capital punishment having been largely discussed by the people, a bill proposing to do away with the death-penalty was introduced into parliament. It was defeated in the house of commons by a large majority.

4. In the same year, after a long and exciting debate in parliament, the Irish Church was disestablished. The meaning of this is, that the Irish, a large majority of whom are Roman Catholics, and who had hitherto been taxed for the support of the state church of England, which is Protestant, were relieved from this oppression.

The conduct of the cotton-spinners? Efforts for their relief? 13. The governing classes of England in reference to secession? 14. Marriage of the Prince of Wales?

CCXXVII.—1. What of an Atlantic telegraph? To whom may its success be partly attributed? 2. What of an expedition to Abyssinia? The result? 3. Capital punish-

Thus one of the grievances under which Ireland had long suffered, and of which it had never ceased to complain, was removed.

5. But justice had in this case been so tardily meted out, and so many other causes of discontent remained to rankle in the Irish breast, that England will probably never be permitted to hold her Irish possessions in peace. Vast bands of malcontents, who have sworn to injure England in any way which may offer itself, and have taken the name of Fenians, exist both in Ireland and America. They have made several attempts at invasion and rebellion, but without success.

6. Besides the Irish question, England has another matter upon her hands, which has already given her great trouble, though, as the closing chapter of this book is written, it seems in a fair way of being amicably settled. This is the affair of the Alabama, and arose, as you doubtless well know, out of the war in America against secession.

7. The steamship Alabama was built, equipped, and supplied in Liverpool, and from that port was allowed to sail forth and burn and destroy unarmed American merchantmen. She was never in a Confederate port, and so never acquired a legal character as an enemy's ship, but remained essentially a pirate. When the war was over, the United States government demanded damages, and the negotiations to this end have now been going on for some years.

8. It was held by many in the United States that the English ought not only to pay for actual damage done by the piratical vessel, but for "constructive" damage, that is, should indemnify those ship-owners who were afraid to send their vessels to sea, and whose business, therefore, was injured or ruined. The government, however, did not take this ground, claiming only reparation for losses fully proved.

9. The English government contended that they could only be expected to make good these losses in case they had not exercised due diligence to learn the character of the vessel while building, and to prevent her sailing if convinced that her purpose was to prey upon the commerce of a friendly power. They denied that they were guilty of this negligence, asserting, in other words, that they had no reason to view her with any suspicion whatever.

10. The answer to this, on the part of the Americans, was, that the American minister in Great Britain knew the vessel's character, and the purpose of her builders, and was aware of the day of her intended sailing; and that if this information was thus obtainable by him, it certainly was accessible to the British government.

11. But the Americans were even willing to waive this point, and to say that the English were *not* guilty of negligence, and could not fairly be held accountable for the escape of the vessel. They would base their claims solely upon this fact, that after her escape,

---

ment in England? 4. What does disestablishment of the Irish Church mean? Why was the step taken? 5. What of the feeling in Ireland against England? What are the malcontents called? Their purpose? Their acts? 6. What other difficulty remains in England? How did this originate? 7. Relate the story of the Alabama. 8. What ground was taken by many in the United States? What by the government? 9. What

and after she had commenced her depredations and proved her character, the Alabama was admitted to British ports all over the world, allowed to refit and recoal, and to sail forth again upon her errand of destruction.

12. To this charge there was no reply possible, and, if, as at present seems probable, the British government decide to make the reparation asked for, it will doubtless be owing more to the fact of the resiling of the Alabama from colonial ports, than to that of her original escape from Liverpool.

13. Late in the year 1870, difficulties arose between American and Canadian fishermen in the waters off the Canadian shores, and the President of the United States, in his message to Congress, made pointed reference to the occurrence. It is hoped that the trouble sure to arise from this cause, if not prevented, will be set at rest at the same time that the Alabama affair is discussed and arranged.

14. We may now close our long story by giving you the character of the English, as summed up by an intelligent Frenchman: "An atmosphere of fogs, rain, and perpetual variation; a political freedom which has long been the envy of the most enlightened nations; an established religion, owing all its power to its disconnection with foreign influence; a perfect freedom of conscience; an industry which has increased tenfold the riches of the soil.

15. "All these have given to the English a sombre, abrupt, and meditative character; a pride which leads them to look upon themselves as the first nation of the world; a solitary and retired mode of life; a set of manners different from those of the rest of Europe; intelligence superior to that of their neighbors, but accompanied by great egotism and a multitude of prejudices."

#### TABLE OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF THE HANOVER OR BRUNSWICK FAMILY.

Began to reign.	Reigned.	
1714	13	George I., great-grandson of James I.
1727	32	George II., son of George I.
1760	60	George III., grandson of George II.
1820	10	George IV., son of George III.
1830	7	William IV., son of George III.
1837	—	Victoria, grand-daughter of George III.

#### CHILDREN OF QUEEN VICTORIA.

Victoria Adelaide, born 1840, married, in 1858, the Crown Prince of Prussia.  
Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, born 1841, married, in 1863, Princess Alexandra of Denmark.

Alice Maud Mary, born 1843, married, in 1862, Prince Louis of Hesse.

Alfred Ernest Albert, Duke of Edinburgh, born 1844.

Helena, born 1846, married, in 1866, Prince Christian of Schleswig.

Louisa, born 1848, married, in 1871, Lord Lorne, son of the Duke of Argyle, subject.

Arthur, born 1850.

Leopold, born 1853.

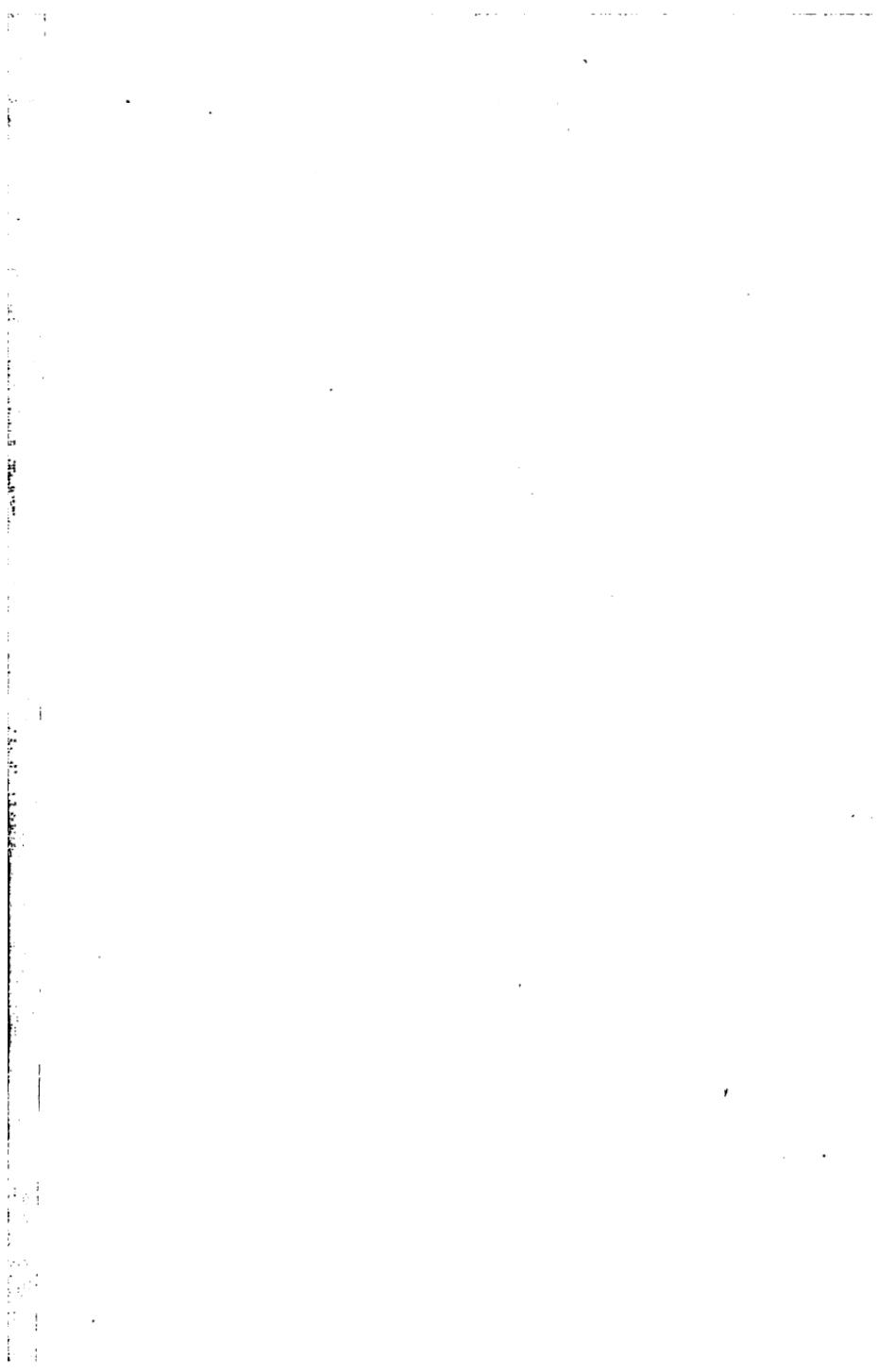
Beatrice, born 1857.

by the English government? 10. The American reply to this? 11. What were the Americans willing to concede? The final argument? 12. The probable result? 13. What of fisheries in Canadian waters? 14, 15. The character of the English?

2 - a 10







THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building

JAN 25 1917

Form 610

